MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 90

The Deeds of the Kings of England

William of Malmesbury

Gesta regum Anglorum

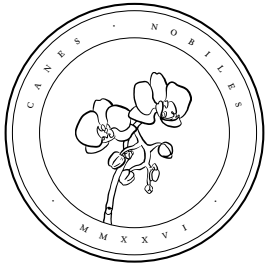
The Deeds of the Kings of England

Part Two: Books III–V

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

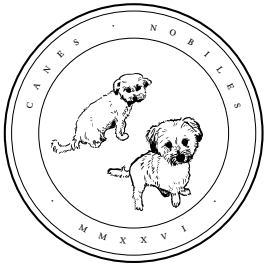


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 90 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows William
Stubbs's text (Rolls Series 90, London, 1889)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

Prologue to Book Three 9
The Birth of William and the Rebels of His Youth 12
William of Arques, King Henry, and Geoffrey Martel 20
Maine and Brittany 30
The Two Clerics; Harold Crowned and the Invasion 32
The Battle of Hastings 43
The Fatal Day; the Manners of the English 50
The Manners of the Normans 55
How William Was Received by the English 56
The Sum of William's Wars in England 58
How He Took York and Laid Waste the Province 60
Malcolm, King of the Scots 62
Edgar the Ætheling 63
The Brothers Edwin and Morcar 66
Earl Waltheof; Flanders 68
Robert the Frisian, and the Kings of Norway 76
Sweyn and Cnut of Denmark; Robert Guiscard 83
Pope Hildebrand 90
A Bishop Who Bought His See 94
Maurilius and Lanfranc 101

William's Family and Character 109
The Burning of Mantes and the King's Death 119
Berengar 123
Miracles of the Eucharist; the Emperor Henry 130
A Man Devoured by Mice 136
Those Bitten by a Leopard 137
Marianus the Scot 139
A Miracle at Fulda 140
That All the Bishops of Britain Are Subject to Canterbury 143
That York Is Subject to Canterbury 145
Wulfstan of Worcester 155
Prologue to Book Four 160
Book Four: William Rufus 164
How Rufus Overcame His Enemies 166
The Peace Between William and Robert 173
How William and Robert Besieged Their Brother Henry 175
The Great Spirit of William 176
The Gentleness of Count Robert 178
Ranulf; the King's Greed 185
Le Mans, and the King's Courage 193
The Death of William Rufus 202
The Cistercians 208
The Abbots of Cîteaux 215
The Removal of Three Bishoprics; Herbert Losinga 219
Herbert Losinga's Repentance 221
John, the First Bishop of Bath 223
Robert, Bishop of Chester 225
A Preface to the Following Narrative 228

The Christians' Expedition to Jerusalem 229
The Council of Clermont 232
Pope Urban's Speech 236
The Response to the Call 246
The Leaders of the Expedition 249
Robert of Normandy 253
The City of Rome 254
The Gates of Rome and Its Saints 258
The Counts' Journey from Rome to Constantinople 266
The Vision of Constantine 268
The City of Constantinople 270
The Emperors of Constantinople; the March to Antioch 273
The City of Antioch 280
The Siege of Antioch 282
Why the Turks Killed the Christian Natives of the City 284
The Famine of the Besiegers 285
How Bohemond Won a Turk to Betray the City 286
The Coming of the Turks 288
How the Christians Defeated the Turks 289
The City of Jerusalem 294
The Names of the Patriarchs of Jerusalem; the City Taken 298
The Battle of Ascalon 308
Godfrey 313
Baldwin at Edessa 319
Baldwin Comes to Jerusalem 328
King Baldwin 337

The Expedition of 1101; Baldwin's Battles 346
Baldwin's Later Battles, Marriages, and Death 354
Bohemond 358
Raymond 364
Robert Curthose 372
Prologue to Book Five 380
Book Five: Henry, His Youth and Accession 382
Robert's Invasion and the Rebel Barons 390
Tinchebray; the Scots Kings 397
The Welsh, the Bretons, Flanders, and Philip 404
Louis of France; Calixtus; the Count of Meulan 411
Roger of Salisbury; Ireland and Orkney; Sigurd of Norway 418
The Character of Henry; Investitures 424
Paschal's Letters to Anselm; the Settlement 433
Queen Matilda; the White Ship 440
The Emperor Henry and Paschal's Privilege 449
The Privilege Revoked 457
Gelasius and Calixtus 465
The Emperor's Grant; Peter of Poitiers 473
The Founders of Fontevraud and Tiron 481
Serlo, Abbot of Gloucester 482
Lanzo, Prior of Saint Pancras 484
The Death of Lanzo 485
Godfrey, Prior of Winchester 491
Saint Cuthbert's Translation; Saint Etheldreda; the Epilogue 493

Prologus in librum tertium. Incipit prologus libri tertii

PROLOGUE TO BOOK THREE

Normans and English have written of King William, the Normans praising his good and bad deeds alike to the skies, the English tearing at their lord out of national hatred. William of Malmesbury, with the blood of both peoples in him, will tell his good deeds openly and touch his bad ones lightly and in passing, so that the history is not charged with lying nor the king branded, and will keep the same measure for his two sons: the first did little worth praise beyond the first days of his reign, the second kept an unconquered mind in good fortune and bad, so that one might doubt whether he was more cautious or more daring, more fortunate or more in need of good fortune. That judgment he leaves to the reader in its time.

De Willelmo rege scripserunt, diversis incitati causis, et
about William the-king have-written by-various spurred causes both
Normanni et Angli: illi ad nimias efferati sunt laudes, bona
Normans and English those to excessive carried-away were praises good
malaque juxta in cælum prædicantes; isti, pro gentilibus
and-bad-things alike to heaven proclaiming these for national
inimicitiis, fœdis dominum suum proscidere convitiis. Ego
enmities with-foul lord their-own have-torn with-insults I
autem, quia utriusque gentis sanguinem traho, dicendi tale
but because of-each people the-blood I-draw of-speaking such
temperamentum servabo: bene gesta, quantum cognoscere
a-tempering I-shall-keep well things-done as-far-as to-know
potui, sine fuco palam efferam; perperam acta,
I-could without disguise openly I-shall-bring-forth wrongly things-done
quantum sufficiat scientiæ, leviter et quasi transeunter
as-far-as may-suffice for-knowledge lightly and as-if in-passing
attingam; ut nec mendax culpetur historia, nec illum
I-shall-touch so-that neither lying be-blamed the-history nor him
nota inuram censoria cujus cuncta pene, etsi non laudari,
with-a-mark I-brand censorial whose all almost if not to-be-praised

excusari certe possunt opera. Itaque de illo talia narrabo
to-be-excused surely can deeds and-so about him such-things I-shall-tell
libenter et morose quæ sint inertibus incitamento, promptis
gladly and at-length as may-be to-the-sluggish for-incitement to-the-ready
exemplo, usui præsentibus, jocunditati sequentibus. Verum
for-example for-use to-those-present for-pleasure to-those-following but
in his protrahendis non multum temporis expendam
in these-things drawing-out not much of-time I-shall-spend
impendium, quæ nulli emolumentum, immo legenti
the-expense which to-no-one profit nay to-the-reader
fastidium, scribenti pariant odium. Satis superque sufficiunt
weariness to-the-writer may-beget hatred enough and-more suffice
qui genuino molari facta bonorum lacerent. Mihi hæc
who with-the-natural molar the-deeds of-the-good tear to-me this
placet provincia, ut mala, quantum queo, sine veritatis
pleases province that the-evil-things as-far-as I-can without of-truth
dispendio extenuem; bona non nimis ventose collaudem.
loss I-may-lessen the-good-things not too windily praise
De qua moderatione, ut æstimo, veri qui erunt arbitri me
of which moderation as I-reckon the-true who will-be judges me
nec timidum nec inelegantem pronuntiabunt. Hoc itaque
neither timid nor tasteless will-pronounce this and-so
non solum de Willelmo, sed et de duobus filiis ejus stylus
not only about William but also about the-two sons his the-pen
observabit, ut nihil nimie, nihil nisi vere dicatur: quorum
will-observe that nothing excessively nothing except truly be-said of-whom
primus parum quod laudetur egit, præter primos regni
the-first little that might-be-praised did besides the-first of-the-reign
dies; tota vita dampno provincialium comparans favorem
days the-whole life to-the-loss of-the-provincials procuring the-favor
militum. Secundus, patri quam fratri morigeratior,
of-the-soldiers the-second to-the-father than to-the-brother more-compliant

invictum animum inter adversa et prospera rexit: cujus
an-unconquered mind amid adversities and prosperities ruled whose
si expeditiones attendas, ignores cautior an audacior
if the-expeditions you-regard you-would-not-know more-cautious or more-daring
fuerit; si fortunas aspicias, hæsites beatior, aut boni
he-was if the-fortunes you-look-at you-would-hesitate more-fortunate or of-good
eventus indigentior, fuerit. Sed de talibus tempus erit
outcome more-in-need he-was but about such-things a-time will-be
cum lector arbitretur. Nunc, tertium volumen incepturus,
when the-reader may-judge now the-third volume about-to-begin
satis reor egisse ut attentum et docilem facerem;
enough I-think to-have-done that attentive and teachable I-should-make-him
ipse sibi benigne persuadebit ut benivolus sit.
himself for-himself kindly will-persuade that well-disposed he-be
Explicit prologus.
here-ends the-prologue

Liber tertius. Incipit liber tertius de adventu Normannorum in Angliam

THE BIRTH OF WILLIAM AND THE REBELS OF HIS YOUTH

Robert, son of Richard II, had William by a girl he saw dancing, and omens foretold his greatness. At Robert's death the nobles who had sworn fealty to the boy rose against him and Normandy was torn apart; once William was knighted, his guardian King Henry of France crushed Guy of Burgundy's rebels at Val-ès-Dunes, and William took Alençon and Domfront from Geoffrey Martel.

Robertus, alter filius Ricardi secundi, postquam septem
Robert the-second son of-Richard the-Second after for-seven
annis gloriose ducatum Normanniæ tenuit, Jerosolimam
years gloriously the-duchy of-Normandy he-held to-Jerusalem
pergere mentem appulit. Habebat tunc filium septennem,
to-go his-mind turned he-had then a-son seven-years-old
ex concubina susceptum, cujus speciem in choreis saltitantis
from a-concubine conceived whose beauty in dances dancing
forte conspicatus, non abstinuit quin sibi nocte
by-chance having-seen not he-refrained but-that to-himself at-night
conjungeret; deinceps unice dilexit, et aliquamdiu justæ
he-joined(-her) thenceforth singly he-loved and for-some-time of-a-lawful
uxoris loco habuit. Puer ex ea editus, Willelmus
wife in-the-place held the-boy from her born William
a nomine abavi dictus: cujus magnitudinem
from the-name of-his-great-great-grandfather called whose greatness
futuram matris sompnium portendebat, quo intestina sua
future of-the-mother the-dream foretold in-which entrails her
per totam Normanniam et Angliam extendi et dilatari
through the-whole Normandy and England to-be-stretched and to-be-spread
viderat; ipso quoque momento quo, partu laxato,
she-had-seen at-that also moment in-which with-the-birth loosed

in vitam effusus pusio humum attigit, ambas manus
into life poured-out the-little-boy the-ground touched both hands
junco, quo pavimenti pulvis cavebatur, implevit, stricte
with-rushes with-which of-the-floor the-dust was-kept-off he-filled tightly
quod corripuerat compugnans. Ostensum visum mulierculis,
what he-had-seized clenching shown(-was) the-sight to-the-little-women
læto plausu gannientibus; obstetrix quoque fausto omine
with-glad applause chattering the-midwife also with-favorable omen
acclamat puerum regem futurum.
cries the-boy king about-to-be
Paratis ergo omnibus quæ Jerosolimitani itineris viaticum
with-prepared therefore all-things which of-the-Jerusalem journey the-provision
informarent, apud Fiscannum concilium proceribus indicitur.
might-form at Fécamp a-council for-the-nobles is-proclaimed
Ibi, jubente patre, in nomen et fidem Willelmi ab omnibus
there with-ordering the-father into the-name and fealty of-William by all
juratur: Gislebertus comes tutor pupilli constituitur;
it-is-sworn Gilbert count the-guardian of-the-ward is-appointed
tutela tutoris regi Francorum Henrico assignatur.
the-guardianship of-the-guardian to-the-king of-the-Franks Henry is-assigned
Roberto cœptam viam expediente, Normanni omnes communi
with-Robert the-begun journey pursuing the-Normans all with-common
umbone patriam per sua quisque munimenta tutari,
shield the-fatherland through his-own each fortifications to-protect
parvum herum ex amore venerari. Stetit hæc fides usque
the-little lord from love to-revere stood this faith all-the-way
ad famam obitus ejus; qua ubique gentium disseminata,
to the-report of-the-death his which everywhere of-peoples spread
cum fato mutatus amor: mox quisque sua munire oppida,
with fate changed love soon each his-own to-fortify towns
turres agere, frumenta comportare, causas aucupari quibus
towers to-build grain to-carry-in pretexts to-hunt by-which

quamprimum a puero discidium meditarentur. Inter hæc
as-soon-as-possible from the-boy a-separation they-might-plan amid these-things
ille, haud equidem reor sine Dei auxilio qui eum tanto
he not indeed I-think without of-God the-help who him over-so-great
principaturum præviderat imperio, tutus adolescebat; cum
about-to-rule had-foreseen an-empire safe grew-up when
solus pene Gislebertus æquum et bonum armis defensitaret
alone almost Gilbert the-equitable and good with-arms defended
suis. Ceteri studiis partium agebantur. Jam vero interfecto
his-own the-others by-the-zeal of-parties were-driven now but with-killed
Gisleberto a Radulfo patruele suo, ubique cædes, ubique ignes
Gilbert by Ralph cousin his everywhere slaughters everywhere fires
versabantur. Clarissima olim patria, intestinis dissensionibus
were-busy most-famous once the-fatherland by-internal dissensions
exulcerata, pro latronum libito dividebatur, ut merito
ulcerated at of-robbers the-pleasure was-divided so-that rightly
posset querimoniam facere, "Væ terræ cujus rex puer est!"
it-could complaint to-make woe to-the-land whose king a-boy is
At ille, ubi primum per ætatem potuit, militiæ insignia a
but he when first through age he-could of-knighthood the-insignia from
rege Francorum accipiens, provinciales in spem quietis erexit.
the-king of-the-Franks receiving the-provincials into hope of-quiet raised
Sator discordiarum erat Guido quidam, Burgundus a patre,
the-sower of-discords was Guy a-certain Burgundian on the-father
nepos Ricardi secundi e filia; infantiam cum Willelmo
grandson of-Richard the-Second from a-daughter his-infancy with William
cucurrerat, tunc quoque januas adolescentiæ pariter urgebant.
had-run then also the-doors of-adolescence together were-pressing
Convictus familiaritatem, familiaritas amicitias paraverat.
living-together familiarity familiarity friendships had-prepared
Huc accedebat quod ei Brionium et Vernonium castella
to-this was-added that to-him Brionne and Vernon castles

dederat, nihil pro consanguinitate negandum putans. Horum
he-had-given nothing for kinship to-be-denied thinking of-these
Burgundus immemor, affictis criminibus quibus id merito
the-Burgundian unmindful with-invented crimes by-which this rightly
facere videretur, abalienavit se a comite. Longum est et
to-do he-might-seem estranged himself from the-count long it-is and
non necessarium si persequar quæ hinc inde acta,
not necessary if I-pursue what-things on-this-side and-that done
quæ castella capta: repererat enim perfidia socios Nigellum
what castles taken had-found for by-perfidy allies Nigel
vicecomitem Constantini, Rannulfum vicecomitem Bajocensem,
viscount of-the-Cotentin Ranulf viscount of-Bayeux
Haimonem dentatum, avum Roberti qui nostro tempore
Hamo the-Toothed grandfather of-Robert who in-our time
in Anglia multarum possessionum incubator extitit. Cum his
in England of-many possessions the-holder was with these
per totam Normanniam grassabatur prædo improbissimus,
through the-whole Normandy raged the-robber most-shameless
inani spe ad comitatum illectus. Necessitas regem tutorem
by-empty hope to the-county enticed necessity the-king the-guardian
excivit ut desperatis partibus pupilli succurreret. Itaque
summoned that to-the-desperate side of-the-ward he-should-help and-so
paternæ benivolentiæ recordatus, quod eum favore suo in
of-the-paternal kindness mindful that him by-favor his into
regnum sublimaverat, apud Walesdunes in defectores irruit:
the-kingdom had-raised at Val-ès-Dunes on the-rebels he-fell
cæsa illic multa eorum milia; multi fluminis Olnæ rapacitate
slain there many of-them thousands many of-the-river Orne by-the-rapacity
intercepti, quod, in arcto locati, equos ad transvadandos
cut-off because in narrows placed their-horses for fording
vortices instimularent. Gwido, vix elapsus, Brionio se
the-whirlpools spurred-on Guy scarcely escaped to-Brionne himself

recepit: inde per Willelmum expulsus, non ferens probri
betook thence by William driven-out not bearing of-disgrace
famam, ultro Burgundiam, nativum scilicet solum,
the-report of-his-own-accord to-Burgundy native namely soil
contendit. Nec ibi inquietus animus quietem invenit: nam a
went nor there the-restless mind rest found for by
comite illius provinciæ, fratre suo Willelmo, quem insidiis
the-count of-that province brother his William whom with-ambushes
impetiverat, fugatus, incompertum quem finem habuit.
he-had-attacked put-to-flight unknown-it-is what end he-had
Nigellus et Radulfus in fidem recepti: Haimo in acie cæsus,
Nigel and Ralph into fealty received Hamo in battle slain
cujus insignis violentia laudatur quod ipsum regem equo
whose remarkable violence is-praised because the-very king from-his-horse
dejecerit; quare a concurrentibus stipatoribus interemptus, pro
he-threw wherefore by the-converging bodyguards killed for
fortitudinis miraculo regis jussu tumulatus est egregie.
of-his-bravery the-wonder of-the-king by-the-order buried was splendidly
Tulit hujus gratiæ stipendium rex Henricus, a Normanno
bore of-this favor the-reward king Henry from the-Norman
domino contra Gaufredum Martellum apud Molendinum
lord against Geoffrey Martel at Mouli-
Herle, quod castrum in Andegavensi regione est, summa
-herne which castle in the-Angevin region is by-the-utmost
vi adjutus; nam jam in virile robur excreverat, majoribus
force helped for already into manly strength he-had-grown to-those-greater
natu et pluribus solus metuendus, solus caput discriminibus
by-birth and to-more alone to-be-feared alone his-head into-dangers
inferre, solus vel cum paucis in confertissimos diversæ partis
to-bring alone or with few into the-thickest of-the-opposite side
insilire: quapropter ab illa expeditione laudatæ fortitudinis
to-leap wherefore from that expedition of-praised bravery

specimen, et amicitiarum apud regem culmen, retulit;
a-proof and of-friendships with the-king the-summit he-brought-back
adeo ut, quasi paterno consilio sæpe admoneret ne ad
so-much that as-if with-fatherly counsel often he-would-warn-him lest to
pericula promptus vitam suam despiceret, quæ esset Francis
dangers ready life his-own he-should-despise which would-be to-the-Franks
decori, Normanniæ tutamento, utrisque exemplo.
for-an-ornament to-Normandy for-a-protection to-both for-an-example
Eo tempore erat comes Andegavorum Gaufredus cognomento
at-that time was count of-the-Angevins Geoffrey by-surname
Martellus, quod ipse sibi usurpaverat quia videbatur
Martel which he-himself for-himself had-usurped because he-seemed
sibi felicitate quadam omnes obsistentes contundere.
to-himself by-good-fortune a-certain all opponents to-crush
Denique dominum suum, comitem Pictavensem, aperto
finally lord his-own the-count of-Poitou in-open
marte cepit, ferreisque vinculis innodatum ad ignobiles
war he-took and-with-iron chains bound to shameful
pacis conditiones adduxit; Burdegala et confinibus urbibus
of-peace terms he-brought-him Bordeaux and the-neighboring cities
cederet, de ceteris annuum vectigal pensitaret: sed ille, ut
he-should-cede for the-rest an-annual tribute he-should-pay but he as
creditur, pro ferri injuria et ciborum inedia, beneficio
is-believed for of-the-iron the-injury and of-food the-want by-the-benefit
opportunæ mortis post triduum perpetuæ ignominiæ exemptus
of-opportune death after three-days from-perpetual ignominy freed
est. Tum Martellus, ne quid deesset impudentiæ, novercam
was then Martel lest anything be-lacking to-impudence the-stepmother
defuncti matrimonio sibi copulavit, fratres in tutelam
of-the-dead-man in-marriage to-himself joined the-brothers into wardship
recipiens quoad possent principatui regendo sufficere. Mox
receiving until they-could for-the-principality to-be-ruled to-suffice soon

Teodbaldi Blesiensis comitis ingressus limites, urbem Turonicam
of-Theobald of-Blois the-count entering the-borders the-city of-Tours
obsedit: ipsum, civibus suis auxilium ferre volentem,
he-besieged him to-the-citizens his-own help to-bring wishing
consortio ærumnæ implicuit; siquidem captus Teodbaldus,
in-the-fellowship of-hardship he-entangled since captured Theobald
et in ergastulo reclusus, urbem sibi omnibusque suis
and in a-prison shut-up the-city for-himself and-for-all his
heredibus in posterum abjuravit. Pudendam miseriam hominis
heirs for the-future abjured the-shameful wretchedness of-the-man
quis dixerit? ut, pro ambitione quantulæcunque vitæ, tantæ
who would-tell that for the-ambition of-however-little life of-so-great
urbis dominio successores suos perpetuo fraudaret; licet
of-a-city of-the-lordship successors his forever should-defraud although
severiores plerumque aliorum arbitri simus, quam ipsi
severer usually of-others judges we-are than ourselves
nobis consulere noverimus si forte in talibus deprehensi
for-ourselves to-take-thought we-know if perhaps in such-things caught
fuerimus. Ita Martellus, tantarum virium augmento turgidus,
we-should-be so Martel of-so-great strength by-the-increase swollen
etiam Normannum comitem Alentii castelli possessione
even the-Norman count of-the-Alençon castle with-the-possession
vellicavit, pronis in perfidiam habitatoribus. Qua is
plucked with-inclined to perfidy inhabitants by-which he
irritatus injuria, par pari retulit; et Danfruntum, quod erat
provoked injury like for-like returned and Domfront which was
tunc comitis Andegavorum, obsidione coronavit. Nec mora,
then of-the-count of-the-Angevins with-siege crowned nor delay
obsessorum querelis commonitus Gaufredus, non segnis
of-the-besieged by-the-complaints admonished Geoffrey not sluggish
advolat innumero stipatus milite. Nuntio advenientis accepto,
flies-up with-countless attended soldiery with-the-news of-his-coming received

Willelmus Rogerium de Monte Gomerico, et Willelmum filium
William Roger of Mont- -gomery and William son
Osberni, exploratum mittit: illi, pro alacritate juventæ, brevi
of-Osbern to-reconnoiter sends they for the-eagerness of-youth in-short-time
multa miliaria progressi, equitantemque Martellum conspicati,
many miles having-advanced and-riding Martel having-seen
certiorem de domini sui audacia faciunt. Ille contra fremere,
more-certain about of-the-lord their the-daring they-make he in-reply to-roar
immania minari, postridie se illuc venturum, ostensurum
enormous-things to-threaten next-day himself thither to-come to-show
mundo quam præstet in armis Andegavensis Normanno;
to-the-world how-much excels in arms the-Angevin than-the-Norman
simul, eximia arrogantia, colorem equi sui, et
at-the-same-time with-extraordinary arrogance the-color of-horse his and
armorum insignia, quæ habiturus sit, insinuat. At exploratores,
of-the-arms the-devices which about-to-have he-is he-intimates but the-scouts
non minori fastu eadem de Willelmo denunciantes,
not with-lesser pride the-same-things about William announcing
regrediuntur, et suos in certamen accendunt. Hæc
return and their-own-men into the-contest they-kindle these-things
ideo seriatim retuli, ut Martelli tumor legentibus
for-this-reason in-order I-have-told that of-Martel the-swelling to-the-readers
elucesceret. Ceterum, nihil tunc de solita magnanimitate
might-shine-forth however nothing then of the-usual magnanimity
ausus, antequam in manus veniretur terga ostendit. Quo
daring before into hands it-came his-back he-showed with-which
audito, Alentini se dedidere, pacti membrorum
heard the-people-of-Alençon themselves surrendered having-bargained of-limbs
salutem: post etiam Danfrontini feliciora signa secuti.
safety afterward also the-people-of-Domfront the-happier standards followed

William's uncle, the count of Arques, a faithless bastard, won over the garrison of Arques and declared war; the duke walled him in with a counter-castle and turned to other wars, leaving men to delay King Henry of France, who was coming to the count's relief and was caught in their ambush; and the count, starved, surrendered and was spared. Henry then invaded Normandy with two armies; while William shadowed the king, his captains routed the king's brother Odo at Mortemer, and the king withdrew and made peace. When Henry invaded again, William cut down the part of his army still at the Dives. The deaths of Henry and soon of Martel ended the quarrels, and Baldwin of Flanders, William's father-in-law, became guardian of the young Philip. William of Malmesbury then runs through the counts of Anjou: Fulk the Elder, who humbled his rebel son Geoffrey Martel and did penance naked at the Holy Sepulcher; Martel's simple nephew Geoffrey, deposed and imprisoned by his brother Fulk Réchin, whose wife left him for King Philip; and Réchin's sons, Geoffrey, who earned the inherited name Martel and gave the land a peace never seen, and was killed in his own men's ambush, and Fulk, who still lives.

Posterioribus annis rebellavit Willelmus comes de Archis,
in-later years rebelled William count of Arques
patruus ejus sed nothus, a primis auspiciis ducatus infidus
uncle his but a-bastard from the-first auspices of-the-duchy faithless
et versipellis; nam et in obsidione Danfronti clam profugerat,
and shifty for also in the-siege of-Domfront secretly had-fled
et multis sæpe animi sui latebras aperuerat. Quapropter
and to-many often of-mind his the-hiding-places had-opened wherefore
Willelmus quibusdam, quos fideles falso arbitrabatur, firmitatem
William to-certain-men whom faithful falsely he-judged the-defense
castelli commiserat; verum ille astu quo callebat,
of-the-castle had-entrusted but he by-the-cunning in-which he-was-skilled
multa largiendo, plura pollicendo, in suas partes eosdem
many-things by-giving more by-promising to his side the-same
traduxit. Munitione igitur potitus, bellum domino
won-over of-the-fortification therefore having-gained-possession war on-lord

suo denuntiavit. Ille solito more alacerrime Archas obsedit,
his declared he in-his-usual way most-briskly Arques besieged
dissuadentibus amicis; palam professus, nihil latrones ausuros
with-dissuading friends openly declaring nothing the-robbers would-dare
si in conspectum ejus venissent. Nec promissio fide caruit;
if into the-sight his they-came nor the-promise of-faith lacked
namque plusquam trecenti milites, qui pabulatum et
for more-than three-hundred soldiers who for-foraging and
populatum processerant, eo pene solo conspecto, intra
plundering had-gone-out with-him almost alone seen within
munitiones refugere. Dux sine sanguine rem peragere
the-fortifications fled-back the-duke without blood the-business to-finish
volens, obfirmato contra Archas castello, ad alia quæ magis
wishing with-strongly-built against Arques a-castle to other which more
urgebant bella conversus est: simul quia sciebat regem
were-pressing wars turned has at-the-same-time because he-knew the-king
Francorum, jam pridem, nescio qua simultate, sibi
of-the-Franks already long-before I-know-not from-what grudge to-himself
infensum, ad opem obsesso ferendam adventare; namque
hostile for help to-the-besieged to-be-brought to-be-approaching for
prædicandi moderaminis consilio, quamvis justiorem causam
of-praiseworthy moderation by-the-counsel although juster cause
habere videretur, cum eo decernere ferro cavebat, cui
to-have he-seemed with him to-decide by-the-sword he-was-wary to-whom
et pro sacramento et pro suffragio obnoxius erat. Reliquit
both for oath and for support bound he-was he-left
tamen primates aliquos qui impetum regium tardarent;
yet chief-men some who the-onset royal should-delay
quorum astutia insidiis exceptus, Isembardum Pontivi
whose by-the-cunning by-ambushes caught Isembard of-Ponthieu
comitem coram se obtruncari, Hugonem Pardulfum capi,
count before himself to-be-cut-down Hugh Bardulf to-be-taken

merito ingemuit. Nec multo post, eo dulcem Franciam,
deservedly he-groaned nor much after with-him sweet France
quia res male cesserat, repetente, comes Arcensis, fame
because the-thing badly had-turned-out seeking-again the-count of-Arques by-hunger
tabidus et vix ossibus hærens, deditioni consensit, ad
wasted and scarcely to-his-bones clinging to-surrender consented for
exemplum clementiæ, ad indicium industriæ, vitæ et membris
an-example of-clemency for a-sign of-diligence for-life and for-limbs
reservatus. Hujusce obsidionis intervallo populus castri quod
kept of-this of-siege in-the-interval the-people of-the-castle which
Molendinis dicitur, exolescens, ad partes regis incentore
Moulins is-called falling-away to the-side of-the-king with-instigator
quodam Galterio transiit. Imponitur ibi non segnis militum
a-certain Walter went-over is-placed there a-not sluggish of-soldiers
manus, præfecto Guidone fratre comitis Pictavensis. Is
band with-put-in-charge Guy brother of-the-count of-Poitou he
aliquantis diebus sedulo militiæ munia executus est; verum
for-some days zealously of-soldiering the-duties carried-out has but
crebrescente fama Arcensis victoriæ, Franciam elapsus, non
with-spreading the-report of-the-Arques victory to-France slipped-away not
leve incrementum accessit ducalis gloriæ.
slight increase came to-ducal glory
Nec rex Henricus otio indulsit, quin grunniret exercitus suos
nor king Henry to-leisure gave-way but-that he-grumbled armies his
ludibrio fuisse Willelmo: coactis itaque omnibus viribus,
for-a-mockery to-have-been to-William with-gathered and-so all strength
et copiis bipartitis, totam inundavit Normanniam: ipse de
and with-forces divided-in-two the-whole he-flooded Normandy he from
parte Galliæ Celticæ, quæ inter Garumnam et Sequanam
the-part of-Gaul Celtic which between the-Garonne and the-Seine
fluvios jacet, quicquid militum erat suo ductu trahens;
rivers lies whatever of-soldiers there-was by-his leading drawing

Odonem fratrem populo Galliæ Belgicæ, quæ est inter Renum
Odo his-brother to-the-people of-Gaul Belgic which is between the-Rhine
et Sequanam, præficiens. Eodem modo Willelmus suos,
and the-Seine setting-over in-the-same way William his-own-men
qua poterat animositate, divisit, juxta regis castra sensim
with-what he-could spirit divided beside of-the-king the-camp gradually
obambulans, quæ jam in Ebroicensi pago metabatur, ut nec
walking-about which now in the-Évreux district was-pitched so-that neither
cominus pugnandi copiam faceret, nec provinciam coram
at-close-quarters of-fighting an-opportunity he-gave nor the-province before
se vastari sineret. Duces ejus, Robertus comes Aucensis,
him to-be-wasted allowed the-leaders his Robert count of-Eu
Hugo Gornacensis, Hugo Montis fortis, Willelmus Crispinus, ad
Hugh of-Gournay Hugh of-Mont- -fort William Crispin at
castellum quod Mortuum mare vocatur, infestis signis contra
the-castle which Morte- -mer is-called with-hostile standards against
Odonem constitere. Nec ille pro numero militum, quo
Odo took-their-stand nor he for the-number of-soldiers with-which
tumebat, moram pugnæ fecit, sed parumper resistere ausus,
he-swelled delay of-battle made but for-a-little to-resist having-dared
mox impetum Normannorum non ferens, terga nudavit,
soon the-onset of-the-Normans not bearing his-back bared
omen fugæ primus auspicatus: ibi dum Guido Pontivi
the-omen of-flight first having-taken there while Guy of-Ponthieu
comes studiosius ultioni fratris intendit, captus, fatalem
count more-eagerly on-the-vengeance of-his-brother intent captured the-fated
familiæ suæ manum exhorruit; præterea plures alii, præcellentes
of-family his hand shuddered-at besides many others outstanding
opibus, turgentes majorum natalibus. Hunc successum, ex
in-wealth swelling of-ancestors by-births this success from
advenientibus cognitum, Willelmus circum regis tentoria
arrivals learned William around of-the-king the-tents

nocte intempesta præconari curavit; quo audito, post
at-night dead to-be-proclaimed took-care with-which heard after
aliquot dies quos in Normannia egit, refugit in Franciam:
some days which in Normandy he-spent he-fled-back into France
nec multo post tempore, discurrentibus utrobique nuntiis,
nor much after in-time with-running on-both-sides messengers
pacifice conventum ut regii captivi absolverentur, comes
peacefully it-was-agreed that the-royal captives should-be-released the-count
erepta vel eripienda Martello jure vendicaret legitimo.
the-things-taken or to-be-taken from-Martel by-right should-claim lawful
Longum est et non necessarium referre quantæ inter
long it-is and not necessary to-relate how-great between
eos contentiones versatæ sint, quomodo Willelmus semper
them contentions carried-on were how William always
superiorem manum retulerit. Quid quod inæstimabili
the-upper hand brought-back what that with-inestimable
præsumptione fortitudinis, nunquam subito, nec nisi
confidence of-bravery never suddenly nor except
prænuntiata die, illum aggredi dignatus, nostri temporis
on-an-announced day him to-attack deigning of-our time
morem animi magnitudine contempserit? Illud quoque
the-custom by-greatness of-mind he-despised that also
prætereo, quod, iterum ruptis amicitiis, rex Henricus
I-pass-over that again with-broken friendships king Henry
Normanniam ingressus, per pagum Oximensem usque ad
Normandy having-entered through the-district of-Hiémois all-the-way to
fluvium Divæ pervenerit, jactitans solum oceanum progressioni
the-river Dives came boasting only the-ocean to-advance
suæ esse obstaculum: verum Willelmus, qui se videret
his to-be an-obstacle but William who himself saw
propter fidei dissimulationem immoderate premi, tunc
on-account-of of-faith the-dissembling immoderately to-be-pressed then

tandem consciæ virtutis arma concutiens, regias copias, quæ
at-last of-conscious valor his-arms shaking the-royal forces which
circa flumen erant, nam pars paulo ante, ejus adventu audito,
around the-river were for part a-little before with-his coming heard
transvadaverat, tanta internicie cecidit ut nihil postea
had-forded with-so-great slaughter he-cut-down that nothing afterward
Francia plus metueret quam Normannorum ferociam irritare.
France more feared than of-the-Normans the-ferocity to-provoke
Terminum discordiarum fecit properata mors Henrici, nec
an-end of-the-discords made the-hastened death of-Henry nor
multo post Martelli. Rex moriens Baldewino comiti Flandriæ
much after of-Martel the-king dying to-Baldwin count of-Flanders
tutelam admodum parvuli Philippi filii delegavit. Is erat
the-guardianship of-the-very little Philip his-son delegated he was
fide et sapientia æque mirandus, præviridantibus membris
in-faith and in-wisdom equally to-be-wondered-at with-very-green limbs
incanus, præterea regiæ sororis connubio sublimis: filia
white-haired besides of-the-royal sister by-the-marriage exalted the-daughter
ejus Matildis Willelmo jamdudum nupserat; fœmina nostro
his Matilda to-William long-since had-married a-woman in-our
tempore singulare prudentiæ speculum, pudoris culmen. Hinc
time a-singular of-prudence mirror of-modesty the-summit hence
factum est, ut pupilli et generi mediator tumores
done it-was that of-the-ward and of-the-son-in-law the-mediator the-swellings
ducum et provincialium salubri proposito compesceret.
of-the-dukes and of-the-provincials with-a-wholesome purpose he-checked
Sed, quia totiens Martelli se occasio ingessit, genealogiam
but because so-often of-Martel itself the-occasion has-pressed-in the-genealogy
comitum Andegavensium, quantum relatoris nostri memoria
of-the-counts of-Anjou as-far-as of-informant our the-memory
attigit, transcurram, præfata diverticuli venia. Fulco antiquior,
has-reached I-shall-run-through with-said for-the-digression pardon Fulk the-elder

pluribus annis, usque ad senium, illum moderatus comitatum,
for-many years all-the-way to old-age that ruling county
multa fecit industrie, multa egregie. Unum omnino est
many-things did diligently many-things excellently one-thing altogether is
quo eum notari audierim, quod Herbertum comitem
by-which him to-be-branded I-have-heard that Herbert the-count
Cenomannensen, Sanctonas sponsione urbis illectum, in
of-Le-Mans to-Saintes by-the-promise of-the-city enticed in
medio colloquio ab apparitoribus arctari, et quibus placuit
the-middle of-a-conference by attendants to-be-confined and on-which it-pleased
conditionibus irretiri fecit. Cetera sanctus et integer,
terms to-be-ensnared he-caused in-the-rest holy and upright
extremis fere annis filio sæpe dicto Gaufredo principatu
in-the-last almost years to-son often mentioned Geoffrey the-principality
vivens cessit. Ille in provinciales immane quam dure, in
while-living he-yielded he toward the-provincials monstrous how harshly toward
ipsum collatorem honoris quam superbe actitans, jussusque
the-very conferrer of-the-honor how proudly behaving and-ordered
magistratum et fasces deponere, adeo sibi arrogavit ut contra
the-magistracy and the-fasces to-lay-down so-far to-himself arrogated that against
patrem arma sumeret. Tunc senis frigidus jam et effœtus
his-father arms he-took-up then of-the-old-man the-cold now and worn-out
sanguis ira incaluit, filiumque juveniliter insultantem paucis
blood with-anger grew-hot and-the-son youthfully insulting in-a-few
diebus maturiori consilio adeo infregit, ut, per aliquot miliaria
days by-riper counsel so-far broke that for some miles
sellam dorso vehens, pronum se cum sarcina ante pedes
a-saddle on-his-back carrying prostrate himself with the-load before the-feet
patris exponeret. Ille, cui vetus animositas adhuc palpitaret,
of-his-father he-laid he in-whom old animosity still throbbed
assurgens, et pede jacentem pulsans, “Victus es, tandem
rising and with-his-foot the-lying-one striking conquered you-are at-last

victus," ter quaterque ingeminat: superfuit victo
conquered three-times and-four-times he-repeats remained to-the-conquered
spiritus, et quidem egregius, ut responderet, "Tibi pater
spirit and indeed outstanding so-that he-answered by-you father
soli, quia pater es, victus; ceteris omnibus invictus sum."
alone because father you-are conquered by-the-others all unconquered I-am
Hoc relatu tumentis animus emollitus, patriaque pietate
by-this report of-the-swelling-man the-mind softened and-with-paternal affection
verecundiam prolis consolatus, principatui restituit,
the-shame of-his-offspring consoling to-the-principality he-restored-him
monitum ut maturius se ageret, provincialium
warned that more-maturely himself he-should-conduct of-the-provincials
fortunas et pacem suum esse decus ad extraneos, commodum
the-fortunes and peace his to-be glory to strangers an-advantage
ad domesticos. Eodem anno veteranus, et secularibus
to his-household in-the-same year a-veteran and from-secular
stipendiis emeritus, jam de animæ viatico cogitans,
service discharged now about of-the-soul the-provision thinking
Jerosolimam adiit: ibi a duobus servis, sacramento adactis ut
to-Jerusalem he-went there by two servants by-oath bound that
quod juberet facerent, per publicum ad sepulcrum Domini
what he-ordered they-should-do through the-public-way to the-tomb of-the-Lord
nudus, inspectantibus Turchis, tractus est; alter restem lineam
naked with-looking-on Turks dragged he-was one a-rope linen
collo ejus intorserat, alter flagris terga expoliati
on-the-neck his had-twisted the-other with-scourges the-back of-the-stripped-one
urgebat. Inter hæc ille clamabat, "Accipe, Domine, miserum
urged amid these-things he cried receive Lord the-wretched
Fulconem, perjurum tuum, fugitivum tuum; confessam dignare
Fulk perjured your fugitive your the-confessing deign
animam, Domine Jesu Christe." Nec tamen quod desiderabat
soul Lord Jesus Christ nor yet what he-desired

tunc impetravit; sed, domum placide regressus, post aliquot
then he-obtained but home peacefully having-returned after some
annos obiit. Filii ejus Gaufredi præruptam audaciam
years died of-the-son his Geoffrey the-headlong daring
superior narratio patefecit. Is moriens Gaufredo, sororis
the-above narrative has-revealed he dying to-Geoffrey of-sister
filio, hereditatem suam contradidit, sed industriam seculi
son inheritance his handed-over but the-industry of-the-world
transfundere non potuit: nam ille, simplicium morum juvenis,
to-transfuse not he-could for he of-simple manners a-youth
magis in ecclesiis orare quam arma tractare consuetus, homines
more in churches to-pray than arms to-handle accustomed the-men
regionis illius, qui quiete victitare nescirent, in contemptum
of-that region who in-quiet to-live knew-not into contempt
sui excitavit; quare, tota terra prædonibus exposita, Fulco
of-himself roused wherefore the-whole land to-robbers exposed Fulk
frater illius ultro ducatum corripuit. Fulco, Rechin
brother his of-his-own-accord the-dukedom seized Fulk Réchin
dictus, quod, germani simplicitati crebro infrendens, ad
called because of-his-brother at-the-simplicity often gnashing at
ultimum honore spoliatum perpetua custodia coercuerit, habuit
the-last of-honor despoiled in-perpetual custody he-confined he-had
uxorem quæ, pruritu altioris nominis allecta, illo relicto,
a-wife who by-the-itch of-a-loftier name enticed with-him left
Philippo regi Francorum nupsit; quam is, immemor dicti,
to-Philip king of-the-Franks married whom he unmindful of-the-saying

"Non bene conveniunt, nec in una sede morantur,
Not well agree nor in one seat stay
Majestas et amor,"
Majesty and love

tanta venere ardebat, ut, cum imperare aliis omnibus
with-so-great love burned that while to-command others all
cuperet, ab ea sibi imperari æquanimiter ferret. Denique
he-desired by her himself to-be-commanded calmly he-bore finally
omnium digitis quasi fatuus notari, ab omni orbe
by-the-fingers of-all as-if a-fool to-be-pointed-out by the-whole world
Christiano excommunicari, propter ejus libidinem, aliquantis
Christian to-be-excommunicated on-account-of her lust for-some
annis sustinuit. Filii Fulconis fuerunt Gesfridus, et Fulco:
years he-endured the-sons of-Fulk were Geoffrey and Fulk
Gesfridus, cognomen Martelli hereditarium sortitus, suis
Geoffrey the-surname of-Martel hereditary having-obtained by-his-own
sudoribus ampliavit; tanta pace et quiete per terras
sweat enlarged with-so-great peace and quiet through lands
illas parta, quantam nemo viderit, nemo visurus sit;
those won as-great-as no-one has-seen no-one about-to-see is
quapropter suorum insidiis necatus, egregiæ probitatis
wherefore of-his-own-men by-the-ambushes killed of-outstanding probity
decus luit. Fulco, in regimine succedens, adhuc in rebus
the-glory he-paid-for Fulk in the-rule succeeding still in things
humanis versatur; de quo forsitan tempore regis Henrici
human is-engaged about whom perhaps in-the-time of-king Henry
dicturus, nunc de Willelmo explanabo quod restat.
about-to-speak now about William I-shall-explain what remains

With the civil wars settled, William set out to recover the old dependencies of Normandy. Herbert of Maine had commended himself to William and been betrothed to his daughter, and named the duke his heir; the citizens of Le Mans, who leaned to Walter of Mantes, accepted William at last after heavy losses. Harold, blown to Normandy against his will, went with him into Brittany, which William claimed as the land Charles gave Rollo with Gisla, and soon had Alan surrendering of his own accord. A miracle at Nantes follows.

Ille, ubi civile discidium multo exercitio composuit, rem
he when the-civil discord with-much exercise had-settled a-thing
majoris gloriæ animo sequens, terras olim Normanniæ
of-greater glory with-mind pursuing the-lands once of-Normandy
appendices, quæ longo usu insoleverant, restituere intendit;
appendages which by-long use had-grown-unaccustomed to-restore he-intended
Cenomannicum dico comitatum et Brittanniam. Quorum
of-Maine I-mean the-county and Brittany of-which
Cenomannis, dudum a Martello succensa, et domino suo
Le-Mans long-before by Martel burned and of-lord its
Hugone privata, tunc nuper aliquantulum sub Herberto
Hugh deprived then lately a-little under Herbert
Hugonis filio respiraverat: qui, ut tutior contra Andegavensem
of-Hugh son had-breathed-again who that safer against the-Angevin
esset, Willelmo se manibus dederat, in ejus fidelitatem
he-might-be to-William himself into-the-hands had-given into his fealty
sacramento juratus; præterea filiam ipsius petierat et
by-oath sworn besides the-daughter his he-had-sought and
desponderat, quæ priusquam nubilibus annis matura conjugio
had-betrothed who before in-marriageable years ripe for-marriage
fieret, ille morbo decessit, heredem sibi Willelmum
she-became he of-illness died heir to-himself William

pronuntians, adjuratis civibus ne alium susciperent: habituri,
proclaiming with-adjured citizens lest another they-should-accept about-to-have
si vellent, lenem et probum dominum; si nollent, recti
if they-wished a-mild and upright lord if they-did-not-wish of-the-right
sui exactorem immodicum. Quo defuncto, Cenomannenses
his an-exactor immoderate with-whom having-died the-people-of-Le-Mans
magis ad Gualterium Medantinum declinantes, cui soror
more to Walter of-Mantes inclining to-whom the-sister
Hugonis nupserat, sero tandem ut Willelmum susciperent
of-Hugh had-married late at-last that William they-should-accept
resipuere, gravibus sæpe dampnis admoniti. Illud fuit
came-to-their-senses by-heavy often losses admonished that was
tempus quo Haroldus invitus Normanniam importuna sibi
the-time in-which Harold unwilling to-Normandy by-an-untimely to-him
aura evectus est: quem, sicut supra dictum est, Willelmus in
breeze carried was whom as above said it-was William into
Britannicum expeditionem duxit, volens ejus manum explorare;
the-Breton expedition led wishing his hand to-test
simul et strictiori consilio apparatum ostentans suum,
at-the-same-time also with-closer counsel equipment showing his-own
conspicaturo quantum præstaret Anglicis bipennibus ensis
to-one-about-to-see how-much excelled the-English axes the-sword
Normannicus. Alanus tunc ibi comes, viridis juventa et
Norman Alan then there count green in-youth and
præcellens robore, Eudonem patruum vinxerat, multa
excelling in-strength Eudo his-uncle had-bound many-things
egregie fecerat: Willelmum non solum non timebat, sed et
outstandingly had-done William not only not he-feared but also
irritabat: at ille Britanniam ut hereditarium solum calumpnians,
provoked but he Brittany as hereditary soil claiming
quod eam Carolus Rolloni cum filia Gisla dederat, brevi
because it Charles to-Rollo with his-daughter Gisla had-given in-short-time

effecit ut, ultro Alanus adveniens, suppliciter se
brought-it-about that of-his-own-accord Alan coming suppliantly himself
suaque dederet. Sed, quia de Brittannia parum alias
and-his should-surrender but because about Brittany little elsewhere
dicturus sum, hic quoddam miraculum, quod illis ferme
about-to-say I-am here a-certain miracle which in-those almost
diebus in Namnetis civitate contigit, paucis inseram.
days in the-Nantes city happened in-few-words I-shall-insert

De duobus clericis sociis

THE TWO CLERICS; HAROLD CROWNED AND THE INVASION

Two clerics of Nantes swore that whichever died first would come back to the other; the dead one returned to tell of his torments, and the survivor became a monk. On Edward's death Harold took the crown, holding his oath to William void, since the daughter betrothed to him was dead and the oath was sworn under compulsion. William won the pope's banner and his barons' support, sailed once Saint Valery's body brought the wind, fell as he landed at Hastings, which a soldier read as England seized, and kept the army from plunder.

Erant in urbe illa duo clerici, nondum patientibus annis,
there-were in city that two clerics not-yet allowing-it years
presbyteri; id officium magis precario quam bonæ vitæ
priests that office more by-entreaty than of-good life
merito ab episcopo loci exegerant: denique alterius
by-the-merit from the-bishop of-the-place had-exacted finally of-the-one
miserandus exitus superstitem instruxit quam fuerint antea
the-pitiable end the-survivor instructed how they-had-been before
in inferni lapsum ambo præcipites. Ceterum quod ad
toward of-hell the-fall both headlong for-the-rest what to
scientiam litterarum tendit ita edocti, ut aut parum aut
knowledge of-letters tends so taught that either little or

nihil ipsis deberent artibus; a reptantibus infantiæ
nothing to-the-very they-owed arts from the-crawling of-infancy
rudimentis adeo jocundis amicitiæ officiis æmuli, ut, juxta
beginnings so-much in-the-pleasant of-friendship duties rivals that according-to
Comici dictum, "Manibus pedibusque conando, periculum
of-the-Comic-poet saying with-hands and-feet by-striving the-risk
etiam, si necesse esset, capitis pro invicem facerent."
even if necessary it-were of-the-head for each-other they-would-make
Quare die quadam liberiorem animum a curis forinsecis
wherefore on-a-day certain a-freer mind from cares outward
nacti, in secreto conclavi hujusmodi sententias fudere:
having-got in a-secret chamber of-this-kind opinions they-poured-out
Pluribus se annis nunc litteris, nunc seculi lucris,
for-many themselves years now in-letters now of-the-world in-the-gains
mentes exercuisse, nec satiasse, magis ad distortum quam
their-minds to-have-exercised nor to-have-sated more to the-crooked than
ad rectum intentas: inter hæc, illum acerbum diem sensim
to the-straight bent amid these-things that bitter day gradually
appropinquare qui societatis suæ inextricabile in vita vinculum
to-approach which of-fellowship their the-inextricable in life bond
dirumperet; unde præveniendum mature, ut fides, quæ
would-break whence it-must-be-forestalled early that the-faith which
conglutinarat viventes, primo mortuum comitaretur ad manes.
had-glued the-living the-first dead-one should-accompany to the-shades
Paciscuntur ergo ut quisquis eorum ante obiret, superstiti,
they-agree therefore that whichever of-them first should-die to-the-survivor
vel dormienti vel vigilanti, appareret infra triginta proculdubio
either sleeping or waking should-appear within thirty without-doubt
dies: si fiat, edocturus quod, secundum Platonicos,
days if it-be-possible about-to-teach that according-to the-Platonists
mors spiritum non extinguat, sed ad principium sui Deum
death the-spirit not extinguishes but to the-source its God

tanquam e carcere emittat; sin minus, Epicureorum sectæ
as-if from prison sends if not of-the-Epicureans to-the-sect
concedendum, qui opinantur animam corpore solutam in
it-must-be-conceded who think the-soul from-the-body loosed into
aerem evanescere, in auras effluere. Ita data acceptaque
the-air to-vanish into the-breezes to-flow-away thus with-given and-received
fide, cotidianis colloquiis sacramentum frequentabant. Nec
faith in-daily talks the-oath they-repeated nor
multum in medio, et ecce, mors repentine imminens
much in between and behold death suddenly impending
indignantem halitum uni eorum violenter extraxit. Remansit
the-indignant breath from-one of-them violently drew-out remained
alter, et serio de socii sponsione cogitans, et jam
the-other and seriously about of-his-comrade the-pledge thinking and now
jamque affuturum præstolans cassa opinione triginta diebus
and-now about-to-come awaiting with-empty belief for-thirty days
ventos pavit; quibus elapsis, cum desperans aliis negotiis
the-winds fed with-which slipped-by when despairing to-other business
avocasset otium, astitit subito vigilanti, et quiddam
had-called-away his-leisure stood-by-him suddenly as-he-was-waking and some
operis molienti, vultu, qualis solet esse morientium anima
work toiling-at in-face such-as is-wont to-be of-the-dying with-the-soul
fugiente, exsanguis. Tum tacentem vivum prior mortuus
fleeing bloodless then the-silent living-one first the-dead
compellans, “Agnoscis me?” inquit: “Agnosco,” respondit; “et
addressing do-you-know me he-said I-know-you he-answered and
non tantum de insolita tua turbor præsentia, quantum de
not so-much at unusual your I-am-troubled presence as at
diuturna miror absentia.” At ille, ubi tarditatem adventus
long I-wonder absence but he when the-slowness of-his-coming
excusavit, tandem ait, “Tandem, expeditis morarum nexibus,
he-had-excused at-last said at-last with-loosed of-delays the-bonds

venio: sed adventus iste tibi, si voles, amice, erit
I-come but coming this to-you if you-will-wish friend will-be
commodus, mihi omnino infructuosus; quippe qui, pronuntiata
advantageous to-me altogether fruitless indeed who with-pronounced
et acclamata sententia, sempiternis sim deputatus suppliciis."
and acclaimed sentence to-eternal am assigned punishments
Cumque vivus, ad ereptionem mortui, omnia sua
and-when the-living-one for the-rescue of-the-dead-one all his-goods
monasteriis et egenis expensurum, seque dies et noctes
to-monasteries and to-the-needy about-to-spend and-himself days and nights
jejuniis et orationibus continuaturum, promitteret; "Fixum
in-fasts and prayers about-to-continue promised fixed
est," inquit, "quod dixi, quia sine pœnitentia sunt judicia
it-is he-said what I-said because without repentance are the-judgments
Dei, quibus in sulphuream voraginem inferni demersus sum:
of-God by-which into the-sulfurous abyss of-hell plunged I-am
ibi 'dum rotat astra polus, dum pulsat littora pontus,'
there while turns the-stars the-pole while beats the-shores the-sea
pro criminibus meis volvar; inflexibilis sententiæ manet
for crimes my I-shall-be-whirled of-the-inflexible sentence remains
rigor, æterna et innumera pœnarum genera comminiscens,
the-rigor eternal and countless of-punishments kinds devising
totus modo mundus valitura remedia exquirat. Et ut
the-whole now world about-to-avail remedies may-seek and that
aliquam experiaris ex meis innumerabilibus pœnis,"
some you-may-experience of my countless punishments
protendit manum sanioso ulcere stillantem, et "en,"
he-stretches-out his-hand with-a-festering ulcer dripping and lo
ait, "unam ex minimis, videturne tibi levis?" Cum levem
he-said one of the-least does-it-seem to-you light when light
sibi videri referret, ille, "curvatis in volam digitis, tres
to-him to-seem he-reported he with-curved into the-palm fingers three

guttas defluentis tabi super eum jaculatus est; quarum duæ
drops of-the-flowing gore upon him hurled has of-which two
tempora, una frontem contingentes, cutem et carnem sicut
the-temples one the-forehead touching skin and flesh as
ignito cauterio penetrarunt, foramen nucis capax efficientes.
by-a-fiery cautery pierced a-hole of-a-nut able-to-hold making
Illo magnitudinem doloris clamore testante, "Hoc," inquit
with-him the-greatness of-the-pain with-a-cry attesting this he-said
mortuus, "erit in te quantum vixeris, et pœnarum mearum
the-dead-man will-be in you as-long-as you-live both of-punishments my
grave documentum, et, nisi neglexeris, salutis tuæ singulare
a-grave proof and unless you-neglect-it of-salvation your a-singular
monimentum. Quapropter dum licet, dum nutat ira,
reminder wherefore while it-is-allowed while wavers the-wrath
dum pendula Deus operitur clementia, muta habitum,
while hanging God waits with-clemency change your-habit
muta animum Redonis monachus effectus apud sanctum
change your-mind at-Rennes a-monk made at Saint
Melanium." Ad hæc verba vivo respondere nolente,
Melaine to these words with-the-living-one to-answer unwilling
alter eum oculi vigore perstringens, "Si dubitas," inquit,
the-other him of-his-eye with-the-vigor piercing if you-doubt he-said
"converti, miser, lege litteras istas;" et simul cum
to-be-converted wretch read letters these and at-the-same-time with
dicto manum expandit tetricis notis inscriptam, in quibus
the-saying his-hand he-spread-out with-grim marks written in which
Sathanas et omne inferorum satellitium gratias omni
Satan and all of-the-underworld the-retinue thanks to-all
ecclesiastico cœtui de Tartaro emittebant, quod cum ipsi
the-ecclesiastical assembly from Tartarus sent because while they
in nullo suis voluptatibus deessent, tum tantum numerum
in nothing to-their pleasures were-lacking then so-great a-number

subditarum animarum paterentur ad inferna descendere
of-subject souls they-allowed to hell to-descend
prædicationis incuria, quantum nunquam retroacta viderunt
of-preaching by-neglect as-great-as never past have-seen
secula. His dictis loquentis aspectus disparuit; et
ages with-these-things said of-the-speaker the-appearance vanished and
audiens, omnibus suis per ecclesias et egenos distributis,
the-hearer with-all his-goods among churches and the-needy distributed
sanctum Melanium adiit, omnes audientes et videntes de
Saint Melaine entered all hearing and seeing about
subita conversione admonens ut dicerent "Hæc est mutatio
the-sudden conversion admonishing that they-should-say this is the-change
dexteræ Excelsi."
of-the-right-hand of-the-Most-High
Ista pro utilitate legentium me inseruisse non piguit;
these-things for the-use of-the-readers me to-have-inserted not it-has-irked
nunc de Willelmo loquar. Nam quia breviter, nec
now about William I-shall-speak for because briefly and-not
ut puto inutiliter, res ejus, quas duntaxat comes in
as I-think uselessly the-deeds his which only as-count in
Normannia annis triginta actitavit, percurri; modo aliud
Normandy for-years thirty he-performed I-have-run-through now another
narrandi exordium ordo temporum flagitat, ut de regno
of-narrating beginning the-order of-times demands that about the-kingdom
ejus quantum nostra sciscitatio penetrare potuit, mendacium
his as-far-as our inquiry to-penetrate could falsehood
arguam, veritatem pronuntiem. Rex Edwardus fato functus
I-may-refute truth I-may-pronounce king Edward with-fate done
fuerat: Anglia dubio favore nutabat, cui se rectori
had England with-doubtful favor wavered to-whom itself as-ruler
committeret incerta, an Haroldo, an Willelmo, an Edgaro:
it-should-commit uncertain whether to-Harold or to-William or to-Edgar

nam et illum, pro genere proximum regno, proceribus
for also him for kinship nearest to-the-kingdom to-the-nobles
rex commendaverat, tacito scilicet mentis judicio, sed
the-king had-commended by-a-silent namely of-the-mind judgment but
prono in clementiam animo. Quare, ut prædixi, Angli
inclined to clemency in-mind wherefore as I-have-said-before the-English
diversis votis ferebantur, quamvis palam cuncti bona Haroldo
by-various wishes were-carried although openly all good-things to-Harold
imprecarentur: et ille quidem, diademate fastigatus, nihil
wished and he indeed with-the-diadem crowned nothing
de pactis inter se et Willelmum cogitabat; liberatum se
about the-pacts between himself and William thought freed himself
sacramento asserens, quod filia ejus quam desponderat
from-the-oath asserting because the-daughter his whom he-had-betrothed
citra nubiles annos obierat. Fertur enim vir ille, non
short-of marriageable years had-died it-is-said for man that not
paucis virtutibus præditus, parum adversus perfidiam sibi
with-few virtues endowed little against treachery for-himself
consuluisse dummodo posset quibuscunque præstigiis
to-have-taken-thought provided-that he-could by-whatever tricks
hominum ratiocinationes suspendere: præterea, qui putaret
of-men the-reasonings suspend besides who thought
minas Willelmi nunquam ad factum erupturas, quod
the-threats of-William never into deed about-to-break-out because
ille conterminorum ducum bellis implicaretur, totum
he of-the-neighboring of-dukes in-the-wars was-entangled his-whole
animum otio cum subjectis indulserat; nam profecto, nisi
mind to-leisure with his-subjects had-given-over for surely unless
quod Noricorum regem adventare didicit, nec militem
that of-the-Norwegians the-king was-approaching he-learned neither soldiers
convocare nec aciem dirigere dignatus fuisset. Alter
to-summon nor the-line to-draw-up deigning he-would-have-been the-other

interea illum per nuntios leniter convenire, de rupto
meanwhile him through envoys gently to-approach about the-broken
fœdere expostulare, precibus minas insuere; sciret se
treaty to-complain with-prayers threats to-sew-in he-should-know himself
ante annum emensum ferro debitum vindicaturum, illuc
before a-year passed by-the-sword the-due about-to-claim thither
iturum quo Haroldus tutiores se pedes habere putaret.
about-to-go where Harold safer himself feet to-have thought
Contra, ille, quæ dixi de puellæ nuptiis referens, de
against-this he what I-said about of-the-girl the-marriage reporting about
regno addidit, præsumptuosum fuisse quod, absque
the-kingdom added presumptuous it-had-been that without
generali senatus et populi conventu et edicto, alienam
general of-the-senate and of-the-people the-assembly and edict another's
illi hereditatem juraverit; proinde stultum sacramentum
to-him inheritance he-had-sworn therefore the-foolish oath
frangendum. Nam si jusjurandum vel votum quod puella in
must-be-broken for if an-oath or vow which a-girl in
domo patris, nesciis parentibus, de suo corpore
the-house of-her-father with-not-knowing parents about her-own body
volens fecerit, judicatur irritum; quanto magis quod ille,
willing has-made is-judged void how-much more what he
sub regis virga constitutus, nesciente omni Anglia, de
under of-the-king the-rod placed with-not-knowing all England about
toto regno, necessitate temporis coactus, impegerit,
the-whole kingdom by-the-necessity of-the-time compelled had-thrust-on-himself
videatur non esse ratum: præterea iniquum postulat ut
should-seem not to-be valid besides unjust he-demands that
imperio decedat, quod tanto favore civium
from-the-empire he-should-withdraw which with-so-great favor of-the-citizens
regendum susceperit; hoc nec provincialibus gratum, nec
to-be-ruled he-had-undertaken this neither to-the-provincials pleasing nor

militibus tutum. Ita revertebantur inanes nuntii, vel veris
to-the-soldiers safe thus returned the-empty envoys either by-true
vel verisimilibus argumentis præstricti. Sed comes toto
or by-plausible arguments bound but the-count the-whole
illo anno bello necessaria expediebat, largis sumptibus
that year for-war the-necessary-things got-ready with-ample expense
milites suos continebat, alienos invitabat: ordines aciesque
soldiers his he-kept foreign-ones invited ranks and-lines
ita instituebat, ut milites proceri corpore, præcellentes
so he-arranged that the-soldiers tall in-body excelling
robore, essent; duces et antesignani, præter scientiam rei
in-strength should-be the-leaders and standard-bearers besides knowledge of-affairs
militaris, etiam consilii et ætatis maturitate pollerent; ut,
military also of-counsel and of-age by-ripeness should-be-strong so-that
si singulos vel in acie vel alibi cerneres, non proceres
if each-one either in the-line or elsewhere you-saw not nobles
sed reges putares. Ita episcopi et abbates illius temporis
but kings you-would-think so the-bishops and abbots of-that time
religione, ita optimates magnanima liberalitate certabant, ut
in-religion so the-magnates in-great-spirited liberality vied that
mirum sit quod, paucissimis annis evolutis, pleraque et pene
wonderful it-is that in-very-few years rolled-by most and almost
omnia in utrisque ordinibus mutata videas: illi in quibusdam
all-things in both orders changed you-see those in certain-things
hebetiores, sed largiores; isti in omnibus prudentiores, sed
duller but more-generous these in all-things more-prudent but
tenaciores; utrique tamen in defensanda patria manu validi,
more-tight-fisted both yet in defending the-fatherland in-hand strong
consilio providi, fortunas suas evehere, inimicorum deprimere
in-counsel provident their-own fortunes to-raise of-enemies to-depress
parati. Verum tunc Willelmi industria, cum providentia
ready but then of-William the-industry with the-providence

Dei consentiens, jam spe Angliam invadebat; et, ne
of-God agreeing already in-hope England was-invading and lest
justam causam temeritas decoloraret, ad apostolicum, qui ex
a-just cause rashness should-discolor to the-apostolic-one who from
Anselmo Lucensi episcopo Alexander dicebatur, misit, justitiam
Anselm of-Lucca bishop Alexander was-called he-sent the-justice
suscepti belli quantis poterat facundiæ nervis allegans.
of-the-undertaken war with-what he-could of-eloquence sinews alleging
Haroldus id facere supersedit; vel quod turgidus natura esset,
Harold this to-do omitted either because swollen by-nature he-was
vel quod causæ diffideret, vel quod nuntios suos a Willelmo
or because the-cause he-distrusted or because envoys his by William
et ejus complicibus, qui omnes portus obsidebant, impediri
and his accomplices who all ports were-besieging to-be-hindered
timeret. Quare, perpensis apud se utrinque partibus, papa
he-feared wherefore with-weighed with himself on-both-sides the-parties the-pope
vexillum in omen regni Willelmo contradidit; quo
a-banner for an-omen of-the-kingdom to-William handed-over which
ille accepto, conventum magnatum apud Lillebona fecit,
he received an-assembly of-the-magnates at Lillebonne made
super negotio singulorum sententias sciscitatus. Cumque
on the-business of-each the-opinions inquiring and-when
omnes, ejus voluntatem plausibus excipientes, magnificis
all his will with-applause receiving with-magnificent
promissis animasset, commeatum navium omnibus, pro
promises he-had-encouraged a-supply of-ships to-all according-to
quantitate possessionum, indixit. Ita tunc discessum, et
the-amount of-their-possessions he-imposed thus then they-departed and
mense Augusto ad sanctum Walericum in commune
in-the-month August at Saint Valery in common
ventum: portus ita per metonymiam dicitur. Congregatis
they-came the-port so by metonymy is-called with-gathered

undecunque navibus, felix exspectabatur aura quæ illas ad
from-everywhere ships a-favorable was-awaited breeze which them to
destinatum locum eveheret. Qua multis diebus remorante,
the-destined place should-carry which for-many days delaying
vulgus militum, ut fieri solet, per tabernacula mussitabat:
the-crowd of-soldiers as to-happen is-wont through the-tents muttered
insanire hominem qui vellet alienum solum in jus suum
to-be-mad the-man who wished another's soil into his-own right
refundere; Deum contra tendere, qui ventum arceret; idem
to-pour-back God against to-strive who the-wind kept-off the-same
patrem voluisse eodemque modo inhibitum; fatale
his-father to-have-wished and-in-the-same way to-have-been-hindered fated
illi familiæ esse, ut, altiora viribus spirans, Deum
for-that family to-be that higher-things than-their-strength breathing God
adversantem experiatur. Ista per publicum serebantur,
opposing it-should-experience these-things through the-public were-sown
quæ possent fortium robur enervare. Dux itaque, facto
which might of-the-brave the-strength to-unnerve the-duke and-so with-held
cum senioribus concilio, corpus sancti Walerici foras efferri,
with the-elders a-council the-body of-saint Valery outside to-be-carried
et, pro vento deprecando, sub divo exponi jussit; nec
and for the-wind to-be-prayed-for under the-sky to-be-set-out he-ordered nor
mora intercessit quin prosper flatus carbasa impleret. Tunc
delay came-between before a-prosperous breeze the-sails filled then
lætus clamor exortus omnes ad naves invitavit: comes
a-glad shout arisen all to the-ships invited the-count
ipse, a continenti primus ad altum provectus, ceteros in
himself from the-mainland first to the-deep carried-out the-others in
medio fere mari anchoris jactis sustinuit. Omnibus itaque
the-middle almost of-the-sea with-anchors cast waited-for all and-so
ad prætoriæ puppis vermiculatum velum convolantibus,
to of-the-flagship of-the-stern the-embroidered sail flying-together

post cibum sumptum placido cursu Hastingas appulerunt.
after food taken with-calm course to-Hastings put-in
In egressu navis pede lapsus, eventum in melius
in the-going-out of-the-ship with-his-foot slipping the-outcome into better
commutavit, acclamante sibi proximo milite, "Tenes," inquit,
he-changed with-crying to-him the-nearest soldier you-hold he-said
"Angliam, comes, rex futurus!" Omnem exercitum a præda
England count king about-to-be all the-army from plunder
continuit, parcendum rebus quæ suæ forent prælocutus;
he-restrained to-be-spared the-things which his-own would-be declaring-beforehand
continuisque quindecim diebus adeo se quiete agens, ut
and-for-continuous fifteen days so-much himself quietly conducting that
nihil minus quam bellum cogitare videretur.
nothing less than war to-think he-seemed

THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS

Harold, back from beating the Norwegians, hurried to Hastings with few men; he spurned Gyrth's counsel and William's offer of terms. The English spent the night drinking, the Normans confessing; the English shield wall held until a feigned flight drew it out, and Harold fell with an arrow in his brain.

Interea Haroldus de pugna Noricorum revertebatur, sua
meanwhile Harold from the-battle of-the-Norwegians was-returning in-his-own
æstimatione felix. quod vicerat; meo judicio contra, quod
estimation happy because he-had-conquered in-my judgment the-opposite because
parricidio victoriam compararat: allatoque ad se nuntio
by-fratricide the-victory he-had-procured and-with-brought to him the-news
adventus Normannici, sicut erat cruentus in armis, paucissimo
of-the-coming Norman as he-was bloody in arms by-very-few
stipatus milite Hastingas protendit. Præcipitabant eum nimirum
attended soldiery to-Hastings he-hastened were-hurrying him no-doubt

fata, ut nec auxilia convocare vellet, nec, si vellet,
the-fates so-that neither auxiliaries to-summon he-wished nor if he-wished
multos parituros inveniret; ita, ut ante dixi, omnes illi erant
many about-to-obey he-would-find so as before I-said all to-him were
infensi, quod solus manubiis borealibus incubuerat. Præmisit
hostile because alone on-the-spoils northern he-had-brooded he-sent-ahead
tamen qui numerum hostium et vires specularentur;
yet men-who the-number of-the-enemies and the-strength should-spy-out
quos intra castra deprehensos Willelmus circum tentoria duci,
whom within the-camp caught William around the-tents to-be-led
moxque, largis eduliis pastos, domino incolumes remitti
and-soon with-ample foods fed to-their-lord unharmed to-be-sent-back
jubet. Redeuntes percunctatur Haroldus quid rerum apportent:
orders returning questions Harold what of-things they-bring
illi, verbis amplissimis ductoris magnificam confidentiam
they in-words most-ample of-the-leader the-magnificent confidence
prosecuti, serio addiderunt, pene omnes in exercitu illo
having-followed seriously added almost all in army that
presbyteros videri, quod totam faciem cum utroque labio rasam
priests to-seem because the-whole face with each lip shaven
haberent; Angli enim superius labrum pilis incessanter
they-had the-English for the-upper lip with-hairs ceaselessly
fructicantibus intonsum dimittunt, quod etiam gentilitium
sprouting unshorn leave which also national
antiquis Britonibus fuisse Julius Cæsar asseverat in libro
to-the-ancient Britons to-have-been Julius Caesar affirms in the-book
Belli Gallici. Subrisit rex fatuitatem referentium, lepido
of-the-War Gallic smiled the-king at-the-folly of-the-reporters with-witty
insecutus cachinno, quia non essent presbyteri, sed milites
following laughter because not they-were priests but soldiers
armis validi, animis invicti. Rapuit ergo ex ore ipsius
in-arms strong in-minds unconquered snatched therefore from the-mouth his

sermonem Gurtha frater, plus puero adultus, et magnæ
the-speech Gyrth his-brother more than-a-boy grown and of-great
ultra ætatem virtutis et scientiæ. "Cum," inquit, "tantam
beyond his-age valor and knowledge since he-said so-great
fortitudinem Normanni prædices, indeliberatum æstimo cum
the-bravery of-the-Norman you-proclaim ill-advised I-reckon with
illo confligere, quo inferior robore et merito habearis.
him to-clash than-whom inferior in-strength and in-merit you-are-held
Nec enim ibis in inficias quin illi sacramentum vel
nor for will-you-go into denial that to-him an-oath either
invitus vel voluntarius feceris; proinde consultius ages
unwilling or willing you-made therefore more-prudently you-will-act
si, instanti necessitati te subtrahens, nostro periculo
if from-the-pressing necessity yourself withdrawing at-our risk
colludium pugnæ temptaveris: nos, omni juramento expediti,
the-play of-battle you-try we from-every oath freed
juste ferrum pro patria stringemus. Timendum ne, si
justly the-sword for the-fatherland shall-draw it-is-to-be-feared lest if
ipse decernas, vel fugam vel mortem oppetas: sed, nobis
you-yourself decide either flight or death you-meet but with-us
solis præliantibus, causa tua utrobique in portu navigabit;
alone fighting the-cause your both-ways in port will-sail
quia et fugientes restituere, et mortuos ulcisci, poteris."
because both those-fleeing to-restore and the-dead to-avenge you-will-be-able
Noluit effrænata temeritas aurem placidam monenti
would-not unbridled rashness an-ear calm to-the-adviser
commodare, existimans inglorium et anteactæ vitæ
lend reckoning inglorious and of-past life
opprobrium cuicunque discrimini terga nudare: eademque
a-disgrace to-any danger his-back to-bare and-with-the-same
impudentia, vel, ut indulgentius dicam, imprudentia,
impudence or as more-indulgently I-may-say imprudence

monachum, Willelmi legatum, nec bono vultu dignatus
the-monk of-William the-envoy not-even with-a-good face deigning
turbide abegit; hoc tantum imprecans, ut Deus inter
turbulently he-drove-away this only imprecating that God between
eum et Willelmum judicaret. Afferebat ille tria: ut vel
him and William should-judge brought he three-things that either
regno secundum conditiones descenderet; vel sub eo
from-the-kingdom according-to the-terms he-should-step-down or under him
regnaturus teneret: vel certe, spectante utroque exercitu,
about-to-reign he-should-hold-it or certainly with-watching each army
gladio rem ventilarent. Calumpniabatur enim Willelmus
by-the-sword the-matter they-should-decide claimed for William
regnum, quod rex illi Edwardus concesserat, consilio
the-kingdom because king to-him Edward had-granted by-the-counsel
Stigandi archiepiscopi, et Godwini et Siwardi comitum;
of-Stigand archbishop and of-Godwin and of-Siward earls
ejusque doni obsides filium et nepotem Godwini Normanniam
and-of-that gift as-hostages the-son and grandson of-Godwin to-Normandy
miserat. Si id negare velit Haroldus, judicio se
he-had-sent if this to-deny should-wish Harold by-the-judgment himself
sedis apostolicæ vel prælio acturum: quibus omnibus
of-the-see apostolic or by-battle about-to-proceed with-which all
solo, quod dixi, nuntius frustratus responso discessit,
by-the-only which I-said the-messenger thwarted answer departed
suisque ad dimicandum vivaciores animos dedit.
and-to-his-own for fighting livelier spirits gave
Itaque utrinque animosi duces disponunt acies, patrio
and-so on-both-sides spirited the-leaders draw-up the-lines by-national
quisque ritu: Angli, ut accepimus, totam noctem insompnem
each rite the-English as we-have-heard the-whole night sleepless
cantibus potibusque ducentes, mane incunctanter in
in-songs and-drinks spending in-the-morning without-delay against

hostem procedunt: pedites omnes cum bipennibus, conserta
the-enemy advance on-foot all with axes with-joined
ante se scutorum testudine, impenetrabilem cuneum
before themselves of-shields a-tortoise an-impenetrable wedge
faciunt; quod profecto illis ea die saluti fuisset,
they-make which surely to-them on-that day for-safety would-have-been
nisi Normanni simulata fuga more suo confertos manipulos
unless the-Normans with-feigned flight in-way their the-crowded companies
laxassent. Rex ipse pedes juxta vexillum stabat cum
had-loosened the-king himself on-foot beside the-standard stood with
fratribus, ut, in commune periculo æquato, nemo de
his-brothers so-that in common with-danger equalized no-one of
fuga cogitaret. Vexillum illud post victoriam papæ misit
flight should-think standard that after the-victory to-the-pope sent
Willelmus, quod erat in hominis pugnantis figura, auro
William which was in of-a-man fighting the-figure with-gold
et lapidibus arte sumptuosa intextum.
and stones with-art costly woven
Contra Normanni, nocte tota confessioni peccatorum
against-them the-Normans in-the-night whole to-the-confession of-sins
vacantes, mane Dominico corpore communicarunt. Pedites
attending in-the-morning with-the-Lord's body communicated the-foot
cum arcubus et sagittis primam frontem muniunt, equites
with bows and arrows the-first front fortify the-horsemen
retro divisis alis consistunt. Comes vultu serenus, et
behind with-divided wings take-position the-count in-face serene and
clara voce suæ parti utpote justiori Deum affuturum
with-clear voice to-his side as the-juster God about-to-be-present
pronuntians, arma poposcit; moxque ministrorum tumultu
proclaiming arms demanded and-soon of-his-attendants in-the-hurry
loricam inversam indutus, casum risu correxit,
his-mail-coat reversed having-put-on the-mishap with-laughter corrected

"Vertetur," inquiens, "fortitudo comitatus mei in regnum."
will-be-turned he-said the-strength of-the-county my into a-kingdom
Tunc cantilena Rollandi inchoata, ut martium viri
then with-the-song of-Roland begun that the-warlike of-the-man
exemplum pugnaturos accenderet, inclamatoque Dei auxilio,
example those-about-to-fight might-kindle and-with-called-on of-God help
prælium consertum, bellatumque acriter, neutris in multam
the-battle joined and-fought-out-it-was fiercely with-neither into the-late
diei horam cedentibus. Quo comperto, Willelmus innuit
of-the-day hour yielding with-which learned William signaled
suis ut, ficta fuga, campo se subtraherent. Hoc
to-his-men that with-feigned flight from-the-field themselves they-should-withdraw by-this
commento Anglorum cuneus solutus, quasi palantes hostes
device of-the-English the-wedge loosened as-if straggling the-enemies
a tergo cæsurus, exitium sibi maturavit; Normanni
from behind about-to-cut-down destruction for-itself hastened the-Normans
enim, conversis ordinibus reversi, dispersos adoriuntur, et
for with-turned ranks having-returned the-scattered attack and
in fugam cogunt. Ita ingenio circumventi, pulchram mortem
into flight drive so by-cunning circumvented a-beautiful death
pro patriæ ultione meruere: nec tamen ultioni
for of-the-fatherland the-vengeance they-earned nor yet to-vengeance
suæ defuere, quin, crebro consistentes, de insequentibus
their-own were-they-lacking but-that often making-a-stand of the-pursuers
insignes cladis acervos facerent; nam, occupato tumulo,
remarkable of-slaughter heaps they-made for with-seized a-hillock
Normannos, calore successus acriter ad superiora nitentes,
the-Normans with-the-heat of-success fiercely to the-heights striving
in vallem dejiciunt, levique negotio in subjectos tela
into the-valley they-throw-down and-with-light effort on those-below weapons
torquentes, lapides rotantes, omnes ad unum fundunt. Item
hurling stones rolling all to one they-rout likewise

fossatum quoddam præruptum compendiario et noto sibi
a-ditch certain steep by-a-short and known to-themselves
transitu evadentes, tot ibi inimicorum conculcavere, ut
crossing escaping so-many there of-enemies they-trampled that
cumulo cadaverum planitiem campi æquarent. Valuit hæc
with-a-heap of-corpses the-plain of-the-field they-leveled availed this
vicissitudo, modo illis, modo istis vincentibus, quantum
alternation now those now these winning as-long-as
Haroldi vita moram fecit; at ubi jactu sagittæ violato
of-Harold the-life delay made but when by-the-shot of-an-arrow with-pierced
cerebro procubuit, fuga Anglorum perennis in nocte fuit.
brain he-fell-forward the-flight of-the-English unending into the-night was
Emicuit ibi virtus amborum ducum. Haroldus, non contentus
shone-forth there the-valor of-both leaders Harold not content
munere imperatorio ut hortaretur alios, militis officium
with-the-office of-commander that he-should-exhort others of-a-soldier the-duty
sedulo exequebatur; sæpe hostem cominus venientem ferire,
zealously performed often the-enemy at-close-quarters coming to-strike
ut nullus impune accederet quin statim uno ictu equus et
so-that no-one unpunished approached but-that at-once with-one blow horse and
eques procíderent: quapropter, ut dixi, eminus lethali arundine
rider fell-forward wherefore as I-said from-afar by-a-deadly arrow
ictus mortem implevit. Jacentis femur unus militum
struck death he-fulfilled of-the-lying-one the-thigh one of-the-soldiers
gladio proscidit; unde a Willelmo ignominiæ notatus, quod
with-his-sword gashed whence by William with-ignominy branded because
rem ignavam et pudendam fecisset, militia pulsus est.
a-deed cowardly and shameful he-had-done from-knighthood driven he-was
Item Willelmus suos clamore et præsentia hortari, ipse
likewise William his-men by-shout and by-presence to-exhort himself
primus procurrere, confertos hostes invadere: ideo dum ubique
first to-run-forward the-crowded enemies to-attack so while everywhere

sævit, ubique infrendet, tres equos lectissimos sub se
he-rages everywhere he-gnashes three horses most-choice under himself
confossos ea die amisit. Perstitit tamen magnanimi ducis
pierced on-that day he-lost persisted yet of-the-great-spirited duke
et corpus et animus, quamvis familiari susurro a custodibus
both the-body and the-mind although with-familiar whisper by the-guards
corporis revocaretur; perstitit, inquam, donec victoriam
of-his-body he-was-called-back he-persisted I-say until victory
plenam superveniens nox infunderet. Et proculdubio divina
full coming-on night should-pour-in and without-doubt the-divine
illum manus protexit, ut nihil sanguinis ex ejus corpore
him hand protected so-that nothing of-blood from his body
hostis hauriret, quamquam illum tot jaculis impeteret.
the-enemy should-draw although him with-so-many javelins he-attacked

THE FATAL DAY; THE MANNERS OF THE ENGLISH

That day was fatal to England. The English, barbarous at first, grew devout after taking the faith, but before the Normans came learning and religion had decayed: clergy unlettered, monks lax, nobles given to gluttony and lust, the poor sold abroad, and all drinking through the night, so that they lost their country in one easy battle; yet many pleased God.

Illa fuit dies fatalis Angliæ, funestum excidium dulcis
that was the-day fatal for-England the-mournful ruin of-the-sweet
patriæ, pro novorum dominorum commutatione. Jam enim
fatherland for of-new lords the-exchange already for
pridem moribus Anglorum insueverat, qui varii
long-since to-the-manners of-the-English it-had-grown-accustomed which varied
admodum pro temporibus fuere: nam, primis adventus
very according-to the-times were for in-the-first of-coming

sui annis, vultu et gestu barbarico, usu bellico, ritu
their years in-look and in-bearing barbarous in-usage warlike in-rite
fanatico vivebant; sed postmodum, Christi fide suscepta,
fanatical they-lived but afterward of-Christ with-the-faith received
paulatim et per incrementa temporis, pro otio quod
gradually and through increments of-time for leisure which
actitabant, exercitium armorum in secundis ponentes, omnem
they-practiced the-exercise of-arms in second-place putting all
in religione operam insumpsere. Taceo de pauperibus, quos
into religion effort they-spent I-am-silent about the-poor whom
fortunarum tenuitas plerumque continet ne cancellos justitiæ
of-fortunes the-slenderness usually restrains lest the-bars of-justice
transgrediantur: prætermitto graduum ecclesiasticorum viros,
they-cross I-pass-over of-the-ranks ecclesiastical the-men
quos nonnunquam professionis contuitus, sed et infamiæ
whom sometimes of-profession the-regard but also of-infamy
metus, a vero deviare non sinit. De regibus dico, qui pro
the-fear from the-true to-stray not allows about the-kings I-speak who for
amplitudine potestatis licenter indulgere voluptatibus possent:
the-amplitude of-power licentiously to-indulge in-pleasures could
quorum quidam in patria, quidam Romæ, mutato habitu,
of-whom some in the-fatherland some at-Rome with-changed habit
cæleste lucrati sunt regnum, beatum nacti commercium;
the-heavenly gained have kingdom a-blessed having-obtained bargain
multi specie tenus tota vita mundum amplexi, ut
many in-appearance only the-whole life the-world having-embraced so-that
thesauros egenis effunderent, monasteriis dividerent. Quid
their-treasures to-the-needy they-might-pour-out to-monasteries distribute what
dicam de tot episcopis, heremitis, abbatibus? nonne
shall-I-say about so-many bishops hermits abbots does-not
tota insula tantis reliquiis indigenarum fulgurat, ut vix
the-whole island with-so-many relics of-natives flash that scarcely

aliquem vicum insignem prætereas ubi novi sancti nomen
any village notable you-pass where of-a-new saint the-name
non audias? quam multorum etiam periit memoria, pro
not you-hear how of-many also has-perished the-memory for
scriptorum inopia! Veruntamen litterarum et religionis studia
of-writers the-lack nevertheless of-letters and of-religion the-studies
ætate procedente obsoleverunt, non paucis ante adventum
with-age advancing became-obsolete not a-few before the-coming
Normannorum annis. Clerici litteratura tumultuaria contenti,
of-the-Normans years the-clerics with-literature makeshift content
vix sacramentorum verba balbutiebant: stupori erat
scarcely of-the-sacraments the-words stammered to-amazement it-was
et miraculo ceteris qui grammaticam nosset. Monachi,
and to-wonder to-the-others he-who grammar knew the-monks
subtilibus indumentis et indifferenti genere ciborum,
with-fine garments and with-indiscriminate kind of-foods
regulam ludificabant. Optimates, gulæ et veneri dediti,
the-rule mocked the-magnates to-gluttony and to-lust given
ecclesiam more Christiano mane non adibant; sed in
the-church in-the-manner Christian in-the-morning not they-went-to but in
cubiculo, et inter uxorios amplexus, matutinarum sollempnia
the-bedchamber and amid wifely embraces of-matins the-solemnities
et missarum a festinante presbytero auribus tantum
and of-masses from a-hurrying priest with-their-ears only
libabant. Vulgus, in medio expositum, præda erat
sipped the-common-people in the-middle exposed a-prey was
potentioribus, ut, vel eorum substantiis exhaustis, vel etiam
to-the-more-powerful so-that either with-their substance exhausted or even
corporibus in longinquas terras distractis, acervos thesaurorum
with-bodies into distant lands sold heaps of-treasures
congererent, quanquam magis ingenitum sit illi genti
they-might-gather although more inborn it-is in-that people

commessationibus quam opibus inhiare. Illud erat a natura
for-feasts than for-wealth to-gape that was from nature
abhorrens, quod multi ancillas suas ex se gravidas,
abhorrent that many maidservants their-own by themselves pregnant
ubi libidini satisfecissent, aut ad publicum prostibulum
when to-lust they-had-satisfied either to a-public brothel
aut ad externum obsequium venditabant. Potabatur in
or to foreign service they-sold there-was-drinking in
commune ab omnibus, in hoc studio noctes perinde ut dies
common by all in this pursuit nights just as days
perpetuantibus. Parvis et abjectis domibus totos absumebant
prolonging in-small and mean houses whole they-consumed
sumptus, Francis et Normannis absimiles, qui amplis et
their-expenses to-the-Franks and to-the-Normans unlike who in-ample and
superbis ædificiis modicas expensas agunt. Sequebantur vitia
proud buildings moderate expenses make followed the-vices
ebrietatis socia, quæ virorum animos effœminant. Hinc
of-drunkenness companions which of-men the-minds effeminate hence
factum est, ut, magis temeritate et furore præcipiti quam
done it-was that rather with-rashness and fury headlong than
scientia militari Willelmo congressi, uno prælio, et ipso
with-knowledge military with-William having-engaged in-one battle and that
perfacili, servituti se patriamque pessundederint. Nihil
very-easy into-servitude themselves and-their-fatherland they-cast nothing
enim temeritate levius; sed quicquid cum impetu inchoat,
for than-rashness lighter but whatever with impetus begins
cito desinit vel compescitur. Ad summam, tunc erant Angli
quickly ends or is-checked in sum then were the-English
vestibus ad medium genu expediti, crines tonsi, barbas rasi,
in-clothes to mid the-knee unencumbered with-hair shorn in-beards shaven
armillis aureis brachia onerati, picturatis stigmatibus cutem
with-armlets golden in-arms loaded with-painted marks in-skin

insigniti; in cibis urgentes crapulam, in potibus irritantes
marked in foods pressing surfeit in drinks provoking
vomicam. Et hæc quidem extrema jam victoribus suis
vomit and these-things indeed the-last-things now with-the-victors their-own
participarunt, de ceteris in eorum mores transeuntes. Sed
they-shared about the-rest into their manners passing but
hæc mala de omnibus generaliter Anglis dicta intelligi
these evils about all generally English said to-be-understood
nolim: scio clericos multos tunc temporis simplici via
I-would-not-have I-know clerics many at-that of-time by-simple way
semitam sanctitatis trivisse; scio multos laicos omnis
the-path of-holiness to-have-trodden I-know many laymen of-every
generis et conditionis Deo in eadem gente placuisse:
kind and condition to-God in the-same people to-have-pleased
facessat ab hac relatione invidia, non cunctos pariter hæc
be-gone from this account envy not all equally this
involvit calumpnia; verum sicut in tranquillitate malos cum
involves calumny but as in tranquility the-wicked with
bonis fovet plerumque Dei serenitas, ita in captivitate
the-good cherishes usually of-God the-serenity so in captivity
bonos cum malis nonnunquam ejusdem constringit severitas.
the-good with the-wicked sometimes of-the-same constrains the-severity

De moribus Normannorum

THE MANNERS OF THE NORMANS

The Normans dress elegantly and eat without excess, live for war and use guile and money where force fails. They build large and spend moderately, are faithful to their lords and quick to desert them, and treat strangers as equals. They revived the religion that had died in England, filling the land with new churches and monasteries.

Porro Normanni, ut de eis quoque dicamus, erant tunc,
further the-Normans that about them also we-may-speak were then
et sunt adhuc, vestibus ad invidiam culti, cibis citra ullam
and are still in-clothes to envy elegant in-foods short-of any
nimietatem delicati: gens militiæ assueta, et sine bello pene
excess fastidious a-people to-soldiering accustomed and without war almost
vivere nescia; in hostem impigre procurrere, et ubi vires
to-live not-knowing against the-enemy briskly to-run-forward and where strength
non successissent, non minus dolo et pecunia corrumpere.
not had-succeeded not less by-trickery and money to-corrupt
Domi ingentia, ut dixi, ædificia moderatos sumptus moliri,
at-home huge as I-said buildings moderate expenses to-build
paribus invidere, superiores prætergredi velle, subjectos sibi
their-equals to-envy their-superiors to-pass to-wish those-subject to-themselves
vellicantes ab alienis tutari; dominis fideles, moxque levi
plucking from strangers to-protect to-their-lords faithful and-soon at-a-light
offensa infideles. Cum fato ponderare perfidiam, cum nummo
offense unfaithful with fate to-weigh treachery with a-coin
mutare sententiam. Ceterum, omnium gentium benignissimi
to-change their-opinion however of-all peoples most-kindly
advenas æquali secum honore colunt; matrimonia quoque
strangers with-equal with-themselves honor treat marriages also

cum subditis jungunt; religionis normam, usquequaque in
with their-subjects join of-religion the-rule everywhere in
Anglia emortuam, adventu suo suscitarunt; videas ubique
England dead by-coming their they-raised-up you-may-see everywhere
in villis ecclesias, in vicis et urbibus monasteria, novo
in estates churches in villages and cities monasteries with-new
ædificandi genere consurgere; recenti ritu patriam florere,
of-building kind rising with-fresh rite the-fatherland to-flourish
ita ut sibi perisse diem quisque opulentus existimet
so that to-himself to-have-been-lost the-day each wealthy-man reckons
quem non aliqua præclara magnificentia illustret. Sed, quia
which not some splendid magnificence makes-illustrious but because
de his satis dictum, Willelmi gesta prosequamur.
about these-things enough has-been-said of-William the-deeds let-us-follow

Quomodo Willelmus ab Anglis susceptus est

HOW WILLIAM WAS RECEIVED BY THE ENGLISH

William buried his dead, let the enemy do the same, and sent Harold's body to his mother, who buried it at Waltham. He advanced on London as a king, and the citizens poured out to greet him; Edwin and Morcar had gone north, and the English, unable to agree on Edgar, took a stranger. Ealdred crowned him on Christmas Day, since Stigand was no lawful archbishop.

Ille, ubi perfecta victoria potitus est, suos sepeliendos
he when perfect of-victory gained-possession has his-men to-be-buried
mirifice curavit; hostibus quoque si qui vellent, idem
wonderfully took-care-of to-the-enemies also if any wished the-same
exequendi licentiam præbuit. Corpus Haroldi matri
of-performing leave he-gave the-body of-Harold to-his-mother
repetenti sine pretio misit, licet illa multum per legatos
asking-for-it without price he-sent although she much through envoys

obtulisset; acceptum itaque apud Waltham sepelivit, quam
had-offered received and-so at Waltham she-buried-him which
ipse ecclesiam, ex proprio constructam in honore sanctæ
he-himself church from his-own built in the-honor of-the-holy
Crucis, canonicis impleverat. Sensim ergo Willelmus, ut
Cross with-canons had-filled gradually therefore William as
triumphatorem decebat, cum exercitu non hostili sed regali
a-triumpher befitted with the-army not in-hostile but in-royal
modo progrediens, urbem regni maximam Londoniam
manner advancing the-city of-the-kingdom greatest London
petit; moxque cum gratulatione cives omnes effusi
seeks and-soon with congratulation the-citizens all poured-out
obviam vadunt. Prorupit omnibus portis unda salutantium,
to-meet go burst-out from-all gates a-wave of-greeters
auctoribus magnatibus, præcipue Stigando archiepiscopo
with-the-instigators the-magnates especially Stigand archbishop
Cantuariensi et Aldredo Eboracensi: nam præcedentibus diebus,
of-Canterbury and Ealdred of-York for in-the-preceding days
Edwinus et Morcardus, amplæ spei fratres, apud Londoniam
Edwin and Morcar of-ample hope brothers at London
audito interitus Haroldi nuntio, urbanos sollicitaverant ut
with-heard of-the-death of-Harold the-news the-townsmen had-urged that
alterutrum in regnum sublevarent; quod frustra conati,
one-or-the-other into the-kingdom they-should-raise which in-vain having-attempted
Northanhimbriam discesserant, ex suo conjectantes ingenio
to-Northumbria they-had-departed from their-own conjecturing wit
nunquam illuc Willelmum esse venturum. Ceteri proceres
never thither William to-be about-to-come the-other nobles
Edgarum eligerent si episcopos assertores haberent; sed
Edgar would-choose if bishops as-supporters they-had but
proximo urgente periculo, et domesticæ litis discidio, nec
with-nearest pressing danger and of-domestic strife with-the-split not-even

illud quidem effectum: ita Angli, qui, in unam coeuntes
that indeed was-effected so the-English who into one coming-together
sententiam, potuissent patriæ reformare ruinam, dum
opinion could-have of-the-fatherland to-repair the-ruin while
nullum ex suis volunt, alienum induxerunt. Tunc ille, haud
none of their-own they-wish a-stranger brought-in then he without
dubie rex conclamatus, die Natalis Domini coronatus
doubt king acclaimed on-the-day of-the-Birth of-the-Lord crowned
est ab Aldredo archiepiscopo; cavebat enim id munus a
was by Ealdred the-archbishop he-was-wary for that office from
Stigando suscipere, quod esset is archiepiscopus non legitime.
Stigand to-receive because was he archbishop not lawfully

Summa bellorum Willelmi in Anglia

THE SUM OF WILLIAM'S WARS IN ENGLAND

Exeter rebelled and fell when part of its wall collapsed, a judgment on a citizen who had insulted the Normans from it. York, the one refuge of rebellion, where Malcolm of Scotland, Edgar, Morcar, and Waltheof with English and Danes often warmed the nest of tyranny and often slew the king's captains, he all but destroyed. William of Malmesbury will tell the end of each leader in turn.

Omnium deinde bellorum quæ gessit, hæc summa est. Urbem
of-all then the-wars which he-waged this the-sum is the-city
Exoniam rebellantem leviter subegit, divino scilicet jutus
Exeter rebelling easily he-subdued by-divine namely helped
auxilio, quod pars muralis ultro decidens ingressum
aid because a-part of-the-wall of-its-own-accord falling the-entrance
illi patefecerit: nam et ipse audacius eam assilierat,
to-him opened for also he more-boldly it had-assailed
protestans homines irreverentes Dei destituendos suffragio;
protesting men irreverent of-God to-be-deprived of-support

quia unus eorum, supra murum stans, nudato inguine
because one of-them upon the-wall standing with-bared groin
auras sonitu inferioris partis turbaverat, pro contemptu
the-air with-the-sound of-the-lower part had-disturbed in contempt
videlicet Normannorum. Eboracum, unicum rebellionum
namely of-the-Normans York the-only of-rebellions
suffugium, civibus pene delevit, fame et ferro
refuge with-the-citizens almost he-destroyed by-hunger and by-the-sword
necatis: ibi enim rex Scottorum Malcolmus cum suis,
killed there for the-king of-the-Scots Malcolm with his-men
ibi Edgarus et Marcherius et Weldeofus cum Anglis et
there Edgar and Morcar and Waltheof with English and
Danis, nidum tyrannidis sæpe fovebant; sæpe duces illius
Danes the-nest of-tyranny often warmed often the-leaders his
trucidabant, quorum singillatim exitus si commemoravero,
slaughtered of-whom one-by-one the-ends if I-shall-recall
fortasse superfluus non ero, licet fastidii discrimen
perhaps superfluous not I-shall-be although of-tedium the-risk
immineat, dum relatori, si forte secundum dictores suos
impend while for-the-relater if perhaps according-to informants his
mentiatur, difficilis sit regressus ad veniam.
he-should-lie difficult be the-return to pardon

Quomodo Eboracum ceperit, et totam provinciam vastaverit

HOW HE TOOK YORK AND LAID WASTE THE PROVINCE

Malcolm sheltered the English fugitives, married Edgar's sister, and harried the northern shires. William marched north, took York from the English, Danes, and Scots after a long starvation, and routed a great army of their allies. Then, fearing that Cnut of Denmark was coming, he laid waste the whole region, the coast above all, so that for sixty miles and more the land lies bare even now, and a traveler groans at the ruins of famous cities.

Malcolmus omnes Anglorum perfugas libenter recipiebat,
Malcolm all of-the-English the-fugitives gladly received
tutamentum singulis quantum poterat impendens; Edgarum
protection to-each as-much-as he-could bestowing Edgar
præcipue, cujus sororem, pro antiqua memoria nobilitatis,
especially whose sister for the-ancient memory of-nobility
jugalem sibi fecerat. Ejus causa conterminas Angliæ
as-wife to-himself he-had-made of-him for-the-sake the-neighboring of-England
provincias rapinis et incendiis infestabat; non quod aliquid
provinces with-plunderings and burnings he-harassed not because anything
ad regnum illi profuturum arbitraretur, sed ut Willelmi
to the-kingdom to-him about-to-profit he-thought but that of-William
animum contristaret, qui Scotticis prædis terras suas obnoxias
the-mind he-might-grieve who to-Scottish raids lands his exposed
indignaretur. Quapropter Willelmus, coacta peditum et
resented wherefore William with-gathered of-foot and
militum manu, aquilonales insulæ partes petiit: et primo
of-horsemen force the-northern of-the-island parts sought and first
urbem metropolim, quam Angli cum Danis et Scottis
the-city metropolitan which the-English with Danes and Scots
obstinate tenebant, in deditionem accepit, civibus longa
obstinately held into surrender received with-the-citizens by-long

inedia consumptis; maximum quoque hostium numerum,
starvation consumed the-greatest also of-the-enemies number
qui obsessis in auxilium convenerant, ingenti et gravi
who to-the-besieged for help had-come in-a-huge and heavy
prælio fudit, non incruenta sibi victoria multos suorum
battle he-routed not bloodless for-himself the-victory many of-his-own
amittens. Tunc totius regionis vicos et agros corrumpi,
losing then of-whole region the-villages and fields to-be-spoiled
fructus et fruges igne vel aqua labefactari jubet; maritima
the-fruits and crops by-fire or water to-be-ruined he-orders the-coastal-places
maxime, tum propter recentem iram, tum quia Cnutonem
most both on-account-of fresh anger and because Cnut
Danorum regem, filium Swani, adventare rumor sparserat:
of-the-Danes king son of-Sweyn to-be-approaching a-rumor had-spread
ea præcepti ratio, ut nihil circa oram maritimam prædo
this of-the-order the-reason that nothing about the-shore maritime the-plunderer
piraticus inveniret secum asportaturus, si citius remeandum,
piratical should-find with-himself about-to-carry-off if quickly to-be-returned
vel fami consulturus, si diutius manendum putaret. Itaque
or for-hunger about-to-provide if longer to-be-stayed he-thought and-so
provinciæ quondam fertilis, et tyrannorum nutriculæ, incendio,
of-a-province once fertile and of-tyrants nurse by-fire
præda, sanguine, nervi succisi; humus, per sexaginta et
by-plunder by-blood the-sinews cut the-ground for sixty and
eo amplius miliaria, omnifariam inculta; nudum omnium
than-that more miles in-every-way uncultivated bare of-all
solum usque ad hoc etiam tempus: urbes olim præclaras,
the-soil all-the-way to this even time cities once famous
turres proceritate sua in cælum minantes, agros lætos
towers with-loftiness their into heaven threatening fields glad

pascuis, irriguos fluviis, si quis modo videt peregrinus,
with-pastures watered by-rivers if any now sees as-a-stranger
ingemit; si quis superest vetus incola, non agnoscit.
he-groans if any survives an-old inhabitant not he-recognizes

De Malcolmo rege Scottorum

MALCOLM, KING OF THE SCOTS

Malcolm surrendered before it came to blows and spent William's reign in uncertain and often broken treaties. Attacked in the same way under William's son William, he drove off his pursuer with a false oath. Not long after, while he rode over the province too proudly and unmindful of his faith, he was slain with his son by Robert of Mowbray, earl of Northumbria; he lay buried for many years at Tynemouth and was lately carried by his son Alexander to Dunfermline in Scotland.

Malcolmus, antequam ad manus veniretur, se dedidit,
Malcolm before to blows it-came himself surrendered
totoque Willelmi tempore incertis et sæpe fractis
and-the-whole of-William time with-uncertain and often broken
fœderibus ævum egit; sed, filio Willelmi Willelmo regnante,
treaties his-life spent but with-the-son of-William William reigning
simili modo impetitus, falso sacramento insequentem abegit.
in-like manner attacked with-a-false oath the-pursuer drove-off
Nec multo post, dum fidei immemor superbius provinciam
nor much after while of-faith unmindful too-proudly the-province
inequitaret, a Roberto de Molbreia, comite Northanhimbriæ,
he-rode-over by Robert of Mowbray earl of-Northumbria
cum filio cæsus est; humatusque multis annis apud Tinemuthe,
with his-son slain was and-buried for-many years at Tynemouth
nuper ab Alexandro filio Scotiam ad Dunfermelin portatus est.
lately by Alexander his-son to-Scotland to Dunfermline carried was

De Edgaro

EDGAR THE ÆTHELING

Edgar submitted to the king with the archbishops, the next year broke his oath by fleeing to the Scot, and at last, finding nothing there but a daily allowance, sailed to William beyond the sea, who was glad to have England rid of him. Richly received, he stayed years at court and came to be despised for sloth, or simplicity, signing away his pound of silver a day to the king for one horse. Later he went to Jerusalem with Robert son of Godwin, who rescued King Baldwin at Rama but was captured, taken to Babylon, and shot with arrows when he would not deny Christ. Edgar came home, spurning the gifts and offers of the Greek and German emperors for love of his native soil; now he lives quietly in the country.

Edgarus, cum Stigando et Aldredo archiepiscopis regis
Edgar with Stigand and Ealdred the-archbishops to-the-king
dedititius, sequenti anno, facto ad Scottum transfugio,
surrendered in-the-following year with-made to the-Scot desertion
jusjurandum maculavit; sed cum ibi aliquot annis degens,
his-oath stained but when there some years living
nihil ad præsens commodi, nihil ad futurum spei, præter
nothing for the-present of-advantage nothing for the-future of-hope besides
cotidianam stipem nactus esset, Normanni liberalitatem
daily allowance got he-had of-the-Norman the-liberality
experiri pergens, ad eum, tunc ultra mare degentem, navigavit.
to-try going to him then beyond the-sea living he-sailed
Quod regi gratissimum fuisse ferunt, ut incentore
which to-the-king most-welcome to-have-been they-say that of-the-instigator
bellorum Anglia vacaret; nam et ultro solitus erat
of-wars England should-be-empty for also of-his-own-accord wont he-was
quoscunque Anglos suspectos habebat, quasi honoris causa,
whatever English suspected he-held as-if of-honor for-the-sake
Normanniam ducere, ne quicquam se absente in regno
to-Normandy to-take lest anything with-himself absent in the-kingdom

turbarent. Receptus ergo Edgarus, et magno donativo
they-should-disturb received therefore Edgar also with-a-great gift
donatus est; pluribusque annis in curia manens, pedetemptim
presented was and-for-many years in the-court staying gradually
pro ignavia, et, ut mitius dictum sit, pro simplicitate,
for sloth and so-that more-mildly said it-may-be for simplicity
contemptui haberi cœpit. Quantula enim simplicitas, ut
in-contempt to-be-held he-began how-little for simplicity that
libram argenti, quam cotidie in stipendio accipiebat, regi
a-pound of-silver which daily in allowance he-received to-the-king
pro uno equo perdonaret? Subsequenti tempore cum Roberto
for one horse he-should-remit in-subsequent time with Robert
filio Godwini, milite audacissimo, Jerosolimam pertendit. Illud
son of-Godwin a-soldier most-daring to-Jerusalem he-set-out that
fuit tempus quo Turchi Baldwinum regem apud Ramas
was the-time in-which the-Turks Baldwin the-king at Ramla
obsederunt; qui, cum obsidionis injuriam ferre nequiret,
besieged who when of-the-siege the-injury to-bear he-could-not
per medias hostium acies effugit, solius Roberti opera
through the-midst of-the-enemies lines escaped alone of-Robert by-the-work
liberatus præeuntis, et evaginato gladio dextra lævaque
freed going-before and with-drawn sword right and-left
Turchos cædentis: sed cum, successu ipso truculentior,
the-Turks cutting-down but when by-success itself more-ferocious
alacritate nimia procurreret, ensis manu excidit; ad
with-eagerness excessive he-ran-ahead his-sword from-his-hand fell to
quem recolligendum cum se inclinasset, omnium incursu
which to-be-recovered when himself he-had-bent of-all by-the-onset
oppressus, vinculis palmas dedit. Inde Babilonem ut aiunt
overwhelmed to-chains his-palms he-gave thence to-Babylon as they-say
ductus, cum Christum abnegare nollet, in medio foro
led when Christ to-deny he-refused in the-middle of-the-forum

ad signum positus, et sagittis terebratus, martyrium sacravit.
at a-target placed and by-arrows pierced his-martyrdom consecrated
Edgarus amisso milite regressus, multaque beneficia ab
Edgar with-lost soldier having-returned and-many benefits from
imperatoribus Græcorum et Alamannorum adeptus, quippe
the-emperors of-the-Greeks and of-the-Germans having-obtained indeed
qui etiam eum retinere pro generis amplitudine temptassent,
who also him to-retain for of-his-birth the-amplitude had-tried
omnia pro natalis soli desiderio sprevit; quosdam enim
all-things for of-native soil desire spurned some for
profecto fallit amor patriæ, ut nihil eis videatur
surely deceives the-love of-fatherland so-that nothing to-them seems
jocundum nisi consuetum hauserint cælum. Unde Edgarus,
pleasant unless the-accustomed they-have-drunk sky whence Edgar
fatua cupidine illusus, Angliam rediit, unde, ut superius
by-foolish desire deluded to-England returned whence as above
dixi, diverso fortunæ ludicro rotatus, nunc remotus et
I-said by-various of-fortune play whirled now removed and
tacitus canos suos in agro consumit.
silent white-hairs his in the-country he-spends

De Edwino et Morcardo fratribus

THE BROTHERS EDWIN AND MORCAR

Edwin and Morcar, sons of Ælfgar son of Leofric, held the earldom of Northumbria, which its people had given one of them after expelling Tostig shortly before King Edward died, Harold supporting them against the king's wish. Tostig, outlawed, fell with the Norwegian king. After Hastings the brothers fled to their own lands and for some years troubled William's peace with robberies in the woods, never fighting him openly; often captured, they were released for their youth and nobility, and were at last betrayed and killed by their own men, to the king's sorrow.

Edwinus et Morcardus erant fratres, filii Elfgari filii Leofrici.
Edwin and Morcar were brothers sons of-Ælfgar son of-Leofric
Hi comitatum Northanhimbrorum susceperant, et communi
these the-earldom of-the-Northumbrians had-received and with-common
umbone pacifice tuebantur: nam, ut prædixi, paucis
shield peacefully protected for as I-have-said-before a-few
diebus ante mortem regis Edwardi, provinciales aquilonis in
days before the-death of-king Edward the-provincials of-the-north into
rebellionem surrexerant, et Tostinum comitem suum expulerant,
rebellion had-risen and Tostig earl their had-expelled
petierantque et acceperant unum e fratribus dominum,
and-had-asked and had-received one of the-brothers as-lord
annitente Haroldo. Fiebant ista, ut a consciis
with-striving Harold were-done these-things as from those-in-the-know
accepimus, infenso rege, quia Tostinum diligeret: sed morbo
we-have-heard with-hostile the-king because Tostig he-loved but by-illness
invalidus, senio gravis, pene jam despectui omnibus haberi
weak by-old-age heavy almost now in-contempt by-all to-be-held
cœperat, ut dilecto auxiliari non posset; quare ex animi
he-had-begun so-that to-the-beloved to-help not he-could wherefore from of-mind
ægritudine majorem valitudinem corporis contrahens, non multo
sickness a-greater weakness of-body contracting not much

post decessit. Perstitit in incepto Haroldus ut fratrem
after he-died persisted in the-undertaking Harold that his-brother
exlegaret: quocirca ille, prius piraticis excursibus avitos
he-should-outlaw wherefore he first by-piratical raids ancestral
triumphos polluens, mox cum rege Noricorum, ut supra
triumphs polluting soon with the-king of-the-Norwegians as above
scripsi, cæsus est. Cadaver ejus, indicio verrucæ inter duas
I-have-written slain was the-corpse his by-the-sign of-a-wart between the-two
scapulas agnitum, sepulturam Eboraci meruit. Tunc Edwinus
shoulders recognized burial at-York earned then Edwin
et Morcardus, Haroldo jubente, manubiales prædas Londoniam
and Morcar with-Harold ordering the-spoil plunders to-London
tulere; nam ipse ad Hastingensem pugnam festinabat, unde
carried for he-himself to the-Hastings battle was-hurrying whence
jam partam victoriam falso præsagus sompniabat. At, eo
already won the-victory falsely presaging he-dreamed but with-him
interempto, germani, ad terras suæ potestatis perfugientes,
killed the-brothers to the-lands of-their power fleeing
aliquot annis pacem Willelmi turbaverunt, clandestinis latrociniis
for-some years the-peace of-William disturbed with-clandestine robberies
sylvas infestantes, nec unquam cominus et aperte martem
the-woods infesting nor ever at-close-quarters and openly war
agentes; sæpe etiam capti plerumque se dedidere, sed
waging often also captured usually themselves they-surrendered but
miseratione juvenilis decoris, et gratia nobilitatis, impune
by-pity for-youthful beauty and by-the-grace of-nobility unpunished
dimissi. Postremo nec vi nec dolo hostium, sed
released lastly neither by-force nor by-the-trickery of-enemies but
suorum perfidia trucidati, regem ad lacrymas flexere;
of-their-own-men by-the-treachery slaughtered the-king to tears they-moved

quibus ipse et conjugia cognatarum et amicitiæ dignationem
to-whom he-himself both marriages of-his-kinswomen and of-friendship the-honor
jam pridem indulsisset, si quieti adquiescere vellent.
already long-before had-granted if to-quiet to-acquiesce they-would

De Weldeofo comite

EARL WALTHEOF; FLANDERS

Waltheof, son of Siward, who at York had beheaded Normans one by one at the gate, was received into the king's friendship and married his niece Judith, but joined the plot of Ralph of Gael, disclosed it to the king, and was beheaded and buried at Crowland, where miracles are told. Finding almost no Englishman faithful, William stripped the powerful, set English against English, and barred the English from church dignities. Ralph fled, and Roger, earl of Hereford, son of William fitz Osbern, spent his life in prison. William fitz Osbern himself, going to help Countess Richildis in Flanders, was killed by Robert the Frisian with her son Arnulf.

Weldeofus, amplæ prosapiæ comes, multam familiaritatem
Waltheof of-ample lineage an-earl much familiarity
novi regis nactus fuerat, quod ille, præteritarum offensarum
of-the-new king obtained had because he of-past offenses
immemor, magis illas virtuti quam perfidiæ attribuebat.
unmindful rather them to-valor than to-treachery attributed
Siquidem Weldeofus in Eboracensi pugna plures Normannorum
indeed Waltheof in the-York battle many of-the-Normans
solus obtruncaverat, unos et unos per portam egredientes
alone had-cut-down one and one through the-gate going-out
decapitans: nervosus lacertis, thorosus pectore, robustus
beheading sinewy in-arms brawny in-chest sturdy
et procerus toto corpore, filius Siwardi magnificentissimi
and tall in-whole body son of-Siward the-most-magnificent

comitis, quem "Digera" Danico vocabulo, id est fortem,
earl whom Digera by-a-Danish word that is strong
cognominabant. Postmodum vero, victis partibus, sese
they-surnamed afterward but with-conquered parties himself
sponte dedens, et Judithæ neptis regis connubio
of-his-own-accord surrendering and of-Judith of-the-niece of-the-king with-the-marriage
privataque amicitia donatus, non permansit in fide, pravum
and-with-private friendship presented not he-remained in faith his-crooked
ingenium cohibere impotens: compatriotis enim omnibus, qui
nature to-restrain powerless with-his-countrymen for all who
existimarant resistendum, cæsis vel subjectis, etiam in Radulfi
had-thought it-must-be-resisted slain or subjected even in of-Ralph
de Waher perfidia se immiscuit, sed conjuratione detecta,
of Gael the-treachery himself he-mingled but with-the-conspiracy detected
comprehensus diuque in vinculis tentus, ultimo spoliatus
arrested and-long in chains held at-last deprived
capite, Crolando sepultus est; quamvis quidam dicant,
of-his-head at-Crowland buried was although some say
necessitate interceptum, non voluntate addictum, infidelitatis
by-necessity caught not by-will devoted of-infidelity
sacramentum agitasse. Anglorum est ista excusatio; nam
the-oath to-have-plied of-the-English is this excuse for
cetera Normanni afferunt, Anglorum qui plurimum
the-other-things the-Normans allege of-the-English who most
præstent. Quorum astipulationi Divinitas suffragari videtur,
excel whose assent the-Divinity to-support seems
miracula multa, et ea permaxima, ad tumbam illius
miracles many and those very-great at the-tomb his
ostendens. Aiunt enim, in catenas conjectum, quotidianis
showing they-say for into chains thrown with-daily
singultibus perperam commissa diluisse.
sobs wrongly the-things-committed to-have-washed-away

Inde propositum regis fortassis merito excusatur, si aliquanto
thence the-purpose of-the-king perhaps deservedly is-excused if somewhat
durior in Anglos fuerit, quod pene nullum eorum fidelem
harsher toward the-English he-was because almost none of-them faithful
invenerit. Quæ res ita ferocem animum exasperabant, ut
he-found which thing so his-fierce mind exasperated that
potentiores primum pecuniis, mox terris, nonnullos etiam
the-more-powerful first of-moneys soon of-lands some even
vita exueret: quin etiam Cæsarianum secutus ingenium, qui
of-life he-stripped nay even the-Caesarian having-followed device who
Germanos in Ardenna maxima sylva abditos, et inde crebris
the-Germans in the-Ardennes greatest forest hidden and thence with-frequent
eruptionibus exercitum suum affligentes, non per Romanos
sallies army his afflicting not through Romans
suos sed per Gallos fœderatos expulit; ut, dum alienigenæ
his-own but through Gauls allied expelled so-that while foreigners
alterutros transfoderent, ipse sine sanguine triumphum
each-other transfixed he-himself without blood the-triumph
duceret. Idem, inquam, Willelmus in Anglos egit: nam
might-lead the-same I-say William against the-English did for
contra quosdam, qui post primam infelicis ominis pugnam
against certain-men who after the-first of-unhappy omen battle
Danemarchiam et Hiberniam profugerant, et valida
to-Denmark and Ireland had-fled and with-a-strong
congregata manu tertio anno redierant, Angligenam exercitum
gathered force in-the-third year had-returned an-English army
et ducem objecit, Normannos feriari permittens; ingens
and leader he-set-against the-Normans to-keep-holiday allowing huge
sibi levamen providens, utrilibet vincerent. Nec eum
for-himself relief foreseeing whichever might-win nor him
cogitatio lusit; nam utrique Angli, aliquamdiu digladiati
the-thought mocked for both English for-some-time having-fought-it-out

inter se, palmam otiosam regi refudere: advenæ
among themselves the-palm idle to-the-king returned the-newcomers
Hiberniam fugati; regii, maxima sui clade, nomen
to-Ireland put-to-flight the-royal-men with-very-great their-own slaughter the-name
inane victoriæ, amisso duce, mercati. Vocabatur is Ednodus,
empty of-victory with-lost leader bought was-called he Eadnoth
domi belloque Anglorum temporibus juxta insignis, pater
at-home and-in-war of-the-English in-times equally distinguished the-father
Herdingi qui adhuc superest, magis consuetus linguam in lites
of-Harding who still survives more accustomed his-tongue for lawsuits
acuere, quam arma in bello concutere. Ita laicorum potentia
to-sharpen than arms in war to-shake so of-the-laymen with-the-power
subruta, stabili quoque obfirmavit edicto ut nullum ejus
undermined by-a-firm also he-fortified edict that none of-that
gentis, monachum vel clericum, ad aliquam dignitatem conari
people monk or cleric to any dignity to-attempt
pateretur: a Cnutonis quondam regis facilitate immaniter
he-would-allow from of-Cnut once king the-easiness monstrously
abhorrens, qui victis honores integros exhibuit; unde
shrinking who to-the-conquered honors entire showed whence
factum est, ut, eo defuncto, indigenæ advenas leviter
done it-was that with-him dead the-natives the-newcomers easily
expellerent, sibique antiquum jus vendicarent. At iste
expelled and-for-themselves the-ancient right claimed but he
certis de causis viventes quosdam canonice deposuit, et in
certain for reasons living-ones some canonically deposed and into
locum illorum qui morerentur, cujuscunque gentis industrium,
the-place of-those who should-die of-whatever people a-diligent-man
præter Angligenam, imposuit. Exigebat hoc, nisi fallor,
except an-English he-put demanded this unless I-am-mistaken

indurata in regem pervicacia; cum sint Normanni, ut ante
the-hardened against the-king obstinacy since are the-Normans as before
dixi, in conviventes advenas naturali benignitate proclives.
I-said toward living-with-them strangers by-natural kindness inclined
Radulfus, de quo prius tetigi, erat per donum regis
Ralph about whom before I-touched was through the-gift of-the-king
comes Northfolki et Suthfolki; Brito ex patre, distorti ad
earl of-Norfolk and of-Suffolk a-Breton on the-father of-a-twisted to
omne bonum animi. Is, quod cognatam regis, filiam
all good mind be because the-kinswoman of-the-king the-daughter
Willelmi filii Osberni, desponderat, majora justo mente
of-William son of-Osbern had-betrothed greater-things than-right in-mind
metiens, tyrannidem adoriri meditabatur. Itaque ipso
measuring tyranny to-attempt meditated and-so on-the-very
nuptiarum die magnis apparatibus convivium agitatum, quod
of-the-wedding day with-great preparations a-banquet held because
Normannorum gulæ jam Anglorum luxus influxerat,
of-the-Normans to-the-gullet already of-the-English the-luxury had-flowed-in
ebriis convivis, et vino tumentibus, amplo verborum
with-drunk guests and with-wine swelling with-ample of-words
ambitu propositum suum aperit: illi, quia in eorum animo pro
circuit purpose his he-opens they because in their mind for
potu omnis ratio caligabat, ingenti plausu dicenti acclamant.
drink all reason was-darkened with-huge applause to-the-speaker acclaim
Ibi Rogerius comes Herefordensis, uxoris Radulfi frater,
there Roger earl of-Hereford of-the-wife of-Ralph brother
ibi Weldeofus, ibi præterea quamplurimi, in necem regis
there Waltheof there besides very-many into the-death of-the-king
conjurant; sed postero die, cum, digesto calore vini,
conspire but on-the-next day when with-digested heat of-the-wine
temperatior aura corda quorundam afflasset, major pars
a-more-temperate breeze the-hearts of-some had-breathed-on the-greater part

facti pœnitens a convivio dilapsa. Unus eorum Weldeof
of-the-deed repenting from the-banquet slipped-away one of-them Waltheof
fertur, qui consilio Lanfranci archiepiscopi Normanniam
is-said who by-the-counsel of-Lanfranc archbishop to-Normandy
ultro enavigans, rem regi, causa sua duntaxat
of-his-own-accord sailing-out the-matter to-the-king with-cause his-own only
celata, detulit: at comites in incepto persistere, provinciales
concealed reported but the-earls in the-undertaking to-persist the-provincials
suos quisque in tumultum excitare; sed obsistebat eis
their-own each into tumult to-rouse but opposed them
Deus, omnes conatus eorum in irritum deducens. Mox
God all efforts their into nothing bringing soon
enim re comperta, duces regis, qui custodiam
for with-the-thing discovered the-leaders of-the-king who guard
prætendebant, Radulfum ad hoc calamitatis compulere, ut,
were-holding-out Ralph to this of-calamity drove that
arrepta nave apud Norwic, mari se committeret: uxor
with-seized ship at Norwich to-the-sea himself he-committed the-wife
ejus, pacta membrorum salute, traditoque castello,
his having-bargained of-limbs safety and-with-handed-over castle
maritum secuta. Rogerius, a rege vinculis irretitus, tota
her-husband followed Roger by the-king in-chains entangled his-whole
vita carcerem frequentavit vel potius incoluit; detestandæ
life the-prison frequented or rather inhabited of-detestable
perfidiæ juvenis, nec moribus patrissans.
treachery a-youth nor in-manners taking-after-his-father
Siquidem genitor ejus, Willelmus filius Osberni, principibus
indeed the-father his William son of-Osbern to-princes
optimis comparandus fuerit haud scio an etiam præponendus.
the-best comparable was I-do-not know whether even to-be-preferred
Ejus consilio rex Willelmus primo animatus ad invadendam
by-his counsel king William first encouraged to invading

Angliam; mox, virtute adjutus, ad manutenendam. Erat
England soon by-his-valor helped to holding-it there-was
in eo mentis animositas quam commendabat manus pene
in him of-mind a-spirit which commended of-hand almost
prodiga liberalitas: unde factum est, ut militum multitudine,
prodigal liberality whence done it-was that of-soldiers by-the-multitude
quibus larga stipendia dabat, hostium aviditatem arceret,
to-whom ample pay he-gave of-the-enemies the-greed he-kept-off
civium sedulitatem haberet; quare pro effusis sumptibus
of-the-citizens the-zeal he-had wherefore for poured-out expenses
asperrimam regis offensam incurrit, quod gazas suas
most-bitter of-the-king the-offense he-incurred because treasures his
improvide dilapidaret. Manet ad hanc diem, in comitatu ejus
improvidently he-squandered remains to this day in the-county his
apud Herefordum, legum quas statuit inconcussa firmitas,
at Hereford of-the-laws which he-established unshaken the-firmness
ut nullus miles pro qualicunque commisso plus septem solidis
that no soldier for whatever offense more than-seven shillings
solvat; cum in aliis provinciis, ob parvam occasiunculam in
pays while in other provinces for a-small little-occasion in
transgressione præcepti herilis, viginti vel viginti quinque
transgression of-a-command lordly twenty or twenty five
pendantur. Sed tam secundos eventus turpi fine fortuna
are-paid but such favorable outcomes with-a-shameful end fortune
conclusit, dum tanti regni sustentator, Angliæ et
closed while of-so-great a-kingdom the-sustainer of-England and
Normanniæ consiliarius, pro fœminea cupidine Flandriam
of-Normandy the-counselor for womanly desire to-Flanders
pergens, ab insidiatoribus impetitus interiit. Nam Baldwinus
going by ambushers attacked perished for Baldwin
antiquus ille, de quo superius dixi, pater Matildis,
the-elder that about whom above I-have-spoken the-father of-Matilda

duos habuit filios: Robertum, qui, patre superstite
two had sons Robert who with-his-father surviving
comitissam Frisiæ uxorem nactus, Frisonis cognomen accepit:
the-countess of-Frisia as-wife having-got of-the-Frisian the-surname received
Baldwinum, qui post patrem aliquot annis Flandriæ præfuit,
Baldwin who after his-father some years over-Flanders presided
immatureque fato functus est; superstitibus duobus liberis
and-prematurely by-fate done was with-surviving two children
Arnulfo et Baldwino, de Richilde uxore, quorum tutelam
Arnulf and Baldwin from Richildis his-wife whose guardianship
regi Francorum Philippo, cujus amitæ filius erat, et
to-the-king of-the-Franks Philip whose of-the-aunt the-son he-was and
Willelmo filio Osberni, commendaverat. Libens id munus
to-William son of-Osbern he-had-commended gladly that office
suscepit Willelmus, ut, fœderatis cum Richilde nuptiis, altius
undertook William that with-allied with Richildis marriage a-loftier
nomen sibi pararet. At illa, fœmineo fastu ampliora
name for-himself he-might-prepare but she with-womanly arrogance greater-things
sexu spirans, novaque a provincialibus tributa exigens,
than-her-sex breathing and-new from the-provincials taxes exacting
in perfidiam illos excitavit; misso quippe propter Robertum
into treachery them roused with-sent indeed for Robert
Frisonem nuntio, ut supplicantis patriæ habenas acciperet,
the-Frisian a-messenger that of-the-supplicating fatherland the-reins he-should-take
omnem fidelitatem Arnulfo, qui jam comes dicebatur,
all fealty to-Arnulf who already count was-called
abjurant. Nec vero defuere qui pupilli partes fulcirent.
they-abjure nor indeed were-lacking those-who of-the-ward the-side propped
Ita multis diebus Flandria intestinis dissensionibus conturbata;
so for-many days Flanders by-internal dissensions disturbed
id filius Osberni, qui totus in amorem mulieris concesserat,
this the-son of-Osbern who wholly into love of-the-woman had-gone

pati nequivit, quin, militari manu coacta, Flandriam
to-bear could-not but-that with-military force gathered Flanders
intraret; susceptusque primo ab his quos tutari venerat, post
he-entered and-received at-first by those whom to-protect he-had-come after
paucos dies securus de castello in aliud equitabat, expeditus
a-few days secure from castle into another was-riding unencumbered
cum paucis: contra, Friso, quem hujusmodi fatuitas non
with a-few against-him the-Frisian whom of-this-kind folly not
latebat, occultatis insidiis inopinum excepit, et nequicquam
escaped with-hidden ambushes unexpected caught and in-vain
fortiter agentem ipsum et nepotem suum Arnulfum cecidit.
bravely acting him and nephew his Arnulf cut-down

ROBERT THE FRISIAN, AND THE KINGS OF NORWAY

Robert the Frisian, master of Flanders, harried William, married his daughter to Cnut of Denmark, went to Jerusalem, and died withdrawn from affairs; his son died of a tournament wound, and his grandson Baldwin of a blow in Normandy, leaving Flanders to Charles. William ruled England, held the Welsh as tributaries, campaigned in Maine, lost many men at Dol, was wounded at Gerberoy when his son Robert sided with Philip, and recorded the whole land in writing. Cnut alone threatened him, which leads to the kings of Denmark and Norway, from Sweyn and Magnus and Olaf the saint through Harold Hardrada, killed in England, to Magnus, killed in Ireland, and Sigurd, who lately sailed to Jerusalem.

Ita Flandria potitus, sæpe Willelmum regem
so of-Flanders having-gained-possession often William the-king
Normannicis prædis irritavit. Filia ejus Cnutoni regi
with-Norman plunders he-provoked the-daughter his to-Cnut king
Danorum nupsit, de qua genitus est Carolus, qui modo
of-the-Danes married from whom born was Charles who now
principatur in Flandria. Pacem cum Philippo rege comparavit,
rules in Flanders peace with Philip the-king he-procured

data sibi in uxorem privigna, de qua ille Lodowicum
with-given to-himself as wife his-stepdaughter from whom he Louis
tulit qui modo regnat in Francia; nec multo post, pertæsus
bore who now reigns in France nor much after weary
connubii, quod illa præpinguis corpulentiæ esset, a lecto
of-the-marriage because she of-very-fat corpulence was from his-bed
removit, uxoremque Andegavensis comitis contra fas et jus
he-removed and-the-wife of-the-Angevin count against right and law
sibi conjunxit. Eorum affinitate tutus, Robertus nihil quod
to-himself joined by-their affinity safe Robert nothing which
deploraret suo tempore vidit; licet Baldwinus frater Arnulfi,
he-should-deplore in-his time saw although Baldwin brother of-Arnulf
qui in Hanoea provincia et castello Valentianis comitatum
who in the-Hainault province and the-castle of-Valenciennes the-county
habuit, regis Willelmi auxilio plures assultus faceret. Tribus
held of-king William with-the-help many assaults made three
ante mortem annis, jam canis sparsus caput, Jerosolimam
before death years already with-white sprinkled on-his-head to-Jerusalem
contendit pro peccatorum alleviamento; regressus mundanis
he-went for of-sins alleviation having-returned to-worldly
involucris renuntiavit, finem vitæ quietus a negotiis
wrappings he-renounced the-end of-life quiet from business
Christiana sollicitudine operiens. Filius ejus Robertus ille
with-Christian solicitude awaiting the-son his Robert that
fuit qui in expeditione Asiatica quam nostris diebus Europa
was who in the-expedition Asiatic which in-our days Europe
contra Turchos movit, mirandus innotuit; sed nescio quo
against the-Turks moved wonderful became-known but I-know-not by-what
infortunio, postquam domum reversus est, nobilem illum
misfortune after home returned he-has noble that
laborem decoloravit, in quodam quod vocant torniamento ad
labor he-discolored in a-certain which they-call tournament to

mortem læsus. Nec filium ejus Baldwinum fortuna excepit
death hurt nor the-son his Baldwin fortune received
felicior, qui, ultro in Normannia regis Anglorum
more-fortunate who of-his-own-accord in Normandy of-the-king of-the-English
Henrici vires lacessens, juvenilis audaciæ temeritatem luit;
Henry the-forces provoking of-youthful daring the-rashness paid-for
namque conto in capite percussus, multorumque medicorum
for by-a-pike on the-head struck and-of-many doctors
promissis illusus, metam vitæ abrupit, Carolo illi de quo
by-the-promises deluded the-goal of-life he-broke-off to-Charles that about whom
supra diximus principatu tradito.
above we-have-spoken with-the-principality handed-over
At vero rex Willelmus in subjectos leniter, turbide in
but indeed king William toward his-subjects mildly turbulently toward
rebelles agens, feliciter omni Anglia potiebatur, Walenses
rebels acting happily of-all England was-master the-Welsh
omnes tributarios habens. Jam vero trans mare, nunquam
all as-tributaries having now but across the-sea never
otiosus, Cenomannico solo pene exterminium indixit, ducta
idle on-the-Maine soil almost extermination he-proclaimed with-led
expeditione illuc de Anglis, qui sicut facile in solo suo
expedition thither of English who as easily in soil their-own
potuerunt opprimi, ita in alieno semper apparuere invicti.
could to-be-overwhelmed so in another always appeared unconquered
Apud Dolum, castellum transmarinæ Britanniæ, dum nescio
at Dol a-castle of-overseas Brittany while I-know-not
qua simultate irritatus manum illuc militarem duxisset,
by-what grudge provoked a-band thither military he-had-led
innumeros ex suis desideravit. Philippum regem Francorum,
countless of his-own he-lost Philip king of-the-Franks
cujus amitæ filiam uxorem duxerat, semper infidum
whose of-the-aunt the-daughter as-wife he-had-married always faithless

habuit, quod scilicet ille tantam gloriam viro invideret quem
he-had because namely he so-great glory to-a-man begrudged whom
et patris sui et suum hominem esse constaret: sed Willelmus
both of-father his and his-own man to-be it-was-established but William
nihilo secius ejus conatibus improbe obviabat, quamvis
by-nothing the-less his attempts wickedly opposed although
primogenitus filius ejus Robertus fatuo consilio conatibus
the-firstborn son his Robert by-foolish counsel attempts
ejus assisteret; unde contigit, ut in quodam assultu apud
his assisted whence it-happened that in a-certain assault at
Gibboracum filius patri resultans, eo vulnerato, equum
Gerberoy the-son his-father resisting with-him wounded the-horse
ipsius confoderet, Willelmus medius filiorum saucius abiret,
his pierced William the-middle of-the-sons wounded went-away
multi ex regiis caderent. Ceterum tota vita ita fortunatus
many of the-royal-men fell for-the-rest his-whole life so fortunate
fuit, ut exteræ et remotæ gentes nihil magis quam nomen
he-was that foreign and remote peoples nothing more than the-name
ejus timerent. Provinciales adeo nutui suo substraverat, ut sine
his feared the-provincials so-far to-nod his he-had-subjected that without
ulla contradictione primus censum omnium capitum ageret,
any contradiction first a-census of-all heads he-made
omnium prædiorum redditus in tota Anglia notitiæ suæ
of-all estates the-revenues in the-whole England to-knowledge his
per scriptum adjiceret, omnes liberos homines, cujuscunque
through writing he-added all free men to-whomever
essent, suæ fidelitati sacramento adigeret. Solus ejus
they-belonged to-his fealty by-oath he-bound alone his
majestatem concutiebat Cnuto rex Danorum, qui et affinitate
majesty shook Cnut king of-the-Danes who both by-affinity
Roberti Frisonis et suapte potentia in immensum extollebatur;
of-Robert the-Frisian and by-his-very power into immensity was-raised

rumore in populos sato quod Angliam invaderet,
with-a-rumor among the-peoples sown that England he-would-invade
debitum sibi pro affinitate antiqui Cnutonis solum: et
due to-himself for the-affinity of-the-old Cnut soil and
profecto fecisset nisi Deus ejus audaciam vento
surely he-would-have-done-it unless God his daring with-wind
contrario infirmasset. Quæ res admonuit ut genealogiam
contrary had-weakened which thing has-warned-me that the-genealogy
regum Danorum qui post nostrum Cnutonem fuere seriatim
of-the-kings of-the-Danes who after our Cnut were in-order
abbreviem, de Noricis quoque pauca inserturus.
I-should-abridge about the-Norwegians also a-few-things about-to-insert
Ei, ut ante dictum est, successit Haroldus in Anglia,
to-him as before said it-was succeeded Harold in England
Hardecnutus in Danemarchia, filii ejus; nam Noricam,
Harthacnut in Denmark sons his for Norway
quam subegerat, recuperavit Magnus, filius Olavi quem in
which he-had-subdued recovered Magnus son of-Olaf whom in
gestis Cnutonis dixi a provincialibus suis necatum fuisse.
the-deeds of-Cnut I-said by provincials his killed to-have-been
Haroldo in Anglia defuncto, ambo regna tenuit Hardecnutus
with-Harold in England dead both kingdoms held Harthacnut
pauco tempore: quo mortuo successit Edwardus simplex,
for-a-little time with-whom dead succeeded Edward simple
avitoque regno contentus, transmarinum imperium ut
and-with-ancestral kingdom content the-overseas empire as
laboriosum et barbarum despuit. Tunc rex Danorum levatus
laborious and barbarous spat-out then king of-the-Danes raised
est Swanus quidam, haud dubie nobilissimus; cujus cum
was Sweyn a-certain not doubtfully most-noble whose when
regnum aliquot annis prosperaretur, Magnus rex Noricorum,
the-kingdom for-some years prospered Magnus king of-the-Norwegians

consentientibus Danis quibusdam, illum vi bellica expellens,
with-consenting Danes certain him by-force of-war expelling
suo animo terram subjecit. Ejectus Swanus regem Suevorum
to-his-own mind the-land subjected expelled Sweyn the-king of-the-Swedes
adiit, ejusque auxilio, cum Suevos et Windelicos et
went-to and-with-his help when Swedes and Wends and
Gothos corrasisset, rediit ut regnum reformaret; sed
Goths he-had-scraped-together he-returned that the-kingdom he-might-restore but
conspirantibus Danis, qui potestatem Magni diligerent, prioris
with-conspiring Danes who the-power of-Magnus loved of-his-former
fortunæ calamitatem expertus est. Ingens illud et memorabile
fortune the-calamity experienced he-has huge that and memorable
in ea barbarie prælium fuit, quod nunquam vel discrimen
in that barbarism a-battle was because never either a-danger
formidabilius vel omen lætius Dani viderunt. Denique ad
more-formidable or an-omen gladder the-Danes saw finally to
hoc tempus votum illibatum custodiunt, quo se ante
this time a-vow unbroken they-keep by-which themselves before
pugnam constrinxerunt, ut vigiliam sancti Laurentii cunctis
the-battle they-bound that the-vigil of-saint Lawrence for-all
in posterum seculis jejunio et eleemosynis sacrarent. Eo
into the-future ages with-fasting and alms they-would-hallow on-that
enim die certatum, et tunc quidem Swanus fugit: sed non
for day it-was-fought and then indeed Sweyn fled but not
multo post, mortuo Magno, regnum suum integre recepit.
much after with-dead Magnus kingdom his wholly he-received-back
Successit Magno in Norica Swanus quidam, Herdhand
succeeded to-Magnus in Norway Sweyn a-certain Herdhand
cognominatus, non de regia progenie, sed manu et calliditate
surnamed not from royal stock but by-hand and cunning
provectus: illi Olavus, patruus Magni, quem sanctum ferunt:
advanced to-him Olaf the-uncle of-Magnus whom a-saint they-say

Olavo Haroldus Harvagra, frater Olavi, qui etiam imperatori
to-Olaf Harold Hardrada the-brother of-Olaf who also for-the-emperor
Constantinopolitano dudum juvenis militaverat; cujus jussu
of-Constantinople long-ago as-a-youth had-soldiered whose by-the-order
pro stupro illustris fœminæ leoni objectus, beluam immanem
for the-rape of-a-noble woman to-a-lion thrown the-beast monstrous
nudo lacertorum nisu suffocavit. Hic in Anglia ab Haroldo
by-the-bare of-his-arms effort he-strangled he in England by Harold
filio Godwini cæsus. Filii ejus, Olavus et Magnus, regnum
son of-Godwin slain the-sons his Olaf and Magnus the-kingdom
paternum partiti; sed, Magno præmature mortuo, Olavus
paternal divided but with-Magnus prematurely dead Olaf
totum occupavit. Illi successit filius Magnus, qui nuper
the-whole seized to-him succeeded his-son Magnus who lately
in Hibernia, dum temere illuc appulisset, miserabiliter
in Ireland when rashly thither he-had-put-in wretchedly
occisus est. Ferunt Magnum superiorem, filium Haroldi,
killed was they-say Magnus the-elder son of-Harold
post mortem patris ab Haroldo rege Angliæ clementer
after the-death of-his-father by Harold king of-England mercifully
domum dimissum, illius beneficii memoria, Haroldum filium
home sent of-that kindness in-memory Harold son
Haroldi, post victoriam Willelmi ad se venientem, benigne
of-Harold after the-victory of-William to him coming kindly
tractasse; eundemque in expeditione socium habuisse
to-have-treated and-the-same in the-expedition as-companion to-have-had
quam in Angliam tempore Willelmi junioris duxit, quando
which into England in-the-time of-William the-younger he-led when
et Orchadas et Mevanias insulas sibi subjecit, et
both the-Orkneys and the-Mevanian islands to-himself he-subjected and
occurrentes comites, Hugonem Cestrensem et Hugonem
the-encountering earls Hugh of-Chester and Hugh

Salopesbiriensem, priorem fugit, secundum interemit. Filii
of-Shrewsbury the-former he-fled the-latter he-killed the-sons
ultimi Magni, Hasten et Siwardus, regno adhuc
of-the-last Magnus Eystein and Sigurd with-the-kingdom still
diviso imperitant; quorum posterior, adolescens speciosus et
divided rule of-whom the-latter a-youth handsome and
audax, non multum est quod Jerosolimam per Angliam
bold not much it-is since to-Jerusalem through England
navigavit, innumera et præclara facinora contra Saracenos
he-sailed countless and famous deeds against the-Saracens
consummans, præsertim in obsessione Sidonis, quæ pro
accomplishing especially in the-siege of-Sidon which for
conscientia Turchorum immania in Christianos fremebat.
complicity with-the-Turks monstrous-things against the-Christians roared

SWEYN AND CNUT OF DENMARK; ROBERT GUISCARD

Cnut, king of Denmark, gathered a thousand ships against England, but contrary winds held him two years, and the Danes killed him at an altar. Against him William hired mercenaries, ashamed to yield in courage to Robert Guiscard, the Norman who won Apulia and Calabria, drove Henry IV from Rome, and died of poison Alexius contrived.

Sed Swanus in regno Danorum ut dixi restitutus, ægre
but Sweyn in the-kingdom of-the-Danes as I-said restored hardly
quietem ferens, in Angliam bis Cnutonem filium misit;
quiet bearing into England twice Cnut his-son sent
primo cum trecentis, secundo cum ducentis navibus. Prioris
first with three-hundred second with two-hundred ships of-the-first
classis socius fuit Osbernus frater Swani, sequentis
fleet the-companion was Osbern brother of-Sweyn of-the-following

Hacco: utrique accepta pecunia conatus adolescentis fregere,
Hakon both with-received money the-attempts of-the-youth broke
domum sine effectu repatriantes; quare a Swano rege
home without effect returning-to-their-country wherefore by Sweyn the-king
gravi contumelia inusti, quod fidem pecunia læsissent,
with-heavy disgrace branded because faith for-money they-had-harmed
in exilium acti sunt. Swanus, ad mortem veniens, omnes
into exile driven were Sweyn to death coming all
juramento provinciales constrinxit ut, quia quatuordecim filios
by-oath the-provincials bound that because fourteen sons
habebat, omnibus per ordinem regnum delegarent, quantum
he-had to-all in order the-kingdom they-should-assign as-long-as
ipsa soboles durare posset. Eo ergo defuncto, successit
that offspring to-last could with-him therefore dead succeeded
filius Haroldus annis tribus; illi Cnuto, quem pater
his-son Harold for-years three to-him Cnut whom his-father
in Angliam miserat. Is, veteris repulsæ memor, classem,
into England had-sent he of-the-old repulse mindful a-fleet
ut accepimus, mille et eo amplius navium in
as we-have-heard a-thousand and than-that more of-ships against
Angliam parat; auxilio ei erat socer Robertus Friso
England prepares for-help to-him was his-father-in-law Robert the-Frisian
secentarum ratium dominus: sed duobus pene annis venti
of-six-hundred vessels lord but for-two almost years of-the-wind
adversitate coercitus, voluntatem mutavit, pronuntians non
by-the-adversity restrained his-will he-changed declaring not
sine Dei nutu esse quod transfretare nequiret. Verum post
without of-God the-nod to-be that to-cross-over he-could-not but after
modicum quorundam coloquiis depravatus, qui difficultatem
a-little of-certain-men by-the-talks corrupted who the-difficulty
transitus anicularum maleficiis imputabant, optimatibus
of-the-crossing of-old-women to-the-witchcrafts imputed on-the-magnates

quarum fœminæ de hoc insimulabantur, pensiones importabiles
whose women of this were-accused payments unbearable
indixit; Olavum quoque fratrem, factionis ejusdem principem
he-imposed Olaf also his-brother of-faction the-same the-leader
accusatum, vinculis irretivit, et socero in exilium misit:
accused with-chains he-bound and to-his-father-in-law into exile sent
quapropter barbari, libertatis suæ injuriam non ferentes,
wherefore the-barbarians of-liberty their the-injury not bearing
intra ecclesiam quandam altare amplexum, et emendationem
within a-church certain the-altar embracing and amendment
facti promittentem, trucidarunt. Aiunt eo loci multa
of-the-deed promising slaughtered-him they-say in-that place many
miracula cælitus ostensa, quod fuerit vir ille jejuniis et
miracles from-heaven shown because was man that to-fasts and
eleemosynis deditus, et qui in legum transgressores magis
alms given and who in of-the-laws the-transgressors rather
divinas quam suas persequeretur contumelias; unde et
the-divine than his-own pursued insults whence also
ei martyris honor consecratus est a papa Romano.
to-him of-a-martyr the-honor consecrated was by the-pope Roman
Post eum homicidæ, ut invidiam facti aliquo bono
after him the-murderers that the-odium of-the-deed with-some good
compensarent, Olavum a vinculis decem milibus marcarum
they-might-compensate Olaf from chains with-ten thousands of-marks
argenti redemerunt. Hic, octo annis ignave imperitans,
of-silver ransomed he for-eight years sluggishly ruling
regnum fratri Henrico reliquit. Is, viginti et novem
the-kingdom to-his-brother Henry left he for-twenty and nine
annis modeste vivens, Jerosolimam abiit, medioque mari
years modestly living to-Jerusalem went and-in-the-middle sea
spiritum evomuit. Quintus nunc Nicolaus in regno subsistit.
his-spirit breathed-out the-fifth now Nicholas in the-kingdom remains

Rex igitur Danorum, ut dixi, solus erat obstaculum ne
the-king therefore of-the-Danes as I-said alone was the-obstacle lest
Willelmus continua feriaretur lætitia, cujus respectu
William with-continuous should-keep-holiday joy whose in-regard
tantam multitudinem stipendiariorum conducebat militum ex
so-great a-multitude of-stipendiary he-hired soldiers from
omni quæ citra montes est provincia, ut eorum copia
every which this-side-of the-mountains is province so-that their abundance
regnum gravaret; sed ipse, pro magnanimitate sua, dispendium
the-kingdom burdened but he for magnanimity his the-loss
expensarum non sentiens, etiam Hugonem Magnum, regis
of-expenses not feeling even Hugh the-Great of-the-king
Francorum fratrem, cum illius commilitio, inter militares
of-the-Franks brother with his comradeship among the-military
numeros sibi serviturum redegerat. Animabat et excitabat
numbers to-himself about-to-serve had-brought encouraged and roused
ipse virtutem suam propter Roberti Guiscardi memoriam,
he-himself valor his-own on-account-of of-Robert Guiscard the-memory
pronuntians pudendum si illi fortitudine cederet quem
declaring it-shameful if to-him in-bravery he-should-yield whom
nobilitate præiret; siquidem Robertus, mediocri parentela in
in-nobility he-surpassed indeed Robert of-middling parentage in
Normannia ortus, quæ nec humi reperet nec altum
Normandy born which neither on-the-ground crawled nor highly
quid tumeret, paucis ante adventum Willelmi in Angliam
anything swelled a-few before the-coming of-William into England
annis, cum quindecim militibus abierat Apuliam, penuriam
years with fifteen soldiers had-gone-away to-Apulia the-want
necessariorum gentis illius ignavæ stipendiis correcturus.
of-necessities of-the-people that sluggish with-its-pay about-to-correct
Nec multi fluxerunt anni quod, stupendo Dei munere, totam
nor many flowed years before by-amazing of-God gift the-whole

terram in potestatem accepit: nam ubi viribus destituebatur,
land into power he-received for where in-strength he-was-lacking
ingenio callebat; oppida primo, mox civitates, suæ ditioni
in-wit he-was-skilled towns first soon cities to-his dominion
associans. Ita ergo profecit ut se ducem Apuliæ
joining so therefore he-advanced that himself duke of-Apulia
et Calabriæ, fratrem Ricardum principem Capuæ, alterum
and of-Calabria his-brother Richard prince of-Capua the-other
Rogerum comitem Siciliæ, faceret. Postremo, data Apulia
Roger count of-Sicily he-made lastly with-given Apulia
filio Rogero, cum altero filio Boamundo Adriaticum pelagus
to-his-son Roger with the-other son Bohemond the-Adriatic sea
transivit; statimque Dirachio capto, super Alexium imperatorem
he-crossed and-at-once with-Durazzo taken upon Alexius the-emperor
Constantinopolitanum ulterius progrediebatur: sævientem retinuit
of-Constantinople farther he-was-advancing him-raging restrained
nuncius Hildebrandi apostolici. Imperator enim Alamannorum
the-message of-Hildebrand the-apostolic the-emperor for of-the-Germans
Henricus, filius Henrici de quo supra memoravimus, iratus
Henry son of-Henry about whom above we-have-mentioned angered
contra papam quod excommunicationem in eum propter
against the-pope because excommunication on him on-account-of
investituras ecclesiarum promulgaverat, cum exercitu veniens,
the-investitures of-churches he-had-promulgated with an-army coming
Romam obsedit, Hildebrandum expulit, Guibertum Ravennatem
Rome besieged Hildebrand expelled Guibert of-Ravenna
introduxit. Quo per litteras expulsi Guiscardus audito,
brought-in which through the-letters of-the-expelled-one Guiscard heard
relicto filio Boamundo cum militibus ut inchoata paterna
with-left son Bohemond with soldiers that the-begun paternal-things
persequeretur, Apuliam rediit: contracta velociter Apulorum
he-should-pursue to-Apulia returned with-gathered swiftly of-Apulians

et Normannorum manu, Romam tendebat. Nec sustinuit
and of-Normans force to-Rome he-was-heading nor endured
nuntium advenientis Henricus, quin cum falso papa, sola
the-news of-the-coming-one Henry but-that with the-false pope by-sole
fama territus, terga daret. Vacua ab obsessoribus, Roma
report terrified his-back he-should-give empty of besiegers Rome
legitimum præsulem accepit; sed non multo post, eadem
the-lawful bishop received but not much after by-the-same
violentia qua prius, amisit. Tunc quoque Alexius, audiens
violence by-which before lost-him then also Alexius hearing
Robertum ad sua necessario revocatum, summamque manum
Robert to his-own necessarily recalled and-the-final hand
bello imponere sperans, supra Boamundum, qui partes relictas
to-the-war to-put hoping upon Bohemond who the-parts left
tuebatur, irruit; sed Normannus, gentilitii roboris tenax
was-protecting rushed but the-Norman of-national strength tenacious
adolescens, arietantes Græcos, et ceteras quæ convenerant
a-youth the-butting Greeks and the-other who had-assembled
gentes, usu militari, quamvis multum numero inferior,
peoples by-military practice although much in-number inferior
fugæ tradidit. Eodem quoque tempore Veneti, gens mari
to-flight handed-over at-the-same also time the-Venetians a-people to-the-sea
assueta, Guiscardum, propter quæ venerat sedatis,
accustomed Guiscard on-account-of which he-had-come (with-those-things)-settled
transfretare volentem aggressi, superiorem calamitatem
to-cross-back wishing having-attacked the-former calamity
sensere; pars mersi et cæsi, pars fugati. Ille, cœptam enavigans
felt part sunk and slain part routed he the-begun sailing-out
viam, multas civitates Alexii suæ voluntati applicuit. Sustulit
way many cities of-Alexius to-his will joined removed
imperator maleficio quem virtute nequibat, uxori ipsius
the-emperor by-witchcraft him-whom by-valor he-could-not to-the-wife his

conubium augustale mentitus: cujus insidiis elaboratum virus
marriage imperial falsely-promising whose by-plots worked poison
hauriens interiit, meliorem exitum, si Deus voluisset, emeritus;
drinking he-perished a-better exit if God had-wished having-earned
invincibilis hostili ferro, et domestico obnoxius veneno.
unconquerable by-hostile iron and to-domestic liable poison
Sepultus est apud Venusam Apuliæ, habens epitaphium:
buried was at Venosa of-Apulia having an-epitaph

"Hic terror mundi Guiscardus; hic expulit urbe
Here the-terror of-the-world Guiscard here drove-out from-the-city
Quem Ligures regem, Roma, Lemannus, habent.
Whom the-Ligurians king Rome Lake-Leman have
Parthus, Arabs, Macedumque phalanx non texit Alexin,
Parthian Arab and-of-the-Macedonians the-phalanx not covered Alexius
At fuga; sed Venetum nec fuga nec pelagus."
But flight but of-the-Venetians neither flight nor the-sea

De Hildebrando papa

POPE HILDEBRAND

William tells what a man swore he had heard from Abbot Hugh of Cluny: Hildebrand, set over the papal chancery by Alexander, rode the provinces correcting abuses and saw into men's thoughts, reproving Hugh for thinking him a puffed-up little man. Later, praying beside Hugh, he complained that Jesus had turned from him to Hugh's prayer, and foretold a plague from an angel with a drawn sword; at their inn the household began to die, and they fled.

Verum, quia Hildebrandi mentio se ingessit, de eo
but because of-Hildebrand mention itself has-pressed-in about him
dicam quæ non frivolo auditu hausi, sed seria relatione
I-shall-say what not by-frivolous hearsay I-have-drunk but by-serious account
ejus audivi qui se illa ex ore Hugonis abbatis
from-him I-have-heard who himself those-things from the-mouth of-Hugh abbot
Cluniacensis audisse juraret. Quæ ideo admiror et
of-Cluny to-have-heard would-swear which therefore I-wonder-at and
prædico, quia cogitationes aliorum prophetico mentis intuitu
proclaim because the-thoughts of-others with-prophetic of-mind gaze
pronuntiabat. Alexander eum papa efficax, ipsius studium
he-pronounced Alexander him the-pope effective his zeal
conspicatus, cancellis apostolorum præfecerat. Circumibat
having-seen over-the-chancery of-the-apostles had-set he-went-round
ergo pro sui contuitu officii provincias, ut perperam acta
therefore for of-his regard office the-provinces that wrongly things-done
corrigeret. Accurrebatur ab omnium ordinum hominibus,
he-might-correct they-ran-to-him by of-all orders men
decisiones diversorum negotiorum postulantibus. Cuncta ei
decisions of-various business demanding all to-him
submittebatur secularis potentia, tum pro sanctitatis, tum pro
was-submitted secular power both for of-holiness and for

ministerii ipsius reverentia. Unde die quadam, cum solito
of-his-ministry very the-reverence whence on-a-day certain when than-usual
major adequitantum esset turma, abbas prædictus in extremo
greater of-those-riding-up was the-troop the-abbot aforesaid at the-last
agmine cum monachis suis sensim progrediebatur; visoque
of-the-column with monks his gradually advanced and-with-seen
eminus tanto viri honore, quod tot mundanæ potestates
from-afar so-great of-the-man honor that so-many worldly powers
nutum illius præstolarentur, hujuscemodi sententias ventilabat
the-nod his should-await of-this-kind thoughts be-turned-over
animo: Homuncionem exilis staturæ, despicabilis parentelæ,
in-mind a-little-man of-slender stature of-despicable parentage
quo Dei judicio tot divitum sepiri famulitio? tumere
by-what of-God judgment so-many of-rich-men to-be-hedged with-a-retinue to-swell
illum proculdubio, et metiri altiora merito, pro tot
him without-doubt and to-measure higher-things deservedly for so-many
obambulatorum obsequio. Vix hæc ut, dixi, mente
of-those-walking-around the-attendance scarcely these-things as I-said in-mind
versarat, cum archidiaconus, reflexo equo et calcaribus
he-had-turned when the-archdeacon with-turned horse and with-spurs
incito, a longe clamans et abbatem obuncans, "Tu, tu,"
urged from afar calling and the-abbot hooking-in you you
inquit, "male cogitasti, falso infamans hujusce duntaxat rei
he-said badly have-thought falsely defaming of-this-sort only of-a-thing
innocentem: non enim mihi hanc gloriam, si gloria dici
an-innocent-man not for to-myself this glory if glory be-called
potest quæ cito transit, vel ego imputo vel ab aliis imputari
it-can which quickly passes either I impute or by others to-be-imputed
volo, sed beatis apostolis, quorum exhibetur privilegio."
wish but to-the-blessed apostles whose is-shown by-privilege
Suffusus ille pudore, nec quicquam inficiari ausus, hoc solum
suffused he with-shame nor anything to-deny daring this only

retulit: "Quæso, domine, quomodo nosti cogitatum meum,
replied I-ask lord how did-you-know thought my
quem nulli communicavi?" "Ab ore," ait, "tuo, quasi
which to-no-one I-communicated from the-mouth he-said your as-if
per fistulas, ad aures meas omnis illa cogitatio deducta est."
through pipes to ears my all that thought led was
Item in eadem provincia ecclesiam urbanam ingressi, ante
likewise in the-same province a-church of-the-city having-entered before
aram continuatis et junctis lateribus se prostraverant.
the-altar with-continued and joined sides themselves they-had-prostrated
In multam horam protracta oratione, respexit archidiaconus
into much hour drawn-out the-prayer looked-back the-archdeacon
abbatem, turbulento rictu infrendens: ille, cum diutius oratum
at-the-abbot with-a-turbulent grimace gnashing he when longer prayed
esset, fores egressus, causamque commotionis percunctatus,
it-had-been the-doors having-gone-out and-the-cause of-his-agitation inquiring
responsum accepit: "Si me amare vis, cave ne ulterius
an-answer received if me to-love you-wish beware lest further
hac me injuria expungas. Dominus meus Jesus, speciosus
with-this me injury you-strike-out Lord my Jesus beautiful
ille præ filiis hominum, postulationibus meis visibiliter
he above the-sons of-men to-petitions my visibly
astabat, intendens dictis, et serenis favens oculis; sed, tuæ
stood attending to-my-words and with-serene favoring eyes but of-your
orationis addictus violentia, me deseruit, ad te conversus:
prayer bound-over by-the-violence me deserted to you turned
puto quod tu ipse non diffiteberis esse genus injuriæ si
I-think that you yourself not will-deny to-be a-kind of-injury if
amico eripias auctorem salutis suæ. Præterea prænoveris
from-a-friend you-snatch the-author of-salvation his besides know-beforehand
mortalitatem hominum, et huic loco imminere excidium;
a-mortality of-men and on-this place to-impend destruction

cujus conjecturæ signum habeo, quod angelum Domini super
of-which conjecture a-sign I-have that an-angel of-the-Lord over
altare stantem vidi evaginatum gladium stringere, et huc
the-altar standing I-saw drawn a-sword to-grip and here
illucque rotare. Futuræ cladis notabilius habeo indicium, quod
and-there to-whirl of-the-future disaster more-notable I-have a-sign that
jam spissus et nebulosus aer provinciam istam circumvolat,
already thick and cloudy air province this flies-round
ut vides. Maturemus ergo profugium, nisi cum aliis velimus
as you-see let-us-hasten therefore flight unless with others we-wish
subire exitium." His dictis introeuntes diversorium,
to-undergo destruction with-these-things said entering the-inn
ad curam corporis assedere; continuoque dapibus appositis,
for the-care of-the-body they-sat-down and-straightway with-dishes set-before
exortus in domo luctus aviditatem esurientium repressit,
arising in the-house mourning the-eagerness of-the-hungry checked
siquidem unus et alter, et mox plures e familia, dubium
since one and another and soon more of the-household doubtful
qua pernicie intercepti, animas subito amisere. Tum eadem
by-what plague caught their-souls suddenly lost then with-the-same
peste per vicinas ædes grassante, ascensis mulis
plague through the-neighboring houses raging with-mounted mules
diffugiunt, festinationem viæ stimulis timoris accelerantes.
they-flee-apart the-haste of-the-road with-the-spurs of-fear quickening

De episcopo per simoniam introducto

A BISHOP WHO BOUGHT HIS SEE

At a council in Gaul Hildebrand had a bishop accused of simony, whom no witness could convict, say 'Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit'; he could never name the Spirit and was deposed. As Gregory VII Hildebrand banned lay investiture, was driven from Rome by Henry IV, and dying named Desiderius and Odo, later Victor and Urban. William turns to the king's private life: his devotions, St Stephen's at Caen under Lanfranc, Battle Abbey, and his deposing his uncle Mauger of Rouen for neglecting his office or, some say, for excommunicating him over his marriage to his kinswoman Matilda, which the couple atoned for with the two abbeys at Caen.

In Gallia vicepapa præsederat concilio; ibi plures episcopi, olim
in Gaul the-vice-pope had-presided over-a-council there many bishops once
per simoniam in ecclesias introducti, degradati, potioribus
through simony into churches brought-in degraded to-better-men
locum dedere. Unus erat quem suspicio istius apostasiæ
place gave one there-was whom the-suspicion of-this apostasy
insimulabat, sed nullis testibus argui, nullis argumentis
accused but by-no witnesses to-be-convicted by-no arguments
confutari poterat: quem cum putares constrictum maxime,
to-be-refuted could whom when you-thought held-fast most
more anguis lubrici elapsum mirareris; ita dicendi
in-the-manner of-a-snake slippery escaped you-would-wonder so of-speaking
arte callebat ut omnes eluderet. Tunc archidiaconus:
in-the-art he-was-skilled that all he-eluded then the-archdeacon
"Cesset hominum eloquium, producatur in medium divinum
let-cease of-men the-eloquence let-be-brought-forth into the-middle the-divine
oraculum: scimus profecto quod episcopalis gratia Sancti
oracle we-know surely that the-episcopal grace of-the-Holy
Spiritus munus est; et quisquis episcopatum mercatur, Spiritus
Spirit a-gift is and whoever a-bishopric buys of-the-Spirit

Sancti donum posse comparari pecunia opinatur. Coram
Holy the-gift to-be-able to-be-bought with-money thinks before
nobis ergo, qui judicio Sancti Spiritus congregati sumus,
us therefore who by-the-judgment of-the-Holy Spirit gathered are
dicat iste, 'Gloria Patri, et Filio, et Spiritui Sancto;'
let-him-say this-man glory to-the-Father and to-the-Son and to-the-Spirit Holy
quod si expresse et sine titubantia dixerit, constabit
which if distinctly and without stammering he-says it-will-be-established
apud me non illum venaliter, sed legitime, præsulatu
with me not him venally but lawfully with-the-bishopric
functum." Libens hanc conditionem ille accepit, nihil
to-have-performed gladly this condition he accepted nothing
minus quam horum verborum difficultatem ratus; et certe
less than of-these words difficulty thinking and certainly
"Gloria Patri, et Filio," integre protulit, sed in "Spiritu
glory to-the-Father and to-the-Son whole he-brought-forth but in the-Spirit
Sancto" hæsit. Suscitato cunctorum strepitu, nullo conatu, vel
Holy he-stuck with-roused of-all the-din with-no effort either
tunc vel in vitæ reliquo spatio, Spiritum Sanctum nominare
then or in of-life the-remaining space the-Spirit Holy to-name
potuit. Hujus miraculi testis fuit abbas sæpe nominatus,
could of-this miracle a-witness was the-abbot often named
qui, dejectum episcopum per loca secum ducens, illius rei
who the-cast-down bishop through places with-himself leading of-that thing
experimentum sæpe risit; de cujus verborum certitudine
the-proof often laughed-at about whose of-words the-certainty
dubitantem omnis Europa confutat, quæ religionis Cluniacensis
one-doubting all Europe refutes which of-the-religion of-Cluny
numerum per eum augmentatum non nescit.
the-number through him increased not is-ignorant

Alexandro ergo defuncto, successit Hildebrandus, Gregorius
with-Alexander therefore dead succeeded Hildebrand Gregory
septimus dictus. Hic quod alii mussitaverant palam extulit,
the-seventh called he what others had-muttered openly brought-forth
excommunicans electos qui investituras ecclesiarum de manu
excommunicating the-elected who investitures of-churches from the-hand
laici per anulum et baculum acciperent; unde Henricus
of-a-layman by the-ring and the-staff received whence Henry
imperator Alamannorum fremens, quod sine sua conscientia
emperor of-the-Germans raging that without his knowledge
electus talia præsumeret, illum, ut prædixi, post undecim
elected such-things he-should-presume him as I-have-said-before after eleven
annos Roma deturbavit, Guiberto inducto. Nec multo post
years from-Rome drove-out with-Guibert brought-in nor much after
lethali papa morbo ictus, quo se moriturum non
by-a-deadly the-pope illness struck by-which himself about-to-die not
ambigeret, rogatus est a cardinalibus ut papam constitueret,
he-doubted asked was by the-cardinals that a-pope he-should-appoint
beati Petri exemplum referentibus, qui, lactentis ecclesiæ
of-blessed Peter the-example citing who of-the-suckling church
rudimentis vivens Clementem præfecerat. Negavit ille id se
in-the-rudiments living Clement had-set-over refused he that himself
exemplum secuturum, quod ab antiquo conciliis esset vetitum;
example about-to-follow because from of-old by-councils it-was forbidden
consilium vero daturum: si vellent hominem in seculo
counsel but about-to-give if they-wished a-man in the-world
potentem, eligerent Desiderium abbatem Cassinensem, qui
powerful they-should-choose Desiderius abbot of-Monte-Cassino who
salubriter et in tempore numero militari violentiam Guiberti
healthfully and in time by-number military the-violence of-Guibert
infringeret; sin ecclesiasticum et eloquentem, acciperent
might-break if-not a-churchman and eloquent they-should-take

episcopum Hostiensem Odonem. Ita obiit vir apud Deum
the-bishop of-Ostia Odo so died a-man with God
felicis gratiæ, et apud homines austeritatis fortassis nimiæ.
of-happy grace and with men of-austerity perhaps excessive
Denique fertur quod, inter eum et imperatorem primi
finally it-is-said that between him and the-emperor of-the-first
tumultus initio, illum nudipedem, et forcipes cum scopis
tumult at-the-beginning him barefoot and tongs with brooms
portantem, nec etiam foribus admiserit; abominatus hominem
carrying not even to-the-doors he-admitted abominating a-man
sacrilegum, et sororii incesti reum. Abscessit Cæsar exclusus,
sacrilegious and of-sisterly incest guilty withdrew Caesar shut-out
repulsam illam multorum necis causam protestans. Statimque
repulse that of-many of-death the-cause protesting and-at-once
quæcunque posset incommoda Romanæ sedi infligens, e
whatever he-could troubles on-the-Roman see inflicting from
diverso fautores papæ in tyrannidem excitavit; siquidem
the-opposite the-supporters of-the-pope into tyranny he-roused since
rebellante quodam Radulfo, jussu ipsius apostolici, qui
with-rebelling a-certain Rudolf at-the-order of-the-very apostolic-one who
ei coronam ex parte apostolorum miserat, bellorum
to-him a-crown from the-part of-the-apostles had-sent of-wars
fragoribus undique conflictatus est: sed ille, semper adversis
by-the-crashes on-all-sides harassed he-was but he always than-adversities
superior, et illum et ceteros improbe assurgentes tandem
superior both him and the-others wickedly rising-up at-last
oppressit. Postremo non aliorum impetu, sed domestico
crushed lastly not of-others by-the-onset but by-domestic
filii odio extrusus imperio, miserabilem vitæ terminum
of-his-son hatred thrust-out from-the-empire a-wretched of-life end
habuit. Successit Hildebrando Desiderius, Victor appellatus;
he-had succeeded to-Hildebrand Desiderius Victor called

sed ad primam missam, incertum quo discrimine, cecidit
but at the-first mass uncertain by-what danger he-fell
exanimatus, calice, si dignum est credere, veneno infecto.
lifeless with-the-chalice if fitting it-is to-believe with-poison infected
Tunc in Odonem declinavit electio: is natione Gallus,
then upon Odo turned the-election he by-nation a-Gaul
primum Remensis archidiaconus, inde prior Cluniacensis, mox
first of-Rheims archdeacon then prior of-Cluny soon
episcopus Hostiæ, ultimo papa Romæ, Urbanus vocatus est.
bishop of-Ostia at-last pope of-Rome Urban called was
Hactenus circumvagari licuerit, dum occasione
thus-far to-wander-about may-it-have-been-allowed while by-the-occasion
gestorum Willelmi quædam succurrebant quæ prætermittenda
of-the-deeds of-William certain-things occurred which to-be-passed-over
non putabam: nunc familiarem ejus vitam, et mores interiores,
not I-thought now the-intimate his life and manners inner
lector qui volet audiet. Inprimis, Dei famulis humilis,
the-reader who will-wish will-hear first of-God to-the-servants humble
subjectis facilis, in rebelles inexorabilis erat. Religionem
to-his-subjects easy toward rebels inexorable he-was the-religion
Christianam, quantum secularis poterat, ita frequentabat,
Christian as-much-as a-secular-man could so he-frequented
ut cotidie missæ assisteret, cotidie vespertinos et matutinos
that daily at-mass he-was-present daily evening and morning
hymnos audiret. Monasteria, unum in Anglia, alterum
hymns heard monasteries one in England the-other
in Normannia, construxit. Primum Cadomis, quod sancto
in Normandy he-built the-first at-Caen which to-saint
Stephano consecravit, opportunis prædiis et magnificentissimis
Stephen he-consecrated with-suitable estates and with-most-magnificent
donariis insignitum, ubi et Lanfrancum abbatem, post
gifts distinguished where also Lanfranc as-abbot afterward

etiam Cantuariæ archiepiscopum instituit: virum antiquis
also of-Canterbury archbishop he-installed a-man to-the-ancients
scientia et religione comparandum, de quo serio dici
in-knowledge and religion comparable about whom seriously be-said
potest, "Tertius e cælo cecidit Cato;" adeo cælestis sapor
it-can a-third from heaven has-fallen Cato so-much the-heavenly taste
pectus ejus et palatum infecerat; adeo Latinitas omnis
breast his and palate had-tinged so-much Latinity all
in liberalium artium scientiam, per doctrinam ejus, se
into of-the-liberal arts the-knowledge through teaching his itself
incitabat; adeo, ipsius exemplo vel metu, professio monastica
urged so-much by-his example or fear the-profession monastic
in religione sudabat. Non tunc episcoporum ambitus, non
in religion sweated not then of-bishops the-canvassing not
tunc abbatum venalitas proficiebat: ille majoris gloriæ, amplioris
then of-abbots the-venality profited he of-greater glory of-ampler
gratiæ, apud regem et archiepiscopum erat, qui tenacioris
favor with the-king and the-archbishop was who of-more-tenacious
sanctitudinis opinionem habebat. Alterum monasterium
holiness the-reputation had the-other monastery
Hastingis ædificavit sancto Martino, quod cognominatur De
at-Hastings he-built to-saint Martin which is-surnamed Of
Bello, quia in eo loco principalis ecclesia cernitur ubi
Battle because in that place the-principal church is-seen where
inter consertos cadaverum acervos Haroldus inventus fuisse
among the-joined of-corpses heaps Harold found to-have-been
memoratur. Pene puer, et maturiora ætate sapiens,
is-recorded almost a-boy and riper-things than-his-age wise
patruum suum Malgerium ab archiepiscopatu Rotomagensi
uncle his Mauger from the-archbishopric of-Rouen
removit. Is erat litteris quidem non mediocriter cultus; sed,
he-removed he was in-letters indeed not moderately cultivated but

pro natalium conscientia professionis oblitus, venationibus et
for of-his-birth the-consciousness of-his-profession forgetful to-hunting and
avium certaminibus sæpius justo intendebat, et gazas
of-birds to-contests more-often than-right attended and the-treasures
ecclesiasticas conviviis profusioribus insumebat: cujus rei
ecclesiastical on-feasts too-lavish spent whose thing
fama crebrescente, tota vita pallii usu caruit, quod
with-the-report spreading his-whole life of-the-pallium the-use he-lacked because
negaret sedes apostolica honoris hujusce privilegium homini
denied the-see apostolic of-honor this the-privilege to-a-man
qui sacratum negligebat officium. Unde crebro conventus,
who the-sacred neglected office whence often approached
expostulante nepote patruelis offensas, cum nihilo reverentius
with-remonstrating nephew of-his-uncle the-offenses when in-nothing more-reverently
se ageret, cogente ultima necessitate degradatus est.
himself he-behaved with-compelling final necessity degraded he-was
Ferunt quidam esse arcanam depositionis causam; Matildem,
they-say some to-be a-secret of-the-deposition cause Matilda
quam Willelmus acceperat, proximam sibi sanguine fuisse;
whom William had-taken nearest to-him in-blood to-have-been
id, Christianæ fidei zelo, Malgerium non tulisse, ut
that of-Christian of-faith from-zeal Mauger not to-have-borne that
consanguineo cubili fruerentur; sed in nepotem et
a-kindred bed they-should-enjoy but against his-nephew and
comparem excommunicationis jaculum intentasse; ita cum
the-consort of-excommunication the-javelin to-have-aimed so when
iræ adolescentis uxoriæ querelæ accederent, excogitatas
to-the-anger of-the-youth wifely complaints were-added contrived
occasiones quibus persecutor peccati sede pelleretur: sed
occasions by-which the-persecutor of-sin from-his-see should-be-driven but
postmodum provectioribus annis, pro expiatione sceleris,
afterward in-more-advanced years for expiation of-the-crime

illum sancto Stephano Cadomis monasterium ædificasse, illam
him to-saint Stephen at-Caen a-monastery to-have-built her
beatæ Trinitati in eodem vico idem fecisse; utroque
to-the-blessed Trinity in the-same village the-same to-have-done with-each
pro sexu suo personas inhabitantium eligente.
for sex its-own the-persons of-the-inhabitants choosing

MAURILIUS AND LANFRANC

Maurilius succeeded Mauger at Rouen; he lay dead half a day and revived to tell of his journey to the Jordan. William had Stigand deposed, and Lanfranc and Wulfstan brought the king to end the sale of slaves to Ireland. Soldiers killed monks at Glastonbury's altar, the Northumbrians murdered Bishop Walcher, and William's last years brought mortality, storms, fever and famine.

Malgerio successit Maurilius, Fiscannensis monachus, multis
to-Mauger succeeded Maurilius of-Fécamp a-monk for-many
virtutibus sed maxime abstinentia laudatus. Is post bene
virtues but most for-abstinence praised he after well
et sancte actam vitam, cum ad extremum Deo vocante
and holily led life when to the-end with-God calling
venisset, vitali privatus halitu ferme dimidia die jacuit
he-had-come of-vital deprived breath almost for-half a-day lay
defunctus; veruntamen, cum jam pararetur in ecclesiam
dead nevertheless when already he-was-being-prepared into the-church
ferri, anima resumpta circumstantes lacrymabili gaudio
to-be-carried with-his-soul resumed those-standing-around with-tearful joy
perfudit. Stupentes hoc sermone corroborat: "Attenti animo
he-flooded the-astonished with-this speech he-strengthens attentive in-mind
estote, ultima pastoris vestri verba excipientes. Naturali morte
be the-last of-shepherd your words receiving by-natural death

resolutus fui, sed, ut vobis intimarem quæ vidi, reductus
dissolved I-was but that to-you I-might-make-known what I-saw brought-back
sum; nec aliquanto diutius subsistam, quia in Domino soporari
I-am nor somewhat longer shall-I-remain because in the-Lord to-fall-asleep
delectat. Ductores spiritus mei vultibus et vestibus ad omnem
delights the-guides of-spirit my in-faces and garments to all
elegantiam erant compositi; concordabat verborum lenitas
elegance were composed agreed of-words the-gentleness
cum nitore vestium, ut nihil desiderarem præter
with the-brightness of-their-garments so-that nothing I-desired besides
talium virorum obsequium. Itaque blandis assentationibus
of-such men the-attendance and-so by-soothing flatteries
gavisus, ibam, ut vere mihi videbatur, versus orientem:
delighted I-went as truly to-me it-seemed toward the-east
promittebatur mihi sedes paradisiaca, non multo post intranda.
was-promised to-me a-seat in-paradise not much after to-be-entered
In momento præterita Europa, ingressi Asiam, venimus
in a-moment with-passed Europe having-entered Asia we-came
Jerosolimam; ibi sanctis adoratis, Jordanem pertendimus;
to-Jerusalem there with-the-holy-places worshiped to-the-Jordan we-went
citerioris ripæ accolæ, ductorum meorum contubernio mixti,
of-the-nearer bank the-dwellers of-guides my with-the-company mixed
lætum cœtum fecere. Ego, visendi ulteriora studio,
a-glad assembly made I of-seeing the-farther-things by-zeal
transitum maturabam. Tunc comites Deum præcepisse
the-crossing hastened then my-companions God to-have-ordered
referunt ut ante dæmonum visione terrificarer, quatenus
relate that first of-demons by-a-vision I-should-be-terrified so-that
veniales culpæ, quas confessione non dilueram, pavore
the-venial faults which by-confession not I-had-washed-away by-terror
horrendarum formarum purgarentur. Cum dicto astitit
of-horrid shapes they-should-be-purged with the-word stood-by

alteri parti tanta dæmonum vis, hastilia acuta vibrantium,
on-the-other side so-great of-demons a-force spear-shafts sharp brandishing
ignes efflantium, ut ager ferreus, aer flammeus videretur.
fires breathing-out that the-field iron the-air flaming seemed
Eorum horrore ita sum affectus, ut si terra dehisceret,
their by-horror so I-was affected that if the-earth should-gape
si cælum patesceret, tuto mihi utrobique refugiendum non
if heaven should-open safely for-me either-way to-be-fled not
æstimarem. Ita meticulosus, dum quo evadam dubito,
I-thought so fearful while whither I-may-escape I-doubt
repente, ut hæc dicens vestræ saluti nisi negligitis
suddenly that these-things saying to-your salvation unless you-neglect-it
consulerem, halitum recepi, confestim effusurus." Dixit,
I-might-take-thought my-breath I-received at-once about-to-pour-it-out he-spoke
et cum verbo pene spiritum emisit. Corpus, in ecclesia
and with the-word almost his-spirit he-sent-forth the-body in the-church
sanctæ Mariæ tunc humi defossum, miraculo modo, ut
of-saint Mary then in-the-ground buried by-a-miracle now as
aiunt, divino altius tribus pedibus super terram elevatum est.
they-say divine higher by-three feet above the-earth raised was
Porro Willelmus, propositi quod in Normannia cœperat
further William of-the-purpose which in Normandy he-had-begun
tenax, Stigandum, perperam et falso archiepiscopum, per
tenacious Stigand wrongly and falsely archbishop through
cardinales Romanos, et Ermenfredum episcopum Sedunensem,
cardinals Roman and Ermenfrid bishop of-Sion
deponi passus est. Successit ei in Wintonia Walkelinus;
to-be-deposed allowed has succeeded to-him in Winchester Walkelin
cujus bona opera, famam vincentia, vetustatem oblivionis a
whose good works his-fame surpassing the-oldness of-oblivion from
se repellent quamdiu ibi sedes episcopalis durabit: in
themselves will-repel as-long-as there the-see episcopal will-last in

Cantia Lanfrancus, de quo supra dixi, qui talis Angliæ
Kent Lanfranc about whom above I-said who such for-England
Dei dono emicuit,
of-God by-the-gift shone

"Qualis discutiens fugientia Lucifer astra,
As scattering the-fleeing Lucifer stars
Cum roseo clarum provehit ore diem;"
When with-rosy bright brings-forth face the-day

ita ipsius industria monasticum germen effloruit, ita eo
so his by-industry the-monastic shoot flowered so with-him
vivente vigor pontificalis induruit. Ejus consilio rex pronum
living the-vigor episcopal hardened his by-counsel the-king inclined
se fecerat, ut nihil negandum duceret quod is faciendum
himself had-made so-that nothing to-be-denied he-held which he to-be-done
diceret. Ipsius etiam impulsu ambitum nebulonum fregerat,
said his-very also by-impulse the-canvassing of-the-scoundrels he-had-broken
qui consueto more mancipia sua Hiberniam venditabant:
who in-the-accustomed manner slaves their-own to-Ireland sold
cujus facti præconium cui potius imputem, Lanfranco an
of-which deed the-praise to-whom rather I-should-impute to-Lanfranc or
Wulstano Wigorniæ antistiti, pro vero non discerno, qui regem,
to-Wulfstan of-Worcester bishop for truth not I-discern who the-king
pro commodo venalitatis quod sibi pensitabatur, renitentem
for the-profit of-the-sale which to-him was-paid resisting
vix ad hoc coegerint, nisi quod Lanfrancus laudaverit
scarcely to this compelled except that Lanfranc praised-it
Wulstanus præceperit, auctoritate episcopali pro conscientia
Wulfstan commanded-it with-authority episcopal for the-consciousness
sanctitatis abunde exuberans; homo quo nullus unquam
of-holiness abundantly overflowing a-man than-whom none ever

justior, nullus nostro seculo par illi apparuerit miraculorum
juster none in-our age equal to-him has-appeared of-miracles
potentia et prophetali gratia, quorum aliqua intendo dicere
in-power and in-prophetic grace of-which some I-intend to-tell
posterius si tamen sanctissimis illius placuerit sensibus.
later if yet to-the-most-holy his it-shall-have-pleased senses
Veruntamen, quia alea fortunæ incertis jactibus volvitur,
nevertheless because the-die of-fortune with-uncertain throws is-rolled
multa tunc tempore adversa pervenere. Fœda inter abbatem
many then at-the-time adverse-things came a-foul between the-abbot
Glastoniæ et monachos ejus discordia, ita ut post verborum
of-Glastonbury and the-monks his discord so that after of-words
lites ad arma ventum sit. Coacti ergo intra ecclesiam
quarrels to arms come it-was driven-together therefore within the-church
monachi sancto altari miserias suas ingemebant; sed
the-monks to-the-holy altar miseries their groaned but
irrumpentibus militibus, duo ex eis interfecti, quatuordecim
with-bursting-in soldiers two of them killed fourteen
vulnerati, ceteri repulsi: nam et furor militum etiam
wounded the-rest repulsed for also the-fury of-the-soldiers even
crucifixum sagittis inhorrere fecerat. Hujus noxæ crimine
the-crucifix with-arrows to-bristle had-made of-this offense by-the-crime
infamatus abbas, tota vita regis exilio deportatus
defamed the-abbot for-the-whole life of-the-king into-exile deported
est; eoque defuncto, pro redemptione peccati auxiliaribus
was and-with-him dead for redemption of-his-sin to-the-auxiliaries
annumerata pecunia, honori restitutus est.
counted-out money to-his-honor restored was
Miserabilis et infanda cædes Walkerii Dunelmensis episcopi,
wretched and unspeakable the-murder of-Walcher of-Durham bishop
quem Northanhimbri populus, semper rebellioni deditus,
whom the-Northumbrian people always to-rebellion given

abjecto sacrorum ordinum respectu, multis impetitum convitiis
with-cast-off of-sacred orders respect with-many assailed insults
trucidarunt. Fusus ibi non paucus numerus Lotharingorum,
they-slaughtered laid-low there not small a-number of-Lorrainers
quod præsul ipse nationis ejus erat. Causa cædis hæc fuit:
because the-bishop himself of-nation that was the-cause of-the-murder this was
erat episcopus præter pontificatum custos totius comitatus;
was the-bishop besides the-bishopric the-keeper of-whole county
præfeceratque rebus forensibus Gislebertum cognatum,
and-had-set-over affairs public Gilbert his-kinsman
interioribus Leobinum clericum, ambos in rebus commissis
over-domestic Leobwin a-cleric both in affairs entrusted
strenuos sed effrænes. Tolerabat episcopus eorum immodestiam,
energetic but unbridled tolerated the-bishop their immoderation
gratia strenuitatis inductus; et, quia eos elevarat, cumulum
by-favor of-energy led and because them he-had-raised the-heap
benignitatis augebat. Indulget enim natura sibi, placidoque
of-kindness he-increased indulges for nature itself and-with-placid
favore suis arridet ipsa muneribus. Is Leobinus Liulfum,
favor on-its-own smiles itself gifts this Leobwin Ligulf
beatissimi Cuthberti ministrum, adeo dilectum ut ipse
of-the-most-blessed Cuthbert a-servant so-much beloved that the-saint
sanctus coram vigilanti assistens placita imperaret, — hunc,
himself before-him waking standing pleasing-things commanded this
inquam, Liulfum per Gislebertum obtruncari fecit, livore ictus
I-say Ligulf through Gilbert to-be-cut-down caused by-envy struck
quod amplioris amicitiæ locum apud pontificem, pro conscientia
because of-ampler friendship a-place with the-bishop for conscientiousness
et æquitate judiciorum, haberet. Perculsus nuntio Walkerius,
and fairness of-judgments he-had struck by-the-news Walcher
furenti parentelæ defuncti legalis placiti judicium opposuit,
to-the-raging kinsfolk of-the-dead-man of-a-legal plea the-judgment opposed

protestatus Leobinum suæ suorumque necis auctorem. Ubi
protesting Leobwin of-his and-of-his-men of-the-death the-author when
ventum ad placitum, nullis effera gens rationibus emolliri
it-came to the-plea by-no the-fierce people reasons to-be-softened
potuit quin in episcopum referret culpam, quod ambos
could but-that on the-bishop it-laid the-blame because both
homicidas in curia ejus post necem Liulfi familiariter diversatos
murderers in the-court his after the-death of-Ligulf familiarly lodging
vidissent. Surrectum ergo in clamores et iras; et Gislebertus
they-had-seen risen(-it-was) therefore into shouts and angers and Gilbert
de ecclesia, in qua cum episcopo sederat, ultro
from the-church in which with the-bishop he-had-sat of-his-own-accord
egrediens, ut suo periculo vitam domini mercaretur, impie
going-out that at-his-own risk the-life of-his-lord he-might-buy impiously
occisus. Tum præsul, præ januis pacem prætento ramo offerens,
killed then the-bishop before the-doors peace with-held-out branch offering
rabiem vulgi explevit interemptus: fomes etiam mali
the-rage of-the-crowd satisfied killed the-kindling also of-the-evil
Leobinus semiustulatus, quod nisi ecclesia cremata exire
Leobwin half-burned because unless with-the-church burned to-go-out
nolebat, exiliens mille lanceis exceptus est. Prædictum
he-would-not leaping-out by-a-thousand lances received was foretold
id ab Edgitha relicta regis Edwardi; nam cum olim
this-was by Edith widow of-king Edward for when once
Walkerium vidisset Wintoniæ ad consecrandum duci, cæsarie
Walcher she-had-seen at-Winchester for consecration to-be-led in-hair
lacteolum, vultu roseum, statura prægrandem, “Pulchrum hic,”
milk-white in-face rosy in-stature very-large a-fine here
ait, “martyrem habemus,” conjectura videlicet immodestæ
she-said martyr we-have by-conjecture namely of-the-immoderate

nationis ad præsagiendum inducta. Successit ei Willelmus
nation to foretelling led succeeded him William
abbas sancti Carilefi, qui monachos in Dunelmo posuit.
abbot of-saint Calais who monks at Durham placed
Præterea, anno antequam moreretur proximo, mortalitas
besides in-the-year before he-died next a-mortality
hominum et jumentorum, vis tempestatum frequens,
of-men and of-beasts a-force of-storms frequent
violentia fulgurum, quantam nemo viderat, nemo audierat.
the-violence of-lightnings as-great-as no-one had-seen no-one had-heard
Illo quoque anno quo obiit, promiscua febris plusquam
in-that also year in-which he-died an-indiscriminate fever more-than
dimidiam partem plebis depasta, adeo ut plures
half the-part of-the-common-people having-grazed so-much that many
incommoditas morbi extingueret; deinde, pro intemperie
the-discomfort of-the-disease extinguished then for the-intemperance
aeris, fames subsecuta vulgo irrepsit, ut quod
of-the-air famine following on-the-common-people crept that what
febribus erat reliquum ipsa corriperet.
by-fevers was left it-itself seized

William prized chastity in his youth and, married on his nobles' advice, had many children by Matilda; the tale that he took a priest's daughter, whom Matilda had hamstrung, and beat the queen to death with a bridle is called madness, though a late grudge over Robert is admitted. He mourned Matilda, buried at Caen, and gave Edith a rich tomb at Westminster. Robert rebelled and lost England, Richard died young in the New Forest that William had made by razing churches and villages, and William and Henry reigned; his daughters and his half-brothers follow, Odo of Bayeux arrested and his hidden gold brought out. He favored foreigners and monasteries, was of fair height, huge and strong, feasted at the three great festivals, was blamed only for heaping up money, and answered Philip's taunt on his belly with an oath by the resurrection and splendor of God.

Præter ceteras virtutes, præcipue in prima adolescentia
beyond the-other virtues especially in first youth
castitatem suspexit, in tantum ut publice sereretur nihil
chastity he-looked-up-to in so-much that publicly it-was-rumored nothing
illum in fœmina posse; veruntamen, ex procerum sententia
him with a-woman to-be-able nevertheless from of-the-nobles the-opinion
matrimonio addictus, ita se egit ut pluribus annis
to-marriage assigned so himself he-conducted that for-many years
nullius probri suspicione notaretur. Tulit ex Matilde liberos
of-no disgrace by-suspicion he-was-marked he-had from Matilda children
multos, quæ, et marito morigera et prole fœcunda,
many who both to-her-husband compliant and in-offspring fertile
nobilis viri animum in sui amoris incitabat aculeum:
of-the-noble man the-mind into of-her love roused the-goad
quanquam non desint qui ganniant eum cælibatui antiquo
although not are-lacking those-who mutter him his-celibacy old
renuntiasse cum regia potestas accrevisset, volutatum cum
to-have-renounced when the-royal power had-grown to-have-wallowed with

cujusdam presbyteri filia, quam per satellitem succiso
of-a-certain priest the-daughter whom through an-attendant with-cut
poplite Matildis sustulerit; quapropter illum exheredatum, illam
hamstring Matilda removed wherefore him disinherited her
ad mortem fræno equi cæsam. Sed hæc de tanto
to death with-the-bridle of-a-horse beaten but these-things about so-great
rege credere dementiæ ascribo; hoc constanter asseverans, quod
a-king to-believe to-madness I-ascribe this steadfastly asserting that
aliquantula simultas inter eos innata extremis annis fuerit pro
some-little grudge between them arisen in-the-last years was for
Roberto filio, cui mater militarem manum ex fisci
Robert their-son to-whom his-mother a-military band from of-the-treasury
redditibus sufficere dicebatur: verum propter hoc nihil
the-revenues to-supply was-said but on-account-of this nothing
conjugalis gratiæ diminutum ipse ostendit, dum quatuor annis
of-conjugal favor diminished he-himself showed while four years
ante se defunctam et magnificentissimis inferiis extulit,
before himself dead both with-most-magnificent funeral-rites he-carried-out
et lacrymis per multos dies ubertim prosecutus, amissæ
and with-tears for many days abundantly following of-the-lost-one
caritatem desideraverit; quin et ex eo tempore, si credimus,
the-love he-missed nay and from that time if we-believe
ab omni voluptate descivit. Sepulta est regina Cadomis in
from all pleasure he-withdrew buried was the-queen at-Caen in
monasterio sanctæ Trinitatis. Ejusdem pietatis indicium in
the-monastery of-the-holy Trinity of-the-same piety a-sign in
Edgithæ reginæ funere curando non minus fuit, quæ,
of-Edith the-queen the-funeral to-be-cared-for not less there-was who
apud Westmonasterium studio ejus prope conjugem locata,
at Westminster by-the-zeal his near her-husband placed
habet tumbam argenti aurique expensis operosam.
has a-tomb of-silver and-of-gold by-expenses elaborate

Filios habuit, Robertum, Ricardum, Willelmum, Henricum.
sons he-had Robert Richard William Henry
Posteriores duo post eum successione continua in Anglia
the-latter two after him in-succession continuous in England
regnavere. Robertus, patre adhuc vivente, Normanniam
reigned Robert with-his-father still living Normandy
sibi negari ægre ferens, in Italiam obstinatus abiit, ut,
to-himself to-be-denied hardly bearing to Italy obstinate went-away that
filia Bonefacii marchionis sumpta, patri partibus illis
with-the-daughter of-Boniface the-marquess taken his-father in-those parts
adjutus adversaretur: sed, petitionis hujusce cassus, Philippum
helped he-might-oppose but of-petition this cheated Philip
Francorum regem contra patriam excitavit; quare et
of-the-Franks king against his-fatherland he-roused wherefore both
genitoris benedictione et hereditate frustratus, Anglia post
of-his-father the-blessing and the-inheritance cheated-of of-England after
mortem ejus caruit, comitatu Normanniæ vix retento.
the-death his he-was-deprived with-the-county of-Normandy scarcely retained
Ea quoque post novem annos fratri Willelmo pro pecunia
that also after nine years to-his-brother William for money
invadata, Asiaticam expeditionem cum ceteris Christianis
pledged the-Asian expedition with the-other Christians
aggressus est; inde, transactis quatuor annis, clarus militiæ
undertaken has thence with-passed four years famous of-soldiering
gestis regressus, Normanniæ sine difficultate immersit,
for-the-deeds having-returned into-Normandy without difficulty he-plunged
quod, germano Willelmo nuper defuncto, Henricus rex,
because with-his-brother William lately dead Henry the-king
novitate tener, Angliam in fide tenere satis habuit: sed
by-newness tender England in faith to-hold enough considered-it but

quia de hoc alias dicendum, nunc cœptam de filiis
because about this elsewhere it-must-be-said now the-begun about the-sons
Willelmi magni narrationem terminabo.
of-William the-Great narrative I-shall-end
Ricardus magnanimo parenti spem laudis alebat, puer
Richard to-his-great-spirited parent the-hope of-praise fed a-boy
delicatus; ut id ætatulæ pusio, altum quid spirans. Sed
delicate as of-that little-age a-little-boy high something breathing but
tantam primævi floris indolem mors acerba cito depasta
so-great of-early bloom a-nature death bitter quickly having-grazed-down
corrupit; tradunt cervos in Nova Foresta terebrantem, tabidi
spoiled they-relate deer in the-New Forest piercing of-a-wasting
aeris nebula morbum incurrisse. Locus est quem Willelmus
air by-the-fog a-disease to-have-incurred the-place is which William
pater, subrutis ecclesiis, desertis villis, per triginta et
his-father with-overthrown churches deserted villages for thirty and
eo amplius miliaria in saltus et lustra ferarum redegerat.
than-that more miles into wilds and lairs of-wild-beasts had-reduced
Ibi libenter ævum exigere, ibi plurimis, omitto diebus, certe
there gladly his-life to-spend there for-very-many I-omit days surely
mensibus, venationes exercere gaudebat. Ibi multa regio
months hunts to-exercise he-rejoiced there many to-the-royal
generi contigere infortunia, quæ habitatorum præsens audire
family befell misfortunes which of-the-inhabitants present to-hear
volentibus suggerit memoria: nam postmodum in eadem silva
to-those-wishing suggests the-memory for afterward in the-same forest
Willelmus filius ejus, et nepos Ricardus filius Roberti comitis
William son his and grandson Richard son of-Robert count
Normanniæ, mortem offenderunt; severo Dei judicio, ille
of-Normandy death met by-the-severe of-God judgment that-one

sagitta pectus, iste collum trajectus, vel, ut quidam dicunt,
by-an-arrow in-the-breast this-one in-the-neck pierced or as some say
arboris ramusculo equo pertranseunte fauces appensus.
of-a-tree by-a-little-branch with-his-horse passing-through by-the-throat hung
Filiæ ipsius fuerunt quinque. Cecilia, Cadomensis abbatissa,
the-daughters his were five Cecilia of-Caen abbess
vivit; altera, Constantia, comiti Brittanniæ Alano Fergant
lives the-second Constance to-the-count of-Brittany Alan Fergant
in conjugium data, austeritate justitiæ provinciales in
in marriage given by-the-austerity of-her-justice the-provincials into
mortiferam sibi potionem exacuit; tertia, Adala, Stephani
a-deadly to-her potion she-sharpened the-third Adela of-Stephen
Blesensis comitis uxor, laudatæ in seculo potentiæ virago,
of-Blois count the-wife of-praised in the-world power a-heroine
noviter apud Marcenniacum sanctimonialis habitum sumpsit.
lately at Marcigny of-a-nun the-habit took
Duarum nomina exciderunt: unius, quæ Haroldo, ut diximus,
of-two the-names have-fallen-out of-one who to-Harold as we-have-said
promissa, infra maturos conjugio annos obiit; alterius, quæ,
promised before ripe for-marriage years died of-the-other who
Aldefonso Galliciæ regi per nuntios jurata, virgineam
to-Alfonso of-Galicia king through envoys betrothed a-virginal
mortem impetravit a Deo. Repertus in defunctæ genibus
death obtained from God found on of-the-dead-girl the-knees
callus crebrarum ejus orationum index est.
a-callus of-frequent her prayers a-sign is
Patris memoriam quantis poterat occasionibus extollens,
of-his-father the-memory by-what he-could occasions exalting
ossa, olim Niceæ condita, sub extremo vitæ tempore per
the-bones once at-Nicaea buried at the-last of-life time through
legatum transferebat; sed ille prospere rediens, audita morte
an-envoy he-was-transferring but he prosperously returning with-heard the-death

Willelmi, apud Apuliam resedit, sepultis ibi illustris
of-William in Apulia settled with-buried there of-the-illustrious
viri exuviis. Matrem quantum vixit insigni indulgentia
man the-remains his-mother as-long-as he-lived with-remarkable indulgence
dignatus est; quæ, ante patris obitum, cuidam Herlewino
honored has who before of-his-father the-death to-a-certain Herluin
de Comitisvilla, mediocrium opum viro, nupserat. Ex eo
of Conteville of-middling means a-man had-married from him
Willelmus fratres habuit: Robertum, quem comitem Moritonii
William brothers had Robert whom count of-Mortain
fecit, crassi et hebetis ingenii hominem; Odonem, quem ad
he-made of-a-thick and dull wit a-man Odo whom to
episcopatum Bajocensem provexit comes, comitem Cantiæ rex
the-bishopric of-Bayeux he-advanced as-earl earl of-Kent the-king
instituit. Callidioris pectoris ille totius Angliæ vicedominus
appointed of-a-craftier breast he of-whole England the-viceroy
sub rege fuit, post necem Willelmi filii Osberni. Itaque
under the-king was after the-killing of-William son of-Osbern and-so
in aggerandis thesauris mirus, tergiversari miræ astutiæ,
in heaping-up treasures wonderful to-shuffle of-wonderful cunning
pene papatum Romanum absens a civibus mercatus fuerat;
almost the-papacy Roman absent from the-citizens bought had
peras peregrinorum epistolis et nummis infarciens. Cujus
the-wallets of-pilgrims with-letters and coins stuffing of-whose
futuri itineris opinione cum certatim ex toto regno ad eum
future journey by-the-belief when eagerly from the-whole kingdom to him
milites concurrerent, rex indigne ferens, compedibus irretivit;
soldiers ran-together the-king indignantly bearing-it with-fetters bound
præfatus non se Bajocarum episcopum sed comitem Cantiæ
declaring not himself of-Bayeux the-bishop but the-earl of-Kent
prendere. Clientes ejus, minis impulsi, tantam auri copiam
to-arrest the-clients his by-threats driven so-great of-gold an-abundance

prodidere, ut nostri seculi æstimationem superaret fulvi
betrayed that of-our age the-estimation it-exceeded of-tawny
congeries metalli; denique et cullei plures e fluviis extracti,
the-heap metal finally also sacks many from rivers drawn
quos per certa loca, sublatis consciis, infoderat, plenos auro
which through certain places with-removed accomplices he-had-buried full with-gold
molito. Post mortem fratris absolutus, nepotique Willelmo
ground after the-death of-his-brother released and-to-his-nephew William
adversatus, partem Roberti fovebat; sed tunc quoque male
opposed the-party of-Robert he-favored but then also with-badly
cedente fortuna, extorris Anglia, Normannico nepoti et
yielding fortune exiled from-England on-the-Norman nephew and
episcopatui insistebat. Deinde cum eodem Jerosolimitanam viam
the-bishopric he-attended then with the-same the-Jerusalem way
ingressus, Antiochiæ, in obsidione Christianorum, finem habuit.
entered at-Antioch in the-siege of-the-Christians his-end he-had
Exterarum nationum homines dignanter ad amicitiam admisit,
of-foreign nations the-men graciously to friendship he-admitted
indifferenter honoribus extulit: eleemosynæ curam habuit:
indiscriminately with-honors he-raised of-alms care he-had
transmarinis ecclesiis multas possessiones in Anglia largitus;
to-overseas churches many possessions in England bestowed
nec ullum fere monasterium, præsertim in Normannia, vel
nor any almost monastery especially in Normandy either
ejus vel ducum munificentia pertransiit, ut Angliæ copia
his or of-the-dukes the-munificence passed-over so-that of-England by-the-plenty
tenuitas illorum sustentaretur. Ita ejus tempore ultro citroque
the-slenderness of-those was-supported so in-his time this-way and-that
cœnobialis grex excrevit, monasteria surgebant religione vetera,
the-monastic flock grew monasteries rose in-religion old
ædificiis recentia. Sed hic animadverto mussitationem dicentium,
in-buildings new but here I-notice the-muttering of-those-saying

melius fuisse ut antiqua in suo statu conservarentur,
better it-had-been that the-old-ones in their state should-be-preserved
quam, illis semimutilatis, de rapina nova construerentur.
than with-those half-mutilated from plunder new-ones be-built
Justæ fuit staturæ, immensæ corpulentiæ, facie fera, fronte
of-just he-was stature of-immense corpulence in-face fierce in-forehead
capillis nuda, roboris ingentis in lacertis, ut magno
of-hair bare of-strength huge in arms so-that a-great
sæpe spectaculo fuerit quod nemo ejus arcum tenderet,
often spectacle it-was that no-one his bow could-bend
quem ipse admisso equo pedibus nervo extento
which he-himself with-spurred horse with-his-feet with-the-string stretched
sinuaret; magnæ dignitatis sedens et stans, quanquam
bent of-great dignity sitting and standing although
obesitas ventris nimis protensa corpus regium deformaret;
the-fatness of-his-belly too-much protruding the-body royal deformed
commodæ valitudinis, ut qui nunquam aliquo morbo
of-good health so-that he never with-any illness
periculoso præter in extremo decubuerit; exercitio nemorum
dangerous except at the-end lay-abed to-the-exercise of-the-woods
adeo deditus, ut, sicut prædixi, multa milia ejectis
so-much given that as I-have-said-before many miles with-expelled
habitatoribus silvescere juberet, in quibus, a ceteris
inhabitants to-become-forest he-ordered in which from other
negotiis avocatus, animum remitteret. Convivia in præcipuis
business called-away his-mind he-might-relax banquets on the-chief
festivitatibus sumptuosa et magnifica inibat; Natale Domini
festivals sumptuous and magnificent he-held the-birthday of-the-Lord
apud Gloecestram, Pascha apud Wintoniam, Pentecosten apud
at Gloucester Easter at Winchester Pentecost at
Westmonasterium agens quotannis quibus in Anglia morari
Westminster spending every-year in-which in England to-stay

liceret: omnes eo cujuscunque professionis magnates
it-was-allowed all thither of-whatever profession magnates
regium edictum accersiebat, ut exterarum gentium legati
a-royal edict summoned so-that of-foreign peoples the-envoys
speciem multitudinis apparatumque deliciarum mirarentur.
the-show of-the-multitude and-the-array of-delicacies might-wonder-at
Nec ullo tempore comior aut indulgendi facilior erat,
nor at-any time more-genial or of-indulging easier was-he
ut qui advenerant largitatem ejus cum divitiis conquadrare
so-that who had-come the-generosity his with riches to-square
ubique gentium jactitarent. Quem morem convivandi primus
everywhere of-peoples boasted which custom of-banqueting the-first
successor obstinate tenuit, secundus omisit.
successor obstinately kept the-second omitted
Sola est de qua nonnihil culpetur pecuniæ aggestio, quam
alone is about which something he-is-blamed of-money the-heaping-up which
undecunque captatis occasionibus, honestas modo et regia
from-everywhere with-seized occasions honest only and with-royal
dignitate non inferiores posset dicere, congregabat. Sed
dignity not unworthy he-could to-call he-gathered but
excusabitur facile, quia novum regnum sine magna pecunia
he-will-be-excused easily because a-new kingdom without great money
non posset regere. Non est hic aliquid aliud excusationis quod
not he-could to-rule not is here anything other of-excuse which
afferam nisi quod quidam dixit, "Necesse est ut multos
I-may-bring except what a-certain-man said necessary it-is that many
timeat, quem multi timent." Nam ille, pro timore inimicorum,
he-fear whom many fear for he for fear of-enemies
provincias suas pecunia emungebat, qua impetus eorum vel
provinces his of-money milked by-which the-onset their either
tardaret vel etiam propelleret, persæpe ut fit in rebus
he-might-delay or even repel very-often as happens in affairs

humanis viribus cassatis, fidem hostilem præmio pigneratus:
human with-strength failing the-faith hostile with-a-reward pledging
regnat adhuc et indies augetur hujusce dedecoris calamitas,
reigns still and daily is-increased of-this disgrace the-calamity
ut et villæ et ecclesiæ pensionibus supponantur; et ne
so-that both villages and churches to-rents are-subjected and not
hoc quidem perpetua exactorum fide, sed quicunque plus
this even with-perpetual of-the-exactors faith but whoever more
obtulerit, statim, pactis irritis prioribus, palmam habeat.
has-offered at-once with-agreements voided former the-palm has
Extremo vitæ tempore in Normannia habitans, contractis
at-the-last of-life time in Normandy living with-contracted
inimicitiis cum rege Francorum, aliquantisper se continuit;
enmities with the-king of-the-Franks for-a-while himself he-kept-in
cujus abutens patientia, Philippus fertur dixisse, "Rex
whose abusing patience Philip is-said to-have-said the-king
Angliæ jacet Rotomagi, more absolutarum partu
of-England lies at-Rouen in-the-manner of-delivered from-childbirth
fœminarum cubile fovens," jocatus in ejus ventrem quem
women the-bed keeping-warm joking on his belly which
potione alleviarat. Quo præstrictus convitio, respondit,
with-a-potion he-had-relieved by-which stung taunt he-answered
"Cum ad missam post partum iero, centum milia candelas
when to mass after the-birth I-shall-go a-hundred thousand candles
ei libabo;" talia "per resurrectionem et splendorem
to-him I-shall-offer such-things by the-resurrection and splendor
Dei" pronuntians, quod soleret ex industria talia sacramenta
of-God pronouncing because he-was-wont on purpose such oaths
facere, quæ ipso hiatu oris terrificum quiddam
to-make which by-the-very gaping of-the-mouth terrifying something
auditorum mentibus insonarent.
of-the-hearers in-the-minds might-sound

THE BURNING OF MANTES AND THE KING'S DEATH

In late August William invaded France and burned Mantes, its church of Saint Mary and an anchoress with it; coming too near the flames he took a sickness, or as some say the front of his saddle burst his belly as his horse leapt a ditch. At Rouen he made his will: Normandy to Robert, England to William, his mother's possessions to Henry. He freed his prisoners, died, and was buried at Caen, where a knight claimed the ground of the grave until Henry paid him. William Rufus distributed his father's treasure to the monasteries, churches, and poor, and adorned his tomb with gold and gems.

Nec multo post, Augusto mense declinante, quando et segetes
nor much after with-August month declining when both the-crops
in agris, et botri in vineis, et poma in viridariis,
in the-fields and the-grapes in the-vineyards and the-fruits in the-orchards
copiam sui volentibus faciunt, exercitu coacto, Franciam
abundance of-themselves to-those-wishing make with-an-army gathered France
infestus ingreditur. Omnia proterit, cuncta populatur; nibil
hostile he-enters all-things he-tramples all he-ravages nothing
erat quod furentis animum mitigaret, ut injuriam
there-was which of-the-raging-man the-mind could-soften so-that the-injury
insolenter acceptam multorum dispendio ulcisceretur. Postremo
insolently received of-many by-the-loss he-might-avenge lastly
Medantum civitatem injectis ignibus cremavit, combusta illic
Mantes the-city with-thrown-in fires he-burned with-burned there
ecclesia sanctæ Mariæ; reclusa una ustulata, quæ spelæum suum
the-church of-saint Mary a-recluse one scorched who cave her
nec in tali necessitate deserendum putavit; fortunæ omnes
not-even in such necessity to-be-deserted thought the-fortunes all
civium pessundatæ. Quo successu exhilaratus, dum suos
of-the-citizens ruined by-which success cheered while his-men
audacius incitat ut igni adjiciant pabula, propius flammas
more-boldly he-urges that to-the-fire they-add fuel nearer to-the-flames

succedens, foci calore et autumnalis æstus inæqualitate
coming-up of-the-fire by-the-heat and of-the-autumn heat by-the-unevenness
morbum nactus est. Dicunt quidam quod præruptam fossam
a-disease contracted he-has they-say some that a-steep ditch
sonipes transsiliens interanea sessoris disruperit, quod in
the-steed leaping-over the-entrails of-the-rider burst because on
anteriori parte sellæ venter protuberabat. Hoc dolore
the-front part of-the-saddle his-belly protruded by-this pain
affectus receptui suis cecinit; Rotomagumque reversus,
affected the-retreat to-his-men he-sounded and-to-Rouen returned
crescente indies incommodo, lecto excipitur. Consulti medici
with-growing daily illness to-bed is-taken consulted the-physicians
inspectione urinæ certam mortem prædixere. Quo audito
by-inspection of-the-urine certain death foretold with-which heard
querimonia domum replevit, quod eum præoccuparet mors
with-lament the-house he-filled because him should-overtake death
emendationem vitæ jamdudum meditantem. Resumpto animo,
amendment of-life long-since meditating with-resumed courage
quæ Christiani sunt executus est in confessione et
what-things of-Christians are carried-out he-has in confession and
viatico. Normanniam invitus et coactus Roberto, Angliam
the-viaticum Normandy unwilling and compelled to-Robert England
Willelmo, possessiones maternas Henrico delegavit. Vinctos
to-William the-possessions maternal to-Henry he-assigned the-prisoners
suos omnes educi et solvi, thesauros efferri et
his all to-be-led-out and to-be-released the-treasures to-be-brought-out and
ecclesiis dispergi, præcepit. Certum numerum pecuniæ ad
to-churches to-be-dispersed he-ordered a-certain number of-money for
reparationem ecclesiæ nuper crematæ ipse indixit. Ordinatis
the-repair of-the-church lately burned he-himself appointed with-arranged
ergo bene rebus, octavo idus Septembris decessit, anno
therefore well affairs on-the-eighth of-the-ides of-September he-died in-the-year

regni vicesimo primo, comitatus quinquagesimo secundo,
of-his-reign twentieth first of-the-county fiftieth second
vitæ quinquagesimo nono, Dominicæ incarnationis millesimo
of-life fiftieth ninth of-the-Lord's incarnation thousandth
octogesimo septimo. Ille fuit annus quo Cnuto rex Danorum,
eightieth seventh that was the-year in-which Cnut king of-the-Danes
ut supra diximus, interemptus est; quo Sarraceni Hispani in
as above we-have-said killed was in-which the-Saracens Spanish against
Christianos efferati, mox ab Aldefonso rege Galliciæ ad sua
the-Christians enraged soon by Alfonso king of-Galicia to their-own
redire coacti, etiam urbibus quas olim tenuerant inviti cessere.
to-return compelled even the-cities which once they-had-held unwillingly ceded
Corpus, regio sollempni curatum, per Sequanam Cadomum
the-body with-royal solemnity tended through the-Seine to-Caen
delatum; ibi magna frequentia ordinatorum, laicorum pauca,
carried there with-great attendance of-the-ordained of-laymen few
humi traditum. Varietatis humanæ tunc fuit videre
in-the-ground committed of-changeableness human then it-was to-see
miseriam, quod homo ille totius olim Europæ honor,
the-wretchedness that the-man that of-whole once Europe the-glory
antecessorumque suorum omnium potentior, sedem æternæ
and-than-ancestors his all more-powerful a-seat of-eternal
requietionis sine calumpnia impetrare non potuit: namque
rest without challenge to-obtain not could for
miles quidam, ad cujus patrimonium locus ille pertinuerat,
a-soldier certain to whose patrimony the-place that had-belonged
clara contestans voce rapinam, sepulturam inhibuit, dicens,
with-clear protesting voice robbery the-burial forbade saying
avito jure solum suum esse, nec illum in loco quem
by-ancestral right the-soil his-own to-be nor him in the-place which
violenter invaserat pausare debere. Quocirca volente Henrico
violently he-had-invaded to-rest ought wherefore with-wishing Henry

filio, qui solus ex liberis aderat, centum libræ argenti
his-son who alone of the-children was-present a-hundred pounds of-silver
litigatori persolutæ audacem calumpniam compescuere: nam
to-the-litigant paid the-bold challenge checked for
tunc Robertus primogenitus in Francia contra patriam
then Robert the-firstborn in France against his-fatherland
bellabat; Willelmus, antequam plane pater exspiraret,
was-warring William before fully his-father breathed-out
Angliam enavigaverat, utilius ducens suis in posterum
to-England had-sailed more-useful judging for-his-own in the-future
commodis prospicere, quam obsequiis paterni corporis
advantages to-provide than in-the-obsequies of-the-paternal body
interesse. Porro, in dispertienda pecunia nec segnis nec
to-take-part further in distributing the-money neither sluggish nor
parcus, omnem illum thesaurum Wintoniæ totis annis
sparing all that treasure at-Winchester in-all the-years
regni cumulatum ab arcanis sacrariis eruit in lucem;
of-the-reign heaped-up from the-secret sanctuaries he-dug-out into the-light
monasteriis aurum, ecclesiis agrestibus solidos quinque argenti,
to-monasteries gold to-churches rural shillings five of-silver
unicuique pago centum libras viritim egenis dividendas,
to-each county a-hundred pounds man-by-man to-the-needy to-be-divided
largitus. Patris etiam memoriam ingenti congerie argenti
bestowing of-his-father also the-memory with-a-huge heap of-silver
et auri, cum gemmarum luce, conspicue adornavit.
and of-gold with of-gems the-light conspicuously he-adorned

De Berengario

BERENGAR

Berengar of Tours denied that the consecrated bread and wine are the Lord's true body and blood, and spread his teaching through poor scholars. Leo IX condemned him at Vercelli, Hildebrand made him recant at Tours and Rome, and Lanfranc and Guitmund answered him in books. In age he lived so humbly that some hold him a saint, and Hildebert of Le Mans praised him in verse; but he could not win back those he had misled, Fulbert of Chartres saw a demon beside him, and he died on the Epiphany fearing for them.

Fuit hoc tempore Berengarius, Turonensis hæresiarcha, qui
there-was at-this time Berengar of-Tours an-arch-heretic who
panem et vinum in altari apposita, post consecrationem
the-bread and wine on the-altar placed after the-consecration
sacerdotis, verum et substantiale corpus Domini, sicut sancta
of-the-priest the-true and substantial body of-the-Lord as the-holy
ecclesia prædicat, esse denegabat. Jamque scatebat omnis Gallia
church preaches to-be denied and-now swarmed all Gaul
ejus doctrina, per egenos scholares, quos ipse cotidiana
with-his doctrine through needy scholars whom he with-daily
stipe sollicitabat, disseminata. Unde soliditati catholicæ
stipend enticed spread whence for-the-solidity catholic
timens, sanctissimæ memoriæ Leo papa, Vercellis contra eum
fearing of-most-holy memory Leo pope at-Vercelli against him
instituto concilio, tenebras nebulosi erroris evangelicorum
with-established council the-darkness of-cloudy error of-Gospel
testimoniorum fulgure depulit; sed cum post obitum
testimonies by-the-lightning drove-off but when after the-death
ejus virus hæreseos, diu in sinibus quorundam nebulonum
his the-poison of-heresy long in the-bosoms of-certain scoundrels
confotum, iterum erumperet, Hildebrandus cum archidiaconus
warmed again burst-out Hildebrand while archdeacon

esset Turonis, mox papa Romæ, adunatis conciliis, convictum
he-was at-Tours soon pope at-Rome with-gathered councils the-convicted-man
ad dogmatis sui anathema compulit: quæ scripta suis locis
to of-doctrine his the-anathema compelled which written in-their places
qui desiderat inveniet. Responderunt ei libris Lanfrancus
who desires will-find answered him in-books Lanfranc
archiepiscopus, sed præcipue et fortiter Guimundus, prius
archbishop but especially and strongly Guitmund formerly
monachus de sancto Leufredo Normanniæ, postea episcopus
a-monk of saint Leufroi of-Normandy afterward bishop
Aversanus Apuliæ, nostri temporis eloquentissimus. Porro, licet
of-Aversa of-Apulia of-our time most-eloquent further although
Berengarius primum calorem juventutis aliquarum hæresium
Berengar the-first heat of-youth of-certain heresies
defensione infamaverit, ævo austeriore ita resipuit ut
with-the-defense defamed in-age more-austere so he-came-to-his-senses that
sine retractatione a quibusdam sanctus habeatur, innumeris
without retraction by some a-saint he-is-held with-countless
bonis, maximeque humilitate et eleemosynis, approbatus;
goods and-chiefly by-humility and alms approved
largarum possessionum dispertiendo dominus, non abscondendo
of-ample possessions by-distributing the-lord not by-hiding
et adorando famulus; fœmineæ venustatis adeo parcus,
and adoring the-servant of-womanly beauty so-much sparing
ut nullam conspectui suo pateretur admitti, ne formam
that none to-sight his he-allowed to-be-admitted lest the-form
videretur delibasse oculo quam non pruriebat animo. Non
he-should-seem to-have-tasted with-the-eye which not he-itched-for in-mind not
aspernari pauperem, non adulari divitem; secundum naturam
to-spurn the-poor-man not to-flatter the-rich according-to nature
vivere; habens victum et vestitum, juxta apostolum,
to-live having food and clothing according-to the-apostle

his contentus esse. Unde eum laudat Cenomannensis
with-these content to-be whence him praises of-Le-Mans
pontifex Hildebertus, inprimis versificator eximius; cujus
the-bishop Hildebert foremost versifier excellent whose
verba propterea inserui, ut prædicabilis episcopi affectum
words for-this-reason I-have-inserted that of-the-praiseworthy bishop the-affection
in magistrum ostendam, simul et doctrina ejus erit
toward his-master I-may-show at-the-same-time also doctrine his will-be
exemplo posteris qua quomodo vivi debeat instituit,
for-an-example to-posterity by-which how to-be-lived ought he-teaches
etsi fortasse metas veræ laudis amore incitatus transsilierit.
although perhaps the-bounds of-true praise by-love roused he-overleapt

"Quem modo miratur, semper mirabitur orbis,
Whom now wonders-at always will-wonder-at the-world
Ille Berengarius non obiturus obit.
He Berengar not about-to-die dies
Quem, sacræ fidei fastigia summa tenentem,
Whom of-the-sacred faith the-summits highest holding
Jani quinta dies abstulit, ausa nefas.
Of-January the-fifth day took-away having-dared a-crime
Illa dies damnosa dies, et perfida mundo,
That day a-ruinous day and faithless to-the-world
Qua dolor et rerum summa ruina fuit;
On-which grief and of-things the-greatest ruin was
Qua status ecclesiæ, qua spes, qua gloria cleri,
On-which the-state of-the-church on-which the-hope on-which the-glory of-the-clergy
Qua cultor juris, jure ruente, ruit.
On-which the-cultivator of-right with-right falling fell

Quicquid philosophi, quicquid cecinere poetæ,
Whatever the-philosophers whatever have-sung the-poets
Ingenio cessit eloquioque suo.
To-the-wit yielded and-to-the-eloquence his
Sanctior et major sapientia, majus adorta,
Holier and greater wisdom greater-things having-undertaken
Implevit sacrum pectus et ora Deo.
Filled his-sacred breast and mouth to-God
Pectus cum voluit, vox protulit, actio prompsit,
The-breast when it-wished the-voice uttered the-action brought-forth
Singula Factori sic studuere suo.
Each to-the-Maker so were-devoted their-own
Vir sacer et sapiens, cui nomen crescit in horas;
A-man holy and wise whose name grows by the-hours
Quo minor est quisquis maximus est hominum.
Than-whom less is whoever greatest is of-men
Cui sensus peperit, partos servavit honores;
For-whom his-sense bore the-gained it-kept honors
Cui potior pauper divite, jusque lucro.
To-whom better the-poor-man than-the-rich-man and-right than-gain
Cui nec desidiam nec luxum res dedit ampla,
To-whom neither sloth nor luxury wealth gave ample
Nec tumidum fecit multus et altus honos.
Nor swollen made much and lofty honor
Qui nec ad argentum nec ad aurum lumina flexit;
Who neither to silver nor to gold his-eyes turned
Sed doluit quotiens, cui daret hæc, aberat.
But grieved as-often-as to-whom he-might-give these-things was-absent
Qui non cessavit inopum fulcire ruinas,
Who not ceased of-the-poor to-prop-up the-ruins
Donec inops dando pauper et ipse fuit.
Until poor by-giving a-pauper also himself he-was

Cujus cura sequi naturam, legibus uti,
Whose care to-follow nature the-laws to-use
Et mentem vitiis, ora negare dolis;
And the-mind to-vices the-mouth to-deny to-tricks
Virtutes opibus, verum præponere falso;
Virtues to-riches the-true to-prefer to-the-false
Nil vacuum sensu dicere vel facere;
Nothing empty of-sense to-say or to-do
Lædere nec quenquam, cunctis prodesse; favorem
To-harm nor anyone to-all to-be-of-use favor
Et populare lucrum pellere mente, manu.
And popular gain to-drive-off by-mind by-hand
Cui vestis textura rudis; cui non fuit unquam
Whose of-clothing the-texture rough to-whom not was ever
Ante sitim potus, nec cibus ante famem.
Before thirst drink nor food before hunger
Quem pudor hospitium statuit sibi; quamque libido
Whom modesty a-lodging set-up for-itself and-as-much-as lust
Incestos superat, tam superavit eam.
The-unchaste overcomes so-much he-overcame it
Quem natura parens cum mundo contulit inquit,
Whom nature the-parent with the-world compared said
'Degenerant alii, nascitur iste mihi.'
Degenerate others is-born this-one to-me
Quæque vagabatur, et pene reliquerat orbem
And-which wandered and almost had-left the-world
Inclusit sacro pectore justitiam.
Shut-in in-his-sacred breast justice
Vir sacer a puero, qui quantum præminet orbi
A-man holy from a-boy who as-much-as stands-out-above the-world
Fama, tam famæ præminet ipse suæ.
By-fame so-much his-fame stands-out-above he-himself his-own

Fama, minor meritis, cum totum pervolet orbem,
Fame less than-his-merits though the-whole it-fly-through world
Cum semper crescat, non erit æqua tamen.
Though always it-grow not it-will-be equal yet
Vir pius atque gravis; vir sic in utroque modestus,
A-man pious and grave a-man so in each-way modest
Ut livor neutro rodere possit eum.
That envy in-neither to-gnaw could him
Livor enim deflet quem carpserat antea; nec tam
Envy for weeps-for whom it-had-carped-at before nor so-much
Carpsit et odit eum, quam modo laudat, amat.
Carped-at and hated him as now it-praises loves
Quam prius ex vita, tam nunc ex morte gemiscit,
As before for his-life so-much now for his-death it-groans
Et queritur celeres hujus abisse dies.
And complains swift his to-have-gone days
Vir vere sapiens, et parte beatus ab omni;
A-man truly wise and part blessed from every
Qui cælos anima, corpore ditat humum.
Who the-heavens with-his-soul with-his-body enriches the-ground
Post obitum vivam secum, secum requiescam,
After death may-I-live with-him with-him may-I-rest
Nec fiat melior sors mea sorte sua."
Nor be-made better lot my than-lot his

Videas in his versibus quod laudis excesserit modum
you-may-see in these verses that of-praise exceeded the-measure
episcopus; sed sic se ostentat eloquentia, tali gestu procedit
the-bishop but so itself shows-off eloquence in-such bearing proceeds
aureus lepos, eo modo
the-golden charm in-this way

"Purpureos flores fundit facundia dives."
Purple flowers pours-out eloquence rich

Berengarius, plane quamvis ipse sententiam correxerit, omnes
Berengar plainly although he-himself his-opinion corrected all
quos ex totis terris depravaverat convertere nequivit; adeo
whom from the-whole lands he-had-corrupted to-convert could-not so-much
pessimum est alios exemplo vel verbo a bono infirmare,
most-evil it-is others by-example or by-word from the-good to-weaken
quia fortassis peccatum te gravabit alienum, cum deletum
because perhaps a-sin you will-weigh-on of-another when blotted-out
fuerit tuum. Quod episcopum Carnotensem Fulbertum, quem
has-been yours which the-bishop of-Chartres Fulbert whom
Domini mater Maria olim ægrotum lacte mamillarum
of-the-Lord the-mother Mary once sick with-the-milk of-breasts
suarum visa fuerat sanare, prædixisse aiunt: nam cum in
her seen had-been to-heal to-have-foretold they-say for when in
extremis positum multi visitarent, et ædium capacitas
extremity placed many visited and of-the-house the-capacity
vix confluentibus sufficeret, ille inter oppositas catervas
scarcely for-those-flocking sufficed he among the-opposed crowds
oculo longe rimatus, Berengarium nisu quo valuit
with-his-eye from-afar having-searched-out Berengar with-the-effort which he-could
expellendum censuit, protestatus immanem dæmonem propter
to-be-expelled decided protesting a-monstrous demon on-account-of

eum consistere, multosque ad eum sequendum blandiente manu
him to-stand and-many to him to-be-followed with-a-coaxing hand
et illice anhelitu corrumpere; quin et ipse die
and with-alluring breath to-corrupt nay also he-himself on-the-day
Epiphaniorum moriens, gemituque producto recordatus quot
of-the-Epiphany dying and-with-a-groan drawn-out remembering how-many
miseros quondam adolescens primo erroris calore secta sua
wretches once as-a-youth in-the-first of-error heat with-sect his
infecerit, "Hodie," inquit, "in die apparitionis suæ apparebit
he-had-infected today he-said on the-day of-appearance his will-appear
mihi Dominus meus Jesus Christus, propter pœnitentiam, ut
to-me Lord my Jesus Christ on-account-of my-repentance as
spero, ad gloriam; vel propter alios, ut timeo, ad pœnam."
I-hope to glory or on-account-of others as I-fear to punishment

MIRACLES OF THE EUCHARIST; THE EMPEROR HENRY

William believes the mysteries the true body and blood, as miracles show: the boy the priest Plegild saw on the altar, and a Jewish boy unharmed in a fire. In Wales the tomb of Walwen, Arthur's nephew, was found. The emperor Henry, driven out by his son, backed Wibert against the popes, yet was learned, tireless in alms, and fought sixty-two battles.

Nos sane credimus, post benedictionem ecclesiasticam,
we surely believe after the-blessing ecclesiastical
illa mysteria esse verum corpus et sanguinem Salvatoris;
those mysteries to-be the-true body and blood of-the-Savior
adducti et veteris ecclesiæ auctoritate, et multis noviter
led both of-the-old church by-the-authority and by-many newly
ostensis miraculis. Quale fuit illud quod beatus Gregorius
shown miracles such was that which blessed Gregory

exhibuit Romæ. Quale quod Paschasius narrat contigisse
displayed at-Rome such that-which Paschasius tells to-have-happened
Alamanniæ: presbyterum Plegildum visibiliter speciem pueri
in-Germany the-priest Plegild visibly the-form of-a-boy
in altare contrectasse et, post libata oscula, in panis
on the-altar to-have-handled and after given kisses into of-bread
similitudinem conversum ecclesiastico more sumpsisse: quod
the-likeness changed in-the-ecclesiastical manner to-have-consumed which
arroganti cavillatione ferunt Berengarium carpere solitum, et
with-arrogant cavil they-say Berengar to-carp-at was-wont and
dicere, "Speciosa certe pax nebulonis, ut, cui oris
to-say beautiful surely the-peace of-the-scoundrel that to-whom of-the-mouth
præbuerat basium, dentium inferret exitium." Quale de
he-had-offered a-kiss of-the-teeth he-should-bring the-destruction such about
pusione Judaico; quod, in ecclesiam cum æquævo Christiano
a-little-boy Jewish who into a-church with a-coeval Christian
forte et ludibunde ingressus, vidit puerum in ara
by-chance and playfully having-entered saw a-boy on the-altar
membratim discerpi, et viritim populo dividi. Id
limb-by-limb to-be-torn-apart and man-by-man to-the-people to-be-divided this
cum innocentia puerili parentibus pro vero assereret, in
when with-innocence boyish to-his-parents for true he-asserted into
rogum detrusum ubi occluso ostio æstuabat incendium, multis
a-pyre thrust where with-shut door raged the-fire many
post horis sine jactura corporis exuviarumque et etiam
after hours without loss of-body and-of-clothes and even
crinium, a Christianis extractum; interrogatusque quomodo
of-hair by the-Christians drawn-out and-asked how
voraces ignium globos evaserit, respondit, "Illa pulchra
the-devouring of-fires balls he-had-escaped he-answered that beautiful
fœmina quam vidi sedere in cathedra, cujus filius populo
woman whom I-saw sit on the-throne whose son to-the-people

dividebatur, semper mihi in camino ad dexteram astitit,
was-divided always by-me in the-furnace at the-right stood
flammeas minas et fumea volumina peplo suo summovens."
the-flaming threats and smoky rolls with-veil her removing
Tunc in provincia Walarum, quæ Ros vocatur, inventum est
then in the-province of-the-Welsh which Ros is-called found was
sepulchrum Walwen, qui fuit haud degener Arturis ex sorore
the-tomb of-Walwen who was not-at-all degenerate of-Arthur from his-sister
nepos. Regnavit in ea parte Britanniæ quæ adhuc Walweitha
the-nephew he-reigned in that part of-Britain which still Walweitha
vocatur: miles virtute nominatissimus, sed a fratre et nepote
is-called a-soldier for-valor most-renowned but by the-brother and nephew
Hengestii, de quibus in primo libro dixi, regno
of-Hengist about whom in the-first book I-have-spoken from-the-kingdom
expulsus, prius multo eorum detrimento exilium compensans
expelled first with-much their loss exile compensating
suum; communicans merito laudi avunculi, quod ruentis
his sharing deservedly in-the-praise of-his-uncle because of-the-falling
patriæ casum in plures annos distulerint. Sed Arturis sepulcrum
fatherland the-fall into many years they-deferred but of-Arthur the-tomb
nusquam visitur, unde antiquitas næniarum adhuc eum venturum
nowhere is-seen whence the-antiquity of-dirges still him about-to-come
fabulatur. Ceterum, alterius bustum, ut præmisi, tempore
fables but of-the-other the-grave as I-have-said-before in-the-time
Willelmi regis repertum est super oram maris, quatuordecim
of-William the-king found was upon the-shore of-the-sea fourteen
pedes longum; ubi a quibusdam asseritur ab hostibus
feet long where by some it-is-asserted by enemies
vulneratus, et naufragio ejectus; a quibusdam dicitur a civibus
wounded and by-shipwreck cast-out by some it-is-said by the-citizens

in publico epulo interfectus. Veritatis ergo notitia labat in
at a-public feast killed of-the-truth therefore the-knowledge totters in
dubio, licet neuter eorum defuerit famæ suæ patrocinio.
doubt although neither of-them has-been-lacking to-fame his in-patronage
Illa fuit tempestas qua Henrici, de quo inter gesta Willelmi
that was the-time in-which of-Henry about whom among the-deeds of-William
locutus sum, miserabile et pene funestum per quinquaginta
spoken I-have the-wretched and almost deadly for fifty
annos Alamannia ingemuit imperium. Erat is neque
years Germany groaned-under rule he-was he neither
ineruditus neque ignavus, sed fato quodam ab omnibus ita
unlearned nor sluggish but by-fate a-certain by all so
impetitus, ut rem religionis tractare sibi videretur quisquis
assailed that the-cause of-religion to-handle himself seemed whoever
in illum arma produceret. Habebat filios duos, Conradum
against him arms brought-forth he-had sons two Conrad
et Henricum: prior nihil impium contra parentem ausus,
and Henry the-former nothing impious against his-parent having-dared
subjugata Italia, apud Aretium civitatem Tusciæ dies
with-subjugated Italy at Arezzo a-city of-Tuscany his-days
expleverat: alter patrem, aliquantulum ab externis feriatum,
had-completed the-other his-father somewhat from external-foes at-rest
primo ævi tirocinio aggressus, cedere imperio compulit;
in-the-first of-his-age apprenticeship having-attacked to-yield the-empire compelled
nec multo post, defunctum imperialibus inferiis extulit. Vivit
nor much after dead with-imperial funeral-rites carried-out lives
adhuc, ejusdem sententiæ pertinaciter sequax pro qua patrem
still of-the-same opinion obstinately a-follower for which his-father
persequendum putaverat: nam et investituram ecclesiarum
to-be-persecuted he-had-thought for both investiture of-churches
per baculum et anulum donat, et sine suo arbitratu papam
by the-staff and ring he-gives and without his judgment a-pope

electum non legitimum æstimat; licet Calixtus, qui modo
elected not lawful reckons although Calixtus who now
apostolicæ sedi præsidet, immodicam viri aviditatem
over-the-apostolic see presides the-immoderate of-the-man greed
egregie inhibuerit. Verum de his plura me dicturum
excellently has-checked but about these-things more me about-to-say
lector præstoletur, cum series narrationis expetierit.
let-the-reader await when the-series of-the-narrative will-demand
Porro Hildebrando papa, ut dixi, mortuo, et Urbano a
further with-Hildebrand pope as I-said dead and Urban by
cardinalibus electo, imperator hæsit in proposito ut Wibertum
the-cardinals elected the-emperor stuck to his-purpose that Wibert
præferret et papam dictitaret, Romæque, altero expulso,
he-should-prefer and pope should-call and-into-Rome with-the-other expelled
inferret: sed aequiori, ut videbatur, causæ affuit militia
should-bring but the-juster as it-seemed cause aided the-soldiery
Matildis Marcisæ, quæ oblita sexus, nec dispar antiquis
of-Matilda the-Marchioness who forgetful of-her-sex nor unlike the-ancient
Amazonibus, ferrata virorum agmina in bellum agebat fœmina;
Amazons iron-clad of-men columns into war drove the-woman
ejus suffragio Urbanus, posteriori tempore thronum indeptus
by-her support Urban in-later time the-throne having-obtained
apostolicum, securum per undecim annos actitavit otium.
apostolic secure for eleven years spent leisure
Post eum Paschalis, consputa Henrici scientia, a Romanis
after him Paschal with-spat-upon of-Henry the-knowledge by the-Romans
institutus est. Gravabat superas adhuc vivendo Wibertus auras,
installed was burdened the-upper still by-living Wibert airs
unicus schismatis sator, nec unquam quoad vixit pervicaciam
the-sole of-schism sower nor ever as-long-as he-lived his-obstinacy
deposuit ut justitiæ manus daret; imperatoris judicium
laid-down so-that to-justice hands he-should-give of-the-emperor the-judgment

pronuntians sequendum, non lanistarum vel pellificum
declaring to-be-followed not of-gladiators or of-furriers
Romanorum: quare ambo, ab Urbano sequentibus conciliis
Roman wherefore both by Urban in-the-following councils
excommunicati, arguto sententiam suspendebant ludibrio. Inter
excommunicated with-witty the-sentence suspended mockery amid
hæc erant multa quæ in Cæsare probares; quod esset
these-things were many-things which in Caesar you-would-approve that he-was
ore facundus, acer ingenio, multa eruditus lectione, impiger
in-speech eloquent sharp in-wit much learned in-reading tireless
eleemosynis; prorsus in eo bona animi corporisque cerneres;
in-alms altogether in him the-goods of-mind and-of-body you-would-see
ad arma prompte concurrere, ut qui sexagies et bis acie
to arms readily to-run as who sixty-times and twice in-battle
collata dimicarit; juste lites componere; cum res non
joined fought justly quarrels to-settle when the-thing not
successisset, querelis in cælum conversis inde opem expectare.
had-succeeded with-complaints to heaven turned thence help to-await
Plures inimicorum ejus vitam exitu miserando conclusere.
many of-enemies his their-life with-an-end pitiable closed

De homine a muribus dilacerato

A MAN DEVOURED BY MICE

A truthful man told William of a powerless and factious enemy of the emperor Henry who was suddenly surrounded by mice at a banquet. Cudgels could not drive them off; carried out to sea, he was followed by mice swimming so thick that the sea looked strewn with chaff; and when they gnawed the planks, the servants put him ashore, where the mice tore him to pieces.

Audivi virum veracissimum referentem quod quidam ex
I-have-heard a-man most-truthful relating that a-certain-man of
adversariis ejus, homo impotens et factiosus, dum resupinatis
the-adversaries his a-man powerless and factious while with-thrown-back
cervicibus in convivio resideret, ita a muribus repente
neck at a-banquet he-sat so by mice suddenly
circumvallatus est ut nusquam esset effugium; tantus erat
surrounded was that nowhere was escape so-great was
numerus bestiolarum ut in quamlibet ampla provincia tot
the-number of-the-little-beasts that in however ample a-province so-many
esse non putarentur. Itaque fustibus, et subselliorum quæ ad
to-be not would-be-thought and-so with-cudgels and of-benches which to
manum occurrissent fragminibus, diu in eas sævitum, nec
hand had-come with-fragments long against them it-was-raged nor
quicquam profectum; et quamvis a cunctis repellerentur, nulli
anything achieved and although by all they-were-repelled to-no-one
tamen noxam vicariam referebant; illum solum dentibus, illum
yet harm in-return they-brought him alone with-their-teeth him
terribili quodam occentu persequebantur. Quapropter a famulis
with-terrible a-certain squeaking they-pursued wherefore by his-servants
ultra jactum sagittæ in pelagus provectus, nec sic violentiam
beyond the-cast of-an-arrow into the-sea carried-out not-even so the-violence

evasit; continuo enim tanta vis murium ponto inundavit
he-escaped at-once for so-great a-force of-mice the-sea flooded
ut marmor paleis constratum jurares. Sed cum jam
that the-marble-surface with-chaff strewn you-would-swear but when already
tabulata navis corroderent, et naufragium indubitatum aqua
the-planks of-the-ship they-gnawed and shipwreck undoubted the-water
per rimulas ingrediens minaretur, servientes puppem ad littus
through chinks entering threatened the-servants the-stern to the-shore
retorquent. Tum vero animalia, juxta carinam annavigantia,
turn-back then indeed the-animals beside the-keel swimming
priora ad terram perveniunt; ita miser ille in aridam expositus,
first to land arrive so wretch that onto dry-land put-out
moxque totus dilaceratus, horrendam murium famem explevit.
and-soon whole torn-apart the-horrible of-the-mice hunger fulfilled

Quod quem leopardus mordicus attigerit mures commingant

THOSE BITTEN BY A LEOPARD

This is less wonderful since in Asia mice come in swarms to urinate on anyone a leopard has bitten, unless attendants keep them off for nine days. The man who told the story saw one such victim anchored at sea, and the mice swam out in pomegranate rinds and were drowned by the sailors' clamor, for the Creator leaves nothing harmful without its remedy.

Id eo minus mirum judico, quia certum est in Asiaticis
that for-this less wonderful I-judge because certain it-is in Asian
regionibus si leopardus aliquem mordicus attigerit, confestim
regions if a-leopard anyone with-its-teeth has-touched at-once
murium copiam adventare, ut vulneratum commingant,
of-mice an-abundance to-arrive that the-wounded-man they-may-urinate-on
immundum urinæ diluvium comitari hominis exitium;
the-unclean of-urine flood to-accompany of-the-man the-destruction

sin vero sedulitate arcentium ministrorum intra novem
but-if indeed by-the-diligence of-the-warding attendants within nine
dies vitata fuerit pernicies, advocari medicorum industriam
days avoided has-been the-ruin to-be-summoned of-physicians the-industry
profecto valituram. Conspicatus est relator meus quendam
surely about-to-avail seen has the-relater my a-certain-man
ejusmodi saucium, cum desperaret in terra salutem, in altum
of-this-kind wounded when he-despaired on land safety into the-deep
jactis anchoris processisse; nec mora, plures illo mures
with-cast anchors to-have-proceeded nor delay many thither mice
annasse, corticibus malorum granatorum quorum medullas
to-have-swum in-rinds of-apples pomegranate whose pulps
exederant inclusos, mirabile dictu, sed obstrepentibus
they-had-eaten-out enclosed wonderful to-say but with-the-din-raising
nautis demersos. Nihil enim ille Parens rerum creatum
sailors drowned nothing for that Parent of-things created
destituit ingenio, nihil porro noxium sine remedio.
leaves-destitute of-device nothing further harmful without remedy

De Mariniano Scotto

MARIANUS THE SCOT

Under the emperor Henry flourished Marianus the Scot, monk of Fulda and recluse at Mainz, who found the cycles of Dionysius Exiguus twenty-two years short of the gospel's truth. Few followed him, and William wonders why the learned of his age, so many and so studious, cling to old usage and scorn every new thing; without favor, wits grow torpid.

Sub isto imperatore regnante floruit Marinianus Scottus, qui
under this emperor reigning flourished Marianus the-Scot who
primo Fuldensis monachus, post apud Magontiacum inclusus,
first of-Fulda a-monk afterward at Mainz a-recluse
contemptu præsentis vitæ, gratiam futuræ demerebatur.
by-contempt of-the-present life the-grace of-the-future earned
Is, longo vitæ otio chronographos scrutatus, dissonantiam
he in-long of-life leisure the-chronographers having-searched the-discrepancy
cyclorum Dionysii exigui ab evangelica veritate deprehendit;
of-the-cycles of-Dionysius Exiguus from gospel truth detected
itaque, ab initio seculi annos singulos recensens, viginti
and-so from the-beginning of-the-age years each reckoning twenty
duos annos qui circulis prædictis deerant superaddidit, sed
two years which to-the-cycles aforesaid were-lacking he-added but
paucos aut nullos sententiæ suæ sectatores habuit. Quare sæpe
few or no of-opinion his followers he-had wherefore often
mirari soleo cur nostri temporis doctos hoc respergat
to-wonder I-am-wont why of-our time the-learned this should-sprinkle
infortunium, ut in tanto numero discentium, in tam tristi
misfortune that in so-great a-number of-learners in so sad
pallore lucubrantium, vix aliquis plenam scientiæ laudem
a-pallor working-by-lamplight scarcely anyone full of-knowledge the-praise

referat. Adeo inveteratus usus placet; adeo fere nullus
brings-back so-much inveterate usage pleases so-much almost none
novis, licet probabiliter inventis, serenitatem assensus
to-new-things although plausibly found the-serenity of-assent
pro merito indulget; totis conatibus in sententiam
according-to merit grants with-all efforts into the-opinion
veterum reptatur, omne recens sordet: ita, quia solus
of-the-ancients one-creeps every new-thing is-scorned so because alone
favor alit ingenia, cessante favor obtorpuerunt omnia.
favor nourishes wits with-ceasing favor have-grown-torpid all-things

De miraculo quod accidit in Fuldensi cœnobio

A MIRACLE AT FULDA

Walcher, prior of Malvern, told William of Malmesbury of a plague at Fulda that took the abbot and many monks. When fear wore off, the monks let prayers and alms lapse, the cellarer loudest about the cost; one night he saw the abbot and that year's dead in chapter, was flogged, and died soon after, his stripes proving the vision. William of Malmesbury turns to the Canterbury–York dispute as King William's time settled it.

Sed quia Fuldense cœnobium nominavi, dicam quod ibidem
but because the-Fulda monastery I-have-named I-shall-tell what there
accidisse vir reverendus mihi narravit, Walkerius prior
to-have-happened a-man reverend to-me narrated Walcher prior
Malverni; cujus verbis qui non credit, injuriam religioni facit.
of-Malvern whose words who not believes injury on-religion does
"Non," ait, "plusquam quindecim anni sunt quod in eodem
not he-said more-than fifteen years it-is since in the-same
loco exitialis lues grassata prius abbatem corripuit, mox multos
place a-deadly plague raging first the-abbot seized soon many

monachorum exstinxit. Superstites primo quisque sibi
of-the-monks extinguished the-survivors at-first each for-himself
timere, orationes et eleemosynas largiores facere: sed processu
to-fear prayers and alms more-generous to-make but in-the-course
temporis, ut est omnium natura hominum, pedetemptim,
of-time as is of-all the-nature of-men gradually
metu dempto, omittere; cellararius præsertim, qui palam
with-fear removed to-omit-them the-cellarer especially who openly
et ridicule clamitaret non posse penum tot expensis
and ridiculously kept-crying not to-be-able the-larder for-so-many expenses
sufficere; sperasse se nuper aliquod alleviamentum, pro
to-suffice to-have-hoped himself lately some alleviation for
tot elationibus funerum; nihil ultra spei esse, si quod vivi
so-many carryings-out of-funerals nothing further of-hope to-be if what the-living
nequissent mortui consumerent. Itaque cum quadam nocte pro
could-not the-dead should-consume and-so when on-a-certain night for
re necessaria soporem diu distulisset, tandem elaqueatis
a-matter necessary sleep long he-had-deferred at-last with-untangled
morarum retibus in dormitorium ire pergebat; et ecce rem
of-delays nets into the-dormitory to-go he-was-proceeding and behold a-thing
miram auditurus es, videt in capitulo abbatem, et omnes
wonderful about-to-hear you-are he-sees in the-chapter the-abbot and all
qui obierant illo anno, eo quo excesserant ordine sedere.
who had-died that year in-that in-which they-had-departed order sit
Timidus et effugere gestiens, vi retractus est; increpitus,
fearful and to-flee eager by-force drawn-back he-was rebuked
et monastico more flagellis coercitus, audivit verba abbatis
and in-monastic manner with-scourges chastised he-heard the-words of-the-abbot
in hanc omnino sententiam: stultum esse de alterius morte
to this altogether sense foolish to-be from of-another the-death
emolumento inhiare, cum sors cujusque sub eodem pendeat
a-profit to-gape-after when the-lot of-each under the-same hang

fato; impium esse, cum monachus omnem vitam in ecclesiæ
fate impious to-be when a-monk his-whole life in of-the-church
consumpserit obsequio, ut careat unius saltem anni post
has-spent the-service that he-should-lack of-one at-least year after
mortem stipendio: illum citissime obiturum, sed quicquid
death the-allowance him most-quickly about-to-die but whatever
pro eo fieret, ad aliorum quibus abstulerat refundendum
for him should-be-done to of-others whom he-had-robbed to-be-repaid
commodum; iret modo, et alios corrigeret exemplo quos
the-advantage should-go now and others he-should-correct by-example whom
corruperat verbo. Abiit ille; et nihil se vanum vidisse,
he-had-corrupted by-word went-away he and nothing himself vain to-have-seen
tam recentibus plagis quam proximo sui obitu, monstravit."
both by-so-fresh stripes and by-the-next his death showed
Interea, dum alia agimus, irrepsit materia, et voluntas
meanwhile while other-things we-do has-crept-in the-material and the-will
accessit, ut quid tempore Willelmi regis diffinitum sit de
has-come that what in-the-time of-William the-king defined was about
controversia quæ adhuc inter archiepiscopos Cantuariensem
the-controversy which still between the-archbishops of-Canterbury
et Eboracensem volutatur, describam. De qua re, ut plane
and of-York is-rolled I-may-describe about which thing that plainly
norint posteri, quid inde antiqui patres senserint apponam.
may-know posterity what thence the-ancient fathers thought I-shall-append

Quod omnes episcopi totius Britanniæ archiepiscopo Doroberniæ subjiciuntur

THAT ALL THE BISHOPS OF BRITAIN ARE SUBJECT TO CANTERBURY

Gregory gives Augustine every bishop of Britain as his subject; Boniface makes Canterbury the metropolitan see of all Britain forever; Alexander commits to Lanfranc the case of Æthelric of Chichester and the dispute between York and Dorchester.

Gregorius papa Augustino primo Anglorum archiepiscopo
Gregory pope to-Augustine first of-the-English archbishop
Doroberniæ. — "Tua fraternitas non solum eos episcopos
of-Canterbury your brotherhood not only those bishops
quos ordinaverit, neque hos tantummodo qui per
whom it-shall-have-ordained nor these only who by
Eboracensem episcopum fuerint ordinati, sed etiam omnes
of-York bishop shall-have-been ordained but also all
Brittanniæ sacerdotes, habeat, Deo Domino nostro Jesu
of-Britain the-priests may-have with-God Lord our Jesus
Christo auctore, subjectos."
Christ as-author subject
Bonefacius Justo archiepiscopo Doroberniæ. — "Absit ab omni
Boniface to-Justus archbishop of-Canterbury far-be-it from every
Christiano ut ex illa civitate Dorobernia aliquid minuatur,
Christian that from that city Canterbury anything be-diminished
aut in aliud mutetur, nunc vel futuris temporibus, quæ a
or into another be-changed now or in-future times which by
prædecessore nostro domino papa Gregorio statuta sunt, quoquo
predecessor our lord pope Gregory established were in-whatever
modo res humanæ quassantur: sed magis ex auctoritate beati
way affairs human are-shaken but rather from the-authority of-blessed

Petri apostolorum principis id ipsum præcipientes firmamus, ut
Peter of-the-apostles prince this very-thing ordering we-confirm that
in Dorobernia civitate semper in posterum metropolitanus totius
in Canterbury the-city always in the-future the-metropolitan of-whole
Britanniæ locus habeatur; omnesque provinciæ regni
Britain see be-held and-all the-provinces of-the-kingdom
Anglorum, ut præfati loci metropolitanæ ecclesiæ
of-the-English that of-the-aforesaid place to-the-metropolitan church
subjiciantur, immutilata et perpetua stabilitate decernimus.
be-subjected with-unimpaired and perpetual stability we-decree
Hanc autem ecclesiam, utpote specialiter consistentem sub
this but church as-being specially standing under
potestate et tuitione sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, si quis conatus
the-power and protection of-the-holy Roman church if anyone tried
fuerit imminuere, eique de concessæ potestatis jure
will-have to-diminish and-from-it of the-granted power the-right
quicquid abstulerit, auferat eum Deus de libro vitæ,
whatever he-shall-have-taken-away may-take-away him God from the-book of-life
sciatque se sub anathematis vinculis esse nodatum."
and-may-he-know himself under of-anathema the-bonds to-be knotted
Alexander Willelmo regi Anglorum. — "Causam Alricii,
Alexander to-William king of-the-English the-case of-Æthelric
qui olim Cicestrensis ecclesiæ dictus est episcopus, diligenter
who once of-the-Chichester church called was bishop diligently
retractandam et diffiniendam, fratri nostro episcopo
to-be-reconsidered and to-be-determined to-brother our bishop
Lanfranco commisimus. Item sibi negotium, de discernenda
Lanfranc we-have-committed likewise to-him the-business of deciding
lite quæ inter archiepiscopum Eboracensem et episcopum
the-suit which between the-archbishop of-York and the-bishop
Dorcacestrensem de pertinentia diocesis eorum est, firmiter
of-Dorchester about the-belonging of-diocese their is firmly

injungendo commendavimus, ut hanc causam diligentissima
enjoining we-have-entrusted that this case with-most-diligent
perquisitione pertractet, et justo fine determinet. In causis
inquiry he-may-handle and with-a-just end determine in cases
autem pertractandis et diffiniendis ita sibi nostræ et
moreover to-be-handled and to-be-determined so to-him of-our and
apostolicæ auctoritatis vicem dedimus, ut quicquid in eis
apostolic authority the-place we-have-given that whatever in them
justitia dictante determinaverit, quasi in nostra præsentia
with-justice dictating he-shall-have-determined as-if in our presence
diffinitum, deinceps firmum et indissolubile teneatur."
decided thenceforth firm and indissoluble be-held

Quod Eboracensis archiepiscopus et omnes sibi subjecti archiepiscopo Doroberniæ subjiciantur

THAT YORK IS SUBJECT TO CANTERBURY

The council of 1072, called by Alexander's order and in William's presence, found that York is subject to Canterbury and its archbishop owes Lanfranc a profession as primate of all Britain; for the king's sake Lanfranc spared Thomas the oath and took his written profession. The same council moved the bishops' sees from villages to cities and fixed the order of seating, and York's claim on Worcester and Dorchester, sent back from Rome by the pope, ended with the bishops below the Humber assigned to Canterbury and those beyond to York.

Generale concilium regni Anglorum de jure et primatu
the-general council of-the-kingdom of-the-English about the-right and primacy
Dorobernensis sive Cantuariensis ecclesiæ. — "Anno ab
of-the-Dorobernian or Canterbury church in-the-year from
incarnatione Domini nostri Jesu Christi millesimo septuagesimo
the-incarnation of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ thousandth seventieth

secundo, pontificatus autem domini Alexandri papæ undecimo,
second of-the-pontificate moreover of-lord Alexander pope eleventh
regni vero Willelmi gloriosi regis Anglorum et ducis
of-the-reign but of-William the-glorious king of-the-English and duke
Normannorum sexto, ex præcepto ejusdem Alexandri papæ,
of-the-Normans sixth by the-order of-the-same Alexander pope
annuente eodem rege, in præsentia ipsius et episcoporum atque
with-assenting the-same king in the-presence of-him and of-the-bishops and
abbatum, ventilata est causa de primatu quem Lanfrancus
abbots aired was the-case about the-primacy which Lanfranc
Dorobernensis archiepiscopus super Eboracensem ecclesiam
of-Canterbury archbishop over the-York church
jure suæ ecclesiæ proclamabat; et de ordinationibus
by-right of-his church proclaimed and about the-ordinations
quorundam episcoporum, de quibus ad quem specialiter
of-certain bishops about whom to whom specially
pertinerent certum minime constabat: et tandem aliquando
they-belonged certain not-at-all was-established and at-last finally
diversis diversarum scripturarum auctoritatibus probatum atque
by-various of-various writings authorities proved and
ostensum est quod Eboracensis ecclesia Cantuariensi debeat
shown it-was that the-York church to-Canterbury ought
subjacere, ejusque archiepiscopi, ut primatis totius Britanniæ,
to-be-subject and-its archbishop as primate of-whole Britain
dispositionibus, in iis quæ ad Christianam religionem
to-the-dispositions in those-things which to Christian religion
pertinent, in omnibus obedire. Subjectionem vero Dunelmensis,
pertain in all-things to-obey the-subjection but of-the-Durham
hoc est, Lindisfarnensis episcopi, atque omnium regionum a
that is of-the-Lindisfarne bishop and of-all the-regions from
terminis Licifeldensis episcopii, et Humbræ magni fluvii,
the-boundaries of-the-Lichfield bishopric and of-the-Humber great river

usque ad extremos Scotiæ fines, et quicquid ex hac parte
all-the-way to the-farthest of-Scotland borders and whatever from this side
prædicti fluminis ad parochiam Eboracensis ecclesiæ jure
of-the-aforesaid river to the-parish of-the-York church by-right
competit, Cantuariensis metropolitanus Eboracensi archiepiscopo
belongs the-Canterbury metropolitan to-the-York archbishop
ejusque successoribus obtinere concessit. Ita ut si Cantuariensis
and-his successors to-hold granted so that if the-Canterbury
archiepiscopus concilium cogere voluerit, ubicunque visum
archbishop a-council to-convene shall-wish wherever seen
ei fuerit, Eboracensis archiepiscopus sui præsentiam
to-him shall-have-been the-York archbishop his presence
cum omnibus sibi subjectis ad nutum ejus exhibeat,
with all to-him subject at the-nod his shall-show
et ejus canonicis dispositionibus obediens existat. Quod
and to-his canonical dispositions obedient shall-be that
autem Eboracensis archiepiscopus professionem Cantuariensi
moreover the-York archbishop profession to-the-Canterbury
archiepiscopo etiam cum sacramento facere debeat, Lanfrancus
archbishop even with oath to-make ought Lanfranc
Dorobernensis archiepiscopus ex antiqua antecessorum
of-Canterbury archbishop from the-ancient of-his-predecessors
consuetudine ostendit; sed, ob amorem regis, Thomæ
custom showed but for love of-the-king to-Thomas
Eboracensi archiepiscopo sacramentum relaxavit, scriptamque
the-York archbishop the-oath he-relaxed and-the-written
tantum professionem recepit, non præjudicans successoribus
only profession received not prejudicing successors
suis qui sacramentum cum professione a successoribus
his who the-oath with the-profession from the-successors
Thomæ exigere voluerint. Si archiepiscopus Cantuariensis
of-Thomas to-exact shall-wish if the-archbishop of-Canterbury

vitam finierit, Eboracensis archiepiscopus Doroberniam
his-life shall-have-finished the-York archbishop to-Canterbury
veniet; et eum qui electus fuerit, cum ceteris præfatæ
will-come and him who elected shall-have-been with the-other of-the-aforesaid
ecclesiæ episcopis, ut primatem proprium jure consecrabit.
church bishops as primate his-own by-right will-consecrate
Quod si Eboracensis archiepiscopus obierit, is qui ei
but if the-York archbishop shall-have-died he who to-him
successurus eligitur, accepto a rege archiepiscopatus dono,
about-to-succeed is-chosen with-received from the-king of-the-archbishopric the-gift
Cantuariam, vel ubi Cantuariensi archiepiscopo placuerit,
to-Canterbury or where to-the-Canterbury archbishop it-shall-have-pleased
accedet, et ab ipso ordinationem canonico more suscipiet.
will-come and from him ordination in-the-canonical manner will-receive
Huic constitutioni consenserunt præfatus rex, et archiepiscopi
to-this constitution consented the-aforesaid king and the-archbishops
Lanfrancus Cantuariensis et Thomas Eboracensis, et
Lanfranc of-Canterbury and Thomas of-York and
Hubertus, sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ subdiaconus et præfati
Hubert of-the-holy Roman church subdeacon and of-the-aforesaid
Alexandri papæ legatus, et ceteri qui interfuerunt episcopi et
Alexander pope legate and the-other who were-present bishops and
abbates. Ventilata est autem hæc causa prius apud Wentanam
abbots aired was moreover this case first at Winchester
civitatem in Paschali sollempnitate, in capella regia quæ sita
city at the-Easter solemnity in the-chapel royal which situated
est in castello; postea in villa regia quæ vocatur Windlesor,
is in the-castle afterward in the-estate royal which is-called Windsor
ubi et finem accepit in præsentia regis, episcoporum,
where also its-end it-received in the-presence of-the-king of-the-bishops
abbatum diversorum ordinum, qui congregati erant apud
of-the-abbots of-various orders who gathered were at

curiam in festivitate Pentecostes. Signum Willelmi regis.
the-court at the-festival of-Pentecost the-sign of-William the-king
Signum Matildis reginæ. Ego Hubertus, sanctæ Romanæ
the-sign of-Matilda the-queen I Hubert of-the-holy Roman
ecclesiæ lector et domini Alexandri papæ legatus, subscripsi.
church reader and of-lord Alexander pope legate have-subscribed
Ego Lanfrancus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus subscripsi.
I Lanfranc of-Canterbury archbishop have-subscribed
Ego Thomas Eboracensis archiepiscopus subscripsi. Ego
I Thomas of-York archbishop have-subscribed I
Willelmus Londoniensis episcopus consensi. Ego Hermannus
William of-London bishop have-consented I Herman
Scirburnensis episcopus subscripsi. Ego Wulstanus Wigornensis
of-Sherborne bishop have-subscribed I Wulfstan of-Worcester
episcopus subscripsi. Ego Walterus Herefordensis episcopus
bishop have-subscribed I Walter of-Hereford bishop
subscripsi. Ego Giso Wellensis episcopus consensi. Ego
have-subscribed I Giso of-Wells bishop have-consented I
Remigius Dorcacensis episcopus subscripsi. Ego Walkelinus
Remigius of-Dorchester bishop have-subscribed I Walkelin
Wentanus episcopus subscripsi. Ego Herfastus Helmeanensis
of-Winchester bishop have-subscribed I Herfast of-Elmham
episcopus subscripsi. Ego Stigandus Cicestrensis episcopus
bishop have-subscribed I Stigand of-Chichester bishop
consensi. Ego Siwardus Rofensis episcopus consensi. Ego
have-consented I Siward of-Rochester bishop have-consented I
Osbernus Exoniensis episcopus consensi. Ego Odo Bajocensis
Osbern of-Exeter bishop have-consented I Odo of-Bayeux
episcopus, et comes Cantiæ, consensi. Ege Godefridus
bishop and earl of-Kent have-consented I Geoffrey
Constantiensis episcopus, et unus de primatibus Anglorum,
of-Coutances bishop and one of the-chief-men of-the-English

consensi. Ego Scotlandus abbas cœnobii sancti Augustini
have-consented I Scotland abbot of-the-monastery of-saint Augustine
consensi. Ego Elfwinus, abbas cœnobii quod Ramasege
have-consented I Ælfwine abbot of-the-monastery which Ramsey
dicitur, consensi. Ego Elnothus Glestoniensis abbas consensi.
is-called have-consented I Æthelnoth of-Glastonbury abbot have-consented
Ego Turstanus, abbas cœnobii quod in insula quæ
I Thurstan abbot of-the-monastery which on the-island which
dicitur Heli situm est, consensi. Ego Wlnothus, abbas
is-called Ely situated is have-consented I Wulfnoth abbot
cœnobii quod Certesei dicitur, consensi. Ego Elfwinus
of-the-monastery which Chertsey is-called have-consented I Ælfwine
abbas cœnobii Evesandi consensi. Ego Fridericus abbas
abbot of-the-monastery of-Evesham have-consented I Frederick abbot
sancti Albani consensi. Ego Gosfridus abbas cœnobii
of-saint Alban have-consented I Geoffrey abbot of-the-monastery
sancti Petri, quod non longe a Londonia situm est,
of-saint Peter which not far from London situated is
consensi. Ego Baldewinus abbas cœnobii sancti Edmundi
have-consented I Baldwin abbot of-the-monastery of-saint Edmund
consensi. Ego Turoldus abbas de Burgo consensi. Ego
have-consented I Turold abbot of Peterborough have-consented I
Adelelmus abbas Abbendoniæ consensi. Ego Rualdus abbas
Æthelhelm abbot of-Abingdon have-consented I Ruald abbot
Novi Monasterii Wintoniæ consensi."
of-the-New Minster of-Winchester have-consented
Professio Thomæ Eboracensis archiepiscopi. — "Decet
the-profession of-Thomas of-York archbishop it-befits
Christianum quemque Christianis legibus subjacere, nec
Christian each to-Christian laws to-be-subject nor
iis quæ a sanctis patribus salubriter instituta sunt
to-those-things which by the-holy fathers healthfully established were

quibuslibet rationibus contraire. Hinc namque iræ, dissensiones,
by-any reasons to-oppose hence for angers dissensions
invidiæ, contentiones, ceteraque procedunt, quæ amatores
envies contentions and-the-other-things proceed which lovers
suos in pœnas æternas demergunt. Et quanto quisque
their-own into punishments eternal plunge and the-more each
altioris est ordinis, tanto impensius debet obtemperare
of-higher is order the-more zealously ought to-obey
præceptis. Propterea ego Thomas ordinatus jam Eboracensis
the-precepts therefore I Thomas ordained now of-the-York
ecclesiæ metropolitanus antistes, auditis cognitisque rationibus,
church metropolitan bishop with-heard and-known reasons
absolutam tibi Lanfrance, Dorobernensis archiepiscope,
absolute to-you Lanfranc of-Canterbury archbishop
tuisque successoribus, de canonica obedientia professionem
and-to-your successors about canonical obedience profession
facio; et quicquid a te vel ab eis juste et canonice mihi
I-make and whatever by you or by them justly and canonically on-me
injunctum fuerit, servaturum me esse promitto. De hac
enjoined shall-have-been about-to-keep myself to-be I-promise about this
autem re, dum a te adhuc ordinandus essem, dubius fui;
but thing while by you still to-be-ordained I-was doubtful I-was
ideoque tibi quidem sine conditione, successoribus vero
and-therefore to-you indeed without condition to-successors but
tuis conditionaliter, obtemperaturum me esse promisi."
your conditionally about-to-obey myself to-be I-promised
Habebat autem ex antiquo, sicut in libro primo
had moreover from of-old as in the-book first
dixisse me memini, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus hos
to-have-said I remember the-Canterbury archbishop these
episcopos; Londoniensem, Wintoniensem, Rofensem,
bishops of-London of-Winchester of-Rochester

Scireburnensem, Wigornensem, Herefordensem, Lichetfeldensem,
of-Sherborne of-Worcester of-Hereford of-Lichfield
Selesiensem, Legacestrensem, Elmanensem, Sidnacestrensem,
of-Selsey of-Leicester of-Elmham of-Lindsey
Dommuccensem: additi sunt, tempore regis Edwardi senioris,
of-Dunwich added were in-the-time of-king Edward the-elder
Cornubiensis, Cridiensis, Wellensis in West-Saxonia, et in
of-Cornwall of-Crediton of-Wells in Wessex and in
Merciis Dorcestrensis, ut secundo libro dixi. Eboracensis autem
Mercia of-Dorchester as in-the-second book I-said the-York but
archiepiscopus habebat omnes trans Humbram episcopos suæ
archbishop had all beyond the-Humber bishops to-his
ditioni subjectos, Ripensem, Haugustaldensem, Lindisfarnensem,
dominion subject of-Ripon of-Hexham of-Lindisfarne
illum de Candida Casa quæ nunc Witerne dicitur, et omnes
him of White House which now Whithorn is-called and all
episcopos Scotiæ et Orcadum; sicut Cantuariensis habet
bishops of-Scotland and of-the-Orkneys as the-Canterbury-one has
episcopos Hiberniæ et Walarum. Perierunt autem jamdudum
the-bishops of-Ireland and of-the-Welsh perished moreover long-since
episcopatus Ripensis et Haugustaldensis vi hostilitatis;
the-bishoprics of-Ripon and of-Hexham by-the-force of-hostility
et Legacestrensis, et Sidnacestrensis et Dommuccensis, quo
and of-Leicester and of-Lindsey and of-Dunwich by-what
nescio modo. Porro autem, tempore regis Edwardi simplicis,
I-know-not means further but in-the-time of-king Edward the-simple
Cornubiensis et Cridiensis uniti sunt, et translatus est
of-Cornwall and of-Crediton united were and transferred was
episcopatus in Exoniam. Sub rege Willelmo, in isto eodem
the-bishopric to Exeter under king William in that same
concilio pronuntiatum est, secundum scita canonum, ut
council pronounced it-was according-to the-decrees of-the-canons that

episcopi transeuntes de villis constituerent sedes suas in
the-bishops passing from villages should-set-up their seats in
urbibus diocesium suarum: Licitfeldensis ergo migravit in
the-cities of-dioceses their the-Lichfield-one therefore migrated to
Cestram, quæ olim Civitatis Legionum dicebatur; Selesiensis in
Chester which once City of-the-Legions was-called the-Selsey-one to
Cicestram; Elmanensis in Tethford primo, nunc ab Herberto
Chichester the-Elmham-one to Thetford first now by Herbert
episcopo in Norwic; Scirburnensis in Salesbiriam; Dorcestrensis
the-bishop to Norwich the-Sherborne-one to Salisbury the-Dorchester-one
in Lincoliam. Nam Lindisfarnensis pridem veteri tempore
to Lincoln for the-Lindisfarne-one long-ago in-old time
transierat in Dunelmum, et nuper Wellensis in Bathoniam.
had-passed to Durham and lately the-Wells-one to Bath
In hoc conventu Lanfrancus, qui erat adhuc rudis Anglus,
in this assembly Lanfranc who was still a-raw Englishman
quæsivit a senioribus episcopis qui esset ordo sedendi in
asked of the-elder bishops what was the-order of-sitting in
concilio, antiquo more statutus: illi vero, excusata difficultate
council by-ancient custom established they but with-excused the-difficulty
responsi, in diem distulerunt posterum. Et tunc, diligentissime
of-the-answer to the-day put-it-off following and then most-diligently
advocata memoria, hunc se vidisse morem asseruere;
with-summoned memory this themselves to-have-seen custom affirmed
ut Cantuariæ archiepiscopus, concilio præsidens, habeat
that of-Canterbury the-archbishop over-the-council presiding should-have
a dextro latere archiepiscopum Eboraci, et juxta eum
on the-right side the-archbishop of-York and beside him
episcopum Wintoniæ, a sinistro autem Londoniensem: quod
the-bishop of-Winchester on the-left moreover the-London-one but
si, ut contingit, pro aliqua necessitate Cantuariensis primas
if as happens for some necessity the-Canterbury primate

adventum suum negaverit, vel obitu defuerit, Eboracensis
coming his should-deny or by-death be-lacking the-York
archiepiscopus, concilio præsidens, habeat a dextra
archbishop over-the-council presiding should-have on the-right
Londoniensem episcopum, a sinistra Wintoniensem; ceteri
the-London bishop on the-left the-Winchester-one the-rest
secundum tempora ordinationum sedilia sua agnoscant.
according-to the-times of-the-ordinations seats their should-recognize
Tunc quoque querela archiepiscopi Eboracensis de clamore
then also the-complaint of-the-archbishop of-York about his-claim
in Wigornensem et Dorcacestrensem episcopos decisa et
against the-Worcester and the-Dorchester bishops decided and
sopita est, namque dicebat eos suæ ditioni subjacere debere;
put-to-rest was for he-said them to-his dominion to-be-subject ought
quod, cum jamdudum muto silentio ruminasset, Romam
which when long-since in-mute silence he-had-ruminated to-Rome
cum Lanfranco profectus, ut pallia sua ab apostolico
with Lanfranc having-set-out that the-palls their from the-apostolic-one
reciperent, palam audiente senatu Romano extulit. Tunc
they-might-receive openly with-hearing the-senate Roman he-brought-forth then
vero Lanfrancus, quamvis ad omnes injurias inconcussæ
indeed Lanfranc although to all injuries of-unshaken
soliditatis esset, nonnihil tamen tam proterva et ante
solidity he-was somewhat yet by-so wanton and before
sibi inaudita postulatione turbatus, iræ motum vultu
to-him unheard-of a-demand disturbed of-anger the-motion with-his-face
prodidit, verbis aliquamdiu intra fauces devoratis: at
betrayed with-his-words for-some-time within his-throat swallowed but
Alexander papa, qui gravaretur Lanfrancum contristare, nam
Alexander the-pope who was-loath Lanfranc to-sadden for
et venienti dignanter assurrexerat, professus illud insigne
also as-he-came graciously he-had-risen professing that mark

reverentiæ non se detulisse honori archiepiscopii, sed
of-reverence not himself to-have-paid to-the-honor of-the-archbishopric but
amori magisterii, tunc quoque judicandi invidiam a se
to-the-love of-his-teaching then also of-judging the-odium from himself
rejecit, litis arbitrium trajiciens in Anglorum concilium.
he-cast-off of-the-suit the-arbitration transferring to the-English council
Quapropter, ut dixi, res, multum diuque ventilata in
wherefore as I-said the-matter much and-long aired in
hoc concilio, hunc sortita est terminum; ut, quia citra
this council this obtained has end that because on-this-side-of
Humbram essent, hi episcopi Cantuariensi applicarentur,
the-Humber were these bishops to-the-Canterbury-one they-should-be-attached
omnes vero Transhumbranos Eboracensis obtineret.
all but the-Transhumbrians the-York-one should-hold

WULFSTAN OF WORCESTER

Wulfstan of Worcester, attacked at the council for his little learning, trusted in Dunstan and Oswald, pleaded his case through a monk with some French, and won, so that York's archbishop begged his visits. William closes the book with a letter dedicating the Deeds of the Kings to Earl Robert, the king's son.

Hic sancta simplicitas beati Wulstani Wigornensis episcopi,
here the-holy simplicity of-blessed Wulfstan of-Worcester bishop
immo magnanima in Deo confidentia, laudanda et plausu
nay the-great-spirited in God confidence to-be-praised and with-applause
excipienda est. Cum enim et de hac re, et de parva
to-be-received is when for both about this thing and about his-small
scientia litterarum pulsatus, foras exisset ut a strictiori
knowledge of-letters assailed outside he-had-gone that by a-closer
consilio responsum cerneret suum, a tumultibus remoto
counsel the-answer he-might-decide his from the-tumults with-removed

animo, “Crede mihi,” inquit, “nondum cantavimus horam
mind believe me he-said not-yet have-we-sung the-hour
sextam; cantemus ergo.” Tum sociis referentibus
sixth let-us-sing therefore then with-his-companions replying
ut prius propter quod venerant expedirent, quod satis
that first for that-which they-had-come they-should-settle that enough
superque sufficeret cantibus tempus; regem et proceres, si
and-more would-suffice for-singing time the-king and nobles if
hæc audierint, risui se haberi opinaturos; “Prius,
these-things they-heard for-a-laugh themselves to-be-held would-think first
crede mihi,” dixit, “faciemus Dei servitium, et post
believe me he-said we-shall-do of-God the-service and afterward
agitabimus hominum litigium.” Hora igitur cantata,
we-shall-plead of-men the-suit with-the-hour therefore sung
nulla excogitata falsi tergiversatione, nullo commentato
with-no devised of-falsehood shuffling with-no contrived
veri splendore, confestim aulam concilii ingredi pergebat.
of-truth splendor at-once the-hall of-the-council to-enter he-went
Suis eum retinere temptantibus persuaderi non potuit;
with-his-men him to-hold-back trying to-be-persuaded not he-could
quin potius timentibus causæ: “Pro certo,” ait, “noveritis
nay rather to-those-fearing for-the-cause for certain he-said you-may-know
visibiliter me hic videre beatos archiepiscopos Dunstanum
visibly me here to-see the-blessed archbishops Dunstan
Cantuariensem et Oswaldum Eboracensem, qui hodie, suis
of-Canterbury and Oswald of-York who today with-their
me precibus tuentes, falsiloquorum acumen hebetabunt.” Ita
me prayers protecting of-the-false-speakers the-sharpness will-blunt so
data benedictione monacho, minimæ facundiæ viro, sed
with-given blessing to-a-monk of-least eloquence a-man but
Normannicæ linguæ sciolo, rem perorans obtinuit, ut
of-the-Norman tongue a-smatterer the-matter pleading he-obtained that

qui suæ diocesis ante indignus putabatur regimine, ab
he-who of-his diocese before unworthy was-thought of-the-government by
archiepiscopo Eboraci suppliciter rogaretur ut suas dignaretur
the-archbishop of-York suppliantly was-asked that his he-would-deign
lustrare partes, quo ipse pro timore hostium vel
to-visit parts whither he-himself for fear of-the-enemies or
sermonis ignorantia cavebat accedere.
of-speech ignorance avoided to-go
Verum ego non ulterius lectorum expectationem macerabo,
but I not further of-the-readers the-expectation shall-wear-down
qui hæc forsitan non libenter intuentur, quia gesta
who these-things perhaps not gladly look-on because the-deeds
Willelmi successorum præstolantur; quamvis, nisi me nimius
of-William of-the-successors they-await although unless me excessive
amor mei fallit, nulli varietatem relationum displicituram
love of-myself deceives to-no-one the-variety of-accounts about-to-displease
opinor, nisi si quis tam nubilus est ut Catonis supercilium
I-think unless if anyone so cloudy is that of-Cato the-brow
æmuletur. Sed alia in quarto et quinto libro qui volet
he-emulate but other-things in the-fourth and fifth book who wishes
experietur, nam tertius debitum agnoscit modum.
will-find for the-third its-due recognizes measure
Domino venerabili et famoso Comiti Roberto, filio regis,
to-the-lord venerable and famous Earl Robert son of-king
Willelmus Malmesbiriæ monachus salutes, et, si quas
William of-Malmesbury monk greetings and if any
valet, orationes. Virtus clarorum virorum illud vel maxime
he-can prayers the-virtue of-famous men that even most
laudandum in se commendat, quod etiam longe positorum
praiseworthy in itself commends that even of-those-far placed
animos ad se diligendum invitat; unde inferiores superiorum
the-minds to itself to-be-loved invites whence the-inferior of-the-superior

virtutes faciunt suas, dum earum adorant vestigia, ad
the-virtues make their-own while their they-adore the-footprints to
quarum aspirare non valent exempla. Porro totum ad majorum
whose to-aspire not they-can the-examples further the-whole to of-the-greater
redundat gloriam, quod ipsi et bonum faciunt, et minores
redounds the-glory that they both good do and the-lesser
ad se amandum accendunt. Vestrum est igitur, O duces,
to themselves to-be-loved kindle yours it-is therefore O leaders
si quid boni facimus; vestrum profecto si quid dignum
if anything of-good we-do yours surely if anything worthy
memoria scribimus; vestra industria nobis est incitamento ut,
of-memory we-write your industry to-us is for-an-incitement that
quia pericula vestra paci nostræ impenditis, vos vicissim
because dangers your to-peace our you-spend you in-turn
per labores nostros omni ævo inclarescatis. Hinc est
through labors our in-every age may-grow-famous hence it-is
quod Gesta Regum Anglorum, quæ nuper edidi, vobis
that the-Deeds of-the-Kings of-the-English which lately I-published to-you
potissimum consecranda credidi, domine Comes venerabilis
especially to-be-dedicated I-believed lord Earl venerable
et merito amabilis. Nullum enim magis decet bonarum
and deservedly lovable none for more befits of-the-good
artium fautorem esse quam te, cui adhæsit magnanimitas
arts the-patron to-be than you to-whom has-clung the-great-spirit
avi, munificentia patrui, prudentia patris; quos
of-your-grandfather the-munificence of-your-uncle the-prudence of-your-father whom
cum æmulus industriæ liniamentis repræsentes, illud peculiare
when a-rival of-industry by-the-features you-represent that peculiar
gloriæ tuæ facis quod litteris insistis. Quid quod etiam
to-glory your you-make that to-letters you-apply-yourself what that also
notitia tua dignaris litteratos, quos vel invidia famæ
with-the-notice your you-deign the-lettered whom either the-envy of-fame

vel tenuitas fortunæ fecit obscuros. Quia enim natura
or the-slenderness of-fortune has-made obscure because for nature
indulget sibi, quod quis probat in se ipso non improbat
indulges itself what anyone approves in him himself not he-disapproves
in altero, consentaneos igitur sibi mores experiuntur in
in another agreeing therefore with-themselves manners experience in
te litterati, quos citra intellectum ullius acrimoniæ benignus
you the-lettered whom short-of the-understanding of-any harshness kindly
aspicis, jocundus admittis, invitus dimittis. Nihil plane in te
you-regard gladly you-admit unwillingly you-dismiss nothing plainly in you
mutavit fortunæ amplitudo, nisi ut pene tantum benefacere
has-changed of-fortune the-amplitude except that almost as-much to-do-good
posses quantum velles. Suscipe ergo, virorum clarissime,
you-could as-much-as you-wished receive therefore of-men most-famous
opus, in quo te quasi ex speculo videas; dum intelliget
the-work in which you as-if from a-mirror you-may-see while it-will-understand
tuæ serenitatis assensus ante te summorum procerum
of-your serenity the-assent before you of-the-highest nobles
imitatum facta quam audires nomina. Continentiam autem
to-have-imitated the-deeds than you-heard their-names the-content moreover
operis prologus primi libri exponit; quem si placuerit
of-the-work the-prologue of-the-first book sets-out which if it-shall-have-pleased
legere, materiam totam poteris de compendio colligere.
to-read the-material whole you-will-be-able from a-compendium to-gather
Illud a vestra dignitate impetratum velim, ut non
that from your dignity obtained I-would-wish that not
mihi vertatur vitio quod sæpe per excessum alias quam
to-me be-turned into-a-fault that often by digression elsewhere than
in Anglia peregrinatur narratio; volo enim hoc opus esse
in England wanders the-narrative I-wish for this work to-be

multarum historiarum breviarium, quamvis a majori parte
of-many histories a-breviary although from the-greater part
vocaverim Gesta Regum Anglorum.
I-have-called-it the-Deeds of-the-Kings of-the-English

Prologus in librum quartum. Incipit prologus Willelmi Malmesbiriensis in libro quarto de gestis regum Anglorum

PROLOGUE TO BOOK FOUR

Some tell William that writing the deeds of living kings wrecks the truth, since a writer passes over evils from fear and invents goods for applause; others think him unequal to the task. He had withdrawn into silence, but love of study plucked his ear again. He will steer between Scylla and Charybdis, telling the good and the bad of William Rufus, and will add the expedition to Jerusalem, worth hearing and a spur to valor.

Scio plerisque ineptum videri quod gestis nostri temporis
I-know to-very-many foolish to-seem that to-the-deeds of-our time
regum scribendis stylum applicuerim; dicentibus quod in
of-kings to-be-written my-pen I-have-applied to-those-saying that in
ejusmodi scriptis sæpe naufragatur veritas et suffragatur
such writings often is-shipwrecked truth and is-supported
falsitas, quippe præsentium mala periculose, bona plausibiliter
falsehood indeed of-those-present the-evils dangerously the-goods with-applause
dicuntur. Eo fit, inquiunt, ut, quia modo omnia magis
are-told thence it-comes they-say that because now all-things more
ad pejus quam ad melius sint proclivia, scriptor obvia mala
to worse than to better are inclined the-writer obvious evils
propter metum prætereat, et, bona si non sunt, propter
for fear may-pass-over and good-things if not they-are for

plausum confingat. Sunt alii qui, nos ex segnitie sua
applause may-invent there-are others who us from sloth their-own
metientes, impares tanto muneri existimant, et hoc studium
measuring unequal to-so-great a-task reckon and this study
prava suggillatione contaminant. Quapropter jam pridem,
with-crooked taunting contaminate wherefore already long-since
vel illorum ratiocinio vel istorum fastidio perculsus, in
either of-those by-the-reasoning or of-these by-the-disdain struck into
otium concesseram, silentio libenter adquiescens; sed dum
leisure I-had-withdrawn to-silence gladly acquiescing but when
aliquamdiu solutus inertia vacassem, rursus solitus amor
for-some-time loosed by-inertia I-had-been-idle again the-accustomed love
studiorum aurem vellit et manum injecit, propterea quod
of-studies my-ear plucked and its-hand laid-on for-this that
nec nil agere possem, et istis forensibus et homine
neither nothing to-do I-could and to-these forensic and to-a-man
litterato indignis curis me tradere non nossem. Accessere
lettered unworthy cares myself to-give not I-knew-how there-came-in
amicorum meorum stimuli, quorum vel tacitæ suggestioni
of-friends my the-goads whose even to-the-silent suggestion
deesse non debui; et illi quidem modeste jam prurientem
to-be-lacking not I-ought and they indeed modestly already (me)-itching
impulere ut cœptum prosequerer. Illorum itaque, quos penitus
urged that the-begun I-should-pursue of-those and-so whom deeply
reposito amore diligo, hortatibus animatus assurgo, ut ex
with-stored love I-love by-the-exhortations encouraged I-rise that from
pectoris nostri promptuario victurum apud se amicitiæ
of-breast our the-storehouse an-about-to-live with themselves of-friendship
pignus contineant. Quocirca illorum, qui mihi timent ut
pledge they-may-hold wherefore of-those who for-me fear that
aut odiar aut mentiar, benivolentiæ gratus, ita sub ope
either I-be-hated or I-lie for-the-goodwill grateful so under the-help

Christi satisfaciam, ut nec falsarius nec odiosus inveniar:
of-Christ I-shall-satisfy that neither a-falsifier nor hateful I-be-found
sic enim bene et secus acta perstringam, ut, quasi inter
so for good and otherwise done-things I-shall-touch that as-if between
Scyllam et Charibdim illæso volante navigio, nihil desit
Scylla and Charybdis with-unharmed flying ship nothing be-lacking
sententiæ, etsi aliquid deesse putetur historiæ Porro illis,
to-the-sense even-if something be-lacking be-thought to-history further to-those
qui alieni laboris onus sua æstimatione premunt,
who of-another labor the-burden by-their-own estimation press
hoc respondeo quod olim sanctus Jeronimus canibus suis
this I-answer which once saint Jerome to-dogs his
objecit, "Si placet, legant; si non placet, abjiciant:"
threw-out if it-pleases let-them-read if not it-pleases let-them-throw-it-away
quia et ego hæc non tædiosis ingero, sed studiosis,
because also I these-things not on-the-tedious I-thrust but to-the-studious
si qui dignentur, consecro; quod et isti juri concinere
if any deign I-dedicate which also these to-right to-agree
pronuntiabunt, si non de his sunt de quibus dicitur
will-pronounce if not of these they-are about whom it-is-said
"Stulti facile possunt convinci, difficile compesci." Dicam
fools easily can to-be-convinced with-difficulty to-be-checked I-shall-say
igitur in hoc libro, qui hujus operis est quartus, quicquid
therefore in this book which of-this work is the-fourth whatever
de Willelmo filio Willelmi magni dici poterit; ut nec
about William son of-William the-Great to-be-said will-be-able so-that neither
veritas rerum titubet, nec principalis decoloretur majestas.
the-truth of-things totters nor the-princely be-discolored majesty
Ibunt et in istas paginas quædam quæ sub eo, vel in hac
will-go also into these pages certain-things which under him either in this
terra tristia, vel alias gloriosa, acciderunt, quantum duntaxat
land sad or elsewhere glorious happened as-far-as only

nostra scientia attingere potuerit; præsertim de peregrinatione
our knowledge to-reach could especially about the-pilgrimage
Christianorum in Jerusalem, quam hic apponere non erit
of-the-Christians to Jerusalem which here to-append not will-be
injurium, quia tam famosam his diebus expeditionem audire
wrongful because so famous in-these days an-expedition to-hear
sit operæ pretium et virtutis incitamentum. Neque vero
be of-work worth and of-valor an-incitement nor indeed
confido quod hæc a me, quam ab aliis qui scripserunt,
do-I-trust that these-things by me than by others who have-written
dicantur commodius; sed ut, quod a multis scribitur, a
may-be-told more-fittingly but that what by many is-written by
multis legatur. Verum, ne tam diu proœmiari lecturo
many may-be-read but lest so long prefacing to-the-reader-to-be
generet nausiam, jam nunc quod intendo incipiam.
beget nausea already now what I-intend I-shall-begin
Explicit prologus.
here-ends the-prologue

Liber quartus. Incipit liber quartus de Willelmo rege Rufo, filio regis Willelmi primi

BOOK FOUR: WILLIAM RUFUS

William, son of William, born in Normandy and reared in arms, would have been an incomparable prince but for his father's greatness and an early death. Named successor by his dying father, he hurried to England before his father had breathed his last, took the treasuries with Lanfranc's backing, and was crowned on the feast of Saints Cosmas and Damian.

Willelmus igitur filius Willelmi natus est Normanniæ, pluribus
William therefore son of-William born was in-Normandy for-many
annis antequam pater Angliam adiret. Ingenti cura parentum
years before his-father England went-to with-huge care of-(his)-parents
altus, cum et illi naturaliter inesset ingentia parturiens
reared when also to-him naturally was-in huge-things bringing-forth
animus, ad culmen supremæ dignitatis evasit. Incomparabilis
a-mind to the-summit of-highest dignity he-came-out incomparable
proculdubio nostro tempore princeps, si non eum magnitudo
without-doubt in-our time a-prince if not him the-greatness
patris obrueret, nec ejus juventutem fata præcipitassent,
of-his-father had-overwhelmed nor his youth the-fates had-cut-short
ne per ætatem maturiorem aboleret errores licentia
lest through age riper he-should-abolish the-errors by-the-license
potestatis et impetu juvenili contractos. Emensa pueritia,
of-power and by-the-impetus youthful contracted with-passed boyhood
in militari exercitio adolescentiam egit; equitari, jaculari,
in military exercise his-adolescence he-spent to-ride to-throw-javelins
certare cum primævis obsequio, cum æquævis officio. Jacturam
to-contend with the-elders in-deference with his-equals in-duty a-loss
virtutis putare si forte in militari tumultu alter eo prior
of-valor to-think if perhaps in military tumult another than-him earlier

arma corriperet, et nisi primus ex adverso provocaret,
arms seized and unless first from the-opposite-side he-challenged
vel provocantem dejiceret. Genitori in omnibus obsequelam
or the-challenger threw-down to-his-father in all-things obedience
gerens, ejus se oculis in bello ostentans, ejus lateri in
bearing in-his himself eyes in war displaying at-his side in
pace obambulans. Spe sensim scaturiente, jam successioni
peace walking-about with-hope gradually welling-up already for-the-succession
inhians, maxime post abdicationem fratris majoris, cum
gaping especially after the-abdication of-his-elder brother since
et tirocinium minoris nonnihil suspiceret. Ita a patre,
also the-apprenticeship of-the-younger somewhat he-suspected so by his-father
ultima valitudine decumbente, in successorem adoptatus,
in-his-last illness lying as successor adopted
antequam ille extremum efflasset ad occupandum regnum
before he his-last had-breathed-out to seizing the-kingdom
contendit: moxque volentibus animis provincialium exceptus,
he-hastened and-soon with-willing minds of-the-provincials received
et claves thesaurorum nactus est; quibus fretus totam
and the-keys of-the-treasures got has on-which relying the-whole
Angliam animo subjecit suo. Accessit etiam favori ejus,
England to-mind subjected his there-came-in also to-the-favor his
maximum rerum momentum, archiepiscopus Lanfrancus, eo
the-greatest of-things weight the-archbishop Lanfranc on-that
quod eum nutrierat et militem fecerat: quo auctore et
because him he-had-reared and a-knight had-made by-whom as-author and
annitente, die sanctorum Cosmæ et Damiani coronatus,
striving on-the-day of-saints Cosmas and Damian crowned
reliquo hyemis quiete et favorabiliter vixit.
the-rest of-the-winter quietly and favorably he-lived

Quomodo adversarios rex Rufus vicerit

HOW RUFUS OVERCAME HIS ENEMIES

In spring Odo of Bayeux, the king's uncle, jealous that the bishop of Durham ran affairs, rose for Robert, and many nobles with him, among them Roger of Montgomery and, at last, the bishop of Durham himself. Rufus appealed to the English, promising good laws, lighter taxes, and free hunting, and they rallied to him; with flattering words he drew Roger of Montgomery away from the rebels. He broke the castles of Tonbridge and Pevensey, captured Odo at Pevensey, and sent him under oath to hand over Rochester. When the garrison sallied out and carried off Odo with the king's escort, Rufus summoned the English on pain of being called Niðing and besieged the town until it surrendered and Odo, taken a second time, abjured England, while the king's sailors destroyed the reinforcements Robert sent.

Qua exacta, mox in initio veris primus illi
with-which spent soon at the-beginning of-spring the-first for-him
conflictus contra Odonem patruum, episcopum Bajocensem,
conflict against Odo his-uncle bishop of-Bayeux
fuit. Namque, cum ille, ut dixi, solutus a vinculis,
was for when he as I-said released from chains
Robertum nepotem in comitatu Normanniæ confirmasset,
Robert his-nephew in the-county of-Normandy had-confirmed
Angliam venit, recepitque a rege comitatum Cantiæ; sed
to-England he-came and-received from the-king the-earldom of-Kent but
cum omnia non suo arbitratu ut olim in regno disponi
when all-things not by-his judgment as once in the-kingdom to-be-arranged
videret, nam Willelmo Dunelmensi episcopo commendata
he-saw for to-William of-Durham bishop entrusted
erat administratio rerum publicarum, livore ictus, a rege
was the-administration of-affairs public by-envy struck from the-king
et ipse descivit, et multos eodem susurro infecit:
also he-himself revolted and many with-the-same whisper infected

Roberto regnum competere, qui sit et remissioris animi,
to-Robert the-kingdom to-belong who is both of-milder mind
et juveniles stultitias multis jam laboribus decoxerit;
and youthful follies with-many already labors has-boiled-away
hunc delicate nutritum, animi ferocia, quam vultus ipse
this-one delicately reared of-mind ferocity which his-face itself
demonstret, prætumidum, omnia contra fas et jus ausurum;
shows very-swollen all-things against right and law about-to-dare
brevi futurum ut honores jamdudum plurimis sudoribus
shortly it-will-be that the-honors long-since with-very-much sweat
partos amittant; nihil actum morte patris, si quos ille
won they-lose nothing done by-the-death of-the-father if whom he
vinxerit iste trucidet. Hæc ipse, hæc Rogerius
had-bound this-one should-slaughter these-things he these-things Roger
de Monte Gomerico, hæc Gaufridus Constantiensis
of Mont- -gomery these-things Geoffrey of-Coutances
episcopus cum nepote Roberto comite Humbrensium, et
bishop with his-nephew Robert earl of-the-Northumbrians and
cum reliquis, primo clam fremebant; post etiam palam,
with the-rest at-first secretly growled afterward also openly
per veredarios missis epistolis, frequentabant. Quin etiam
through couriers with-sent letters repeated nay even
Willelmus Dunelmensis episcopus, quem rex a secretis
William of-Durham bishop whom the-king as secretary
habuerat, in eorum perfidiam concesserat: quod graviter
had-had into their treachery had-gone which heavily
regem tulisse ferunt, quia, cum amissæ caritatis dispendio,
the-king to-have-borne they-say because with of-lost affection the-loss
remotarum provinciarum frustrabatur compendio. Itaque Odo
of-remote provinces he-was-cheated of-the-gain and-so Odo
prædam omnem Rovecestram comportabat, regios fiscos in
plunder all to-Rochester carried the-royal revenues in

Cantia devastans, maxime terras archiepiscopi; immortale
Kent laying-waste most the-lands of-the-archbishop immortal
in eum odium anhelans, quod ejus consilio a fratre se
against him hatred breathing because by-his counsel by his-brother himself
in vincula conjectum asserebat. Sed nec fides verborum
into chains to-have-been-thrown he-asserted but not the-faith of-the-words
vacillabat: nam cum olim Willelmus senior apud Lanfrancum
wavered for when once William the-elder to Lanfranc
quereretur se a fratre deseri, "Tu," inquit, "prende eum
complained himself by his-brother to-be-deserted you he-said seize him
et vinci." "Et quid," respondit ille, "quia clericus est?" Tunc
and bind-him and what answered he because a-cleric he-is then
archiepiscopus, lepida hilaritate, ut Persius ait, "crimina rasis
the-archbishop with-witty mirth as Persius says crimes polished
librans in antithetis," "Non," dixit, "episcopum Bajocarum
weighing in antitheses not he-said the-bishop of-Bayeux
capies, sed comitem Cantiæ custodies." Gaufridus episcopus,
you-will-seize but the-earl of-Kent you-will-guard Geoffrey the-bishop
cum nepote, Bathoniam et Bercheleiam partemque pagi
with his-nephew Bath and Berkeley and-part of-the-district
Wiltensis depopulans, manubias apud Bristou collocabat.
of-Wiltshire ravaging the-spoils at Bristol placed
Rogerius de Monte Gomerico, exercitum suum a Scrobesbiria
Roger of Mont- -gomery army his from Shrewsbury
cum Walensibus mittens, coloniam Wigorniensem prædabatur:
with the-Welsh sending the-Worcester territory plundered
jamque Wigorniam infestus advenerat, cum regii milites
and-already Worcester hostile had-reached when the-royal soldiers
qui prætendebant, freti benedictione Wulstani episcopi cui
who were-in-front relying on-the-blessing of-Wulfstan the-bishop to-whom
custodia castelli commissa erat, pauci multos effugarunt,
the-custody of-the-castle entrusted was few many routed

pluribusque sauciis et cæsis, quosdam abduxerunt. Præterea
and-with-many wounded and slain some they-led-away besides
Rogerius Bigot apud Northwic, et Hugo de Grentemesnil
Roger Bigod at Norwich and Hugh of Grandmesnil
apud Legecestram, suis quisque partibus rapinas urgebant.
at Leicester in-his-own each parts plunders pressed
Ita totis defectionis viribus in eum, cui nec prudentia
so with-all of-the-defection strength against him to-whom neither prudence
nec fortuna deerat, frustra sæviebatur. Namque ille, videns
nor fortune was-lacking in-vain it-was-raged for he seeing
Normannos pene omnes in una rabie conspiratos, Anglos
the-Normans almost all in one madness conspired the-English
probos et fortes viros, qui adhuc residui erant, invitatoriis
upright and brave men who still remaining were with-inviting
scriptis accersiit; quibus super injuriis suis querimoniam
writings summoned to-whom about the-injuries his complaint
faciens, bonasque leges, et tributorum levamen, liberasque
making and-good laws and of-taxes relief and-free
venationes pollicens, fidelitati suæ obligavit. Nec minori astutia
huntings promising to-his fealty he-bound nor with-lesser cunning
Rogerium de Monte Gomerico, secum dissimulata perfidia
Roger of Mont- -gomery with-himself with-dissembled treachery
equitantem, circumvenit. Seorsum enim ducto magnam
riding he-got-round apart for (to-him)-led great
ingessit invidiam; dicens, libenter se imperio cessurum,
he-heaped odium saying willingly himself from-the-rule about-to-withdraw
si illi et aliis videatur quos pater tutores reliquerat.
if to-him and to-the-others it-seems-good whom his-father as-guardians had-left
Non se intelligere quid ita effrænes sint: si velint, pecunias
not himself to-understand why so unbridled they-are if they-wish moneys
accipiant pro libito; si augmentum patrimoniorum, eodem
let-them-receive at pleasure if increase of-patrimonies in-the-same

modo; prorsus, quæ velint, habeant. Tantum videant ne
way altogether what they-wish let-them-have only let-them-see lest
judicium genitoris periclitetur: quod si de se putaverint
the-judgment of-his-father be-imperiled which if about himself they-should-think
aspernandum, de se ipsis caveant exemplum; idem
to-be-spurned about them themselves let-them-beware the-example the-same
enim se regem, qui illos duces fecerit. His verbis comes
for himself king who them leaders has-made by-these words the-earl
et pollicitationibus incensus, qui primus factionis post
and by-promises fired who first of-the-faction after
Odonem signifer fuit, primus defecit. Continuo ergo
Odo standard-bearer was first revolted at-once therefore
in desertores profectus, castella patrui sui Tunebrige et
against the-deserters having-set-out the-castles of-uncle his Tonbridge and
Pevenesel effregit; ipso in posteriori intercepto: captum ad
Pevensey he-broke with-him in the-latter intercepted captured to
quod libuit jusjurandum impulit, ut Anglia discederet
what it-pleased an-oath he-drove that from-England he-should-depart
et Rovecestram traderet. Ad quod implendum eum cum
and Rochester should-hand-over to which to-be-fulfilled him with
fidelibus suis præmisit, lento pede præeuntes subsecutus.
faithful his he-sent-ahead with-slow foot those-going-ahead following
Erat tunc apud Rovecestram omnis pene juventutis ex
there-was then at Rochester all almost of-the-youth from
Anglia et Normannia nobilitas; tres filii Rogerii comitis, et
England and Normandy the-nobility three sons of-Roger the-earl and
Eustachius Bononiæ junior, multique alii quos infra curam
Eustace of-Boulogne the-younger and-many others whom below care
nostram existimo. Regii cum episcopo pauci et inermes,
our I-reckon the-royal-men with the-bishop few and unarmed
quis enim eo præsente insidias timeret? circa muros
who for with-him present ambushes would-fear around the-walls

desiliunt, clamantes oppidanis ut portas aperiant; hoc
leap-down crying to-the-townsmen that the-gates they-should-open this
episcopum præsentem velle, hoc regem absentem jubere. At
the-bishop present to-wish this the-king absent to-order but
illi, de muro conspicati quod vultus episcopi cum verbis
they from the-wall having-seen that the-face of-the-bishop with the-words
oratorum non conveniret, raptim apertis portis ruunt,
of-the-speakers not agreed hastily with-opened gates rush-out
equos involant, omnesque cum episcopo vinctos abducunt.
the-horses fly-onto and-all with the-bishop bound lead-away
Rumor facti ad regem cito perlabitur. Severior ille malis,
the-rumor of-the-deed to the-king quickly slips-through more-severe he to-evils
iramque intra conscientiam resorbens, Anglos suos appellat;
and-his-wrath within his-conscience sucking-back English his calls-on
jubet ut compatriotas advocent ad obsidionem venire,
orders that their-countrymen they-should-summon to the-siege to-come
nisi si qui velint sub nomine Niðing, quod nequam sonat,
unless if any wish under the-name Niðing which worthless means
remanere. Angli, qui nihil miserius putarent quam hujusce
to-remain the-English who nothing more-wretched would-think than of-this
vocabuli dedecore aduri, catervatim ad regem confluunt,
word by-the-disgrace to-be-branded in-troops to the-king flow-together
et invincibilem exercitum faciunt. Nec diutius potuere pati
and an-invincible army make nor longer could to-endure
oppidani quin se traderent; experti quamlibet nobilem,
the-townsmen not-to themselves surrender having-learned however noble
quamlibet consertam manum, nihil adversus regem Angliæ
however close-knit a-band nothing against the-king of-England
posse proficere. Odo, secundo captus, perpetuo Angliam
can to-avail Odo a-second-time captured forever England
abjuravit. Dunelmensis episcopus ultro mare transivit;
abjured of-Durham the-bishop of-his-own-accord the-sea crossed

quem rex, verecundia præteritæ amicitiæ, indempnem passus
whom the-king from-shame of-past friendship unharmed allowed
est effugere. Ceteri omnes in fidem recepti. Inter has
has to-escape the-others all into fealty received amid these
obsidionis moras, homines regis mare custodientes, quosdam
of-the-siege delays the-men of-the-king the-sea guarding some
quos comes Normanniæ in auxilium perfidorum miserat, partim
whom the-count of-Normandy in help of-the-traitors had-sent partly
cæde, partim naufragio oppressere: reliqui fugam intendentes
by-slaughter partly by-shipwreck overwhelmed the-rest flight intending
et suspendere carbasa conati, moxque vento cessante
and to-hang the-sails having-tried and-soon with-wind ceasing
destituti, ludibrio nostris, sibi exitio fuere; nam, ne
left-helpless a-mockery to-ours to-themselves destruction were for lest
vivi caperentur, e transtris se in mare præcipitarunt.
alive they-should-be-taken from the-thwarts themselves into the-sea they-threw

De pace inter Willelmum et Robertum

THE PEACE BETWEEN WILLIAM AND ROBERT

The next year Rufus took his revenge, buying Saint-Valery, its harbor, and Aumale by bribing their guards. Robert called in the king of France, who came to the war belching his daily surfeit, took the English king's coins, and went back to his banquet. Normandy wore itself out in civil war until a few of the nobles who held land on both sides made peace: Rufus would win Maine for Robert, and Robert would give Rufus his castles and Fécamp.

Postero anno, ut dolor semper retractatione acescit, magno
in-the-following year as grief always by-re-handling grows-sour with-great
scrutinio rex agere cœpit quo modo injurias suas ultum
scrutiny the-king to-act began in-what way injuries his avenged
iret, et vicariam fratri contumeliam referret. Itaque
he-might-go and in-return to-his-brother insult repay and-so
castrum sancti Walerici, et portum vicinum, et oppidum quod
the-castle of-Saint Valery and the-harbor neighboring and the-town which
Albamarla vocatur, sollertia sua adquisivit, pecunia custodes
Aumale is-called by-skill his he-acquired with-money the-guards
corrumpens. Nec fuit animus comiti ut resisteret; sed
corrupting nor was the-spirit to-the-count that he-should-resist but
domino suo regi Franciæ per nuntios violentiam fratris
to-lord his the-king of-France through envoys the-violence of-his-brother
exposuit, suppetias orans. Et ille quidem iners, et cotidianam
he-set-out help begging and he indeed sluggish and daily
crapulam ructans, ad bellum singultiens ingluvie veniebat: sed
surfeit belching to war hiccupping from-gluttony came but
occurrerunt magna pollicenti nummi regis Angliæ; quibus
met-him great-things to-him-promising the-coins of-the-king of-England by-which
infractus, cingulum solvit et convivium repetiit. Ita bello
broken his-belt he-loosed and the-banquet sought-again so by-war

intestino diu laboravit Normannia; modo illis, modo istis
civil long labored Normandy now with-those now with-these
vincentibus: proceres utriusque furorem incitabant, homines
winning the-nobles of-each the-fury incited men
levissimi, in neutra parte fidem habentes. Pauci quibus
most-fickle in neither party faith having few with-whom
sanius consilium, consulentes suis commodis quod utrobique
saner counsel consulting for-their advantages because on-both-sides
possessiones haberent, mediatores pacis fuere; ut comiti
possessions they-had mediators of-peace were that for-the-count
rex Cinomannis adquireret, comes regi castella quæ
the-king Maine should-acquire the-count to-the-king the-castles which
habebat et Fiscannum cœnobium concederet. Juratum est hoc
he-had and the-Fécamp monastery should-yield sworn was this
pactum, et ab utrorumque hominibus sacramento firmatum.
pact and by of-both the-men by-oath confirmed

Quomodo Willelmus et Robertus obsederint Henricum fratrem suum apud montem Sancti Michaelis

HOW WILLIAM AND ROBERT BESIEGED THEIR BROTHER HENRY

Rufus crossed to keep his promise, but Henry, their younger brother, angry that they divided their father's lands and left him almost nothing, seized Mont-Saint-Michel and harassed their besieging army with sallies. That siege showed gentleness in one brother and great spirit in the other, and William gives an example of each.

Nec multo post rex mare transiit, ut fidem promissorum
nor much after the-king the-sea crossed that the-faith of-his-promises
expleret. Ergo uterque dux ingentes moliebantur conatus
he-might-fulfill therefore each leader huge set-in-motion efforts
ut Cinomannis invaderent: sed obstitit jam paratis,
that Maine they-should-invade but opposed-them already prepared
jamque profecturis, Henrici fratris minoris animositas,
and-already about-to-set-out of-Henry the-brother younger the-spirit
qui frenderet propter fratrum avaritiam, quod uterque
who gnashed on-account-of of-the-brothers the-avarice because each
possessiones paternas dividerent, et se omnium pene
the-possessions paternal were-dividing and himself of-all almost
expertem non erubescerent. Itaque montem sancti Michaelis
deprived not they-blushed and-so the-mount of-saint Michael
armatus insedit, et crebris excursibus obsidentem militiam
armed he-occupied and with-frequent sallies the-besieging soldiery
germanorum contristavit. In ea obsidione præcluum specimen
of-his-brothers he-saddened in that siege a-most-famous specimen
morum in rege et comite apparuit; in altero mansuetudinis,
of-character in the-king and the-count appeared in the-one of-gentleness

in altero magnanimitatis. Utriusque exempli notas pro
in the-other of-great-spirit of-each example the-marks for
legentium notitia affigam.
of-the-readers the-knowledge I-shall-affix

De magnanimitate Willelmi

THE GREAT SPIRIT OF WILLIAM

Riding out alone at the enemy, Rufus had his horse killed under him and was dragged by the foot, and a soldier was drawing his sword on him when he cried out that he was the king of England. The soldiers raised him and brought another horse; when he asked who had thrown him, the soldier owned it, and the king took him into his service, like Alexander sparing the Persian who tried to kill him.

Egressus rex tabernaculo, vidensque eminus hostes
having-gone-out the-king from-the-tent and-seeing from-afar the-enemies
superbum inequitantes, solus in multos irruit, alacritate
proudly riding-up alone on many rushed with-the-eagerness
virtutis impatiens, simulque confidens nullum sibi
of-valor impatient and-at-the-same-time trusting none him
ausurum obsistere: moxque occiso sub feminibus deturbatus
about-to-dare to-resist and-soon with-killed under his-thighs unseated
equo, quem eo die quindecim marcis argenti emerat,
horse which on-that day for-fifteen marks of-silver he-had-bought
etiam per pedem diu tractus est; sed fides loricæ
even by the-foot long dragged was but the-faith of-his-mail-coat
obstitit ne læderetur. Jamque miles qui dejecerat
prevented that he-be-hurt and-already the-soldier who had-thrown-him-down
manum ad capulum aptabat ut feriret, cum ille, periculo
his-hand to the-hilt was-fitting that he-might-strike when he by-danger
extremo territus, exclamat, "Tolle, nebulo! rex Angliæ sum!"
extreme terrified cries-out hold-off scoundrel king of-England I-am

Tremuit, nota voce jacentis, vulgus militum; statimque
trembled-at the-known voice of-the-lying-one the-crowd of-soldiers and-at-once
reverenter de terra levato equum alterum adducunt.
reverently from the-ground with-him-raised a-horse other they-bring
Ille, non expectato ascensorio, sonipedem insiliens, omnesque
he not with-awaited a-mounting-block the-steed leaping-onto and-all
circumstantes vivido perstringens oculo, "Quis," inquit, "me
those-standing-around with-a-lively sweeping eye who he-said me
dejecit?" Mussitantibus cunctis, miles audacis facti conscius
threw-down with-muttering all the-soldier of-the-bold deed conscious
non defuit patrocinio suo, dicens: "Ego, qui te non putarem
not was-lacking to-the-defense his-own saying I who you not thought
esse regem, sed militem." Tum vero rex placidus, vultuque
to-be the-king but a-soldier then indeed the-king calm and-in-face
serenus, "Per vultum," ait, "de Luca," sic enim jurabat,
serene by the-face he-said of Lucca so for he-used-to-swear
"meus a modo eris, et meo albo insertus laudabilis
mine from now you-shall-be and in-my roll inserted of-praiseworthy
militiæ præmia reportabis." Macte animi amplissime rex,
soldiering the-rewards you-shall-bring-back bravo for-spirit most-ample king
quod tibi præconium super hoc dicto rependam? A magni
what to-you praise for this saying shall-I-pay-back from of-the-great
quondam Alexandri non degener gloria, qui Persam militem se
once Alexander not degenerate in-glory who a-Persian soldier himself
a tergo ferire conatum, sed pro perfidia ensis spe sua
from behind to-strike having-tried but for the-treachery of-his-sword of-hope his
frustratum, incolumem pro admiratione fortitudinis conservavit.
cheated unharmed for admiration of-his-bravery preserved

De mansuetudine comitis Roberti

THE GENTLENESS OF COUNT ROBERT

When Henry's garrison ran short of water, he asked Robert not to fight with the elements, and Robert let his men loosen the watch, answering the king's rebuke that he could not let a brother die of thirst. Rufus broke off the siege and went back to England with both brothers. His campaigns against the Welsh and the Scots went badly; Malcolm came to Gloucester seeking peace and won only a safe return, fell the next winter, and Queen Margaret, famed for her alms and devotions, begged God for death on hearing of it; Rufus later restored their son Edgar. William then sets down Rufus's character: blameless while Lanfranc lived, then lavish to prodigality, proud, and savage, threatening in public, genial at table, who scorned boots costing three shillings and praised cheaper ones his chamberlain swore had cost a mark.

Jam vero ut de mansuetudine comitis dicam. Cum
now indeed that about the-gentleness of-the-count I-may-speak when
obsidio eo usque processisset ut aqua deesset obsessis, misit
the-siege thus far had-proceeded that water was-lacking to-the-besieged sent
Henricus nuntios comiti, qui eum de siti sua conveniant;
Henry envoys to-the-count who him about the-thirst his should-approach
impium esse ut eum aqua arceant, quæ esset
impious to-be that him from-water they-should-keep-off which was
communis mortalibus: aliter, si velit, virtutem experiatur; nec
common to-mortals otherwise if he-wishes valor let-him-try nor
pugnet violentia elementorum, sed virtute militum. Tum
fight with-the-violence of-the-elements but with-the-valor of-soldiers then
ille, genuina mentis mollitie flexus, suos qua prætendebant
he by-natural of-mind softness bent his-own-men where they-were-stationed
laxius habere se jussit, ne frater siticulosus potu
more-loosely to-hold themselves ordered lest his-brother thirsty drink
careret: quod cum relatum regi esset, ut semper calori
should-lack which when reported to-the-king it-had-been as always to-heat

pronus erat, comiti dixit, “Belle scis actitare guerram, qui
inclined he-was to-the-count he-said finely you-know to-wage war who
hostibus præbes aquæ copiam; et quomodo eos domabimus
to-the-enemies afford of-water abundance and how them shall-we-tame
si eis in pastu et in potu indulserimus?” At ille renidens
if to-them in food and in drink we-shall-have-indulged but he smiling
illud come et merito famosum verbum emisit: “Papæ,
that courteous and deservedly famous word sent-forth bah
dimitterem fratrem nostrum mori siti? et quem alium
should-I-leave brother our to-die of-thirst and what other
habebimus si eum amiserimus?” Ita rex, deridens mansueti
shall-we-have if him we-shall-have-lost so the-king mocking of-the-gentle
hominis ingenium, resolvit prælium; infectaque re quam
man the-nature dissolved the-battle and-with-unfinished business which
intenderat, quod eum Scottorum et Walensium tumultus
he-had-intended because him of-the-Scots and of-the-Welsh the-tumults
vocabant, in regnum se cum ambobus fratribus recepit.
were-calling into the-kingdom himself with both brothers he-took-back
Statimque primo contra Walenses, post in Scottos
and-at-once first against the-Welsh afterward against the-Scots
expeditionem movens, nihil magnificentia sua dignum exhibuit;
an-expedition moving nothing of-magnificence his worthy he-displayed
militibus multis desideratis, jumentis interceptis. Nec
with-soldiers many lost with-beasts-of-burden intercepted nor
tunc solum, sed multotiens, parva illi in Walenses
then only but many-times small for-him against the-Welsh
fortuna fuit; quod cuivis mirum videatur, cum ei
fortune was which to-anyone wonderful may-seem since for-him
alias semper alea bellorum felicissime arriserit. Sed ego
elsewhere always the-die of-wars most-happily smiled but I
intelligo, pro soli inæqualitate et cæli inclementia, sicut
understand for of-the-soil the-unevenness and of-the-sky the-inclemency as

rebellionem eorum adjutam, ita ejus virtutem impeditam.
the-rebellion their helped so his valor hindered
Porro rex Henricus, excellentis ingenii vir, qui modo regnat,
further king Henry of-excellent wit a-man who now reigns
invenit qua commenta illorum labefactaret arte, Flandritis
has-found by-what the-devices their he-might-overthrow art with-Flemings
in patria illorum collocatis, qui eis pro claustro sint
in the-country their settled who to-them for a-barrier may-be
et eos perpetuo coerceant. At vero tunc satagente
and them perpetually may-restrain but indeed then with-busying-himself
Roberto comite, qui familiarem jam dudum apud Scottum
Robert the-count who intimate already long-since with the-Scot
locaverat gratiam, inter Malcolmum et Willelmum concordia
had-placed favor between Malcolm and William with-concord
inita: veruntamen multis controversiis utrobique habitis,
entered-into nevertheless with-many controversies on-both-sides had
et fluctuante propter utrorumque animositatem justitia,
and with-wavering on-account-of of-both the-animosity justice
Malcolmus ultro Gloecestram venit, æquis duntaxat
Malcolm of-his-own-accord to-Gloucester came on-equal only
conditionibus, multus pro pace precator; nec quicquam
terms much for peace a-pleader nor anything
obtinuit, nisi ut in regnum indempnis rediret, dedignante
obtained except that into his-kingdom unharmed he-might-return with-disdaining
rege dolo capere quem virtute subegisset. Idemque proxima
the-king by-guile to-take whom by-valor he-had-subdued and-the-same the-next
hyeme, ab hominibus Roberti comitis Humbrensium, magis
winter by the-men of-Robert earl of-the-Northumbrians more
fraude quam viribus occubuit. Cujus interitus accepto nuntio,
by-fraud than by-strength fell whose of-death with-received the-news
uxor Margarita, eleemosynis et pudicitia insignis, fastidiens
his-wife Margaret in-alms and chastity remarkable disdaining

hujus lucis moram, mortem precario exegit a Deo: ambo
of-this light the-delay death by-entreaty begged from God both
cultu pietatis insignes, illa præcipue. Namque toto vitæ
in-the-practice of-piety remarkable she especially for in-the-whole of-life
tempore viginti quatuor pauperes habebat, ubicunque locorum
time twenty four poor-people she-had wherever of-places
erat, quos cibis et vestibus reficiebat. Ceterum, sacerdotum
she-was whom with-food and clothes she-refreshed moreover of-the-priests
cantum in Quadragesima præveniens, noctibus in templo
the-chant in Lent anticipating at-night in the-church
excubabat, triplicibus matutinis ipsa insistens, de Trinitate,
she-kept-vigil with-triple matins herself persisting of the-Trinity
de Cruce, de sancta Maria; inde psalterium, cum lacrymis
of the-Cross of holy Mary then the-psalter with tears
vestem infundentibus, pectus succutientibus. Templo
her-garment drenching her-breast shaking from-the-church
digrediens pascebat pauperes, primo tres, mox novem, inde
departing she-fed the-poor first three soon nine then
viginti quatuor, postremo trecentos; ipsa cum rege assistens,
twenty four lastly three-hundred herself with the-king standing-by
et manibus aquam infundens. Eadgarum filium ejus,
and with-her-hands water pouring Edgar son her
expulsum a patruo, Willelmus reformavit solio, egregia
expelled by his-uncle William restored to-the-throne with-excellent
plane et quæ tantum virum decebat pietate, ut, paternarum
plainly and which so-great a-man befitted piety so-that of-paternal
injuriarum immemor, filium supplicem restitueret regno.
injuries unmindful the-son suppliant he-should-restore to-the-kingdom
Excellebat in eo magnanimitas, quam ipse processu temporis
excelled in him great-spirit which he-himself in-the-course of-time
nimia severitate obfuscavit; ita in ejus furtim pectus vitia
with-excessive severity darkened so into his stealthily breast vices

pro virtutibus serpebant ut discernere nequiret. Diu dubitavit
for virtues crept that to-discern he-could-not long doubted
mundus quo tandem vergeret, quo se inclinaret, indoles
the-world whither at-last would-tend whither itself would-incline the-nature
illius. Inter initia, vivente Lanfranco archiepiscopo, ab
his in the-beginnings with-living Lanfranc the-archbishop from
omni crimine abhorrebat, ut unicum fore regum speculum
every crime he-shrank so-that the-unique to-be of-kings mirror
speraretur; quo defuncto, aliquamdiu varium se præstitit
he-was-hoped with-whom having-died for-some-time varied himself he-showed
æquali lance vitiorum atque virtutum: jam vero, postremis annis
with-equal balance of-vices and of-virtues now but in-the-last years
bonorum gelante studio, incommodorum seges succrescens
of-good-things with-freezing zeal of-troubles the-crop growing-up
incaluit. Et erat ita liberalis quod prodigus, ita magnanimus
grew-hot and he-was so liberal that prodigal so great-spirited
quod superbus, ita severus quod sævus. Liceat enim
that proud so severe that savage may-it-be-allowed for
mihi, pace majestatis regiæ, verum non occuluisse; quia
to-me with-the-peace of-majesty royal the-truth not to-have-hidden because
iste parum Deum reverebatur, nihil homines: quod indiscretum
he little God revered nothing men which indiscreet
si quis dixerit non peccabit, quia a sapientibus tenenda sit
if anyone shall-have-said not he-will-sin because by the-wise to-be-held is
moderatio, ut Deus timeatur omni tempore, homo pro
moderation that God be-feared at-every time man according-to
tempore. Erat is foris et in conventu hominum tumido vultu
the-time he-was he abroad and in the-assembly of-men with-swollen face
erectus, minaci oculo astantem defigens, et affectato rigore
upright with-threatening eye the-bystander transfixing and with-affected rigor
feroci voce colloquentem reverberans; quantum conjectari
with-fierce voice the-one-conversing beating-back as-far-as to-be-conjectured

datur, metu inopiæ et aliorum perfidiæ plus justo
is-given from-fear of-want and of-others of-the-treachery more than-right
lucris et severitati deditus. Intus et in triclinio cum
to-gains and to-severity given within and in the-dining-room with
privatis, omni lenitate accommodus, multa joco transigebat;
private-men with-all gentleness accommodating many-things in-jest he-passed
facetissimus quoque de aliquo suo perperam facto
most-facetious also about some his-own wrongly done-thing
cavillator, ut invidiam facti dilüeret et ad sales
a-mocker so-that the-odium of-the-deed he-might-dissolve and to witticisms
transferret. Sed de liberalitate ejus qua se ipsum fallebat,
might-transfer but about the-liberality his by-which him himself he-deceived
post etiam de ceteris, sermo prolixior erit, ut ostendam
afterward also about the-rest the-talk longer will-be that I-may-show
quanta vitia in eo sub prætextu virtutum pullularint.
how-great vices in him under the-pretext of-virtues sprouted
Sunt enim duo omnino genera largorum; alteri prodigi,
there-are for two altogether kinds of-generous-men the-ones prodigal
alteri liberales dicuntur. Prodigi sunt, qui in ea pecunias
the-others liberal are-called the-prodigal are who on those-things moneys
suas effundunt quorum memoriam aut brevem aut nullam
their pour-out of-which the-memory either brief or none
omnino sunt relicturi in seculo, nec eleemosynam habituri
at-all are about-to-leave in the-world nor alms about-to-have
in Deo: liberales sunt, qui captos a prædonibus redimunt,
with God the-liberal are who the-captured by robbers ransom
aut inopes sublevant, aut æs alienum amicorum suscipiunt.
or the-needy relieve or the-money of-another of-friends take-on
Est ergo largiendum, sed diligenter et moderate; plures enim
it-is therefore to-be-given but diligently and moderately many for
patrimonia sua effudere inconsulte largiendo: quid vero est
patrimonies their have-poured-out ill-advisedly by-giving what but is

stultius quam, quod libenter facias, curare ne diutius
more-foolish than that-which gladly you-do to-take-care that-not longer
facere possis? Itaque quidam, cum non habeant quod dent,
to-do you-can and-so some when not they-have what they-may-give
ad rapinas convertuntur; majusque odium assequuntur ab hiis
to plunders are-turned and-greater hatred they-get from those
quibus auferunt, quam beneficium ab hiis quibus contulerunt:
from-whom they-take than gratitude from those on-whom they-have-conferred
quod huic regi accidisse dolemus. Namque cum primis
which to-this king to-have-happened we-grieve for when in-the-first
initiis regni metu turbarum milites congregasset, nihil
beginnings of-the-reign for-fear of-disturbances soldiers he-had-gathered nothing
illis denegandum putabat, majora in futurum pollicitus.
to-them to-be-denied he-thought greater-things for the-future having-promised
Itaque quia paternos thesauros evacuarat impigre, et modicæ
and-so because the-paternal treasures he-had-emptied briskly and moderate
ei tunc pensiones numerabantur, jam substantia defecerat;
to-him then rents were-counted already his-substance had-failed
sed animus largiendi non deerat, quod usu donandi
but the-mind of-giving not was-lacking which by-the-practice of-giving
pene in naturam verterat: homo qui nesciret cujuscunque rei
almost into nature had-turned a-man who knew-not of-any thing
effringere pretium vel æstimare commercium, sed cui pro
to-beat-down the-price or to-reckon the-bargain but to-whom at
libito venditor distraheret mercimonium, et miles pacisceretur
pleasure the-seller might-sell-off his-merchandise and the-soldier might-bargain
stipendium. Vestium suarum pretium in immensum extolli
his-pay of-clothes his the-price into immensity to-be-raised
volebat, dedignans si quis allevasset. Denique quodam mane,
he-wished disdaining if anyone had-lowered-it finally on-a-certain morning
cum calciaretur novas caligas, interrogavit cubicularium
when he-was-being-shod new boots he-asked his-chamberlain

quanti constitissent: cum ille respondisset tres solidos,
how-much they-had-cost when he had-answered three shillings
indignabundus et fremens, "Fili," ait, "meretricis! ex quo
indignant and roaring son he-said of-a-whore from when
habet rex caligas tam exilis pretii? vade, et affer mihi
has the-king boots of-so slender price go and bring me
emptas marca argenti." Ivit ille, et multo viliores afferens,
bought for-a-mark of-silver went he and much cheaper bringing
quanti præceperat emptas ementitus est. "Atqui," inquit
for-as-much-as he-had-ordered bought he-falsely-claimed has but he-said
rex, "istæ regiæ conveniunt majestati." Ita cubicularius ex
the-king these to-royal suit majesty so the-chamberlain from
eo pretium vestimentorum ejus pro voluntate numerabat,
that-time the-price of-clothes his at will counted
multa perinde suis utilitatibus nundinatus.
many-things thus for-his-own advantages having-traded

RANULF; THE KING'S GREED

Rufus's generosity drew soldiers from every province; when his money failed he turned to gain, urged on by Ranulf, a low-born cleric who doubled every tax and sold church offices. Anselm withdrew; Normandy was pledged to Rufus, and of the nobles accused of plotting one was chained, one blinded, an innocent man hanged.

Excitabat ergo totum occidentem fama largitatis ejus,
roused therefore the-whole west the-fame of-generosity his
orientem usque pertendens: veniebant ad eum milites ex omni
the-east even reaching came to him soldiers from every
quæ citra montes est provincia, quos ipse profusissimis
which this-side-of the-mountains is province whom he with-most-lavish
expensis munerabat; itaque cum defecisset quod daret,
expenses rewarded and-so when had-failed what he-might-give

inops et exhaustus ad lucra convertit animum. Accessit
needy and exhausted to gains he-turned his-mind there-came-in
regiæ menti, fomes cupiditatum, Rannulfus clericus, ex
to-the-royal mind the-kindling of-greeds Ranulf a-cleric from
infimo genere hominum lingua et calliditate provectus ad
lowest race of-men by-tongue and cunning advanced to
summum. Is, si quando edictum regium processisset ut
the-top he if ever an-edict royal had-gone-forth that
nominatum tributum Anglia penderet, duplum adjiciebat,
a-named tax England should-pay the-double added
expilator divitum, exterminator pauperum, confiscator alienarum
the-plunderer of-the-rich the-exterminator of-the-poor the-confiscator of-others
hereditatum. Invictus causidicus, et tum verbis tum rebus
inheritances an-invincible pleader and both in-words and in-deeds
immodicus, juxta in supplices ut in rebelles furens:
immoderate equally against suppliants as against rebels raging
subinde cachinnantibus quibusdam ac dicentitibus, solum esse
repeatedly with-laughing some and saying the-only to-be
hominem qui sciret sic agitare ingenium, nec aliorum curaret
man who knew so to-ply his-wit nor of-others cared-for
odium dummodo complacaret dominum. Hoc auctore
the-hatred provided-that he-pleased his-lord with-this-man as-author
sacri ecclesiarum honores, mortuis pastoribus, venum locati;
the-sacred of-churches honors with-dead shepherds for-sale placed
namque audita morte cujuslibet episcopi vel abbatis, confestim
for with-heard the-death of-any bishop or abbot at-once
clericus regis eo mittebatur, qui omnia inventa scripto
a-cleric of-the-king thither was-sent who all-things found in-writing
exciperet, omnesque in posterum redditus fisco
should-take-down and-all into the-future the-revenues into-the-treasury
regio inferret. Interea quærebatur quis in loco defuncti
royal bring meanwhile it-was-sought who in the-place of-the-deceased

idoneus substitueretur, non pro morum sed pro nummorum
suitable should-be-substituted not for of-character but for of-coins
experimento; dabaturque tandem honor, ut ita dicam, nudus,
the-proof and-was-given at-last the-honor as so I-may-say naked
magno tamen emptus. Hæc eo indigniora videbantur,
dearly yet bought these-things for-this more-unworthy seemed
quod, tempore patris, post decessum episcopi vel abbatis
because in-the-time of-his-father after the-death of-a-bishop or abbot
omnes redditus integre custodiebantur, substituendo pastori
all revenues entire were-kept to-be-substituted to-the-shepherd
resignandi, eligebanturque personæ religionis merito laudabiles;
to-be-handed-over and-there-were-chosen persons of-religion by-merit praiseworthy
at vero, pauculis annis intercedentibus, omnia immutata.
but indeed with-very-few years intervening all-things changed
Nullus dives nisi nummularius, nullus clericus nisi causidicus,
none rich except a-money-changer no cleric except a-pleader
nullus presbyter nisi, ut verbo parum Latino utar, firmarius.
no priest except that a-word little Latin I-may-use a-farmer
Cujuscunque conditionis homunculus, cujuscunque criminis
of-whatever condition a-little-man of-whatever crime
reus, statim ut de lucro regis appellasset, audiebatur: ab
guilty as-soon as about the-gain of-the-king he-had-appealed was-heard from
ipsis latronis faucibus resolvebatur laqueus si promisisset
the-very of-the-robber jaws was-loosed the-noose if he-had-promised
regale commodum. Soluta militari disciplina, curiales
royal profit with-loosed military discipline the-courtiers
rusticorum substantias depascebantur, insumebant fortunas, a
of-the-peasants the-substance grazed-down consumed the-fortunes from
buccis miserorum cibos abstrahentes. Tunc fluxus crinium,
the-mouths of-the-wretched the-foods drawing-away then the-flowing of-hair
tunc luxus vestium, tunc usus calceorum cum arcuatis
then the-luxury of-clothes then the-use of-shoes with arched

aculeis inventus: mollitie corporis certare cum fœminis,
points was-invented in-softness of-body to-vie with women
gressum frangere gestu soluto et latere nudo incedere,
the-gait to-break with-gesture loose and with-side bare to-go-about
adolescentium specimen erat. Enerves, emolliti, quod nati
of-the-youths the-model was enervated softened what born
fuerant inviti manebant; expugnatores alienæ pudicitiæ,
they-had-been unwillingly remained stormers of-another chastity
prodigi suæ. Sequebantur curiam effœminatorum manus et
prodigal of-their-own followed the-court of-effeminates bands and
ganearum greges, ut non temere a quodam sapiente dictum
of-harlots flocks so-that not rashly by a-certain wise-man said
sit, felicem fore Angliam si Henricus regnaret; talia
it-was happy to-be England if Henry should-reign such-things
conjectans quod is ab adolescentia obscœnitates execraretur.
conjecturing because he from youth obscenities execrated
Adjicerem his, si esset necesse, quod Anselmus
I-would-add to-these-things if it-were necessary that Anselm
archiepiscopus ista corrigere conatus, sed societate
the-archbishop these-things to-correct having-tried but of-the-fellowship
suffraganeorum suorum destitutus, sponte discesserit,
of-suffragans his deprived of-his-own-accord withdrew
duritiæ temporis cedens. Anselmus, quo nemo unquam
to-the-harshness of-the-time yielding Anselm than-whom no-one ever
justi tenacior, nemo hoc tempore tam anxio doctus,
of-the-just more-tenacious no-one in-this time so anxiously learned
nemo tam penitus spiritualis fuerit, pater patriæ,
no-one so deeply spiritual was the-father of-the-fatherland
mundi speculum. Hic cum, jamjamque navigaturus, in portu
of-the-world the-mirror he when now-and-now about-to-sail in the-port
ventos expectaret, ut prædo publicus expilatus est, manticis
the-winds was-awaiting like a-robber public plundered was with-bags

omnibus et bulgis in medium prolatis et exquisitis: de
all and sacks into the-middle brought-out and searched of
cujus injuriis plura dicerem si quicquam hoc solo sol
whose injuries more-things I-would-tell if anything than-this alone the-sun
vidisset indignius; simul et supersedendum est in
had-seen more-unworthy at-the-same-time also to-be-refrained it-is in
historia, quam reverendissimi Edmeri præoccupavit facundia.
history which of-the-most-reverend Eadmer has-forestalled the-eloquence
Vides quantus e liberalitate quam putabat fomes malorum
you-see how-great from the-liberality which he-thought a-kindling of-evils
eruperit. In quibus corrigendis quia ipse non tam exhibuit
burst-out in which to-be-corrected because he not so-much showed
diligentiam quam prætendit negligentiam, magnam et vix
diligence as he-put-forward negligence great and scarcely
abolendam incurrit infamiam; immerito credo, quia nunquam
to-be-abolished he-incurred infamy undeservedly I-believe because never
se tali supponeret probro qui se tanto meminisset
himself to-such would-he-subject disgrace who himself to-so-great remembered
prælatum imperio. Hæc igitur ideo inelaborato et
set-over an-empire these-things therefore for-this-reason in-unlabored and
celeri sermone convolvo, quia de tanto rege mala dicere
swift speech I-roll-together because about so-great a-king evils to-speak
erubesco; in dejiciendis et extenuandis malis laborans.
I-blush in casting-down and lessening the-evils laboring
Insolentiæ in Deum Judæi suo tempore dedere indicium:
of-insolence against God the-Jews in-his time gave a-sign
semel apud Rothomagum, ut quosdam ab errore suo refugas
once at Rouen that certain from error their fugitives
ad Judaismum revocarent, muneribus inflectere conati;
to Judaism they-might-call-back with-gifts to-bend having-tried
alia vice apud Londoniam, contra episcopos nostros in
another time at London against bishops our into

certamen animati, quia ille ludibundus, credo, dixisset, quod
contest encouraged because he playfully I-believe had-said that
si vicissent Christianos, apertis argumentationibus confutatos,
if they-should-win the-Christians with-open arguments refuted
in eorum sectam transiret. Magno igitur timore episcoporum
into their sect he-would-pass with-great therefore fear of-the-bishops
et clericorum res acta est, pia sollicitudine fidei
and of-the-clerics the-thing done was with-pious solicitude for-the-faith
Christianæ timentium. Et de hoc quidem certamine nihil
Christian fearing and of this indeed contest nothing
Judæi præter confusionem retulerunt, quamvis multotiens
the-Jews except confusion brought-back although many-times
jactarint se non ratione sed factione superatos.
they-boasted themselves not by-reason but by-faction overcome
Posteriori tempore, id est anno regni ejus ferme nono,
in-later time that is in-the-year of-reign his about ninth
cum Robertus comes Normannorum Jerosolimam eundi,
when Robert count of-the-Normans to-Jerusalem of-going
monitionibus Urbani papæ, ut posterius dicetur, impetum
by-the-admonitions of-Urban the-pope as later will-be-told the-impulse
cepisset, Normanniam fratri suo pro pecunia decem milium
had-taken Normandy to-brother his for money of-ten thousand
marcarum invadatus est. Itaque importabilis pensionis edictum
of-marks pledged was and-so of-an-unbearable payment the-edict
per totam Angliam cucurrit. Tunc episcopi et abbates
through the-whole England ran then the-bishops and abbots
frequentes curiam adeunt, super violentia querimoniam
in-crowds the-court approach about the-violence complaint
facientes, non se posse ad tantum vectigal sufficere, nisi
making not themselves to-be-able for so-great a-tax to-suffice unless
si miseros agricolas omnino effugarent. Quibus curiales
if the-wretched farmers altogether they-should-drive-away to-whom the-courtiers

turbido, ut solebant, vultu, "Non habetis," inquiunt, "scrinia
with-troubled as they-were-wont face not have-you they-say shrines
auro et argento composita, ossibus mortuorum plena:" nullo
with-gold and silver adorned with-bones of-the-dead full with-no
alio responso obsecrantes dignati. Ita illi, intelligentes quo
other answer the-beseechers deigning so they understanding whither
responsio tenderet, capsas sanctorum nudaverunt, crucifixos
the-answer tended the-caskets of-the-saints stripped the-crucifixes
despoliaverunt, calices conflarunt, non in usum pauperum,
despoiled the-chalices melted-down not for the-use of-the-poor
sed in fiscum regium: quicquid enim pene sancta servavit
but into the-treasury royal whatever for almost holy kept
avorum parcitas illorum grassatorum absumsit aviditas.
of-the-grandfathers the-thrift of-those robbers consumed the-greed
Nihilo secius in homines grassabantur; primo pecuniam,
by-nothing the-less against men they-raged first money
deinde terras auferentes. Non pauperem tenuitas, non
then lands taking-away not the-poor-man slenderness not
opulentum copia tuebatur: venationes, quas rex primo
the-rich abundance protected the-huntings which the-king at-first
indulserat, adeo prohibuit ut capitale esset supplicium
had-allowed so-much he-forbade that capital it-was a-punishment
prendisse cervum. Quapropter multa severitate, quam nulla
to-have-taken a-stag wherefore by-much severity which no
condiebat dulcedo, factum est ut sæpe contra ejus salutem a
seasoned sweetness done it-was that often against his safety by
ducibus conjuraretur: quorum unus, Robertus de Molbrei comes
the-leaders it-was-conspired of-whom one Robert of Mowbray earl
Humbronensium, orta inter eum et regem non modica
of-the-Northumbrians with-arisen between him and the-king not small
controversia verborum, in provinciam juris sui abiit, ingentia
a-controversy of-words into the-province of-right his went-off huge

contra dominum suum molimina conaturus; sed subsequente
against lord his efforts about-to-attempt but with-following
illo captus et æternis vinculis irretitus est. Alter, Willelmus
him captured and in-eternal chains bound was the-other William
de Ou, proditionis apud regem accusatus, delatoremque ad
of Eu of-treason before the-king accused and-the-informer to
duellum provocans, dum se segniter expurgat, cæcatus et
a-duel challenging while himself sluggishly he-clears blinded and
extesticulatus est. Plures illa delatio involvit, innocentes plane
castrated was many that accusation involved innocent plainly
et probos viros. Ex his fuit Willelmus de Alderia, speciosæ
and upright men of these was William of Aldery of-handsome
personæ homo et compater regis. Is patibulo affigi
person a-man and godfather of-the-king he to-the-gallows to-be-fixed
jussus, Osmundo episcopo Salesbiriæ confessus, et per
ordered to-Osmund bishop of-Salisbury confessed and through
omnes ecclesias oppidi flagellatus est. Itaque, dispersis ad
all churches of-the-town scourged was and-so with-scattered to
inopes vestibus, ad suspendium nudus ibat; delicatam carnem
the-needy clothes to the-hanging naked he-went his-delicate flesh
frequentibus super lapides genuflexionibus cruentans. Episcopo
with-frequent upon stones genuflections bloodying with-the-bishop
et populo sequente ad locum supplicii ita satisfecit: "Sic,"
and the-people following to the-place of-punishment so he-satisfied so
inquit, "adjuvet Deus animam meam et a malis liberet, ut
he-said may-help God soul my and from evils free-it as
de re de qua accusor immunis sum, et quidem sententia
of the-thing of which I-am-accused innocent I-am and indeed the-sentence
de me prolata non revocabitur, sed volo omnes homines
on me pronounced not will-be-revoked but I-wish all men
innocentiæ meæ esse conscios." Tunc dicta commendatione
of-innocence my to-be aware then with-said the-commendation

animæ, et aspersa aqua benedicta, episcopus discessit. Ille
of-his-soul and with-sprinkled water blessed the-bishop departed he
appensus est admirando fortitudinis spectaculo, ut nec
hanged was with-wonderful of-bravery spectacle so-that neither
moriturus gemitum, nec moriens produceret suspirium.
about-to-die a-groan nor dying he-brought-forth a-sigh

LE MANS, AND THE KING'S COURAGE

Told while hunting that Le Mans was besieged, Rufus rode at once for the sea and crossed in a storm, saying he had never heard of a king drowned; the besiegers scattered, and when Helias, their leader, was captured and defied him, Rufus let him go. William describes the great house he built in London, his square body, ruddy face and stammering speech, and the portents of his reign year by year: earthquake, lightning, storms, floods, famine, a comet, the devil seen in the woods, and a spring of blood. Abbot Hugh of Cluny, Eadmer says, foresaw his damnation.

Veruntamen sunt quædam de rege præclaræ magnanimitatis
nevertheless there-are certain of the-king of-splendid great-spirit
exempla, quæ posteris non invidebo. Venationi in quadam
examples which to-posterity not I-shall-begrudge at-hunting in a-certain
silva intentum nuntius detinuit ex transmarinis partibus,
forest intent a-messenger detained-him from overseas parts
obsessam esse civitatem Cenomannis, quam nuper fratre
besieged to-be the-city of-Le-Mans which lately with-his-brother
profecto suæ potestati adjecerat. Statim ergo ut expeditus erat
set-out to-his power he-had-added at-once therefore as unencumbered he-was
retorsit equum, iter ad mare convertens. Admonentibus
he-turned his-horse his-journey to the-sea turning with-advising
ducibus exercitum advocandum, paratos componendos,
the-leaders an-army to-be-summoned prepared-men to-be-arrayed

"Videbo," ait, "quis me sequetur; putatis me non
I-shall-see he-said who me will-follow do-you-think me not
habiturum homines? si cognovi juventutem meam, etiam
about-to-have men if I-have-known youth my even
naufragio ad me venisse volet." Hoc igitur modo pene
by-shipwreck to me to-have-come it-will-wish in-this therefore manner almost
solus ad mare pervenit. Erat tunc nubilus aer et ventus
alone to the-sea he-arrived there-was then cloudy air and the-wind
contrarius; flatus violentia terga maris verrebat. Illum
contrary of-the-blast by-the-violence the-backs of-the-sea swept him
statim transfretare volentem nautæ exorant ut pacem pelagi
at-once to-cross wishing the-sailors entreat that the-peace of-the-sea
et ventorum clementiam operiatur. "Atqui," inquit rex,
and of-the-winds the-clemency he-should-await but he-said the-king
"nunquam audivi regem naufragio interiisse. Quin potius
never have-I-heard a-king by-shipwreck to-have-perished nay rather
solvite retinacula navium, videbitis elementa jam conspirata
loose the-cables of-the-ships you-will-see the-elements already conspired
in meum obsequium." Ponto transito obsessores, ejus
into my service with-the-sea crossed the-besiegers its
audita fama, dissiliunt. Auctor turbarum, Helias quidam,
with-heard the-report leap-apart the-author of-the-disturbances Helias a-certain
capitur; cui ante se adducto rex ludibundus, "Habeo
is-captured to-whom before him led the-king playfully I-have
te, magister!" dixit. At vero illius alta nobilitas, quæ nesciret
you master he-said but indeed his lofty nobility which knew-not
in tanto etiam periculo humilia sapere, humilia loqui:
in so-great even danger humble-things to-think humble-things to-speak
"Fortuitu," inquit, "me cepisti; sed si possem evadere,
by-chance he-said me you-have-captured but if I-could to-escape
novi quid facerem." Tum Willelmus, præ furore fere extra
I-know what I-would-do then William for fury almost outside

se positus, et obuncans Heliam, "Tu," inquit, "nebulo! tu,
himself placed and hooking Helias you he-said scoundrel you
quid faceres? Discede, abi, fuge! concedo tibi ut facias
what would-you-do depart go-away flee I-grant to-you that you-may-do
quicquid poteris: et, per vultum de Luca! nihil, si me viceris,
whatever you-can and by the-face of Lucca nothing if me you-conquer
pro hac venia tecum paciscar." Nec inferius factum verbo
for this pardon with-you shall-I-bargain nor lower the-deed than-the-word
fuit, sed continuo dimisit evadere, miratus potius quam
was but at-once he-let-him escape wondering rather than
insectatus fugientem. Quis talia de illitterato homine
pursuing the-fleeing-one who such-things about an-unlettered man
crederet? Et fortassis erit aliquis qui, Lucanum legens,
would-believe and perhaps there-will-be someone who Lucan reading
falso opinetur Willelmum hæc exempla de Julio Cæsare
falsely may-think William these examples from Julius Caesar
mutuatum esse: sed non erat ei tantum studii vel otii ut
borrowed to-have but not was to-him so-much of-study or of-leisure that
litteras unquam audiret; immo calor mentis ingenitus, et
letters ever he-should-hear nay the-heat of-mind inborn and
conscia virtus, eum talia exprimere cogebant. Et profecto,
conscious valor him such-things to-express compelled and surely
si Christianitas nostra pateretur, sicut olim anima Euforbii
if Christianity our allowed-it as once the-soul of-Euphorbus
transisse dicta est in Pythagoram Samium, ita possit dici
to-have-passed said is into Pythagoras of-Samos so it-could to-be-said
quod anima Julii Cæsaris transierit in regem Willelmum.
that the-soul of-Julius Caesar has-passed into king William
Unum ædificium, et ipsum permaximum, domum in
one building and that very-great a-house in
Londonia incepit et perfecit, non parcens expensis dummodo
London he-began and completed not sparing expenses provided-that

liberalitatis suæ magnificentiam exhiberet; et mores quidem
of-liberality his the-magnificence he-might-show and the-manners indeed
ejus ex his, quæ diximus, animadvertere poterit lector.
his from these-things which we-have-said to-notice will-be-able the-reader
Si quis vero desiderat scire corporis ejus qualitatem,
if anyone but desires to-know of-his-body his the-quality
noverit eum fuisse corpore quadrato, colore rufo, crine
let-him-know him to-have-been in-body square in-color ruddy with-hair
subflavo; fronte fenestrata, oculo vario, quibusdam
yellowish with-a-forehead open with-an-eye varied with-certain
intermicantibus guttis distincto; præcipuo robore, quanquam
twinkling specks marked with-outstanding strength although
non magnæ staturæ, et ventre paulo projectiore. Eloquentiæ
not of-great stature and with-a-belly a-little more-projecting of-eloquence
nullæ, sed titubantia linguæ notabilis, maxime cum ira
none but a-stammering of-tongue notable especially when anger
succresceret. Plura sub eo subita et tristia acciderunt,
grew many-things under him sudden and sad happened
quæ singulatim per annos ejus digeremus, veritati maxime
which one-by-one through the-years his we-shall-arrange to-truth most
secundum chronicorum fidem inservientes.
according-to of-the-chronicles the-faith serving
Secundo anno regni ejus terræ motus ingens totam
in-the-second year of-reign his of-the-earth a-motion huge the-whole
Angliam exterruit tertio idus Augusti, horrendo miraculo,
England terrified on-the-third of-the-ides of-August by-a-horrible miracle
ut ædificia omnia eminus resilirent, et mox pristino
so-that buildings all from-afar sprang-back and soon in-the-former
more residerent. Secuta est inopia omnium fructuum; tarda
manner settled followed has a-scarcity of-all fruits a-late

maturitas frugum, ut vix ad festum sancti Andreæ
ripening of-crops so-that scarcely by the-feast of-saint Andrew
messes reconderentur.
the-harvests were-stored
Quarto anno tumultus fulgurum, motus turbinum; denique
in-the-fourth year a-tumult of-lightnings motion of-whirlwinds finally
idus Octobris apud Winchelcumbam ictus de cælo emissus
on-the-ides of-October at Winchcombe a-stroke from heaven sent-forth
latus turris impulit tanta vi, ut, debilitata maceria
the-side of-the-tower struck with-such force that with-weakened masonry
in confinio tecti, ingens foramen ad modum humanæ
on the-border of-the-roof a-huge hole to the-measure of-human
grossitudinis aperiretur. Ibi ingressus trabem maximam
thickness was-opened there having-entered a-beam very-great
perculit, ut fragmina in tota spargerentur ecclesia, quin et
it-struck so-that the-fragments in the-whole were-scattered church nay and
crucifixi caput cum dextra tibia, et imaginem sanctæ Mariæ
of-the-crucifix the-head with the-right shin and the-image of-saint Mary
dejecit. Secutus est odor teterrimus, hominum importabilis
it-threw-down followed has a-stench most-foul of-men unbearable
naribus. Tandem monachi, felici ausu irrumpentes,
to-the-nostrils at-last the-monks with-happy daring bursting-in
benedictæ aquæ aspergine præstigias inimici effugarunt.
of-blessed water with-the-sprinkling the-illusions of-the-enemy put-to-flight
Quid illud omnibus incognitum seculis? discordia ventorum
what that to-all unknown ages by-the-discord of-winds
inter se dissidentium, ab euro-austro veniens, decimo
among themselves disagreeing from the-south-east coming on-the-tenth
sexto kalendas Novembris Londoniæ plusquam secentas
sixth of-the-kalends of-November at-London more-than six-hundred
domos effregit. Cumulabantur ecclesiæ cum domibus, maceriæ
houses broke were-heaped churches with houses masonry

cum parietibus. Majus quoque scelus furor ventorum ausus,
with walls a-greater also crime the-fury of-the-winds having-dared
tectum ecclesiæ sanctæ Mariæ quæ "ad Arcus" dicitur pariter
the-roof of-the-church of-saint Mary which at-the Bow is-called equally
sublevavit, et duos homines ibi obruit. Ferebanturque tigna
lifted and two men there overwhelmed and-were-carried rafters
cum trabibus per inane, spectaculo a longe visentibus,
with beams through the-void for-a-spectacle from afar to-those-seeing
timori prope stantibus ne obruerentur. Quatuor tigna, sex
for-fear near to-those-standing lest they-be-crushed four rafters six
et viginti pedes longa, tanta vi in humum impacta sunt
and twenty feet long with-such force into the-ground driven were
ut vix quatuor pedes exstarent; notabili visu quomodo
that scarcely four feet stood-out by-a-notable sight how
duritiem stratæ publicæ perruperint, eo ibi ordine
the-hardness of-the-street public they-had-broken-through in-that there order
posita quo in tecto manu artificis fuerant locata,
placed in-which on the-roof by-the-hand of-the-craftsman they-had-been placed
quoad ob impedimenta transeuntium ad planitiem terræ
until for the-bindrances of-passers-by to the-level of-the-ground
sunt desecta, quod aliter erui nequirent.
they-were cut-off because otherwise to-be-dug-out they-could-not
Quinto anno eadem violentia fulminis apud Salesbiriam
in-the-fifth year the-same violence of-lightning at Salisbury
tectum turris ecclesiæ omnino disjecit, multumque
the-roof of-the-tower of-the-church altogether scattered and-much
maceriam labefactavit, quinta sane die postquam eam
masonry loosened on-the-fifth indeed day after it
dedicaverat Osmundus, prælaræ memoriæ episcopus.
he-had-dedicated Osmund of-splendid memory bishop

Sexto anno tantum fuit pluviarum diluvium, tanta tempestas
in-the-sixth year so-great was of-rains a-flood so-great a-storm
imbrium, quantum nullus meminerat. Mox, accedente
of-showers as-much-as no-one remembered soon with-approaching
hyeme, fluvii ita sunt congelati ut essent pervii equitantibus
winter the-rivers so were frozen that they-were passable to-those-riding
et plaustra ducentibus; nec mora, resoluto gelu, impetu
and carts leading nor delay with-loosened frost by-the-onset
glacialium crustarum pontes effracti.
of-icy crusts the-bridges broken
Septimo anno, propter tributa quæ rex in Normannia
in-the-seventh year on-account-of the-taxes which the-king in Normandy
positus edixerat, agricultura defecit: qua fatiscente, fames e
placed had-decreed agriculture failed with-which failing famine on
vestigio; ea quoque invalescente, mortalitas hominum subsecuta,
the-spot that also growing-strong a-mortality of-men followed
adeo crebra ut deesset morituris cura, mortuis sepultura. Tunc
so-much frequent that was-lacking to-the-dying care to-the-dead burial then
etiam Walenses in Normannos efferati, Cestrensem pagum et
also the-Welsh against the-Normans enraged the-Chester district and
partem Scrobesbiriensis depopulati, Anglesiam armis obtinuere.
part of-Shrewsbury having-ravaged Anglesey by-arms held
Decimo anno kalendis Octobris apparuit cometes, quindecim
in-the-tenth year on-the-kalends of-October appeared a-comet for-fifteen
diebus, majorem crinem emittens ad orientem, minorem
days a-greater tail sending-forth toward the-east a-lesser
versus euro-austrum: apparuerunt et aliæ stellæ, quasi jacula
toward the-south-east appeared also other stars as-if darts
inter se emittentes. Ille fuit annus quo Anselmus lux
among themselves sending-forth that was the-year in-which Anselm the-light
Angliæ, ultro tenebras erroneorum effugiens, Romam ivit.
of-England of-his-own-accord the-darkness of-the-erring fleeing to-Rome went

Undecimo anno rex Noricorum Magnus, cum Haroldo filio
in-the-eleventh year the-king of-the-Norwegians Magnus with Harold son
Haroldi regis quondam Angliæ, Orcadas insulas et Mevanias, et
of-Harold king once of-England the-Orkney islands and the-Mevanian and
si quæ aliæ in oceano jacent, armis subegit; jamque Angliam
if any others in the-ocean lie by-arms subjected and-already England
per Anglesiam obstinatus petebat: sed occurrerunt ei comites,
through Anglesey obstinately he-sought but met him the-earls
Hugo Cestrensis, et Hugo Scrobesbiriensis; et, antequam
Hugh of-Chester and Hugh of-Shrewsbury and before
continentem ingrederetur armis, eum expulerunt. Cecidit ibi
the-mainland he-entered by-arms him drove-out fell there
Hugo Scrobesbiriensis, eminus ferreo hastili perfossus.
Hugh of-Shrewsbury from-afar by-an-iron spear pierced
Duodecimo anno fluctus marinus per Tamesim fluvium
in-the-twelfth year a-wave of-the-sea through the-Thames river
ascendit, et villas multas cum hominibus mersit.
climbed and villages many with men drowned
Tertiodecimo anno, qui et extremus fuit vitæ, multa adversa:
in-the-thirteenth year which also the-last was of-his-life many adversities
hoc quoque maxime horrendum, quod visibiliter diabolus
this also most horrible that visibly the-devil
apparuit hominibus in saltibus et deviis, transeuntes allocutus.
appeared to-men in woods and byways passers-by addressing
Præterea in pago Berrucscire, in villa Hamstede, continuis
besides in the-district of-Berkshire in the-estate of-Hampstead for-continuous
quindecim diebus fons sanguinem tam ubertim manavit ut
fifteen days a-spring blood so abundantly flowed that
vicinum vadum inficeret. Audiebat ille hæc, et ridebat;
the-neighboring ford it-stained heard he these-things and laughed
nec sua sompnia de se, nec aliorum visa, curans.
nor his-own dreams about himself nor of-others the-visions caring-for

Multa de ipsius nece et prævisa et prædicta homines
many-things about his death both foreseen and foretold men
ferunt, quorum tria probabilium relatorum testimonio
report of-which three of-credible relaters on-the-testimony
lecturis communicabo. Edmerus, nostrorum temporum
to-the-readers I-shall-share Eadmer of-our times
historicus sinceritate veritatis laudandus, dicit nobilem illum
a-historian for-the-sincerity of-truth praiseworthy says noble that
exulem Anselmum, cum quo pariter omnis religio exulabat,
exile Anselm with whom equally all religion was-exiled
Marcenniacum venisse, ut Hugonis abbatis Cluniacensis
to-Marcigny to-have-come that of-Hugh abbot of-Cluny
conscientiæ querelas curarum suarum ingereret; ibi, cum de
on-the-conscience the-complaints of-cares his he-might-unload there when about
rege Willelmo sermo volutaretur, abbatem prædictum dixisse,
king William talk was-rolled the-abbot aforesaid to-have-said
proxima nocte regem illum ante Deum ductum, et adjudicatum
the-next night king that before God led and judged
librato judicio, tristem dampnationis subiisse sententiam.
with-weighed judgment the-sad of-damnation to-have-undergone sentence
Id quo modo nosset, nec ipse tunc exposuit, nec aliquis
this in-what way he-knew neither he then explained nor any
audientium requisivit: veruntamen, pro contuitu religionis ejus,
of-the-hearers asked nevertheless for regard of-religion his
nulli præsentium de fide dictorum inhæsit ambiguum.
to-none of-those-present about the-faith of-his-words clung doubt
Ejus erat vitæ Hugo, ejus famæ, ut omnes ejus suspicerent
of-such was life Hugh of-such fame that all his looked-up-to
eloquium, mirarentur consilium, quasi ex cælesti adyto
eloquence wondered-at counsel as-if from heavenly sanctuary

insonuisset oraculum. Nec multo post occiso, ut dicemus,
had-sounded an-oracle nor much after with-killed as we-shall-tell
rege, venit nuntius ut sedem suam dignaretur archiepiscopus.
the-king came a-messenger that see his would-deign the-archbishop

THE DEATH OF WILLIAM RUFUS

The night before he died Rufus dreamed he was bled and the stream rose to heaven, and woke in fear calling on Saint Mary; at dawn a monk told Robert fitz Hamon of a dream of the king gnawing a crucifix. Rufus laughed at it, but was shaken and hunted only after dinner. In the forest Walter Tirel, shooting at a stag, struck the king unawares with an arrow and escaped on his horse. The body was carried to Winchester on a cart and buried within the tower, which fell the next year. He left three bishoprics and twelve abbeys without shepherds and favored Wibert against Urban, the cause of his quarrel with Anselm.

Pridie quam excederet vita, vidit per quietem se
on-the-day-before than he-departed from-life he-saw through rest himself
phlebotomi ictu sanguinem emittere; radium cruoris in
of-a-bleeder by-the-stroke blood to-send-out a-ray of-gore to
cælum usque protentum lucem obnubilare, diem interpolare.
heaven all-the-way stretched the-light to-cloud the-day to-interrupt
Ita, inclamata sancta Maria, sompno excussus, lumen
so with-called-upon holy Mary from-sleep shaken a-light
inferri præcepit, et cubicularios a se discedere vetuit.
to-be-brought he-ordered and the-chamberlains from himself to-depart forbade
Tunc aliquot horis antelucanis nonnihil vigilatum. Paulo
then for-some hours before-dawn somewhat it-was-watched a-little
post, cum jam Aurora diem invehere meditaretur, monachus
after when already Dawn the-day to-bring-in was-meditating a-monk
quidam transmarinus retulit Roberto filio Hamonis, viro
certain from-overseas related to-Robert son of-Hamo a-man

magnatum principi, sompnium quod eadem nocte de rege
of-the-magnates the-chief a-dream which on-the-same night about the-king
viderat, mirum et horrendum: quod in quandam ecclesiam
he-had-seen wonderful and horrible that into a-certain church
venerat, superbo gestu et insolenti, ut solebat, circumstantes
he-had-come with-proud gesture and insolent as he-was-wont those-standing-around
despiciens; tunc, crucifixum mordicus apprehendens, brachia illi
despising then the-crucifix with-his-teeth seizing the-arms of-it
corroserit, crura pene truncaverit; crucifixum diu tolerasse,
he-gnawed the-legs almost cut-off the-crucifix long to-have-endured
sed tandem pede ita regem depulisse ut supinus caderet:
but at-last with-its-foot so the-king to-have-thrust-off that on-his-back he-fell
ex ore jacentis tam effusam flammam exisse, ut
from the-mouth of-the-lying-one so poured-out a-flame to-have-come-out that
fumeorum voluminum orbes etiam sidera lamberent. Hoc
of-smoky rolls the-circles even the-stars licked this
sompnium Robertus non negligendum arbitratus, regi
dream Robert not to-be-neglected thinking to-the-king
confestim, quod ei a secretis erat, intulit: at ille cachinnos
at-once because to-him as secretary he-was brought but he laughter
ingeminans, "Monachus," inquit, "est, et causa nummorum
redoubling a-monk he-said he-is and for-the-sake of-coins
monachiliter sompniat; date ei centum solidos." Multum
monkishly dreams give him a-hundred shillings much
tamen motus, diu cunctatus est an in silvam sicut
yet moved long hesitated has whether into the-forest as
intenderat iret, suadentibus amicis ne suo dispendio
he-had-intended he-should-go with-persuading friends that-not at-his-own loss
veritatem sompniorum experiretur. Itaque ante cibum venatu
the-truth of-dreams he-should-test and-so before food from-hunting
abstinuit, seriis negotiis cruditatem indomitæ mentis
he-abstained in-serious business the-indigestion of-his-untamed mind

eructuans; ferunt, ea die largiter epulatum, crebrioribus
belching-out they-say on-that day lavishly having-feasted with-more-frequent
quam consueverat poculis frontem serenasse. Mox igitur
than he-was-accustomed cups his-brow to-have-cleared soon therefore
post cibum in saltum contendit, paucis comitatus; quorum
after food into the-forest he-hastened by-few accompanied of-whom
familiarissimus erat Walterius cognomento Tirel, qui de
the-most-intimate was Walter by-surname Tirel who from
Francia, liberalitate regis adductus, venerat. Is, ceteris
France by-the-liberality of-the-king drawn had-come he with-the-others
per moram venationis, quo quemque casus tulerat, dispersis,
through the-delay of-the-hunt whither each chance had-carried scattered
solus cum eo remanserat. Jamque Phœbo in oceanum
alone with him had-remained and-now with-Phoebus into the-ocean
proclivi, rex cervo ante se transeunti, extento nervo et
sloping the-king at-a-stag before him passing with-stretched string and
emissa sagitta, non adeo sævum vulnus inflixit; diutile
with-sent-forth arrow not very severe a-wound inflicted for-a-little-while
adhuc fugitantem vivacitate oculorum prosecutus, opposita
still fleeing with-the-liveliness of-his-eyes following with-opposed
contra violentiam solarium radiorum manu. Tunc Walterius
against the-violence of-the-solar rays his-hand then Walter
pulchrum facinus animo parturiens, ut, rege alias interim
a-fine deed in-mind bringing-forth that with-the-king elsewhere meanwhile
intento, ipse alterum cervum qui forte propter transibat
intent he-himself another stag which by-chance near was-passing
prosterneret, inscius et impotens regium pectus, Deus
should-lay-low unknowing and powerless the-royal breast God
bone! lethali arundine trajecit. Saucius ille nullum verbum
good with-a-deadly arrow pierced wounded he no word
emisit; sed ligno sagittæ quantum extra corpus exstabat
sent-forth but with-the-wood of-the-arrow as-much-as outside the-body stood-out

effracto, moxque supra vulnus cadens, mortem acceleravit.
broken and-soon upon the-wound falling death he-hastened
Accurrit Walterius; sed, quia nec sensum nec vocem hausit,
ran-up Walter but because neither sense nor voice he-drew
perniciter cornipedem insiliens, beneficio calcarium probe
swiftly the-horn-footed-steed leaping-onto by-the-benefit of-his-spurs well
evasit. Nec vero fuit qui persequeretur, illis coniventibus,
escaped nor indeed was-there who should-pursue with-those conniving
istis miserantibus, omnibus postremo alia molientibus;
with-these pitying with-all lastly other-things toiling-at
pars receptacula sua munire, pars furtivas prædas agere, pars
part shelters their to-fortify part stealthy plunders to-drive part
regem novum jamjamque circumspicere. Pauci rusticanorum
the-king new now-and-now to-look-round-for a-few of-the-rustics
cadaver, in rheda caballaria compositum, Wintoniam in
the-corpse in a-cart horse-drawn laid to-Winchester into
episcopatum devexere, cruore undatim per totam viam
the-bishopric carried with-gore in-waves through the-whole road
stillante. Ibi infra ambitum turris, multorum procerum
dripping there within the-precinct of-the-tower of-many nobles
conventu, paucorum planctu, terræ traditum. Secuta
with-an-assembly of-few with-the-lament to-the-earth committed followed
est posteriori anno ruina turris: de qua re quæ opiniones
has in-the-later year the-fall of-the-tower about which thing what opinions
fuerint parco dicere, ne videar nugis credere; præsertim
there-were I-refrain to-say lest I-seem trifles to-believe especially
cum, pro instabilitate operis, machina ruinam fecisse
since for the-instability of-the-work the-structure the-fall to-have-made
potuisset etiamsi nunquam ipse ibi sepultus fuisset. Obiit
could even-if never he-himself there buried had-been he-died
anno Dominicæ incarnationis millesimo centesimo, regni
in-the-year of-the-Lord's incarnation thousandth hundredth of-the-reign

tertio decimo, nonas Augusti quarto, major quadragenario,
third tenth nones of-August fourth greater than-forty
ingentia præsumens, et ingentia, si pensa Parcarum evolvere
huge-things presuming and huge-things if the-spindles of-the-Fates to-unroll
vel violentiam fortunæ abrumpere et eluctari potuisset,
or the-violence of-fortune to-break-off and to-struggle-out he-could
facturus. Tanta vis erat animi, ut quodlibet sibi regnum
about-to-do so-great force was of-mind that any to-himself kingdom
promittere auderet. Denique ante proximam diem mortis
to-promise he-dared finally before the-next day of-his-death
interrogatus ubi festum suum in Natali teneret, respondit
asked where feast his at Christmas he-would-hold he-answered
Pictavis, quod comes Pictavensis, Jerosolimam ire gestiens,
at-Poitiers because the-count of-Poitou to-Jerusalem to-go eager
ei terram suam pro pecunia invadaturus dicebatur. Ita
to-him land his for money about-to-pledge was-said so
paternis possessionibus non contentus, majorisque gloriæ
with-paternal possessions not content and-of-greater glory
spe raptatus, indebitis incubabat honoribus. Vir sacrati
by-hope swept-along on-undue he-brooded honors a-man of-sacred
ordinis hominibus pro dampno animæ, cujus salutem revocare
order by-men for the-loss of-his-soul whose salvation to-recall
laborent, maxime miserandus; stipendiariis militibus pro
they-labor most to-be-pitied to-the-stipendiary soldiers for
copia donativorum mirandus; provincialibus, quod eorum
the-abundance of-gifts to-be-wondered-at to-the-provincials because their
substantias abradi sinebat, non desiderandus. Nullum
substances to-be-scraped-away he-allowed not to-be-missed no
suo tempore concilium fieri memini, in quo, delictis
in-his time council to-be-held I-remember in which with-sins
enervatis, vigor ecclesiasticus confirmaretur. Ecclesiasticos
weakened the-vigor ecclesiastical might-be-strengthened ecclesiastical

honores diu antequam daret deliberabat, sive pro commodo
honors long before he-gave he-deliberated whether for profit
sive pro trutinando merito, utpote qui, eo die quo
or for weighing merit inasmuch-as he-who on-that day on-which
excessit, tres episcopatus et duodecim abbatias desolatas
he-departed three bishoprics and twelve abbeys bereft
pastoribus in manu sua teneret. Quin et accepta occasione
of-shepherds in hand his held nay and with-seized occasion
qua inter se dissiderent Urbanus in Roma, Gwibertus
in-which among themselves they-disagreed Urban at Rome Wibert
in Ravenna, tributum Romanæ sedi negavit; pronior tamen
at Ravenna tribute to-the-Roman see he-denied more-inclined yet
in Gwiberti gratiam, quod fomes et incentivum inter eum
to of-Wibert favor which the-kindling and incentive between him
et Anselmum fuerat discordiæ quod ille vir Deo dilectus
and Anselm had-been of-discord because that man to-God beloved
Urbanum apostolicum, alterum apostatam, pronuntiaret.
Urban the-apostolic the-other an-apostate declared

De Cisterciensibus

THE CISTERCIANS

The Cistercian order began in Rufus's day, and its founder was an Englishman, Harding, a monk of Sherborne from boyhood, who wandered through Scotland and France, went to Rome singing the whole psalter each day, and settled at Molesme. There he asked the reason or authority for customs not in the Rule; the abbot agreed to keep only its marrow, and when most refused, eighteen, Harding among them, left with the abbot and founded Cîteaux, where they work with their hands, keep silence, wear no furs or linen, eat no meat, and care for guests and the sick.

Ejus diebus religio Cistellensis cœpit, quæ nunc optima
his in-days the-religion of-Cîteaux began which now the-best
via summi in cælum processus et creditur et dicitur.
way of-highest into heaven of-progress both is-believed and is-said
De qua hic loqui suscepti operis non videtur esse
about which here to-speak to-the-undertaken work not seems to-be
contrarium, quod ad Angliæ gloriam pertineat, quæ talem
contrary because to of-England the-glory it-may-belong which such
virum produxerit qui hujusce religionis fuerit et auctor
a-man produced who of-this religion was both the-author
et mediator. Noster ille, et nostra puer in palæstra
and the-mediator our he and our as-a-boy in the-wrestling-school
primi ævi tirocinium cucurrit. Quapropter, si non invidi
of-first age the-apprenticeship ran wherefore if not envious
sumus, eo illius bona complectimur gratiosius quo
we-are by-so-much his goods we-embrace more-graciously by-how-much
agnoscimus propinquius; simul et laudes ejus attollere
we-acknowledge-them more-nearly at-the-same-time also the-praises his to-raise
mihi est animus, quia ingenua mens est si bonum in alio
to-me is the-mind because a-noble mind it-is if good in another
probes quod in te non esse suspires. Is fuit Hardingus
you-approve which in you not to-be you-sigh he was Harding

nomine apud Anglos, non ita reconditis natalibus procreatus.
by-name among the-English not so obscure by-birth begotten
A puero Scireburniæ monachus; sed cum adolescentem
from a-boy at-Sherborne a-monk but when the-adolescent
seculi urtica sollicitaret, pannos illos perosus, primo
of-the-world the-nettle provoked the-clothes those hating first
Scottiam, mox Franciam contendit. Ibi aliquot annis litteris
to-Scotland soon to-France he-went there for-some years in-letters
liberalibus exercitus, divini amoris stimulos accepit: namque
liberal exercised of-divine love the-goads he-received for
cum pueriles ineptias robustior ætas excluderet, Romam, cum
when the-boyish follies a-stronger age shut-out to-Rome with
consorte studiorum clerico, profectus est; nec illos continuatio
a-partner of-studies a-cleric set-out he-has nor them the-continuation
et difficultas itineris, et facultatum penuria, unquam
and difficulty of-the-journey and of-means the-want ever
cohibere potuit quin cotidie totum psalterium et euntes et
to-restrain could from daily the-whole psalter both going and
redeuntes cantitarent. Profecto jam prædicabilis viri spirabat
returning chanting surely already of-a-preachable man breathed
animus quod non multo post, per Dei gratiam, est
the-mind which not much after through of-God the-grace he-has
adorsus: nam Burgundiam regressus, in Molesmo, novo et
undertaken for to-Burgundy having-returned at Molesme a-new and
magno monasterio, crinem abjecit, et prima quidem elementa
great monastery his-hair he-cast-off and the-first indeed elements
regulæ olim visa facile recognovit; cum vero ei alia
of-the-rule once seen easily he-recognized when but to-him other-things
proponerentur observanda, quæ nec in regula legerat nec
were-proposed to-be-observed which neither in the-rule he-had-read nor
usquam viderat, rationem eorum efflagitare cœpit, modeste
anywhere had-seen the-reason of-them to-demand he-began modestly

sane et ut monachum decet: “Ratione,” inquiens, “supremus
indeed and as a-monk befits by-reason he-said the-supreme
rerum Auctor omnia fecit, ratione omnia regit; ratione
of-things Author all-things made by-reason all-things rules by-reason
rotatur poli fabrica, ratione ipsa etiam quæ dicuntur
is-turned of-the-pole the-fabric by-reason itself even which are-called
errantia torquentur sidera, ratione moventur elementa; ratione
wandering are-whirled stars by-reason are-moved the-elements by-reason
et æquilibritate debet nostra subsistere natura. Sed quia
and balance ought our to-subsist nature but because
per desidiam sæpe a ratione decidit, leges quondam
through sloth often from reason it-falls laws once
multæ latæ; novissime per beatum Benedictum regula
many were-passed most-recently through blessed Benedict a-rule
divinitus processit quæ fluxum naturæ ad rationem revocaret;
divinely proceeded which the-flux of-nature to reason should-recall
in qua etsi habentur quædam quorum rationem penetrare
in which although are-held certain-things of-which the-reason to-penetrate
non sufficio, auctoritati tamen adquiescendum censeo. Ratio
not I-am-able to-authority yet to-be-acquiesced I-think reason
enim et auctoritas divinorum scriptorum, quamvis dissonare
for and authority of-divine writings although to-disagree
videantur, unum idemque sunt: namque cum Deus nihil
they-seem one and-the-same are for since God nothing
sine ratione creaverit, et recreaverit; qui fieri potest ut
without reason has-created and recreated how to-be-done can-it that
credam sanctos patres, sequaces scilicet Dei, quicquam
I-should-believe the-holy fathers followers namely of-God anything
præter rationem edicere, quasi soli auctoritati fidem debeamus
beyond reason to-decree as-if alone to-authority faith we-ought
adhibere? Itaque illorum, quæ procuditis, aut rationem aut
to-apply and-so of-those-things which you-forge either the-reason or

auctoritatem afferte. Quamvis non multum debeat credi, si
the-authority bring although not much ought to-be-believed if
quid humanæ rationis possit allegari, quod æquipollentibus
anything of-human reason can to-be-alleged which by-equally-strong
argumentis valeat enervari. Quapropter ex regula quæ ratione
arguments can to-be-weakened wherefore from the-rule which on-reason
et auctoritate nixa, utpote omnium justorum spiritu dictata
and authority leaning as-being of-all the-just by-the-spirit dictated
est, date exempla; quod si non potestis, frustra profitemini
it-is give examples but if not you-can in-vain you-profess
illius prærogativam cujus contempnitis sequi doctrinam."
its prerogative whose you-scorn to-follow the-doctrine
Hujusmodi sententia, ab uno, ut fit, serpens in alios, merito
of-this-kind an-opinion from one as happens creeping into others deservedly
movit corda Deum timentium ne forte in vacuum currerent
moved the-hearts God of-those-fearing lest perhaps in vain they-should-run
aut cucurrissent. Frequentibus ergo capitulis disputatio
or should-have-run in-frequent therefore chapters the-dispute
agitata hunc finem habuit, ut ipse abbas sententiam
stirred this end had that himself the-abbot the-opinion
probaret, supersedendum superfluis, solam medullam regulæ
should-approve to-be-given-up superfluous-things only the-marrow of-the-rule
vestigandam. Ita duo fratres electi, in quibus scientia litterarum
to-be-traced so two brothers chosen in whom the-knowledge of-letters
cum religione quadraret, qui, vicaria collatione, auctoris
with religion squared who by-alternate comparison of-the-author
regulæ voluntatem inquirerent, inquisitam aliis proponerent.
of-the-rule the-will should-inquire the-inquired to-others should-propose
Abbas sedulo agere ut totus conventus assentiretur: sed,
the-abbot zealously to-act that the-whole community should-assent but
quia difficile a mentibus hominum avellitur quod ex
because with-difficulty from the-minds of-men is-torn what from

antiquo insederit, quia inviti exspuunt quod prima saliva
of-old has-settled because unwillingly they-spit-out what with-the-first saliva
combiberint, pene omnes suscipere recusarunt res novas,
they-have-drunk almost all to-accept refused things new
quia antiquas diligebant. Soli decem et octo, in quibus
because the-old they-loved only ten and eight among whom
Hardingus, qui et Stephanus, sancta obstinatione pervicaces,
Harding who also Stephen with-holy obstinacy persevering
cum abbate suo cœnobium derelinquunt; pronuntiantes non
with abbot their the-monastery leave declaring not
posse regulæ puritatem custodiri in loco ubi et opum
to-be-able of-the-rule the-purity to-be-kept in a-place where both of-wealth
congeries et ciborum indigeries etiam reluctantem animum
heaping and of-foods indigestion even the-resisting mind
offocarent. Igitur Cistellas venere, locum prius saltuosum,
would-choke therefore to-Cîteaux they-came a-place before wooded
nunc ita frequenti religione monachorum perspicuum,
now so with-the-frequent religion of-monks illustrious
ut divinitatis ipsius conscius non immerito æstimetur. Ibi
that of-the-divinity itself conscious not undeservedly it-is-reckoned there
suffragio archiepiscopi Viennensis, qui nunc apostolicus est,
with-the-support of-the-archbishop of-Vienne who now apostolic is
memorabile et omni seculo venerabile opus cœptarunt.
a-memorable and to-every age venerable work they-began
Et plura certe videntur aspera, sed hæc præcipue: nihil
and many-things surely seem harsh but these especially nothing
pellicium aut lineum vestiunt, nec illud quod subtiliter texitur
of-fur or of-linen they-wear nor that which finely is-woven
laneum, quod nos staminium vocamus; nunquam femoralia,
woolen which we stamin call never breeches
nisi in itinere directi, habent, quæ revertentes lota restituunt.
unless on a-journey sent they-have which returning washed they-restore

Duas tunicas cum cucullis habentes, hyeme augmentum non
two tunics with cowls having in-winter an-increase not
assumunt; sed æstate, si volunt, levamen accipiunt. Vestiti
they-take but in-summer if they-wish relief they-take clothed
dormiunt et cincti, nec ullo tempore post matutinas ad
they-sleep and girded nor at-any time after matins to
lectos redeunt: sed ita horam matutinarum temperant, ut
their-beds return but so the-hour of-matins they-temper that
ante laudes lucescat; ita regulæ incubantes, ut nec iota
before lauds it-grows-light so to-the-rule clinging that neither iota
unum nec apicem prætereundum putent. Statim post laudes
one nor tittle to-be-passed-over they-think at-once after lauds
primam canunt, post primam in opera horis constitutis
prime they-sing after prime to work at-hours appointed
exeunt; quicquid faciendum vel cantandum est die sine
they-go-out whatever to-be-done or to-be-sung is by-day without
aliena lucerna consummant. Nullus ex horis diurnis, nullus
another lamp they-complete no-one from the-hours of-the-day no-one
ex completorio unquam deest, præter infirmos: cellararius et
from compline ever is-absent except the-sick the-cellarer and
hospitarius post auditum completorium serviunt hospitibus,
the-guest-master after heard compline serve the-guests
summo tamen studio servantes silentium. Abbas nihil sibi,
with-highest yet zeal keeping silence the-abbot nothing to-himself
nisi quod aliis, licere permittit; ubique præsens, ubique
unless what to-the-others to-be-lawful allows everywhere present everywhere
gregis sui curam circumferens: solummodo edentibus non
of-flock his the-care carrying-round only to-those-eating not
adest, quia mensa ejus cum peregrinis et pauperibus est
he-is-present because table his with pilgrims and the-poor is
semper. Nihilominus, ubicunque sit, verborum et obsoniorum
always nonetheless wherever he-is of-words and of-dishes

abstemius; quia nec ipsi nec aliis unquam nisi duo
abstemious because neither to-himself nor to-others ever unless two
fercula apponuntur, sagimen et carnes nunquam nisi infirmis.
courses are-served fat and meats never unless to-the-sick
Ab idibus Septembris usque ad Pascha nullius festivitatis
from the-ides of-September all-the-way to Easter of-no festival
contuitu, præter dies Dominicos, nisi semel in die
in-regard except the-days of-the-Lord unless once in the-day
jejunium solvunt. Nunquam claustrum nisi causa operandi
the-fast they-break never the-cloister except for-the-sake of-working
egrediuntur; nec ibi, nec usquam, nisi abbati aut priori
do-they-leave nor there nor anywhere unless to-the-abbot or the-prior
invicem colloquentes. Horas canonicas indefesse continuant,
with-each-other conversing the-hours canonical unweariedly they-continue
nulla appenditia extrinsecus adjicientes, præter vigiliam pro
no appendages from-outside adding except the-vigil for
defunctis. Cantus et hymnos Ambrosianos, quantum ex
the-dead chants and hymns Ambrosian as-much-as from
Mediolano addiscere potuerunt, frequentant in divinis officiis.
Milan to-learn they-could they-use in the-divine offices
Hospitum et infirmorum curam habentes, importabiles
of-guests and of-the-sick the-care having unbearable
corporibus suis pro animarum remedio comminiscuntur cruces.
to-bodies their for of-souls the-healing they-devise crosses

The abbot at first drove himself and the others hard but repented, and the monks of Molesme drew him back by a trick through the pope; all but eight of his monks went with him. The eight made Alberic, one of their own, abbot and Stephen prior; after eight years Alberic died and Stephen, Harding himself, was chosen in his absence, under whom the house founded many daughters and shunned gold and gems, resisting any easing of the Rule. The Cistercians are today the exercise of all monks, the mirror of the zealous, and the goad of the slothful.

Hæc abbas ille primo ingenti impetu et ipse faciebat et
these-things abbot that at-first with-huge impetus both himself did and
alios compellebat, sed temporis intercessu pœnituit homo
others compelled but of-time with-the-passage he-repented a-man
delicate nutritus, et ægre ferens tam diutinam ciborum
delicately reared and hardly bearing so long-lasting of-foods
parsimoniam. Cujus voluntatem monachi apud Molesmum
sparingness whose will the-monks at Molesme
residui cognoscentes, verbis quibusdam incertum an
remaining learning with-words certain uncertain whether
et epistolis, per obedientiam papæ astu quodam
also with-letters through obedience of-the-pope by-a-trick certain
ad monasterium retrahunt, volentem cogentes. Quasi enim
to the-monastery draw-back the-willing compelling as-if for
diffatigatus improbitate supplicum, angustos parietes reliquit
wearied by-the-importunity of-the-suppliants the-narrow walls he-left
pauperum, augustiorem repetens thronum. Secuti eum ex
of-the-poor the-more-august seeking-again throne followed him from
Cistellis omnes qui cum eo venerant, præter octo. Illi pauci
Cîteaux all who with him had-come except eight they few
numero, sed multi merito, abbatem Albericum quendam
in-number but many in-merit as-abbot Alberic a-certain

ex suis, priorem Stephanum constituunt. Nec ille in vita
of their-own as-prior Stephen appoint nor he in life
moratus plus octennio, supremo feliciter conventus est
lingered more-than eight-years by-the-supreme happily summoned was
arbitrio. Tum, haud dubie nutu divino, Stephanus absens
decision then without doubt by-the-nod divine Stephen absent
etiam in abbatem eligitur, dux olim facti totius, speciale
even as abbot is-chosen the-leader formerly of-the-deed whole the-special
et insigne nostrorum dierum decus; cujus quanti sit meritum
and remarkable of-our days ornament whose how-great be the-merit
testantur abbatiæ sexdecim jam per eum factæ, septem
attest abbeys sixteen already through him made seven
cœptæ. Ita ipse, resona Dei tuba, circumpositos tum
begun so he the-resounding of-God trumpet those-placed-around both
verbo, tum exemplo, in cælum dirigit, nihil infra præceptum
by-word and by-example to heaven directs nothing below the-precept
faciens: sermone comis, facie jocundus, animo semper in
doing in-speech courteous in-face pleasant in-mind always in
Domino lætus. Hinc palam præclari vultus gaudium, hinc
the-Lord glad hence openly of-his-shining face the-joy hence
clam, illud desuper veniens irriguum; quia, incolatum istum
secretly that from-above coming watering because sojourn this
fastidiens, patriam continuo amore desideret. Per hæc
disdaining the-fatherland with-continuous love he-desires through these-things
favorabilis cunctis habetur, quia Deus amorem viri quem
favored by-all he-is-held because God the-love of-the-man whom
diligit in animos hominum dignanter refudit. Quocirca
he-loves into the-minds of-men graciously has-poured-back wherefore
beatum se computat terræ illius indigena quisquis per
blessed himself reckons of-that land the-native whoever through
illius manum pecunias suas transmittit ad Deum. Plura
his hand moneys his sends to God many-things

quidem ille accipit; sed, paucis in suos suorumque usus
indeed he receives but with-few on his-own and-of-his-own uses
expensis, cetera in egenos et monasteriorum ædificationem
spent the-rest among the-needy and of-monasteries the-building
confestim dispertit. Est enim Stephani marsupium omnium
at-once he-distributes is for of-Stephen the-purse of-all
egentium publicum ærarium. Abstinentiæ illius est indicium,
the-needy the-public treasury of-abstinence his is a-sign
quod nihil ibi, sicut in ceteris cœnobiis, videas fulgurare
that nothing there as in other monasteries you-may-see to-flash
auro, renidere gemma, micare argento; nam, ut Gentilis ait,
with-gold to-gleam with-gem to-glitter with-silver for as the-Gentile says
"in sancto quid facit aurum?" Nos in sacratis vasis parum
in a-holy-place what does gold we in consecrated vessels little
putamus actum nisi crassi crustam metalli obumbret honor
we-think done unless of-thick the-crust of-metal should-overshadow the-honor
lapidum, vel topaziorum flamma, vel ametistorum viola, vel
of-stones or of-topazes the-flame or of-amethysts the-violet or
smaragdorum lux herbida; nisi tunicæ sacerdotales auro
of-emeralds the-light grassy unless the-tunics priestly with-gold
ludant; nisi multicoloribus parietes picturis renideant, et
play unless with-many-colored the-walls with-pictures gleam and
solem ad lacunar sollicitent. At vero illi, ea quæ prima
the-sun to the-ceiling entice but indeed they those-things which first
mortales falso æstimant in secundis habentes, omne studium
mortals falsely reckon in second-place holding all zeal
in ornandis moribus ponunt, magisque amant splendidas
on adorning manners place and-more love shining
mentes quam auratas vestes; scientes quod benefactorum
minds than gilded clothes knowing that of-good-deeds
retributio optima est munda frui conscientia. Quin etiam
the-reward best is a-clean to-enjoy conscience nay even

laudabilis abbatis clementia cum vel vult, vel velle
of-the-praiseworthy abbot the-clemency when either he-wishes or to-wish
se simulat, aliquid de jugo regulæ inflectere, illi contra
himself pretends something of the-yoke of-the-rule to-bend they against-it
nituntur: non multum superesse vitæ suæ dicentes, nec tam
strive not much to-remain of-life their saying nor so
diu se victuros quam vixere: sperare se duraturos
long themselves about-to-live as they-have-lived to-hope themselves about-to-last
in proposito, et successuris futuros exemplo, qui
in their-purpose and to-those-about-to-succeed about-to-be for-an-example who
si flexi fuerint peccabunt. Et profecto fiet pro
if bent they-will-have-been will-sin and surely it-will-happen for
humana debilitate; cujus perpetua lex est, ut nihil maximis
human weakness of-which the-perpetual law is that nothing by-the-greatest
laboribus partum diu possit consistere. Sed ut omnia quæ de
labors gained long can to-stand but that all-things which about
illis dicta sunt, vel dici possunt, in summam conferam,
them said are or to-be-said they-can into a-sum I-may-bring
sunt hodie monachi Cistellenses omnium monachorum
they-are today the-monks of-Cîteaux of-all monks
exercitium, studiosorum speculum, desidiosorum œstrum.
the-exercise of-the-studious the-mirror of-the-slothful the-gadfly

De translatione trium episcopatuum, Wellensis, Cestrensis, et Thetfordensis

THE REMOVAL OF THREE BISHOPRICS; HERBERT LOSINGA

In these years three bishoprics moved: Wells to Bath under John, Chester to Coventry under Robert, Thetford to Norwich under Herbert. Herbert, called Losinga for his flattery, bought the bishopric of Thetford and his father the abbey of Winchester, and a poet of the day wrote verses on the simony of father and son.

His temporibus in Anglia tres episcopatus ex antiquis
in-these times in England three bishoprics from ancient
sedibus transiere alias; Wellensis per Johannem in
seats passed elsewhere that-of-Wells through John to
Bathoniam, Cestrensis per Robertum in Coventreiam,
Bath that-of-Chester through Robert to Coventry
Thetfordensis per Herbertum in Norwic: omnes majori
that-of-Thetford through Herbert to Norwich all with-greater
ambitu quam ut tantorum virorum debuisset interesse
ambition than as of-such men ought to-have-been-present
studio. Denique, ut primum de postremo dicam, Herbertus
in-the-zeal finally that first about the-last I-may-speak Herbert
cognomento Losinga, quod ei ars adulationis impegerat,
by-surname Losinga which on-him the-art of-flattery had-fastened
ex abbate Ramesiensi emit episcopatum Thetfordensem;
from abbot of-Ramsey bought the-bishopric of-Thetford
patre quoque suo Roberto, ejusdem cognominis, in
with-father also his Robert of-the-same surname into
abbatiam Wintoniæ intruso. Fuit ergo vir ille magnus in
the-abbey of-Winchester intruded was therefore man that great in
Anglia simoniæ fomes, abbatiam episcopatumque nummis
England of-simony the-kindling abbey and-bishopric with-coins

aucupatus; pecunia scilicet regiam sollicitudinem inviscans,
hunting with-money namely the-royal solicitude ensnaring
et principum favori non leves promissiones assibilans;
and of-princes to-the-favor not light promises whispering
unde quidam egregie tunc temporis versificus ait:
whence a-certain excellently at-that of-time versifier says

"Surgit in ecclesia monstrum, genitore Losinga,
Rises in the-church a-monster with-father Losinga
Simonidum secta, canonum virtute resecta.
Of-the-Simonists the-sect of-the-canons by-the-power cut-back
Petre, nimis tardas, nam Simon ad ardua temptat;
Peter too-much you-delay for Simon to the-heights attempts
Si præsens esses, non Simon ad alta volaret.
If present you-were not Simon to the-heights would-fly
Proh dolor! Ecclesiæ nummis venduntur et ære."
Ah grief the-churches for-coins are-sold and for-bronze

Et infra:
and below

"Filius est præsul, pater abbas, Simon uterque.
The-son is bishop the-father abbot a-Simon each
Quid non speremus si nummos possideamus?
What not may-we-hope if coins we-possess
Omnia nummus habet; quod vult facit, addit, et aufert.
All-things the-coin has what it-wishes it-does it-adds and takes-away
Res nimis injusta, nummis fit præsul et abba."
A-thing very unjust with-coins becomes bishop and abbot

De Herberto Losinga

HERBERT LOSINGA'S REPENTANCE

Repenting, Herbert went to Rome, laid down staff and ring, and was given them back by the pope's mercy. Home again, he moved his see from Thetford to Norwich, a town of trade and concourse, and founded there a famous monastery of monks, providing for them from his own purse, and Cluniac monks at Thetford. His virtues, eloquence and learning outweighed his past offenses, he fought the simony he had once practiced, and William hopes his repentance carried him to heaven.

Veruntamen erroneum impetum juventutis abolevit pœnitentia,
nevertheless the-erring impulse of-youth abolished repentance
Romam profectus severioribus annis; ubi loci, simonicum
to-Rome having-set-out in-severer years where of-place the-simoniac
et baculum et anulum deponens, indulgentia clementissimæ
both staff and ring laying-down by-the-indulgence of-the-most-merciful
sedis iterum recipere meruit; quod Romani sanctius et
see again to-receive he-deserved because the-Romans more-holy and
ordinatius censeant, ut ecclesiarum omnium sumptus suis
more-orderly judge-it that of-churches all the-expenses their-own
potius marsupiis serviant, quam quorumlibet regum usibus
rather purses should-serve than of-any kings the-uses
militent. Ita Herbertus, domum reversus, sedem episcopalem
should-soldier so Herbert home returned the-seat episcopal
quæ quondam fuerat in Helmam, et tunc erat apud Thetford,
which once had-been in Elmham and then was at Thetford
ad insignem mercimoniis et populorum frequentia vicum
to a-remarkable for-merchandise and of-peoples for-concourse town
transtulit, nomine Norwic. Ibi monachorum congregationem
transferred by-name Norwich there of-monks a-congregation
numero et religione percelebrem instituit, omnia eis
in-number and religion very-famous he-established all-things for-them

necessaria ex nummis mercatus domesticis: providens scilicet
necessary from coins bought domestic providing namely
successorum querelæ, nullas episcopii terras monachis
of-successors the-complaint no of-the-bishopric lands to-the-monks
largitus est; ne illi Dei famulos fraudarent victualibus, si
bestowed has lest they of-God the-servants should-defraud of-food if
quid donatum offendissent quod suis competeret rebus.
anything given they-found which to-their-own belonged things
Præterea apud Thetford monachos Cluniacenses instituit,
besides at Thetford monks of-Cluny he-established
quod sint illius cœnobii professores, ubique pene gentium
because are of-that monastery the-professors everywhere almost of-peoples
dispersi, locupletes in seculo et splendidissimæ religionis in
dispersed wealthy in the-world and of-most-splendid religion in
Deo. Ingenti ergo et numerosa virtutum gratia præteritarum
God with-huge therefore and numerous of-virtues grace of-past
offensarum molem obumbravit; disertitudinis et litterarum
offenses the-mass he-overshadowed of-eloquence and of-letters
copia, nec minus secularium rerum peritia, Romanæ
by-abundance and-no less of-secular affairs by-skill to-the-Roman
quoque celsitudini suspiciendus. Fuitque Herbertus mutatus, ut
also loftiness to-be-looked-up-to and-was Herbert changed as
Lucanus de Curione dixit, "momentum et mutatio rerum:"
Lucan about Curio said the-moment and change of-affairs
sicut tempore istius regis simoniæ causidicus, ita posterius
as in-the-time of-that king of-simony an-advocate so later
propulsator invictus, neque ab aliis fieri voluit quod a se
a-repeller invincible nor by others to-be-done he-wished what by himself
præsumptum quondam juvenili fervore indoluit; præ se
presumed once with-youthful fervor he-grieved-over before himself
semper, ut aiunt, ferens Jeronimi dictum, "Erravimus juvenes,
always as they-say bearing of-Jerome the-saying we-erred as-young-men

emendemus senes." Postremo quis in illius facti laudem
let-us-amend as-old-men lastly who in of-that deed the-praise
digne pergat, quod tam nobile monasterium episcopus non
worthily may-go because so noble a-monastery a-bishop not
multum pecuniosus fecerit; in quo nihil frustra desideres,
much moneyed made in which nothing in-vain you-would-desire
vel in ædificiorum sublimium specie, vel in ornamentorum
either in of-lofty buildings the-appearance or in of-ornaments
pulchritudine vel in monachorum religione, et ad omnes
the-beauty or in of-the-monks the-religion and to all
sedula caritate? Hæc et vivum spe felici palpabant; et
zealous charity these-things both him-living with-hope happy caressed and
defunctum, si non vana fides pœnitentiæ, super æthera tulerunt.
dead if not vain is-faith in-repentance above the-ether bore

De Johanne episcopo primo Bathoniæ

JOHN, THE FIRST BISHOP OF BATH

John of Tours, bishop of Wells, a physician by practice, bought the abbey of Bath from the king and moved his see there. At first he treated the monks harshly, taking their lands and feeding them meanly, but later he gave the prior some of them back and enriched the house with ornaments and books, though he never freed all the lands, a bad example to his successors.

Johannes erat Wellensis episcopus, natione Turonicus; usu,
John was of-Wells bishop by-nation of-Tours by-practice
non litteris, medicus probatus. Is, defuncto abbate Bathoniensi,
not by-letters a-physician approved he with-dead the-abbot of-Bath
abbatiam a rege non gravante obtinuit, eo quod et in
the-abbey from the-king not objecting obtained for-this that both in
curia omnia venum agebantur, et aviditatem videbatur palliare
the-court all-things for-sale were-done and the-greed seemed to-cloak

ratio ut urbs tam insignis nomen celebrius acciperet ex
the-reason that a-city so remarkable a-name more-famous should-receive from
episcopio. Itaque primo in monachos severitatem exercere,
the-bishopric and-so at-first against the-monks severity to-exercise
quod essent et hebetes et sua æstimatione barbari; omnes
because they-were both dull and in-his estimation barbarous all
terras victualium ministras subtrahens, pauculumque victum
the-lands of-food the-providers withdrawing and-a-very-little food
per laicos exiliter inferens: sed procedentibus annis factis
through laymen meagerly bringing-in but with-proceeding years with-made
monachis novis, mitius se agere, aliquantulum terrarum
monks new more-mildly himself to-behave some of-the-lands
quo se hospitesque suos quomodocunque sustentarent
by-which themselves and-guests their in-whatever-way they-might-sustain
indulgens priori. Et quamvis primo cœpisset austerius,
granting to-the-prior and although first he-had-begun more-harshly
multa per eum ibi nobiliter cœpta et consummata in
many-things through him there nobly begun and completed in
ornamentis et libris; maximeque monachorum congregatione,
ornaments and books and-especially of-the-monks in-the-congregation
qui sunt scientia litterarum et sedulitate officii prædicabiles.
who are for-knowledge of-letters and for-diligence of-office praiseworthy
Ceterum nunquam, nec etiam moriens, emendare voluit ut
however never not even dying to-amend he-wished that
plena manu terrarum servitium manumitteret; successoribus
with-full hand of-the-lands the-service he-might-free to-successors
suis non imitandum præbens exemplum.
his not to-be-imitated affording example

De Roberto episcopo Cestrensi

ROBERT, BISHOP OF CHESTER

Robert, bishop of Chester, seized the monastery of Coventry, which Earl Leofric and Godiva had founded and filled with gold and silver, and stripped its treasures to win favor at Rome. He let its roofs threaten ruin, kept the monks on a meager allowance and little learning, and ordered his burial at Coventry against the canons. William leaves Augustine's translation to Goscelin, whose learning and music he praises, and promises better bishops of his own age in the next book.

Erat in Cestrensi diocesi cœnobium Coventreia nomine,
there-was in the-Chester diocese a-monastery Coventry by-name
quod comes magnificentissimus Lefricus, ut supra fatus sum,
which the-earl most-magnificent Leofric as above said I-have
cum uxore Godiva, constituerat; tanto auri et argenti
with his-wife Godiva had-established with-such of-gold and of-silver
spectaculo, ut ipsi parietes ecclesiæ angusti viderentur
display that the-very walls of-the-church narrow seemed
thesaurorum receptaculis, miraculo porro magno visentium
of-the-treasures for-the-receptacles for-a-wonder further great of-the-visitors
oculis. Hoc Robertus, ejusdem episcopus provinciæ, inhians,
to-the-eyes this Robert of-the-same bishop province gaping-at
non episcopaliter involavit; ex ipsis ecclesiæ gazis
not in-an-episcopal-way flew-upon from the-very of-the-church treasures
surripiens unde datoris manum suppleret, unde papæ
snatching whence of-the-giver the-hand he-might-supply whence of-the-pope
occupationes falleret, unde aviditati Romanorum irreperet;
the-business he-might-elude whence into-the-greed of-the-Romans he-might-creep
pluresque ibi annos moratus nihil probitatis exhibuit.
and-many there years having-stayed nothing of-probity showed
Adeo tecta ruinam minitantia nunquam periculo exemit,
so-much the-roofs ruin threatening never from-danger he-freed

adeo sacras opes dilapidans peculatus crimen incurrit,
so-much the-sacred wealth squandering of-embezzlement the-charge he-incurred
repetundarum reus futurus episcopus, si esset, accusator
of-extortion guilty about-to-be the-bishop if there-were an-accuser
paratus, Monachos miserabili stipe cibans, nec ad regularis
ready the-monks with-wretched allowance feeding neither to of-the-regular
ordinis amorem curavit accendere, nec nisi ad popularem
order love took-care to-kindle-them nor except to popular
litteraturam passus est aspirare; ne vel ciborum affluentia
learning allowed has to-aspire lest either of-foods by-abundance
delicatos, vel regulæ rigor et scientiæ vigor contra se
pampered or of-the-rule the-rigor and of-knowledge the-vigor against himself
faceret elatos. Agresti igitur victu et triviali litteratura
should-make-them proud with-rustic therefore food and common learning
contenti, satis habebant si vel saltem quieti vivere possent.
content enough they-held-it if even at-least in-quiet to-live they-could
Quin etiam moriturus, parvi faciens scita canonum quibus
nay even about-to-die little making-of the-decrees of-the-canons by-which
edicitur pontifices in suis sedibus sepeliri debere, non
it-is-proclaimed bishops in their-own sees to-be-buried ought not
apud Cestram, sed apud Coventreiam se tumulatum iri
at Chester but at Coventry himself buried to-be
præcepit; sua opinione relinquens successuris non
he-ordered by-his-own opinion leaving to-those-about-to-succeed not
indebitum calumpniandi, sed quasi jus legitimum vindicandi.
an-undue of-claiming but as-if a-right lawful of-vindicating
Hic occasio temporum Willelmi translationem Augustini
here the-occasion of-the-times of-William the-translation of-Augustine
præcellentissimi Anglorum apostoli cum sociis suis exponi
most-excellent of-the-English apostle with companions his to-be-set-out
animaret, nisi peritissimi Goscelini præcurrisset ingenium;
would-encourage unless of-the-most-skilled Goscelin had-anticipated the-wit

Goscelini, qui, monachus de sancto Bertino, cum Heremanno
Goscelin who a-monk of Saint Bertin with Herman
episcopo Salesbiriæ quondam Angliam venerat, insignis
bishop of-Salisbury once to-England had-come remarkable
litterarum et cantuum peritia. Is, multo episcopatus et
of-letters and of-chants by-skill he for-much bishoprics and
abbatias perlustrans tempore, præclaræ scientiæ multis locis
abbeys traveling-through time of-splendid knowledge in-many places
monumenta dedit, in laudibus sanctorum Angliæ nulli post
monuments gave in praises of-the-saints of-England to-none after
Bedam secundus; musicæ porro palmam post Osbernum
Bede second of-music further the-palm after Osbern
adeptus. Denique innumeras sanctorum Vitas recentium
having-gained finally countless of-saints Lives of-recent-ones
stylo extulit; veterum vel hostilitate amissas, vel
with-his-pen he-raised of-the-old-ones either by-hostility lost or
informiter editas, comptius renovavit. Hujus quoque translationis
shapelessly published more-neatly he-renewed of-this also translation
seriem ita expolivit, ut eam præsentibus monstrasse digito,
the-series so he-polished that it to-those-present to-have-shown with-the-finger
futurorumque videatur subjecisse oculo. Felix lingua
and-of-those-to-come he-seems to-have-placed-under to-the-eye happy the-tongue
quæ tot sanctis servierit, felix pectus quod tot vocales
which so-many saints has-served happy the-breast which so-many vocal
melodias emiserit, præsertim cum in ejus conversatione certaret
melodies has-sent-forth especially since in his conduct vied
honestas doctrinæ! Veruntamen quia de quibusdam episcopis
honesty with-learning nevertheless because about certain bishops
parum laudanda huc usque contexui, aliquos alterius modi
little praiseworthy-things hither up-to I-have-woven some of-another kind
disparisque vitæ, sed contemporaneos, introducam episcopos; ne
and-of-unlike life but contemporary I-shall-introduce bishops lest

ita videatur nostrum obtorpuisse seculum, quod non aliquem
so may-seem our to-have-grown-torpid age that not some
producat sanctum. Sed hanc sponsionem sequenti libro, post
it-produces saint but this promise in-the-following book after
enarrata gesta Henrici regis, cui placuerit experietur.
the-narrated deeds of-Henry the-king to-whom it-shall-have-pleased will-find

Quædam præfatio sequentis narrationis

A PREFACE TO THE FOLLOWING NARRATIVE

William will now tell the journey to Jerusalem, giving others' sights and thoughts in his own words, and will add what the old writers say of Constantinople, Antioch, and Jerusalem, invoking divine help for so great a work.

Nunc iter Jerosolimitanum scripto expediam, aliorum
now the-journey to-Jerusalem in-writing I-shall-set-out of-others
visa et sensa meis verbis allegans. Proinde, sicut se
the-sights and thoughts in-my words alleging accordingly as itself
occasio ingesserit, de situ et divitiis Constantinopoleos,
the-occasion shall-have-pressed-in about the-site and wealth of-Constantinople
Antiochiæ, Jerusalem, ex scriptis majorum deflorata subtexam;
of-Antioch of-Jerusalem from the-writings of-the-elders culled I-shall-subjoin
ut qui ea ignorat, et hæc forte invenerit, in promptu
that who those-things does-not-know and these perhaps shall-have-found at hand
habeat quæ aliis cognoscenda ipse proponat: sed ad
he-may-have what to-others to-be-known he-himself may-propose but for
hæc enarranda ferventiore opus est spiritu, ut consummem
these-things to-be-narrated a-more-fervent need is of-spirit that I-may-complete

efficaciter quod incipio tam hilariter. Appellata igitur in
effectively what I-begin so cheerfully with-called therefore into
auxilium, ut mos est, Divinitate, tale aucupabor exordium.
help as the-custom is the-Divinity such I-shall-hunt-for a-beginning

De itinere Christianorum in Jerusalem

THE CHRISTIANS' EXPEDITION TO JERUSALEM

In 1095 Urban II crossed the Alps into Gaul, driven from Rome by Guibert, and was privately said to have been urged by Bohemond to stir Europe into Asia, so that Urban might take Rome and Bohemond Illyricum and Macedonia. Whatever the cause, his coming did the Christians great good. Urban held a council at Clermont against men seizing one another for ransom, simony, and divorce and the storming of others' marriages, whose acts William abridges.

Anno ab incarnatione Domini millesimo nonagesimo
in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord thousandth ninetieth
quinto, papa Urbanus secundus, qui præsidebat apostolico
fifth pope Urban the-second who presided-over the-apostolic
culmini, evasis Alpibus venit in Gallias: adventus causa
summit with-crossed Alps came into the-Gauls of-his-coming the-cause
ferebatur perspicua, quod, violentia Guiberti Roma extrusus,
was-reported evident that by-the-violence of-Guibert from-Rome thrust-out
citramontanas ad sui reverentiam sollicitaret ecclesias.
this-side-of-the-mountains to of-himself the-reverence he-might-court the-churches
Illud repositius propositum non ita vulgabatur, quod Boamundi
that more-hidden purpose not so was-spread-abroad that of-Bohemond
consilio pene totam Europam in Asiaticam expeditionem
by-the-counsel almost the-whole Europe into an-Asiatic expedition
moveret; ut, in tanto tumultu omnium provinciarum facile
he-might-move so-that in so-great a-tumult of-all provinces easily

obæratis auxiliaribus, et Urbanus Romam, et Boamundus
with-indebted auxiliaries both Urban Rome and Bohemond
Illyricum et Macedoniam, pervaderent: nam eas terras, et
Illyricum and Macedonia might-overrun for those lands and
quicquid præterea a Dirachio usque in Tessalonicam
whatever besides from Durazzo all-the-way into Thessalonica
protenditur, Guiscardus pater super Alexium adquisierat,
stretches Guiscard his-father from Alexius had-acquired
iccirco illas Boamundus juri suo competere clamitabat;
therefore them Bohemond to-right his to-belong kept-crying
inops hereditatis Appulæ, quam genitor Rogero comiti filio
destitute of-the-inheritance Apulian which his-father to-Roger the-count his-son
delegaverat. Veruntamen, quæcunque transeundi fuerit occasio,
had-delegated nevertheless whatever of-crossing was the-occasion
magno et illustri adventus ejus fuit emolumento Christianis.
of-great and illustrious coming his was profit to-the-Christians
Coactum ergo est apud Clarum Montem concilium, quæ
gathered therefore was at Cler- -mont a-council which
clarissima est urbs Arvernorum; numerus episcoporum et
a-most-famous is city of-the-Arverni the-number of-bishops and
abbatum trecenti decem; ubi aliquot diebus primo de
of-abbots three-hundred ten where for-some days first about
catholica fide, et inter se dissidentium pace, tractatus
the-catholic faith and among themselves of-those-disagreeing peace a-discussion
prolixe habitus. Nam præter flagitia quibus singuli licenter
at-length was-held for besides the-outrages on-which individuals licentiously
incubabant, ad hæc calamitatis omnes Cisalpini devenerant, ut
brooded to this of-calamity all the-Cisalpines had-come that
nullis vel minimis causis exstantibus quisque alium caperet,
with-no or with-least causes existing each another seized
nec nisi magno redemptum abire sineret. Præterea simonicus
nor unless greatly ransomed to-go-away allowed besides the-simoniac

anguis ita lubricum caput erexerat, ita venenato fœtu mortiferi
snake so slippery its-head had-raised so with-poisoned brood of-deadly
germinis ova vaporaverat, ut totus orbis lethali sibilo
seed the-eggs had-warmed that the-whole world with-lethal hissing
infectus ecclesiasticos honores corrumperet. Tum enim non
infected ecclesiastical honors corrupted then for not
dicam episcopi ad ecclesias, sed nec quislibet ad quoscunque
I-shall-say bishops to churches but not-even anyone to any
ordines, nisi per pecunias aspirabat. Tunc, legitimis uxoribus
orders except through money aspired then with-lawful wives
exclusis, multi contrahebant divortium, alienum expugnantes
shut-out many contracted divorce of-another storming
matrimonium; quare, quia in his et illis erat confusa criminum
marriage wherefore because in these and those was a-confused of-crimes
sylva, ad pœnam quorundam potentiorum designata sunt
forest for punishment of-certain more-powerful designated were
nomina. Unde, ne longum faciam, totius actionem concilii
names whence lest long I-make-it of-whole the-proceedings of-the-council
subnectam; quædam meis sermonibus pro compendio brevians.
I-shall-subjoin certain-things in-my words for brevity abridging

De concilio Clari Montis

THE COUNCIL OF CLERMONT

The council decreed the church free, forbade lay investiture, plural prebends, a bishop also being an abbot, simony, and clerical marriage, and set the fasts and the Truce of God. Urban excommunicated King Philip and his wife until they parted, Guibert of Ravenna, who called himself pope, and the emperor Henry. Later he addressed the people on the expedition against the Turks, a speech William gives in its sense if not its eloquence.

In concilio apud Clarum Montem, sub præsentia domini
in the-council at Cler- -mont under the-presence of-lord
Urbani papæ, hæc capitula finita sunt: — Quod ecclesia
Urban the-pope these chapters settled were that the-church
catholica sit in fide casta, libera ab omni servitute; ut episcopi,
catholic be in faith chaste free from all servitude that bishops
vel abbates, vel aliquis de clero, aliquam ecclesiasticam
or abbots or any of the-clergy any ecclesiastical
dignitatem de manu principum vel quorumlibet laicorum
dignity from the-hand of-princes or of-any laymen
non accipiant. Quod clerici in duabus ecclesiis vel civitatibus
not receive that clerics in two churches or cities
præbendas non habeant. Quod aliquis simul episcopus
prebends not have that anyone at-the-same-time bishop
et abbas esse non possit. Quod ecclesiasticæ dignitates a
and abbot to-be not can that ecclesiastical dignities by
nullo emantur vel vendantur. Quod nullus cujuslibet sacri
no-one be-bought or be-sold that no-one of-any sacred
ordinis carnali commercio utatur. Quod eis qui, ignorantes
order carnal intercourse use that to-those who ignorant
canonum prohibitionem, canonias emerunt, ignoscatur. Quod
of-the-canons the-prohibition canonries bought it-be-pardoned that

eis, qui scienter emptas a se vel a parentibus suis
from-those who knowingly bought by themselves or by parents their
possederunt, auferantur. Quod nemo laicorum a capite
have-possessed they-be-taken-away that no-one of-the-laymen from the-head
jejunii, nemo clericorum a Quadragesima usque in Pascha,
of-the-fast no-one of-the-clerics from Lent all-the-way to Easter
carnes comedat. Quod omni tempore primum jejunium
meats eat that at-every time the-first fast
quatuor temporum prima hebdomada Quadragesimæ fiat.
of-the-four seasons in-the-first week of-Lent be-made
Quod ordines omni tempore vel in vespere Sabbati, vel,
that ordinations at-every time either in the-evening of-Saturday or
perseverante jejunio, in Dominica celebrentur: ut in Sabbato
with-continuing fast on Sunday be-celebrated that on Saturday
Paschæ, non nisi post horam nonam officium celebretur;
of-Easter not except after the-hour ninth the-office be-celebrated
ut jejunium secundum in hebdomada Pentecostes celebretur.
that the-fast second in the-week of-Pentecost be-celebrated
Quod ab Adventu Domini usque ad octavas Epiphaniæ,
that from the-Advent of-the-Lord all-the-way to the-octave of-Epiphany
et a Septuagesima usque ad octavas Paschæ, et a
and from Septuagesima all-the-way to the-octave of-Easter and from
prima die Rogationum usque ad octavas Pentecostes, et
the-first day of-the-Rogations all-the-way to the-octave of-Pentecost and
a quarta feria occidente sole omni tempore usque ad
from the-fourth weekday with-setting sun at-every time all-the-way to
secundam feriam oriente sole trevia Dei custodiatur. Quod
the-second weekday with-rising sun the-truce of-God be-kept that
episcopum qui ceperit, omnino exlex habeatur. Quod qui
a-bishop who shall-have-seized altogether outlaw be-held that who
sacri ordinis viros vel eorum famulos ceperit, anathema
of-sacred order men or their servants shall-have-seized anathema

sit. Quod qui episcoporum vel clericorum morientium bona
be that who of-bishops or of-clerics dying the-goods
ceperit, anathema sit. Quod qui usque ad septimam
shall-have-seized anathema be that who all-the-way to the-seventh
generationem consanguinitati se copulaverit, anathema
generation to-a-kinswoman himself shall-have-joined anathema
sit. Quod nemo in episcopum eligatur, nisi presbyter,
be that no-one as bishop be-chosen unless a-priest
aut diaconus, aut subdiaconus, et cui natalium dignitas
or a-deacon or a-subdeacon and whom of-birth the-dignity
suffragatur, nisi maxima necessitate et licentia papæ. Quod
supports unless by-the-greatest necessity and leave of-the-pope that
filii presbyterorum vel concubinarum ad presbyteratum non
the-sons of-priests or of-concubines to the-priesthood not
promoveantur, nisi prius ad religiosam vitam transierint.
be-promoted unless first to the-religious life they-shall-have-passed
Quod qui ad ecclesiam vel ad crucem confugerint, data
that who to a-church or to a-cross shall-have-fled with-given
membrorum impunitate, justitiæ tradantur, vel innocentes
of-limbs impunity to-justice be-handed-over or the-innocent
liberentur. Quod unaquæque ecclesia decimas suas habeat,
be-freed that each church tithes its-own have
nec ad aliam transeat. Quod laicus decimam nec emat,
nor to another pass that a-layman a-tithe neither buy
nec vendat. Quod pro sepultura mortuorum pretium non
nor sell that for the-burial of-the-dead a-price not
recipiatur. In eo concilio excommunicavit dominus papa
be-received in that council excommunicated the-lord pope
Philippum regem Francorum, et omnes qui eum vel regem
Philip king of-the-Franks and all who him either king
vel dominum suum vocaverint, et ei obedierint, et
or lord their shall-have-called and to-him shall-have-obeyed and

ei locuti fuerint, nisi quod pertinet ad eum corrigendum.
to-him spoken shall-have except what pertains to him being-corrected
Similiter et illam maledictam conjugem ejus, et omnes
likewise also that accursed wife his and all
qui eam reginam vel dominam nominaverint, quousque ad
who her queen or lady shall-have-named until to
emendationem venerint, ita ut alter ab altero discedat.
amendment they-shall-have-come so that the-one from the-other depart
Similiter Guibertum Ravennatem, qui se papam appellat;
likewise Guibert of-Ravenna who himself pope calls
et Henricum imperatorem Alamannorum, qui eum manutenet.
and Henry emperor of-the-Germans who him maintains
Posteris diebus processit sermo ad populum sane luculentus
on-later days proceeded a-speech to the-people truly brilliant
et efficax, qualem decet sacerdotis esse, de Christianorum
and effective such-as befits of-a-priest to-be about of-the-Christians
expeditione in Turchos; quem, sicut ab auditoribus
the-expedition against the-Turks which as from the-hearers
accepi, placuit posteris transmittere, integro verborum
I-received it-has-pleased to-posterity to-transmit with-whole of-the-words
sensu custodito: illius enim facundiæ vigorem servare quis
the-sense kept his for of-eloquence the-vigor to-keep who
poterit? Nobiscum agetur feliciter si, propinquam terentes
will-be-able with-us it-will-go happily if the-near treading
orbitam, per aliquod diverticulum redeamus ad sententiam.
track through some byway we-return to the-sense

Sermo Urbani papæ

POPE URBAN'S SPEECH

Urban reproached the Christians for their sins and offered them a harbor: the Turks hold Asia, a third of the world and the cradle of the faith, and Africa, and now press on Europe, though they fight only by flight and poison. Let those who prey on their brothers take the cross and turn their arms on the infidel, held back by neither death nor home, assured of absolution, setting out next spring. Those who die will enter heaven, those who live will see the Lord's tomb.

"Multa," inquit, "fratres carissimi, his diebus vobis dicta
many-things he-said brothers dearest in-these days to-you said
recolitis; quædam in concilio nostro jussa, quædam inhibita.
you-recall some in council our ordered some forbidden
Inconditum et confusum scelerum chaos exigebat dierum
a-shapeless and confused of-crimes chaos demanded of-days
multorum interstitium; veternus morbus volebat cauterium.
many an-interval a-chronic disease wanted cautery
Dum enim indulgenti fune clementiæ dimittimus lineam,
while for with-indulgent rope of-clemency we-let-out the-line
multa modo apostolatus nostri offendit officium quæ
many-things now of-apostolate our came-upon the-office which
præcideret, nulla quibus parceret. Sed fuerit hactenus
it-might-cut-off none which it-might-spare but let-it-have-been hitherto
humanæ fragilitatis quod peccastis; quod, illecebrarum
of-human frailty that you-sinned that of-allurements
involucris sopiti, cælestem exasperastis misericordiam,
in-the-wrappings lulled the-heavenly you-exasperated mercy
suspensam parvipendendo iracundiam. Fuerit mundanæ
the-suspended by-making-light-of wrath let-it-have-been of-worldly
temulentiæ quod, legitima non curantes matrimonia, alieni
drunkenness that lawful not caring-for marriages of-another

cubilis non pensastis injuriam. Fuerit aviditatis nimiæ
of-the-bed not you-weighed the-injury let-it-have-been of-greed excessive
quod fratres vestros, illo magno et eodem pretio emptos, ut
that brothers your by-that great and same price bought as
quisque poterat illaqueantes, contumeliose pecuniis emunxistis.
each could ensnaring insultingly of-moneys you-milked
Nunc vobis, inter ista peccatorum naufragia constitutis,
now for-you amid these of-sins shipwrecks placed
portus placidæ quietis aperitur, nisi negligitis. Parvi laboris
the-harbor of-calm quiet is-opened unless you-neglect-it of-small labor
in Turchos compendio retribuetur vobis perpetuæ salutis
against the-Turks by-the-gain will-be-repaid to-you of-perpetual salvation
statio. Comparate nunc labores quos in scelerum exercitio
the-station compare now the-labors which in of-crimes the-exercise
habuistis, et eos quos in itinere quod præcipio habituri
you-had and those which on the-journey which I-enjoin about-to-have
estis. Plures vel adulterii vel homicidii meditatio dat
you-are many either of-adultery or of-murder the-meditation gives
timores, nihil enim timidius nequitia, ut ait Salomon;
fears nothing for more-timid than-wickedness as says Solomon
multos labores, quid enim laboriosius injustitia? qui autem
many labors what for more-laborious than-injustice who but
ambulat simpliciter, ambulat confidenter. Horum laborum,
walks simply walks confidently of-these labors
horum timorum, exitus erat peccatum; stipendium autem
of-these fears the-outcome was sin the-wages but
peccati mors, mors vero peccatorum pessima. Nunc a vobis
of-sin death death indeed of-sinners the-worst now from you
par labor atque metus pretio meliore petuntur. Horum
equal labor and fear for-a-price better are-sought of-these
laborum erit causa caritas, ut, præcepto Dominico admoniti,
labors will-be the-cause charity that by-the-precept of-the-Lord admonished

animas pro fratribus ponatis: caritatis stipendium erit
your-souls for your-brothers you-may-lay-down of-charity the-wage will-be
Dei gratia, Dei gratiam sequetur vita æterna. Ite ergo
of-God the-grace of-God the-grace will-follow life eternal go therefore
feliciter, ite confidenter, ad inimicos Dei persequendos. Illi
happily go confidently to the-enemies of-God to-be-pursued they
enim jam pridem, proh! quantus Christianorum pudor!
for already long-since ah how-great of-Christians the-shame
Syriam, Armeniam, omnem postremo Asiam Minorem,
Syria Armenia all lastly Asia Minor
cujus provinciæ sunt Bithinia, Frigia, Galatia, Lidia, Caria,
whose provinces are Bithynia Phrygia Galatia Lydia Caria
Pamphilia, Isauria, Licia, Cilicia, occupaverunt; nunc Illiricum
Pamphylia Isauria Lycia Cilicia have-occupied now Illyricum
et omnes inferiores terras insolenter inequitant, usque ad
and all the-lower lands insolently they-ride-over all-the-way to
mare quod Brachium Sancti Georgii vocatur. Quid quod
the-sea which the-Arm of-Saint George is-called what that
Dominicum monumentum, unicum fidei pignus, ditioni
the-Lord's tomb the-unique of-faith pledge to-dominion
suæ vendicant, et ejus urbis introitum peregrinis nostris
their they-claim and of-that city the-entrance to-pilgrims our
venditant, quæ solis Christianis patere deberet si aliquod
they-sell which alone to-Christians to-lie-open ought if some
solitæ virtutis vestigium eis inesset: hoc, si solum
of-accustomed valor trace in-them were this if alone
esset, frontes nostras onerare sufficeret; jam vero quis
it-were brows our to-burden would-suffice now but who
ferat nisi multum iners, nisi Christianæ gloriæ invidus,
would-bear-it unless very sluggish unless of-Christian glory envious
quod non ex æquo divisimus orbem? Illi Asiam, tertiam
that not on equal-terms we-have-divided the-world they Asia the-third

mundi partem, ut hereditarium nidum inhabitant; quæ
of-the-world part as a-hereditary nest inhabit which
a majoribus nostris æqua duabus residuis partibus, et
by ancestors our equal to-the-two remaining parts both
tractuum longitudine et provinciarum magnitudine, non
of-tracts in-length and of-provinces in-size not
immerito æstimata est. Ibi olim devotionis nostræ rami
undeservedly reckoned has-been there once of-devotion our the-branches
pullularunt; ibi apostoli omnes, præter duos, mortes suas
sprouted there the-apostles all except two deaths their
consecrarunt; ibi modo Christicolæ, si qui supersunt,
consecrated there now the-Christians if any survive
pauperculo agricolatu transigentes inediam, nefandis
by-wretched farming passing their-hunger to-the-abominable-ones
illis vectigal pensitant, vel tacitis suspiriis nostræ libertatis
those tax pay or with-silent sighs our liberty
desiderantes conscientiam, quia perdidere suam. Illi Affricam,
longing-for the-awareness since they-have-lost their-own they Africa
alteram orbis partem, ducentis jam annis et eo
the-other of-the-world part for-two-hundred now years and than-that
amplius armis possessam tenent; quod ideo Christiani
more by-arms possessed hold which for-this-reason of-Christian
honoris periculum pronuntio, quia fuerit terra illa olim
honor a-danger I-pronounce because was land that once
præclarorum ingeniorum altrix, quæ divinis scriptis omnem
of-famous wits the-nurse which with-divine writings all
vetustatis situm a se repellent quamdiu fuerit
of-age the-mold from themselves will-repel as-long-as there-shall-be
qui Latinas litteras legat. Norunt litterati quod loquor.
who Latin letters may-read know the-lettered what I-speak
Tertium mundi clima restat Europa, cujus quantulam
the-third of-the-world zone remains Europe of-which how-little

partem inhabitamus Christiani? nam omnem illam barbariem
a-part inhabit-we Christians for all that barbarism
quæ in remotis insulis glacialem frequentat oceanum, quia
which in remote islands the-icy frequents ocean because
more belluino victitat, Christianam quis dixerit? Hanc
in-the-manner of-beasts it-lives Christian who would-call-it this
igitur nostri mundi portiunculam Turchi et Saraceni bello
therefore of-our world little-portion the-Turks and the-Saracens with-war
premunt; jamque a trecentis annis Hispania et Balearibus
press and-already from three-hundred years with-Spain and the-Balearic
insulis subjugatis, quod reliquum est spe devorant, homines
islands subjugated what remaining is in-hope they-devour men
inertissimi, et qui, cominus pugnandi fiduciam non
most-sluggish and who at-close-quarters of-fighting confidence not
habentes, fugax bellum diligunt. Nunquam enim Turcus
having fleeing war love never for the-Turk
pede conserto martem audet, sed pulsus loco longe
with-foot joined battle dares but driven from-his-place from-afar
tendit nervos, et permittit vulnera ventis; et quoniam
stretches his-strings and lets-loose wounds to-the-winds and since
habet tela mortifero succo ebria, in hominem quem percutit,
he-has darts with-deadly juice drunk in a-man whom he-strikes
non virtus sed virus mortem facit. Quicquid igitur agit,
not valor but venom death makes whatever therefore he-does
fortunæ, non fortitudini, attribuerim, quod pugnat fuga
to-fortune not to-bravery I-would-attribute because he-fights by-flight
et veneno. Constat profecto quod omnis natio quæ in
and by-poison it-is-established surely that every nation which in
ea plaga nascitur, nimio solis ardore siccata, amplius
that region is-born by-the-excessive of-the-sun heat dried more
quidem sapit, sed minus habet sanguinis; ideoque vicinam
indeed is-wise but less has of-blood and-therefore near

pugnam fugiunt, quia parum sanguinis se habere norunt.
fighting they-flee because little of-blood themselves to-have they-know
Contra, populus qui oritur in arctois pruinis, et remotus
against-this the-people which arises in northern frosts and removed
est a solis ardoribus, inconsultior quidem, sed largo et
is from of-the-sun the-heats more-ill-advised indeed but with-ample and
luxurianti superbus sanguine promptissime pugnat. Vos estis
luxuriant proud blood most-readily fights you are
gens quæ intemperatioribus mundi provinciis oriunda; qui
a-people which in-the-more-temperate of-the-world provinces born who
sitis et prodigi sanguinis ad mortis vulnerumque contemptum,
are both prodigal of-blood to of-death and-of-wounds contempt
et non careatis prudentia: namque et modestiam servatis in
and not you-lack prudence for both moderation you-keep in
castris, et in dimicatione utimini consiliis; itaque, scientia
camp and in fighting you-use counsels and-so with-knowledge
et fortitudine præditi, aggredimini memorabile iter, totis
and bravery endowed undertake a-memorable journey in-all
seculis prædicandi, si fratres vestros periculo exueritis.
ages to-be-proclaimed if brothers your from-danger you-shall-have-stripped
Præsentibus ex Dei nomine præcipio, absentibus mando.
to-those-present in of-God the-name I-command to-the-absent I-enjoin
Ituri et Christianitatem propugnaturi specimen crucis
those-about-to-go and Christianity about-to-defend the-sign of-the-cross
vestibus insigniant, ut intestinæ fidei foris amorem
on-their-garments let-them-mark that of-inward faith outwardly the-love
prætendant; habentes per Dei concessum, et beati Petri
they-may-display having through of-God the-grant and of-blessed Peter
privilegium, omnium absolutionem criminum; et hac interim
the-privilege of-all absolution of-crimes and with-this meanwhile
lætitia laborem itineris allevient, habituri post obitum
joy the-labor of-the-journey let-them-lighten about-to-have after death

felicis martyrii commercium. Ponentes ergo ferias sceleribus,
of-happy martyrdom the-exchange putting therefore a-holiday to-crimes
ut saltem in his regionibus liceat Christianis pacifice
that at-least in these regions it-may-be-allowed to-Christians peacefully
vivere, vadite; illam fortitudinem, prudentiam illam, quam in
to-live go that bravery prudence that which in
civili conflictu habere consuestis, justiori effundentes prælio.
civil conflict to-have you-are-accustomed in-a-juster pouring-out battle
Ite, prædicabiles per orbem milites! ite, et prosternite
go proclaimable through the-world soldiers go and lay-low
ignavas gentes! Eat famosa Francorum virtus, cum appenditiis
the-sluggish peoples let-go the-famous of-the-Franks valor with appended
sibi gentibus, solo sui nominis terrore totum orbem
to-itself peoples by-the-sole of-its name terror the-whole world
motura. Sed quid vos diutius immoror, ut fortitudinem
about-to-move but why on-you longer do-I-linger that the-bravery
gentilium verbis extenuem? Immo proponite animis vestris
of-the-gentiles with-words I-should-lessen nay set-before in-minds your
Deificam sententiam, 'Angusta est via quæ ducit ad vitam.'
the-God-given saying narrow is the-way which leads to life
Esto ergo ut sit semita itinerantium arcta, plena mortibus,
be-it therefore that be the-path of-the-travelers narrow full of-deaths
suspecta periculis; sed hæc eadem vos amissam ducet ad
suspect with-dangers but this same you the-lost will-lead to
patriam; per multas nimirum tribulationes oportet vos
fatherland through many surely tribulations it-behooves you
introire in regnum Dei. Spectate ergo animo, si prensi
to-enter into the-kingdom of-God behold therefore in-mind if seized
fueritis, cruces; spectate catenas, quæcunque postremo
you-shall-have-been crosses behold chains whatever lastly
possunt tormenta infligi; operimini pro fidei vestræ
can torments to-be-inflicted await for of-faith your

robore horrenda supplicia, ut, si necesse fuerit, dampno
the-strength horrible punishments that if necessary it-shall-be by-the-loss
corporum agatis animarum remedium. Mortemne timetis,
of-bodies you-may-work of-souls the-remedy death do-you-fear
viri fortissimi, fortitudine et audacia præstantes? Nihil
men most-brave in-bravery and daring outstanding nothing
certe in vos poterit comminisci humana nequitia, quo
surely against you will-be-able to-devise human wickedness by-which
superna pensetur gloria; non enim sunt condignæ passiones
the-heavenly be-outweighed glory not for are worthy the-sufferings
hujus temporis ad futuram gloriam quæ revelabitur in nobis.
of-this time to the-future glory which will-be-revealed in us
An nescitis quod vivere hominibus est calamitas, mori
or do-you-not-know that to-live for-men is calamity to-die
felicitas? Hæc vobis doctrina, si recordamini, cum lacte
happiness this to-you the-doctrine if you-remember with the-milk
matrum affusa est sacerdotum verbo; hanc majores vestri
of-your-mothers poured-in was of-the-priests by-word this ancestors your
martyres prætenderunt exemplo. Mors enim a cænulento
the-martyrs held-out by-example death for from the-muddy
carcere liberat animas, ad proprium locum pro meritis
prison frees souls to their-own place according-to merits
evolaturas. Mors accelerat bonis patriam; mors præcidit
about-to-fly-away death hastens for-the-good the-fatherland death cuts-off
reis malitiam: per mortem ergo liberæ animæ vel
for-the-guilty malice through death therefore free the-souls either
oblectantur gaudiis, spe meliora præsumentes; vel fruuntur
are-delighted with-joys in-hope better-things anticipating or enjoy
suppliciis, nihil pejus timentes. Dum autem vinculis
punishments nothing worse fearing while but with-the-chains
corporum irretiuntur, trahunt ab ipsis terrulenta contagia,
of-bodies they-are-entangled they-draw from them earthly contagions

et, quod veraciter quis dicat, mortuæ sunt; nec enim
and what truly one might-say dead they-are nor for
luteum cælesti, divinum mortali, pulchre cohæret.
the-muddy with-the-heavenly the-divine with-the-mortal fittingly coheres
Plurimum quidem potest anima, etiam nunc corpori juncta;
very-much indeed can the-soul even now to-the-body joined
instrumentum enim suum vivificat. latenter id movens,
the-instrument for its-own it-quickens secretly it moving
et ultra mortalem naturam gestis producens: veruntamen
and beyond mortal nature in-deeds bringing-forth nevertheless
cum, sarcina qua in terram trahitur absoluta, proprium
when from-the-load by-which to earth it-is-drawn freed its-own
locum receperit, beatam et undique liberam participat
place it-shall-have-received a-blessed and on-all-sides free it-shares
fortitudinem, quomodocunque divinæ naturæ invisibilitati
bravery in-whatever-way of-divine nature with-the-invisibility
communicans. Gemino ergo functa officio, corpori
communicating with-twofold therefore having-performed office to-the-body
vitam ministrat cum adest, causam vero mutationis cum
life it-supplies when it-is-present the-cause but of-change when
recedit. Videtis quam jocunde anima in dormiente corpore
it-withdraws you-see how pleasantly the-soul in the-sleeping body
vigilet, et, a sensibus seducta pro divina cognatione
may-wake and from the-senses led-away for divine kinship
multa futura prævideat. Cur ergo mortem timetis, qui
many future-things may-foresee why therefore death do-you-fear who
sompni requiem, quæ instar mortis est, diligitis? Res
of-sleep the-rest which the-likeness of-death is love a-thing
est nimirum dementiæ, pro cupiditate brevis vitæ, invidere
it-is surely of-madness for desire of-a-brief life to-begrudge
sibi perpetuam. Quin potius, fratres carissimi, si ita
to-oneself the-perpetual nay rather brothers dearest if so

contigerit, ponite pro fratribus animas vestras; vacuate
it-shall-have-happened lay-down for your-brothers souls your empty
ab impiis Dei sacrarium, extrudite latrones; inducite pios.
from the-impious of-God the-sanctuary thrust-out the-robbers bring-in the-pious
Nulla vos necessitudinis pietas contineat, quia prima hominis
no you of-kinship piety let-it-hold because the-first of-man
pietas in Deum. Nullum natalis soli caritas tricet, quia
piety toward God no-one of-native soil the-love let-it-entangle because
diversis respectibus Christiano totus est mundus exilium
in-different respects to-the-Christian the-whole is world exile
et totus mundus patria; ita exilium patria, et patria
and the-whole world fatherland so exile fatherland and fatherland
exilium. Nullum patrimoniorum amplitudo remoretur, quia
exile no-one of-patrimonies the-amplitude let-it-delay because
ampliora sunt quæ promittuntur; nec ea quæ inani
ampler are the-things-which are-promised nor those which with-empty
spe miseris adulentur, vel ignavam mentem pigro rerum
hope the-wretched flatter or the-sluggish mind with-lazy of-things
medicamine palpent; sed crebris exemplis exhibita, frequenti
remedy stroke but by-frequent examples displayed by-frequent
usu comprobata. Et hæc quidem sunt dulcia, sed caduca,
use proved and these-things indeed are sweet but perishable
et quæ centuplicatum contemptoribus suis pretium importent.
and which a-hundredfold to-despisers their a-price bring
Hæc edico, hæc mando, terminumque proximi veris
these-things I-proclaim these-things I-enjoin and-the-term of-the-next spring
affigo. Aderit Deus euntibus, ut eis bonus arrideat
I-fix will-be-present God to-those-going that to-them a-good may-smile
annus, tum copia frugum, tum serenitate temporum.
year both by-abundance of-crops and by-the-serenity of-the-weather
Morituri cæli intrabunt triclinium, victuri videbunt
those-about-to-die of-heaven will-enter the-dining-hall those-about-to-live will-see

sepulcrum Dominicum. Et quæ major felicitas quam ut
the-tomb of-the-Lord and what greater happiness than that
homo, in terris agens, videat loca illa in quibus cælorum
a-man on earth living should-see the-places those in which of-the-heavens
Dominus conversatus est humanitus? Felices qui ad hæc
the-Lord dwelt has humanly happy those-who to these-things
vocantur munia, ut illa nanciscantur munera! fortunati qui
are-called duties that those they-may-obtain rewards fortunate those-who
meditantur ista prælia, ut illa consequantur præmia!"
meditate these battles that those they-may-attain prizes

THE RESPONSE TO THE CALL

The hearers shouted their approval, and some nobles, kneeling at the pope's feet, gave themselves and their goods to God's warfare, Adhémar, bishop of Le Puy, among them. The council broke up in November and the news ran through the world: the Welsh left their hunting, the Scots their fleas, the Danes their drinking, and the Norwegians their raw fish; fields, houses, and whole cities emptied, and the great host went peaceably through Christian lands, so honest that a man who found anything posted it for days for its owner.

Hujusce orationis tenorem scripsi, pauca propter veritatem
of-this speech the-tenor I-have-written few-things for the-truth
dictorum incastigato sermone depromens, plura manumittens.
of-the-sayings in-unpolished speech bringing-forth more letting-go
Hinc igitur populus auditorum accensus, judicium animi
hence therefore the-people of-the-hearers kindled the-judgment of-their-mind
clamore testatur, favens sermocinationi, favens peregrinationi:
with-a-shout attests favoring the-discourse favoring the-pilgrimage
statimque in concilio proceres nonnulli, papæ genibus
and-at-once in the-council nobles some of-the-pope at-the-knees

affusi, se suaque Dei militiæ consecrarunt; e
poured themselves and-their-goods of-God to-the-soldiery consecrated from
quibus fuit Aimarus, insignis potentiæ Podiensis episcopus,
whom was Adhémar of-remarkable power of-Le-Puy bishop
qui postea exercitum illum rexit prudentia, auxit eloquentia.
who afterward army that ruled by-prudence increased by-eloquence
Igitur Novembri mense, in quo concilium actum fuit, a
therefore in-November month in which the-council held was by
singulis in sua discessum. Continuoque fama boni,
each to their-own it-was-departed and-at-once the-fame of-the-good
totum perlapsa per orbem, dulci Christianorum animos
the-whole slipping through world with-sweet of-the-Christians the-minds
ininfecit aura: qua circumquaque spirante, nulla fuit tam
infected breeze which all-around breathing no was so
remota gens, tam abdita, quæ non sui partem mitteret;
remote a-people so hidden which not of-itself a-part sent
nam non solum mediterraneas provincias hic amor movit, sed
for not only the-inland provinces this love moved but
et omnes qui vel in penitissimis insulis, vel in nationibus
also all who either in the-innermost islands or among nations
barbaris, Christi nomen audierant. Tunc Walensis venationem
barbarous of-Christ the-name had-heard then the-Welshman the-hunting
saltuum, tunc Scottus familiaritatem pulicum, tunc Danus
of-the-forests then the-Scot the-familiarity of-fleas then the-Dane
continuationem potuum, tunc Noricus cruditatem reliquit
the-continuation of-drinks then the-Norwegian the-rawness left
piscium. Destituebantur agri cultoribus, ædes habitatoribus,
of-fish were-left-destitute the-fields of-tillers the-houses of-inhabitants
totis porro migrabatur urbibus. Nullus necessitudinum amor,
from-whole further it-was-migrated cities no of-kinships love
affectus patriæ vilis, solus Deus præ oculis; quicquid
the-affection of-the-fatherland cheap only God before the-eyes whatever

in horreis, quicquid in tricliniis repositum, responsurum
in barns whatever in dining-rooms stored about-to-answer
erat vel avari votis agricolæ, vel thesaurorum
was either of-the-greedy to-the-wishes of-the-farmer or of-the-treasures
incubatoris, deseritur; in solum Jerosolimitanum iter
of-the-brooder is-deserted for only the-Jerusalem journey
esuritur. Gaudium erat euntibus, mæror remanentibus. Quid
is-hungered-for joy was to-those-going grief to-those-remaining what
dico de remanentibus? Videres maritum cum matrona,
do-I-say about those-remaining you-would-see a-husband with his-wife
cum omni postremo familia, euntem; rideres, carpentis
with all lastly household going you-would-laugh on-carts
impositos, totos in iter transferre penates. Angustus
placed whole on the-journey to-transfer their-household-gods narrow
erat limes transeuntibus, arctus trames itinerantibus, sic
was the-road for-those-passing narrow the-path for-the-travelers so
ruebant agmina serie longa hærentia. Opinionem hominum
rushed the-columns in-a-series long clinging the-opinion of-men
vincebat numerus, quamvis æstimarentur sexagies centum
surpassed the-number although were-reckoned sixty-times a-hundred
milia itinerantium. Nunquam proculdubio tot gentes in
thousand of-travelers never without-doubt so-many peoples into
unam coiere sententiam; nunquam tanta barbaries imperio
one came-together opinion never so-great barbarism to-the-rule
uni, et pene nulli, cervicositatem substravit suam. Præcipuum
one and almost none stubbornness laid-under its-own outstanding
enim erat videre miraculum, cum tam infinita multitudo
for it-was to-see a-miracle when so infinite a-multitude
sensim per terras Christianorum, et non prædabunda
gradually through the-lands of-the-Christians both not plundering
procederet, et non esset qui coerceret. Fervebat in omnibus
advanced and not there-was who restrained-it glowed in all

alterutra dilectio, ut si penes aliquem quid repertum esset
mutual love so-that if with anyone anything found had-been
quod suum non esse cognosceret, per multos dies passim
which his-own not to-be be-recognized through many days everywhere
agnoscendum proponeret: suspendebaturque interim inventoris
to-be-recognized he-set-it-out and-was-suspended meanwhile of-the-finder
aviditas, dum forte illius qui perdiderat corrigeretur necessitas.
the-greed while perhaps of-him who had-lost-it might-be-relieved the-necessity

De ducibus Christianorum itineris Jerusalem

THE LEADERS OF THE EXPEDITION

In March Godfrey of Lorraine, of Charlemagne's line, set out through Hungary with the Frisians, Lorrainers, and Saxons; Raymond of Saint Gilles and Adhémar through Dalmatia with the Goths and Gascons; and Bohemond, by Durazzo, with Italy behind him. At Constantinople they found Hugh the Great, King Philip's brother, held captive, and the emperor Alexius, a man famed for guile, freed him, kept the army out of his city, and made the leaders swear homage and restore any of his cities they took, which Raymond alone refused. They then attacked Nicaea, where Walter and the band Peter the Hermit had enticed had lately fallen.

Jamque advenerat desiderantibus mensis Martius, quando,
and-already had-come to-the-desiring the-month March when
senecta brumali deposita, mundus, vernali vestitus juventa,
with-old-age wintry laid-aside the-world with-springlike clothed youth
in plagam orientis ituros invitabat: nec illi moras nexuere,
into the-region of-the-east those-about-to-go invited nor they delays wove
tantus ardor animos invaserat. Godefridus, dux Lotharingorum,
so-great ardor minds had-invaded Godfrey duke of-the-Lorrainers
per Pannoniam iter instituit, nulli unquam militi virtute
through Pannonia his-journey set no ever soldier in-valor

secundus; de antiqua Caroli magni origine lineam trahens,
second from the-ancient of-Charles the-Great origin his-line drawing
et cui vere plurimus inerat Carolus tam sanguine quam
and in-whom truly very-much was-in Charles as-much by-blood as
mente: sequebantur eum Frisones, Lotharingi, Saxones, et
by-mind followed him Frisians Lorrainers Saxons and
quicquid gentium inter Renum et Garumnam fluvios jacet.
whatever of-peoples between the-Rhine and the-Garonne rivers lies
Per Dalmatiam iter adorti Raimundus comes
through Dalmatia the-journey having-undertaken Raymond count
de Sancto Ægidio, et Aimarus Podii episcopus, par
of Saint Gilles and Adhémar of-Le-Puy bishop a-pair
insigne virtutis, viri armis in hostes, pietate in Deum
remarkable of-valor men in-arms against the-enemies in-piety toward God
splendidi: sub signis eorum militabant Gothi et Wascones,
splendid under standards their served Goths and Gascons
et quicunque populus in Pireneum et Alpes diffunditur.
and whatever people in the-Pyrenees and Alps is-spread
Prævenerat eos compendio Boamundus, loco Appulus, gente
had-forestalled them by-a-short-cut Bohemond by-place Apulian by-race
Normannus; namque is apud Brundusium navibus conscensis,
Norman for he at Brindisi with-ships boarded
Dirachioque appulsus, inde itinere pedestri Constantinopolim
and-at-Durazzo landed thence by-journey on-foot to-Constantinople
per notos sibi tramites contendit: ductu ejus agebat
by known to-himself paths hastened by-the-leading his was-waging
prælium Italia, et quæcunque contermina provincia a
battle Italy and whatever neighboring province from
Tirreno mari in Adriaticum protenditur. Hi omnes,
the-Tyrrhenian sea into the-Adriatic stretches these all
pariter apud Constantinopolim convenientes, nonnihil mutuæ
together at Constantinople meeting somewhat of-mutual

lætitiæ habuere; ibique Hugonem magnum, Philippi regis
joy had and-there Hugh the-Great of-Philip king
Francorum fratrem, invenere, quod is inconsulte et cum
of-the-Franks brother found because he ill-advisedly and with
raro milite terras imperatoris ingressus, et ab hominibus
sparse soldiery the-lands of-the-emperor having-entered and by men
ejus captus, in libera custodia habebatur. At vero Alexius,
his captured in free custody was-held but indeed Alexius
ejus civitatis imperator, horum procerum adventu territus,
of-that city the-emperor of-these nobles at-the-coming terrified
volens, sed quasi precibus coactus, captionis gratiam fecit;
willing but as-if by-prayers compelled of-the-captivity the-favor made
homo tergiversatione famosus, et nihil unquam magnum nisi
a-man for-shuffling famous and nothing ever great unless
dolo machinatus. Ipse Guiscardum, ut superius dixi, veneno,
by-guile having-contrived he Guiscard as above I-said by-poison
uxoremque ejus corruperat auro; fidem conjugalem falso
and-the-wife his had-corrupted with-gold faith conjugal falsely
per nuntios pactus. Ipse denique Willelmum comitem
through envoys having-pledged he finally William count
Pictaviensem in insidias Turcorum inductum, et sexaginta
of-Poitou into ambushes of-the-Turks led and of-sixty
milibus armatorum privatum, pene solum effugere permisit;
thousands of-armed-men deprived almost alone to-escape allowed
indignatus super ejus responso, quo Græco negaverat
indignant about his answer by-which to-the-Greek he-had-denied
hominium. Ipsum postremo Boamundum, posteriori tempore
homage him lastly Bohemond at-a-later time
contra se venientem ut injurias peregrinorum ulcisceretur,
against him coming that the-injuries of-the-pilgrims he-might-avenge
bis terque insidiis impetivit; sed cum parum promoveret,
twice and-thrice with-ambushes attacked but when little he-advanced

Guidone fratre et toto pene spoliavit exercitu, notis
of-Guy his-brother and of-whole almost he-despoiled army by-known
artibus toxica vel fluminibus vel vestibus infundens: sed
arts poisons either into-rivers or clothes pouring but
hæc postmodum. Tum vero exercitum urbe arcens,
these-things later then indeed the-army from-the-city keeping-off
proceribusque blande collocutus, tantum Graia facundia valuit,
and-with-the-nobles blandly having-conversed so-much Greek eloquence availed
ut a singulis hominium et sacramentum exigeret, quod
that from each homage and oath he-exacted that
illi nihil doli machinarentur; quod urbes imperio suo
they nothing of-guile would-plot that cities to-the-empire his
appendices, si adquirere possent, redderent, sanguinis sui
appended if to-acquire they-could they-would-return of-blood their-own
periculo alienum mercantes commodum. Soli Raimundo visa
at-the-risk another's buying advantage alone to-Raymond seen
est antiquior tuendæ libertatis gratia, ut nec ipsi
was more-important of-defending liberty the-grace so-that neither to-him
suum substerneret hominium, nec profiteretur sacramentum.
his he-would-lay-under homage nor would-profess an-oath
Itaque, coactis omnibus viribus, Niceam urbem Bithiniæ
and-so with-gathered all forces Nicaea the-city of-Bithynia
aggrediuntur. Ipsam enim primitus placuerat invadi, quod
they-attack it for first it-had-pleased to-be-invaded because
et viantibus obsisteret, et mortem peregrinorum nuper
both the-travelers it-blocked and the-death of-the-pilgrims lately
ibi occisorum ultum ire animati essent: namque Walterus
there killed to-avenge to-go encouraged they-were for Walter
quidam, miles probatus sed præceps, quia vix in homine
a-certain soldier proven but headlong because scarcely in man
uno sapientiam et audaciam conspicaberis, quod altera
one wisdom and daring you-will-see because the-one

moretur, altera præcipitet, incircumspecte circa mœnia
delays the-other hurries-headlong without-circumspection around the-walls
cursitans, cum multa manu occubuerat. Eam manum Petrus
running-about with a-large band had-fallen that band Peter
heremita prædicationibus suis de patria pellexerat.
the-hermit by-preachings his from the-fatherland had-enticed

De Roberto Normanno

ROBERT OF NORMANDY

In September Robert of Normandy, Rufus's brother, set out with Robert of Flanders and Stephen of Blois, leading the English, Normans, western Franks, and Flemings. At Lucca they found Urban, who with Matilda's help was fighting Wibert in Italy and Rome, until Wibert, outmatched, left the see and slipped away to Germany.

Jam vero mense Septembri, Robertus Normannorum
already but in-the-month September Robert of-the-Normans
comes, frater Willelmi regis, cujus titulum hic liber gestat,
count brother of-William the-king whose title this book bears
iter illud adoriri gestiens, habuit socios Robertum
the-journey that to-undertake eager had as-companions Robert
Flandrensem, Stephanum Blesensem sororis maritum; omnes
of-Flanders Stephen of-Blois of-his-sister the-husband all
amplæ prosapiæ comites, in quibus virtus citra genus non
of-ample lineage counts in whom valor short-of birth not
erat. Parebant eis Angli, et Normanni, et Occidentales
was obeyed them the-English and Normans and the-Western
Franci, et Flandritæ, et omnium populorum cunei qui ab
Franks and Flemings and of-all peoples the-wedges who from
oceano Britannico usque ad Alpes mediterraneo tractu jacent.
the-ocean British all-the-way to the-Alps in-an-inland tract lie

Ita viam profecti repererunt apud Lucas papam Urbanum,
so the-road having-set-out they-found at Lucca the-pope Urban
qui Guiberto infensus, ut dixi, auxilio Matildis Italiam
who against-Wibert hostile as I-said with-the-help of-Matilda Italy
et urbem circumsonabat armis. Jamque tantum promoverat,
and the-city was-making-resound with-arms and-now so-much he-had-advanced
ut Quirites, ad gratiam ejus versi, Guibertinos tum verbis
that the-Quirites to favor his turned the-Wibertines both with-words
tum verberibus lacesserent; nec erat alterutris vel in ecclesiis
and with-blows harassed nor was to-either-side either in churches
vel in triviis parcendi animus, donec Guibertus, viribus
or in crossroads of-sparing the-mind until Wibert in-strength
impar, Urbano sedem vacuefecit, Alamanniam elapsus.
unequal to-Urban the-see emptied to-Germany slipping-away

De urbe Roma

THE CITY OF ROME

Rome, once mistress of the world, now seems a small town beside its past, and its citizens, once masters, are the most sluggish of men, selling justice for gold. William gives the verses of Hildebert of Le Mans, now archbishop of Tours: Rome, though nearly a ruin, teaches by her fragments how great she was, no new work could equal what remains, and her statues of the gods surpass the gods themselves; happy the city, if it had no lords or its lords were ashamed to be faithless.

De Roma, quæ quondam domina orbis terrarum, nunc
about Rome which once mistress of-the-world of-lands now
ad comparationem antiquitatis videtur oppidum exiguum; et
by comparison of-antiquity seems a-town small and
de Romanis, olim rerum dominis, genteque togata, qui
about the-Romans once of-things masters and-the-people toga-clad who

nunc sunt hominum inertissimi, auro trutinantes justitiam,
now are of-men most-sluggish with-gold weighing justice
pretio venditantes canonum regulam; — de urbe, inquam,
for-a-price selling of-the-canons the-rule about the-city I-say
et urbicis quicquid conarer dicere prævenerunt versus
and the-citizens whatever I-might-try to-say have-anticipated the-verses
Hildeberti Cenomannensis primo episcopi, post etiam
of-Hildebert of-Le-Mans first bishop afterward also
Turonensis archiepiscopi: quos hic cum inseruero, non
of-Tours archbishop which here when I-shall-have-inserted not
ideo faciam ut alieno labore partam gloriam in
for-this-reason I-shall-do-it that by-another labor won glory to
me transferam; sed erit ingenuæ mentis indicium, si, ejus
me I-may-transfer but it-will-be of-a-noble mind a-sign if of-his
non invidus gloriæ, apponam testimonium venustæ facundiæ.
not envious glory I-add a-testimony of-graceful eloquence
Versus Hildeberti, de Roma.
verses of-Hildebert about Rome

"Par tibi Roma nihil, cum sis prope tota ruina;
Equal to-you Rome nothing though you-be almost wholly a-ruin
Quam magni fueris integra, fracta doces.
How great you-were whole broken you-teach
Longa tuos fastus ætas destruxit; et arces
Long your prides age has-destroyed and the-citadels
Cæsaris, et superum templa, palude jacent.
Of-Caesar and of-the-gods the-temples in-the-marsh lie
Ille labor, labor ille ruit quem dirus Araxes
That labor labor that has-fallen which the-dread Araxes
Et stantem tremuit, et cecidisse dolet;
And standing trembled-at and to-have-fallen grieves

Quem gladii regum, quem provida jura senatus,
Which the-swords of-kings which the-provident laws of-the-senate
Quem superi rerum constituere caput;
Which the-gods of-things established as-the-head
Quem magis optavit cum crimine solus habere
Which rather wished with crime alone to-have
Cæsar, quam socius et pius esse socer:
Caesar than a-partner and dutiful to-be father-in-law
Qui crescens studiis tribus, hostes, crimen, amicos,
Which growing by-pursuits three enemies crime friends
Vi domuit, secuit legibus, emit ope;
By-force tamed cut-off by-laws bought by-wealth
In quem, dum fieret, vigilavit cura priorum,
On which while it-was-being-made watched the-care of-the-ancestors
Juvit opus pietas, hospitis unda locum;
Helped the-work piety of-the-stranger the-wave the-place
Materiam, fabros, expensas, axis uterque
Material craftsmen expenses pole each
Misit; se muris obtulit ipse locus:
Sent itself to-the-walls offered itself the-place
Expendere duces thesauros, fata favorem,
Spent the-leaders treasures the-fates favor
Artifices studium, totus et orbis opes.
The-craftsmen zeal the-whole and world wealth
Urbs cecidit, de qua si quicquam dicere dignum
The-city has-fallen about which if anything to-say worthy
Moliar, hoc potero dicere, 'Roma fuit!'
I-labor this I-shall-be-able to-say Rome was
Non tamen annorum series, non flamma, nec ensis,
Not yet of-years the-series not flame nor sword
Ad plenum potuit hoc abolere decus.
To the-full could this to-abolish glory

Cura hominum potuit tantam componere Romam,
The-care of-men could so-great to-put-together a-Rome
Quantam non potuit solvere cura deum.
As-great-as not could to-dissolve the-care of-the-gods
Confer opes, marmorque novum, superumque favorem,
Bring wealth and-marble new and-of-the-gods favor
Artificum vigilent in nova facta manus;
Of-craftsmen let-watch on new works the-hands
Non tamen aut fieri par stanti machina muro,
Not yet either to-be-made equal to-the-standing a-structure wall
Aut restaurari sola ruina potest.
Or to-be-restored the-sole ruin can
Hic superum formas superi mirantur et ipsi,
Here of-the-gods the-forms the-gods marvel-at also themselves
Et cupiunt fictis vultibus esse pares,
And desire to-the-feigned faces to-be equal
Non potuit Natura deos hoc ore creare,
Not could Nature gods with-this face to-create
Quo miranda deum signa creavit homo.
With-which wondrous of-the-gods images created man
Vultus adest his numinibus; potiusque coluntur
A-face is-present to-these deities and-rather they-are-worshiped
Artificum studio, quam deitate sua.
Of-the-craftsmen for-the-zeal than for-deity their-own
Urbs felix, si vel dominis urbs illa careret,
City happy if either of-masters city that were-bereft
Vel dominis esset turpe carere fide."
Or for-the-masters it-were base to-be-bereft of-faith

De numero portarum et sanctis Romæ

THE GATES OF ROME AND ITS SAINTS

So that nothing be lacking to Rome's honor, William lists its gates and the saints buried along each road, in plain words: first the Cornelian Gate, now Saint Peter's, with Peter's church, adorned with gold and gems, where his body lies among martyrs past counting, then gate by gate the churches and the martyrs of the roads and of the hills within the city.

Parvane sunt hæc ad demonstrandum in tanta urbe vel
small-then are these-things for demonstrating in so-great a-city either
olim bonorum dignitatem, vel modo malorum majestatem?
once of-the-good the-dignity or now of-the-wicked the-majesty
Sed, ne quid honori desit, adjiciam et portarum
but lest anything to-its-honor be-lacking I-shall-add both of-the-gates
numerum, et multitudinem sacrorum cinerum; et, ne quis
the-number and the-multitude of-the-sacred ashes and lest anyone
obscuritate verborum se causetur a cognitione rerum
by-the-obscurity of-words himself should-plead from the-knowledge of-the-things
rejici, erit sermo cotidianus et levis.
to-be-shut-out will-be the-speech everyday and light
Prima porta.
first gate
Prima porta Cornelia, quæ modo dicitur Porta Sancti Petri,
the-first gate the-Cornelian which now is-called the-Gate of-Saint Peter
et Via Cornelia. Juxta eam ecclesia beati Petri sita est,
and the-Way Cornelian beside it the-church of-blessed Peter situated is
in qua corpus ejus jacet, auro et lapidibus parata; et jam
in which the-body his lies with-gold and stones adorned and now
nullus hominum scit numerum martyrum qui in eadem ecclesia
no of-men knows the-number of-the-martyrs who in the-same church

pausant. In eadem via est altera ecclesia, in qua requiescunt
rest on the-same way is another church in which rest
sanctæ virgines Rufina et Secunda. In tertia ecclesia sunt
the-holy virgins Rufina and Secunda in the-third church are
Marius et Martha; etiam Audifax et Abacuc, filii eorum.
Marius and Martha also Audifax and Abacuc sons their

Secunda porta.
second gate

Secunda porta Flaminia, quæ modo appellatur Sancti Valentini,
the-second gate the-Flaminian which now is-called of-Saint Valentine
et Via Flaminia; et cum ad pontem Molbium pervenit,
and the-Way Flaminian and when to the-bridge Milvian it-comes
vocatur Via Ravennana quæ ad Ravennam ducit. Ibi in primo
is-called the-Way Ravennan which to Ravenna leads there at the-first
miliario foris sanctus Valentinus in sua ecclesia requiescit.
milestone outside saint Valentine in his-own church rests

Tertia porta.
third gate

Tertia porta Porciniana, et via eodem modo appellata,
the-third gate the-Porcinian and the-way in-the-same manner called
sed cum pervenit ad Salariam nomen perdit: et ibi prope,
but when it-comes to the-Salarian its-name it-loses and there near
in eo loco qui dicitur Cucumeris, requiescunt martyres
in that place which is-called of-the-Cucumber rest the-martyrs
Festus, Johannes, Liberalis, Diogenes, Blastus, Lucina; et
Festus John Liberalis Diogenes Blastus Lucina and
in uno sepulchro ducenti sexaginta, et in altero triginta.
in one tomb two-hundred sixty and in another thirty

Quarta porta.

fourth gate

Quarta porta et Via Salaria, quæ modo Sancti Silvestri

the-fourth gate and the-Way Salarian which now of-Saint Silvester

dicitur. Ibi juxta viam sanctus Hermes requiescit, et sancta

is-called there beside the-way saint Hermes rests and saint

Vasella, et Protus, et Jacinctus, Maxilianus, Herculanus,

Basilla and Protus and Hyacinth Maximilian Herculanus

Crispus; et in altero loco prope requiescunt sancti martyres

Crispus and in another place near rest the-holy martyrs

Pamphilus, Quirinus, septuaginta gradibus in imo terræ.

Pamphilus Quirinus by-seventy steps in the-bottom of-the-earth

Deinde basilica sanctæ Felicitatis, ubi requiescit illa et Silanus

then the-basilica of-saint Felicity where rests she and Silanus

filius ejus, et non longe Bonefacius martyr. Ibidem

son her and not far Boniface martyr in-the-same-place

in altera ecclesia sunt Crisantus, et Daria, et Saturninus,

in another church are Chrysanthus and Daria and Saturninus

et Maurus, et Jason, et mater eorum Hilaria, et alii

and Maurus and Jason and mother their Hilaria and others

innumerabiles. Et in altera basilica sanctus Alexander, Vitalis,

countless and in another basilica saint Alexander Vitalis

Martialis, filii sanctæ Felicitatis; et sanctæ septem virgines,

Martial sons of-saint Felicity and the-holy seven virgins

Saturnina, Hilarina, Dominanda, Rogantina, Serantina, Paulina,

Saturnina Hilarina Dominanda Rogantina Serotina Paulina

Donata. Deinde basilica sancti Silvestri, ubi jacet marmoreo

Donata then the-basilica of-saint Silvester where he-lies with-a-marble

tumulo coopertus; et martyres Celestinus, Philippus, et Felix:

tomb covered and the-martyrs Celestine Philip and Felix

et ibidem martyres trecenti sexaginta quinque in uno

and in-the-same-place martyrs three-hundred sixty five in one

sepulchro requiescunt; et prope Paulus, et Crescentianus,
tomb rest and near Paul and Crescentian
Prisca, Semetrius, Praxedis, Potentiana pausant.
Prisca Semetrius Praxedes Pudentiana rest
Quinta porta.
fifth gate
Quinta porta Numentana; ibidem sanctus Nichomedes,
the-fifth gate the-Nomentan in-the-same-place saint Nicomedes
presbyter et martyr: itemque via eodem modo dicitur.
priest and martyr and-likewise the-way in-the-same manner is-called
Juxta viam ecclesia sanctæ Agnetis, et corpus: in altera
beside the-way the-church of-saint Agnes and the-body in another
sancta Emerentiana, et martyres Alexander, Felix, Papias.
saint Emerentiana and the-martyrs Alexander Felix Papias
In septimo miliario ejusdem viæ sanctus papa Alexander,
at the-seventh milestone of-the-same way saint pope Alexander
cum Eventio et Theodolo, pausat.
with Eventius and Theodulus rests
Sexta porta.
sixth gate
Sexta porta et Via Tiburtina, quæ modo dicitur Porta Sancti
the-sixth gate and the-Way Tiburtine which now is-called the-Gate of-Saint
Laurentii. Juxta hanc viam jacet sanctus Laurentius in sua
Lawrence beside this way lies saint Lawrence in his-own
ecclesia, et Abundius martyr. Et ibi prope in altera ecclesia
church and Abundius martyr and there near in another church
pausant hi martyres, Ciriaca, Romanus, Justinus, Crescentianus.
rest these martyrs Cyriaca Romanus Justin Crescentian
Et ibi, non longe, basilica sancti Ipoliti, ubi ipse cum familia
and there not far the-basilica of-saint Hippolytus where he with household
sua pausat, id est, decem et octo. Et ibi requiescunt beata
his rests that is ten and eight and there rest blessed

Trifena uxor Decii, et filia ejus Cirilla, et Concordia nutrix
Tryphonia wife of-Decius and daughter his Cyrilla and Concordia nurse
ejus Et in altera parte viæ illius est ecclesia Agapiti martyris.
his and in the-other part of-way that is the-church of-Agapitus martyr

Septima porta.
seventh gate

Septima porta modo Major dicitur, olim Sircurana dicebatur,
the-seventh gate now Greater is-called once Sircurana was-called
et Via Lavicana, quæ ad beatam Helenam tendit. Ibi sunt
and the-Way Labicana which to blessed Helena leads there are
prope, Petrus, Marcellinus, Tyburtius, Genuinus, Gorgonius,
near Peter Marcellinus Tiburtius Genuinus Gorgonius
et quadraginta milites, et alii innumerabiles; et non longe
and forty soldiers and others countless and not far
sancti Quatuor Coronati.
the-holy Four Crowned-Ones

Octava porta.
eighth gate

Octava porta Sancti Johannis, quæ apud antiquos Assenarica
the-eighth gate of-Saint John which among the-ancients Asinaria
dicitur.
is-called

Nona porta.
ninth gate

Nona porta Metrosi dicitur, et coram istis ambabus jacet
the-ninth gate Metrosi is-called and before these both lies
Latina.
the-Latin

Decima porta.

tenth gate

Decima porta et Via Latina dicitur. Juxta eam quiescunt

the-tenth gate and the-Way Latin is-called beside it rest

in una ecclesia martyres Gordianus et Epimachus, Sulpicius,

in one church the-martyrs Gordian and Epimachus Sulpicius

Valerianus, Quintus, Quartus, Sophia, Triphenus. Et ibi prope,

Valerian Quintus Quartus Sophia Triphenus and there near

in alio loco, Tertullinus: et non longe ecclesia beatæ Eugeniæ,

in another place Tertullinus and not far the-church of-blessed Eugenia

in qua jacet, et Claudia mater ejus; et Stephanus papa cum

in which lies also Claudia mother her and Stephen pope with

clero suo, numero decem et novem, et Nemesius diaconus.

clergy his in-number ten and nine and Nemesius deacon

Undecima porta.

eleventh gate

Undecima porta et Via dicitur Appia. Ibi requiescunt

the-eleventh gate and the-Way is-called Appian there rest

sanctus Sebastianus et Quirinus; et olim requieverunt ibi

saint Sebastian and Quirinus and once rested there

apostolorum corpora. Et paulo propius Romam sunt martyres

of-the-apostles the-bodies and a-little nearer to-Rome are the-martyrs

Januarius, Urbanus, Xenon, Quintinus, Agapitus, Felicissimus.

Januarius Urban Xenon Quintinus Agapitus Felicissimus

Et in altera ecclesia Tiburtius, Valerianus, Maximus. Non

and in another church Tiburtius Valerian Maximus not

longe ecclesia Ceciliæ martyris, et ibi reconditi sunt

far the-church of-Cecilia martyr and there laid-away are

Stephanus, Sixtus, Zepherinus, Eusebius, Melchiades, Marcellus,

Stephen Sixtus Zephyrinus Eusebius Miltiades Marcellus

Euticianus, Dionysius, Anteros, Pontianus, Lucius papæ,

Eutychian Dionysius Anteros Pontian Lucius popes

Optatius, Julianus, Colocerus, Parthenius, Tarsicius, Policamus,
Optatus Julian Calocerus Parthenius Tarsicius Polycamus
martyres. Ibidem ecclesia sancti Cornelii, et corpus. Et
martyrs in-the-same-place the-church of-saint Cornelius and his-body and
in altera ecclesia, sancta Sotheris: et non longe pausant
in another church saint Soteris and not far rest
martyres Ipolitus, Adrianus, Eusebius, Maria, Martha, Paulina,
the-martyrs Hippolytus Hadrian Eusebius Mary Martha Paulina
Valeria, Marcellus; et prope, Marcus papa in sua ecclesia.
Valeria Marcellus and near Mark pope in his-own church
De via Ardeatina.
about the-way Ardeatine
Inter Viam Appiam et Ostensam est Via Ardeatina, ubi
between the-Way Appian and the-Ostian is the-Way Ardeatine where
sunt Marcus et Marcellianus. Et ibi jacet Damasus papa in
are Mark and Marcellian and there lies Damasus pope in
sua ecclesia; et non longe, sancta Petronilla, et Nereus,
his-own church and not far saint Petronilla and Nereus
et Achilleus, et alii plures.
and Achilleus and others many
Duodecima porta.
twelfth gate
Duodecima porta et Via Ostensa dicitur, modo Porta
the-twelfth gate and the-Way Ostian is-called now the-Gate
Sancti Pauli vocatur, quia juxta eam requiescit in sua
of-Saint Paul is-called because beside it he-rests in his-own
ecclesia. Ibidemque Timotheus martyr; et non longe,
church and-in-the-same-place Timothy martyr and not far
in ecclesia sanctæ Teclæ, sunt martyres Felix, et Adauctus,
in the-church of-saint Thecla are the-martyrs Felix and Adauctus
et Nemesius. In Aqua Salina est caput Anastasii martyris.
and Nemesius at the-Water Saline is the-head of-Anastasius martyr

Tertiadecima porta.

thirteenth gate

Tertiadecima porta et Via Portuensis dicitur. Ibi prope

the-thirteenth gate and the-Way Portuensian is-called there near

sunt, in una ecclesia, martyres Felix, Alexander Abdon,

are in one church the-martyrs Felix Alexander Abdon

et Sennes, Simeon, Anastasius, Polion, Vincentius, Milex,

and Sennen Simeon Anastasius Pollio Vincent Milex

Candida, Innocentia.

Candida Innocentia

Quartadecima porta.

fourteenth gate

Quartadecima porta et Via Aurelia, quæ modo Porta

the-fourteenth gate and the-Way Aurelian which now the-Gate

Sancti Pancratii dicitur, quia juxta eam requiescit in ecclesia

of-Saint Pancras is-called because beside it he-rests in church

sua; et alii martyres, Paulinus, Arthemius, sancta Sapientia,

his and other martyrs Paulinus Artemius saint Sophia

cum tribus filiabus Fide, Spe, Charitate. Et in altera basilica

with three daughters Faith Hope Charity and in another basilica

Processus et Martinianus; et in tertia Felices duo; et

Processus and Martinian and in the-third the-Felixes two and

in quarta sanctus Calixtus et Calepodius; et in quinta

in the-fourth saint Callixtus and Calepodius and in the-fifth

sanctus Basilides. Duodecimo intra urbem miliario in monte

saint Basilides at-the-twelfth within the-city milestone on the-hill

Celio sunt martyres Johannes et Paulus in sua domo,

Caelian are the-martyrs John and Paul in their-own house

quæ est facta ecclesia post eorum martyrium; et Crispinus

which is made a-church after their martyrdom and Crispin

et Crispinianus, et sancta Benedicta. In eodem monte est

and Crispinian and saint Benedicta on the-same hill is

ecclesia sancti Stephani prothomartyris, et ibi reconditi sunt
the-church of-saint Stephen protomartyr and there laid-away are
martyres Primus et Felicianus. In monte Aventino sanctus
the-martyrs Primus and Felician on the-hill Aventine saint
Bonefacius, et in monte Nola sancta Tatiana, pausant.
Boniface and on the-hill Nola saint Tatiana rest

De itinere comitum de Roma ad Constantinopolim

THE COUNTS' JOURNEY FROM ROME TO CONSTANTINOPLE

These are Rome's holy pledges, yet its drunken people, greedy for money, shed blood on the saints' bodies when the pilgrims came. With Urban's blessing the counts went through Tuscany and Campania and by Apulia to Calabria; the Flemish count crossed at once, the Norman and Blois counts wintered with friends, and many of the common people went home or died. In spring the rest crossed and landed at two ports, went through Thessaly and Thrace, lost many at the ford called the Devil's, and rested fifteen days outside Constantinople.

Hæc sunt Romana sanctuaria, hæc sunt in terris divina
these are the-Roman sanctuaries these are on earth divine
pignora; et tamen intra hoc quasi cæleste promptuarium
pledges and yet within this as-if heavenly storehouse
insano furore gens ebria, tum, cum illuc peregrini venerunt,
with-insane fury a-people drunk then when thither the-pilgrims came
fœdo ambitu omnia turbabant, et supra ipsa sanctorum
with-foul ambition all-things disturbed and upon the-very of-the-saints
corpora civilem libabant sanguinem, dum non possent satiare
bodies civil poured-out blood while not they-could to-sate
pecuniarum libidinem. Urbani igitur benedictione freti, comites,
of-moneys the-lust of-Urban therefore by-the-blessing relying the-counts
transita Tuscia et Campania, per Apuliam Calabriam venere;
with-crossed Tuscany and Campania through Apulia to-Calabria came

statimque mare transissent, nisi consulti nautæ propter
and-at-once the-sea would-have-crossed unless consulted the-sailors on-account-of
austrorum violentiam vetuissent. Quapropter Normannus
of-the-south-winds the-violence had-forbidden wherefore the-Norman
et Blesensis comites, qua quisque poterat, hyemem fovere,
and the-Blois counts where each could the-winter to-warm
apud amicos perhendinantes. Solus Flandrensis ventis
with friends lingering alone the-Flemish-one to-the-winds
vela credidit, præcipiti consilio feliciter usus: ideoque
his-sails trusted a-headlong counsel happily having-used and-therefore
gregariorum vulgus, pars propter inopiam domum revertit,
of-the-rank-and-file the-crowd part for want home returned
pars pro intemperie soli morbo defecit. Nec non et
part from the-unwholesomeness of-the-soil by-disease failed nor not also
residui duces, ut videre pacatum classibus æquor, vernali
the-remaining leaders when they-saw pacified for-fleets the-sea with-the-spring
sole redeunte, maris fidem experti, et Christi auxilio illæsi,
sun returning of-the-sea the-faith having-tested and of-Christ by-the-help unharmed
duobus portibus excepti applicuere. Inde per Thessaliam, cujus
in-two ports received landed thence through Thessaly whose
metropolis est Thessalonica, Traciam, et hinc Constantinopolim
metropolis is Thessalonica Thrace and thence to-Constantinople
venere. Multi pauperum illa via morbo et inedia extincti;
came many of-the-poor on-that road by-disease and by-starvation extinguished
multi in vado, quod pro rapiditate "Diaboli" dicitur, intercepti;
many in the-ford which for its-rapidity of-the-Devil is-called caught
pluresque profecto perissent nisi equi emissarii, adverso
and-more surely would-have-perished unless horses stallions to-the-adverse
amni oppositi, violenti gurgitis vortices fregissent: ita
stream set-against of-the-violent whirlpool the-eddies had-broken so
quibusdam vita procurata, reliqui equis transducti. Omnis
for-some with-life procured the-rest on-horses carried-across the-whole

itaque multitudo, quindecim dierum spatio, præteritorum
and-so multitude fifteen of-days for-the-space of-past
laborum indulsit solatio, positis castris in suburbano
labors indulged in-comfort with-pitched camp in the-suburb
civitatis; de qua, quia locus se obtulit, pauca dicenda.
of-the-city about which because the-place itself has-offered a-few-things must-be-said

Visio Constantini

THE VISION OF CONSTANTINE

Byzantium, whose old name the bezant keeps, changed its name by divine command, Aldhelm says. Constantine dreamed of a wrinkled old woman who turned into a lovely girl, and Helena told him she would be his forever. In a second dream Pope Silvester told him she was the city of Byzantium, to be renewed, and that he should ride out on the horse he rode round the churches of Rome, the reins loose, and trace the walls with his spear.

Constantinopolis primum Bizantium dicta; formam antiqui
Constantinople first Byzantium called the-form of-the-old
vocabuli præferunt imperatorii nummi Bizantini vocati: hanc
word display the-imperial coins Byzants called this
divinitus mutasse nomen, Sanctus Aldelmus auctor est in
divinely to-have-changed its-name Saint Aldhelm the-author is in
libro De Virginitate, hujusmodi sententia. Constantino, in
the-book On Virginity of-this-kind in-sense to-Constantine in
eadem urbe soporato, visa est astitisse vetula rugis
the-same city asleep seen was to-have-stood-by an-old-woman with-wrinkles
anilibus arata frontem; mox imperiali chlamyde amicta in
of-old-age furrowed in-brow soon with-the-imperial cloak wrapped into
juvenculam refloruisse, viridisque formæ decore Constantini
a-young-girl to-have-reflowered and-of-fresh form by-the-beauty of-Constantine

pellexisse oculum ut non abstineret quin porrigeret ei
to-have-enticed the-eye so-that not he-refrained from offering to-her
osculum. Tunc Helenam matrem, quæ adesset, dixisse, "Hæc
a-kiss then Helena his-mother who was-present to-have-said this
tua semper erit, nec unquam morietur, nisi in fine seculi."
yours always will-be nor ever will-die unless at the-end of-the-age
Hujus sompnii solutionem Augustus, extruso sopore,
of-this dream the-solution Augustus with-driven-out sleep
jejuniis et eleemosynis extrahebat e cælo. Et ecce, post
by-fasts and alms drew-out from heaven and behold after
octo dies iterum soporatus, visus est videre Silvestrum papam,
eight days again asleep seen was to-see Silvester the-pope
paulo ante defunctum, qui dulci luminum risu discipulum
a-little before dead who with-a-sweet of-eyes smile his-disciple
perstringens, "Consueta," inquit, "egisti prudentia, ut
touching with-accustomed he-said you-have-acted prudence that
quod intellectum effugeret hominis, a Deo expectares
what the-understanding should-escape of-man from God you-should-await
solvendum nodum ænigmatis. Hæc igitur quam vidisti
to-be-loosed the-knot of-the-riddle this therefore whom you-saw
anicula est civitas ista, ævi situ decrepita; cujus
old-woman is city this of-age with-the-mold decrepit whose
jam vetustate quassa mœnia, et vicinam ruinam minantia,
already with-age shaken walls and near ruin threatening
reparatorem desiderant. Sed tu eam muris reformans et
a-restorer desire but you it with-walls reshaping and
opibus, vocabulo quoque insignies tuo, et regnabit in ea
with-wealth with-name also will-mark your-own and will-reign in it
perpetuo imperatoria progenies. Non tamen tuo arbitratu
forever the-imperial progeny not yet by-your judgment
fundamenta jacies, sed ascenso sonipede, cui quondam
the-foundations you-will-lay but with-mounted steed on-which once

rudis Christicola insidens apostolorum Romæ circuisti
raw a-Christian sitting of-the-apostles at-Rome you-went-round
ecclesias, laxatis habenis, quo volet eundi promptum
the-churches with-loosened reins whither it-will-wish of-going ready
illi cedes arbitrium; habebisque in manu hastam regiam,
to-it you-will-grant the-choice and-you-will-have in hand the-spear royal
cujus cuspide in terram tracta muri scribentur vestigia.
of-which with-the-point on the-ground drawn of-the-wall will-be-written the-tracks
Consules ergo in terra cuspidis magisterium quo
you-will-consult therefore on the-ground of-the-point the-guidance in-what
ordine disponi debeant fundamenta mœnium."
order to-be-laid ought the-foundations of-the-walls

De urbe Constantinopolitana

THE CITY OF CONSTANTINOPLE

Constantine obeyed and founded a city equal to Rome, declaring by law that an emperor should not rule where the apostles ruled; he built the churches of Irene and the Apostles and brought saints' bodies, triumphal statues, the images of the gods, and the Delphic tripods. He chose the site for its rich soil and mild sky, since, born in Britain, he hated heat. William describes Thrace, the city's angular walls ringed by the sea, the land won from the sea with rocks and sand, the Danube flowing in under the earth to scour its streets, and the emperors who vied to adorn it.

Paruit Augustus visioni præcluæ, et civitatem æquam Romæ
obeyed Augustus the-vision most-famous and a-city equal to-Rome
constituit; lege professus non debere imperatorem Romæ
established by-law declaring not ought an-emperor at-Rome
principari ubi a Christo coronati apostoli principabantur.
to-rule where by Christ crowned the-apostles ruled
Fecit in ea duas ecclesias, quarum una Hirenis, altera dicitur
he-made in it two churches of-which one of-Irene the-other is-called

Apostolorum; invehens illuc numerosa sanctorum corpora, qui
of-the-Apostles bringing thither numerous of-saints bodies who
possint contra incursus hostium cælestium impetrare
could against the-incursions of-enemies of-the-heavenly(-ones) to-obtain
patrocinium. Statuas quoque triumphalium virorum a Roma
patronage statues also of-triumphal men from Rome
deductas, et simulacra deorum ad videntium ridiculum,
brought and images of-gods for of-the-viewers ridicule
et tripodas Delphicos, in Circo dedit, ad spectaculum
and tripods Delphic in the-Circus he-gave for spectacle
simul et ad civitatis ornamentum. Gratumque admodum
at-the-same-time and for of-the-city adornment and-pleasing very
fuisse ferunt imperiali animo ut illic urbem divino jussu
to-have-been they-say to-the-imperial mind that there a-city by-divine command
fundaret, ubi et soli ubertas et cæli temperies
he-should-found where both of-the-soil the-richness and of-the-sky the-temperateness
mortalium saluti conveniret; quia enim in Britannia natus
of-mortals to-the-health would-suit because for in Britain born
fuerat, ardores solis exosus erat. Est vero Tracia una
he-had-been the-heats of-the-sun hating he-was is indeed Thrace one
Europæ provincia, ut poetæ quoque canunt, Hebri fluminis
of-Europe province as the-poets also sing of-the-Hebrus river
glacie et Bistonio aquilone perfrigida; fœcundæ vicina
with-the-ice and with-Bistonian north-wind very-cold to-fertile neighbor
Mœsiæ, cujus, ut ait Virgilius, “mirantur Gargara messes.” At
Moesia whose as says Virgil wonder-at Gargara the-harvests but
vero Constantinopolis, circumflua Ponto, Europæ atque Asiæ
indeed Constantinople surrounded by-the-Pontus of-Europe and of-Asia
carpit utrinque libratam temperiem, quod aquilonares hiatus
plucks from-both-sides a-balanced temperateness because the-northern gaps
mulceat e proximo veniens Asiaticus Eurus. Porrigitur ergo
soothes from near coming the-Asiatic east-wind stretches therefore

urbs ingentibus mœnibus, sed eam angustat convenarum
the-city with-huge walls but it narrows of-newcomers
innumerus populus; quapropter, rupium molibus et arenarum
a-countless people wherefore of-rocks with-the-masses and of-sands
cumulis profundo injectis, longe itur in salum, et novo
heaps into-the-deep thrown far it-is-gone into the-sea and by-a-new
commento tellus inventa veteres contrahit undas. Stupet itaque
device land found the-old contracts waves is-amazed and-so
mare peregrinos vitreo in gurgite campos, urbemque suam totis
the-sea strange glassy in flood fields and-the-city its-own with-all
terrarum commodis cingit et pascit. Est enim civitas undique,
of-the-lands advantages surrounds and feeds it-is for the-city on-all-sides
præter ad aquilonem, mari magno cincta, ambitu
except toward the-north by-the-sea great surrounded in-the-circuit
murorum juxta situm pelagi angulosa, viginti milia
of-the-walls according-to the-site of-the-sea angular twenty thousand
passuum muro complexa. Danubius, qui et Hister, occultis
of-paces with-wall embraced the-Danube which also Hister by-hidden
canalibus sub terra influit urbi; diebusque constitutis,
channels under the-earth flows-in to-the-city and-on-days appointed
ablato pessulo inductus, cænum platearum pelago importat.
with-removed bolt led-in the-filth of-the-streets to-the-sea carries
Certavere zelo imperiali Augusti singuli decorem addere,
vied with-zeal imperial the-Augusti each adornment to-add
quisque arbitrantes aliquid se institutæ debere operæ;
each thinking something themselves to-the-established to-owe work
iste sanctorum reliquiis, ille divitiis, Constantinus omnibus.
this-one of-saints with-the-relics that-one with-riches Constantine with-all

De imperatoribus Constantinopolis

THE EMPERORS OF CONSTANTINOPLE; THE MARCH TO ANTIOCH

William lists Constantinople's emperors, among them Justinian, who built Hagia Sophia, and Constantine son of Heraclius, who stripped Rome's churches of their bronze, down to Michael, driven out by Alexius, and names the city's relics. The Norman and Blois counts did homage to the emperor, the Fleming refusing, and besieged Nicaea surrendered to him. Suleiman's Turks fell on the army, but Godfrey, Hugh, and Raymond rescued it; the Turks fled for three days, and the Franks reached Antioch in October.

Regnaverunt in ea, post Constantinum magnum, imperatores
reigned in it after Constantine the-Great emperors
quorum hæc sunt nomina: Constantinus filius ejus, Julianus
whose these are the-names Constantine son his Julian
apostata, Jovinianus, Valens, Theodosius major, [Archadius,]
the-apostate Jovian Valens Theodosius the-elder Arcadius
Theodosius minor, Marcianus, Leo primus, [Leo minor,] Zeno,
Theodosius the-younger Marcian Leo the-first Leo the-younger Zeno
Anastasius, Justinus major, Justinianus; hic, litteris et bellis
Anastasius Justin the-elder Justinian he in-letters and wars
nobilis, fecit in Constantinopoli ecclesiam Divinæ Sapientiæ,
noble made in Constantinople a-church of-Divine Wisdom
id est, Domino Christo, quam Agiam Sophiam cognominavit;
that is to-the-Lord Christ which Hagia Sophia he-named
opus, ut ferunt, omnibus per orbem ædificiis magnificentius,
a-work as they-say than-all through the-world buildings more-magnificent
quodque certa rerum facie inspectum vincat ampullata
and-which by-the-certain of-things appearance viewed surpasses the-bombastic
verba referentium; Justinus minor, Tiberius, Mauricius, primus
words of-the-relaters Justin the-younger Tiberius Maurice the-first
Græcus, Focas, Heraclius, Heracleonas, Constans, Constantinus
Greek Phocas Heraclius Heraclonas Constans Constantine

filius Heraclii; iste Romam veniens, et quod reliquum erat
son of-Heraclius he to-Rome coming and what remaining was
ornatus antiqui corradens, tegulis etiam æreis fastigia
of-adornment ancient scraping-together of-tiles even bronze the-roofs
ecclesiarum nudavit, triumpho scilicet apud Constantinopolim
of-the-churches stripped for-a-triumph namely at Constantinople
de hisce manubiis inhians; sed ei infeliciter illa cessit
from these spoils gaping but to-him unhappily that turned-out
aviditas, quia, continuo apud Siracusas extinctus, Saracenis
greed because at-once at Syracuse extinguished with-the-Saracens
Alexandriam deferentibus omnes illas reliquit exuvias;
to-Alexandria carrying all those he-left spoils
Constantinus, Justinianus, Leo secundus, Tiberius, iterum
Constantine Justinian Leo the-second Tiberius again
Justinianus, Philippicus, Anastasius, Theodosius, Leo tertius.
Justinian Philippicus Anastasius Theodosius Leo the-third
Hi omnes regnaverunt et in Constantinopoli et in Roma;
these all reigned both in Constantinople and in Rome
sequentes tantum in Constantinopoli: Constantinus, Leo,
the-following only in Constantinople Constantine Leo
Constantinus, Nicephorus, Stauratius, Michael, [Leo, Michael,]
Constantine Nicephorus Stauracius Michael Leo Michael
Theophilus, Michael, Basilius, Leo, Alexander, Constantinus,
Theophilus Michael Basil Leo Alexander Constantine
Romani duo, Nicephorus Focas, Johannes, Basilius [et
Romanuses two Nicephorus Phocas John Basil and
Constantinus], Romanus, Michael, Michael, Constantinus,
Constantine Romanus Michael Michael Constantine
Theodora imperatrix, Michael, Sachius, Constantinus, Romanus
Theodora empress Michael Isaac Constantine Romanus
Diogenes, Nicephorus Butanius, Michael: hic, per Alexium
Diogenes Nicephorus Botaniates Michael he by Alexius

depulsus imperio, ad Guiscardum in Apuliam clandestinam
driven from-the-empire to Guiscard into Apulia a-secret
fugam composuit; traditaque illi potestate, aliquid
flight arranged and-with-handed-over to-him power something
se opinatus est fecisse quod noceret Alexio. Unde
himself thought has to-have-done which might-harm Alexius whence
Guiscardo aggrediendi magna increvit animus, ut inani
for-Guiscard of-attacking great grew the-spirit so-that with-empty
spe mentiretur sibi adquiri posse per industriam
hope he-might-falsely-tell to-himself to-be-acquired to-be-able through industry
quod alter amiserat per ignaviam; sed quantum istis
what the-other had-lost through cowardice but how-much by-these-things
profecerit præcedens liber patefecit. Est in ea civitate lignum
he-achieved the-preceding book has-revealed there-is in that city the-wood
Domini ab Helena de Jerosolimis delatum. Requiescunt ibi
of-the-Lord by Helena from Jerusalem brought rest there
apostoli, Andreas, Jacobus frater Domini, Mathias; prophetæ,
the-apostles Andrew James the-brother of-the-Lord Matthias the-prophets
Heliseus, Samuel, Daniel, et alii plures; Lucas evangelista,
Elisha Samuel Daniel and others many Luke the-evangelist
martyres innumerabiles; confessores, Johannes Chrysostomus,
martyrs countless confessors John Chrysostom
Basilius, Gregorius Nazanzenus, Spiridion; virgines, Agatha,
Basil Gregory Nazianzen Spyridon virgins Agatha
Lucia; omnesque postremo sancti quorum corpora illuc ex
Lucy and-all lastly saints whose bodies thither from
omnibus regionibus imperatores convehere potuerunt.
all regions the-emperors to-bring-together could
Normannus itaque et Blesensis comites hominium suum
the-Norman and-so and the-Blois counts homage their
Græco prostraverunt, nam jam Flandrita transierat, et id
to-the-Greek laid-down for already the-Fleming had-crossed and that

facere fastidierat, quod se meminisset natum et educatum
to-do had-disdained because himself he-remembered born and brought-up
libere. Alii, data fide acceptaque, Niceam pertendunt
freely the-others with-given faith and-received to-Nicaea go-on
hebdomada Junii prima, quam jam ceteri a medio Maii
in-the-week of-June first which already the-rest from the-middle of-May
obsederant. Ita conjunctis viribus multæ utrinque mortes actæ
had-besieged so with-joined strength many on-both-sides deaths done
sunt: cum ab oppidanis facile in subjectos telorum omnia
were since by the-townsmen easily on those-below of-missiles all
genera rotarentur, nec alicujus licet inertissimi manus in
kinds were-whirled nor of-anyone although most-sluggish the-hand against
confertos frustraretur. Quin et exanimatorum cadavera Turci
the-crowded was-frustrated nay and of-the-killed the-corpses the-Turks
uncis ferreis in murum trahebant, ludibrio nostrorum
with-hooks iron onto the-wall dragged in-mockery of-ours
excarnificanda, vel ablatis vestibus denudanda. Doluerunt id
to-be-butchered or with-removed clothes to-be-stripped grieved-at this
Franci: nec prius abstiterunt ferro exercere dolorem, quam
the-Franks nor before they-left-off with-the-sword to-exercise their-grief than
Turchi, extremis malis fessi, die solstitii æstivalis per
the-Turks by-extreme evils wearied on-the-day of-the-solstice of-summer through
clandestinos nuntios imperatori se dedidere. Ille, qui nihil
secret messengers to-the-emperor themselves surrendered he who nothing
præter commodum suum pensare nosset, denuntiavit Francis
except advantage his-own to-weigh knew announced to-the-Franks
ut abirent; malens urbem servari Turchorum apertæ
that they-should-go-away preferring the-city to-be-kept of-the-Turks for-open
perfidiæ, quam Francorum suspectæ potentiæ. Jussit tamen
treachery than of-the-Franks for-suspected power he-ordered yet
distribui argentum et aurum optimatibus, nummos æreos
to-be-distributed silver and gold to-the-magnates coins bronze

inferioribus, ne se irremuneratos quererentur. Ita Turchi,
to-the-lower lest themselves unrewarded they-should-complain so the-Turks
qui jam a quinquaginta annis Bithiniam, quæ est pars
who already from fifty years Bithynia which is part
Minoris Asiæ, quam Romaniam dicunt, Euphrate transito
of-Lesser Asia which Romania they-call with-the-Euphrates crossed
possederant, in superiores fuga terras concessere; veruntamen
had-possessed into the-higher in-flight lands withdrew nevertheless
ausi sunt, obsidione soluta, exercitum ultra progredientem
dared they-have with-the-siege loosed the-army further advancing
incessere, auctore quodam Solimanno cui dominium
to-attack with-the-author a-certain Suleiman to-whom the-lordship
totius Romaniæ obtigerat. Is, coactis sagittariorum milibus
of-whole Romania had-fallen he with-gathered of-archers thousands
æstimatione trecentis sexaginta, nostros, nihil minus quam
by-estimate three-hundred sixty ours nothing less than
bellum meditantes, tanta vi aggressus est, ut, ferreo imbre
war meditating with-such force attacked has that with-an-iron shower
sagittarum inundante perterriti, omnes incunctanter dorsa
of-arrows flooding terrified all without-delay their-backs
nudarent. Et tum forte dux Godefridus, et Hugo magnus,
bared and then by-chance duke Godfrey and Hugh the-Great
et Raimundus aliam viam invaserant, ut et inimicorum
and Raymond another road had-entered so-that both of-the-enemies
solum popularentur latius, et suis pabula compararent
the-soil they-might-ravage more-widely and for-their-own fodder might-procure
facilius. At vero Normannus, ancipiti discrimine permotus,
more-easily but indeed the-Norman by-the-double danger moved
adventum Turchorum, expeditis cursoribus, Godefrido
the-coming of-the-Turks with-unencumbered runners to-Godfrey
et ceteris per tutos tramites intimavit. Illi, moræ nescii,
and the-others through safe paths intimated they of-delay ignorant

signis in hostem conversis, socios eripuere periculo;
with-standards against the-enemy turned their-comrades snatched from-danger
namque hi jam indiscrete in tentoriis suis necabantur,
for these already indiscriminately in tents their were-being-killed
nihil bello intenti, sed solis lacrymis et precibus auras
nothing on-war intent but with-only tears and prayers the-air
implentes. Nec rimabatur hostis vulneri aditum, sed in
filling nor searched-for the-enemy for-a-wound an-opening but at
nothos fortunam emittens, nunquam pro densitate cuneorum
random fortune sending never for the-density of-the-wedges
inanem referebat manum. Sola erat mortis dilatio, quod, quia
empty brought-back his-hand the-only was of-death delay that because
juxta quoddam arundinetum pugnabatur, equi Turchorum
beside a-certain reed-bed it-was-fought the-horses of-the-Turks
impediti liberis non exultabant cursibus. Sed tandem visis
hindered in-free not leaped courses but at-last with-seen
antesignanis optimatum venientium, nostri ex arundineto
the-standard-bearers of-the-magnates coming ours from the-reed-bed
prodeunt; et acclamato signo militari, "Deus vult!" dissipatos
come-forth and with-shouted signal military God wills-it the-scattered
ordines hostium invadunt, sociis ut ex altera parte
ranks of-the-enemies they-attack to-their-comrades that from the-other side
feriant innuentes. Ita Turchi, cum utrinque premerentur,
they-should-strike signaling so the-Turks when on-both-sides they-were-pressed
nescio quid dirum stridentes, ululatibus in cælum actis
I-know-not what dreadful shrieking with-howls to heaven driven
diffugere; nec solito more pugna fugaci usi, sed,
fled-apart nor in-their-usual manner the-fight fleeing having-used but
abjectis arcubus, majus aliquid quam humanum timorem
with-cast-away bows greater something than human fear
continua trium dierum fuga testati sunt. Nec erat qui
by-continuous of-three days flight attested have nor was-there who

eos fugaret; quia equi nostrorum, vix jejuno cespite
them might-rout because the-horses of-ours scarcely by-fasting turf
vitam sustentantes, alacrem persecutionem negabant, lasso
life sustaining brisk pursuit denied tired
statim ilium pulsu defectionem suam ostendentes. Erat
at-once of-flank by-the-beating failure their showing was
enim Asia, terra quondam frugum feracissima, ita moderno
for Asia a-land once of-crops most-fertile so in-modern
et antiquo tempore Turchis sævientibus expilata, ut vix
and ancient time by-the-Turks raging plundered that scarcely
raro exercitui alimoniam ministrare sufficeret, nedum
for-a-rare army food to-furnish it-sufficed let-alone
tantæ multitudini, quæ totas segetes depastura, totos
for-so-great a-multitude which whole crops about-to-graze-down whole
amnes epotatura videretur: æstimabantur enim cum a
rivers about-to-drink-up seemed were-reckoned for when from
Nicea discessere septingenta milia, pars reliqua vel ferro
Nicaea they-departed seven-hundred thousand the-part remaining either by-the-sword
interempta vel valitudine minuta, major domos dilapsa.
killed or by-illness diminished the-greater home slipped-away
Inde, per Antiochiam Pisidiæ et Iconium urbes, Eracleam
thence through Antioch of-Pisidia and Iconium cities to-Heraclea
venere: ibi signum in cælo viderunt modo ensis
they-came there a-sign in the-sky they-saw in-the-manner of-a-sword
fulminei figuratum, mucrone versus orientem protento. Jamque
flashing shaped with-its-point toward the-east stretched and-now
a kalendis Julii, cum Niceam deseruerant, Octobris mensis
from the-kalends of-July when Nicaea they-had-left of-October the-month
nonæ volvebantur, quando Antiochiam Syriæ venere: cujus
the-nones were-rolling when to-Antioch of-Syria they-came whose
situm commemorarem, nisi aviditatem meam præoccuparet
site I-would-recall unless greed my should-forestall

Ambrosiana in Egesippo facundia, simul et quod
the-Ambrosian in Hegesippus eloquence at-the-same-time also because
vereor ne mihi vertatur vitio quod tam frequenter in
I-fear lest to-me it-be-turned for-a-fault that so often in
digressionibus peregrinatur narratio. Veruntamen quantum
digressions wanders the-narrative nevertheless as-much-as
suscepti operis narratio postulat, dicam.
of-the-undertaken work the-narrative demands I-shall-say

De urbe Antiochia

THE CITY OF ANTIOCH

Antioch, walled and taking in a mountain, founded by Seleucus and named for his father Antiochus, ranks fourth among the world's cities and could be taken by cunning sooner than by force. The Orontes reaches the sea twelve miles off, keeps the air healthy, and brings in ships' supplies that mock any siege. There Christians first took their name, Paul began to preach, and Peter held his first see; the Turks left Peter's church and Saint Mary's untouched, honoring the house of a faith they persecuted.

Civitas est maximo muro circumdata, montem etiam
a-city it-is with-a-very-great wall surrounded a-mountain even
mœnibus complexa; a Seleuco, rege Asiæ, nomine Antiochi
with-its-walls having-embraced by Seleucus king of-Asia with-the-name of-Antiochus
patris cognominata; post Romam, et Constantinopolim, et
his-father named after Rome and Constantinople and
Alexandriam quarto per orbem loco cunctis civitatibus
Alexandria in-the-fourth through the-world place to-all cities
prælata; mœnibus tuta, montibus ardua; magis ingenio quam
preferred by-walls safe by-mountains steep more by-cunning than
vi, si unquam capiatur, obtinenda. Fluvius illi proximus,
by-force if ever it-be-taken to-be-won the-river to-it nearest

quem modo Fernum, quondam Orontem vocatum intelligo,
which now Fernus once Orontes called I-understand
duodecimo ab urbe miliario accipitur pelago, fluentis
at-the-twelfth from the-city milestone is-received by-the-sea with-streams
rapacibus, et ipso impetu frigidioribus, salubris auræ
rapacious and by-the-very impetus colder of-healthful air
temperie saluti medetur civium; commeatum quoque
by-the-temperateness it-heals the-health of-the-citizens supply also
navium oppidanis invehens, perseverantiam obsidentium
of-ships to-the-townsmen bringing-in the-perseverance of-besiegers
quantolibet tempore deridet. Ibi primum Christianismi
for-however-long time mocks there first of-Christianity
venerabile vocabulum excogitatum. Inde Paulus, hujusce
the-venerable name was-devised thence Paul of-this
religionis incentivum et fomes, ad prædicandum processit.
religion the-incentive and kindling to preaching proceeded
Ibi beatus Petrus primi antistitii cathedram sedit; in cujus
there blessed Peter of-the-first bishopric the-chair occupied in whose
honore fundata illic ecclesia toto Turchorum tempore
honor founded there a-church in-the-whole of-the-Turks time
illibata permansit: nec minus altera, in honore sanctæ Mariæ
unharmed remained nor less another in honor of-saint Mary
consecrata, decore sui oculos spectantium tenebat; mirum in
consecrated by-the-beauty of-itself the-eyes of-the-viewers held wonderful in
modum, ut cujus persequebantur fidem revererentur ædem.
manner so-that of-whom they-persecuted the-faith they-revered the-house

De obsidione Antiochiæ

THE SIEGE OF ANTIOCH

The Franks besieged Antioch from October to June, swearing not to leave until it was taken, and built many forts on this side of the river. Yaghi Siyan, the emir, sent his son Shams ad-Daula to the sultan of Persia for help. William digresses on the East, which never unlearns servitude, while the bold West will not bear one people's rule long, so that the Roman empire passed to the Franks and then the Germans.

Hanc itaque civitatem Franci ab Octobri usque ad Junium
this and-so city the-Franks from October all-the-way to June
circumsedere, tentoriis circum muros amne transito locatis:
besieged with-tents around the-walls with-the-river crossed placed
perspectaque difficultate expugnandi, timiditati quorundam
and-with-perceived the-difficulty of-storming to-the-timidity of-certain-men
obviandum arbitrati, omnes pariter proceres sacramento
to-be-met thinking all together the-nobles by-oath
fecere obsidioni non ponendas ferias quoad vel vi vel
made to-the-siege not to-be-put holidays until either by-force or
ingenio prenderetur civitas; et, ut quod intendebant facilius
by-cunning should-be-taken the-city and that what they-intended more-easily
implerent, castra cis fluvium constituerunt multa, quibus
they-might-fulfill camps this-side-of the-river they-established many on-which
impositi milites excubias prætenderent. Aoxianus quoque
placed soldiers watches should-hold-out Yaghi-Siyan also
civitatis admiratus, videns Francos non joco et jejune agere,
of-the-city emir seeing the-Franks not in-jest and feebly to-act
sed civitatem serio impetere, Sansadolem filium ad Soldanum
but the-city seriously to-attack Shams-ad-Daula his-son to the-Sultan
imperatorem misit, qui Francorum audaciam exponens,
emperor sent who of-the-Franks the-daring setting-forth

suppetias expeteret. Soldanus apud Persas qui apud Romanos
help should-seek the-Sultan among the-Persians who among the-Romans
Augustus, totius orientis et omnium Saracenorum rector.
Augustus of-whole east and of-all Saracens ruler
Quod ideo, ut æstimo, tamdiu manet et propagatur
which for-this-reason as I-reckon so-long remains and is-propagated
imperium, quod gens illa parum, ut dixi, bellicosa, et
the-empire because people that little as I-said warlike and
vivacis sanguinis inops, semel acceptum nescit dediscere
of-lively blood destitute once received knows-not to-unlearn
servitium ignorantque, ut Lucanus ait, ideo
servitude and-they-do-not-know as Lucan says for-this-reason

"datos ne quisquam serviat enses."
given lest anyone be-slave swords

At vero gens occidentalis, audax et effera, diuturnam
but indeed the-people western bold and fierce the-long
unius populi dedignatur dominationem; sæpe se servitio
of-one people disdains domination often itself from-servitude
exuens, et de uno in aliud transferens. Denique Romanum
stripping and from one to another transferring finally the-Roman
imperium prius ad Francos, post ad Teutones declinavit;
empire first to the-Franks afterward to the-Teutons declined
orientale apud Persas semper durat.
the-eastern among the-Persians always lasts

Quare Turchi Christianos urbis indigenas occiderint

WHY THE TURKS KILLED THE CHRISTIAN NATIVES OF THE CITY

Shams ad-Daula hurried to the sultan while his father held the city. The besieged often harassed the Franks' foragers and their market beyond the river, but the Christians drove them off, and the Turks took their revenge on the Syrians and Armenians of the city, slinging their heads into the Franks' camp.

Ad hujus igitur imperii principem Sansadoles missus, viam
to of-this therefore empire the-prince Shams-ad-Daula sent his-way
studio celerabat juvenili; pater interim, in custodia urbis,
with-zeal hastened youthful his-father meanwhile in the-custody of-the-city
imperatorio non deerat muneri. Nec contenta virtus inclusorum
to-the-imperial not was-lacking office nor content the-valor of-the-shut-in
sua tutari, nostros ultro lacessebat; crebro illos, et
its-own to-protect ours of-its-own-accord harassed often them and
subito, pabulantes et nundinantes aggressa; nam, de inventis
suddenly foraging and marketing attacking for from found
navibus pontem facientes, nundinas ultra fluvium constituerant.
ships a-bridge making a-market beyond the-river they-had-set-up
Ope igitur Christi pertinaces sumptis armis hostes
by-the-help therefore of-Christ the-stubborn with-taken arms the-enemies
audacter propellere, ut nunquam eos superiorem gloriam
boldly drove-off so-that never them the-upper glory
paterentur referre: cujus contumeliæ ultionem in Syros
they-allowed to-bring-back of-which insult the-vengeance on the-Syrians
et Armenios, civitatis indigenas, Turchi refundebant; balistis
and Armenians of-the-city natives the-Turks poured-back with-ballistas
et petrariis capita interemptorum in castra Francorum
and stone-throwers the-heads of-the-killed into the-camp of-the-Franks
emittentes, ut illos eo modo ad dolorem incenderent.
sending-out that them in-that way to grief they-might-kindle

De fame obsidentium

THE FAMINE OF THE BESIEGERS

With all the country stripped, hunger attacked the army: men ate green beans, the flesh of horses, softened hides, and thistles, sold mice to the starving, and some ate the dead, cooking them far off in the mountains. Many who wandered in search of food were killed by bandits, but soon the city agreed to surrender.

Et jam, devastatis omnibus circa urbem quæ ad victum
and now with-laid-waste all-things around the-city which for food
poterant parari, temeraria fames, quæ tuta etiam expugnare
could to-be-got reckless hunger which safe-places even to-storm
solet, exercitum incessere cœperat; adeo ut, nondum
is-wont the-army to-assail had-begun so-much that not-yet
surgentibus in altam segetem culmis, quidam siliquas fabarum
with-rising into high crop the-stalks some the-pods of-beans
nondum adultarum pro summis deliciis amplecterentur. Alii
not-yet grown for the-greatest delights embraced others
carnes jumentorum, alii coria aquis mollita, quidam carduos
the-flesh of-beasts-of-burden others hides in-water softened some thistles
parum coctos per abrasas fauces utero demittebant;
little cooked through scraped throats into-the-belly let-down
quidam vel mures, vel talium quid deliciarum, poscentibus
some either mice or of-such something delicacies to-those-asking
aliis venundabant, et esurire sustinebat prolato jejunus
others sold and to-hunger endured with-brought-out fasting
venditor auro. Nec defuere qui cadavera cadaveribus
the-seller gold nor were-lacking those-who corpses with-corpses
infarcirent, humanis pasti carnibus; longe tamen et in
stuffed with-human fed flesh far yet and in
montibus, ne nidore carnis adustæ ceteri offenderentur.
the-mountains lest by-the-smell of-flesh burned the-rest be-offended

Plures, spe reperiendæ alimoniæ, ignotis vagabantur semitis;
many in-hope of-finding food in-unknown wandered paths
et a latrunculis, viarum gnaris, trucidabantur. Sed non
and by bandits of-the-roads knowing were-slaughtered but not
multo post civitas deditioni consensit.
much after the-city to-surrender agreed

Quomodo Boamundus Turchum quendam ad proditionem urbis flexit

HOW BOHEMOND WON A TURK TO BETRAY THE CITY

Bohemond, by great promises, won over a Turkish guardian of the largest tower, who gave his son as hostage and claimed a dream of Christ had ordered it. Bohemond first got the nobles' grant of the city if he could take it. The Franks climbed the wall at night by rope ladders, raised Bohemond's scarlet banner, and cried "God wills it!"; the Turks fled through the streets and Yaghi Siyan was beheaded by a Syrian peasant.

Boamundus enim, sollertis ingenii vir, ea parte qua
Bohemond for of-skillful wit a-man in-that part in-which
prætendebat, principem quendam Turchum, maximæ turris
he-was-posted a-prince certain Turkish of-the-greatest tower
custodem, promissis ingentibus ad proditionem per
the-guardian with-promises huge to betrayal through
internuntios sollicitaverat. Ille quoque, ut infamiam proditionis
intermediaries had-solicited he also that the-infamy of-treachery
insigni excusatione palliaret, Boamundo filium in
with-a-remarkable excuse he-might-cloak to-Bohemond his-son as
obsidatum dedit; Christi edicto, quod per sompnium
hostage gave of-Christ by-the-edict which through a-dream
didicisset, id se facere professus. Suos igitur ad turrim
he-had-learned that himself to-do professing his-men therefore to the-tower

Boamundus admovit, prius clandestino astu perpetuum a
Bohemond moved first with-secret cunning a-perpetual from
proceribus civitatis donum nactus, si possit adquirere.
the-nobles of-the-city gift having-obtained if he-could to-acquire-it
Ita Franci, per funeas scalas nocte intempesta in murum
so the-Franks by rope ladders at-night dead onto the-wall
evecti, vexilloque Boamundi, quod vermiculatum erat,
carried and-with-the-banner of-Bohemond which scarlet was
ventis in fastigio turris exposito, signum Christianum
to-the-winds on the-top of-the-tower displayed the-sign Christian
lætis fragoribus ingeminant, "Deus vult! Deus vult!"
with-glad crashes they-redouble God wills-it God wills-it
Turchi experrecti, et soporis penuria inertes, fugam per
the-Turks awakened and of-sleep by-want sluggish flight through
angiportus invadunt: districtis nostri gladiis insecuti magnas
alleys take with-drawn ours swords following great
de inimicis strages acervant. In ea fuga occidit Aoxianus
of the-enemies massacres heap-up in that flight fell Yaghi-Siyan
urbis admiratus, a quodam rustico Syro decollatus: caput
of-the-city emir by a-certain peasant Syrian beheaded the-head
ejus, Francis allatum, ridiculo et gaudio fuit.
his to-the-Franks brought for-laughter and joy was

De adventu Turchorum

THE COMING OF THE TURKS

The next day the Turks besieged the Franks in the city: Kerbogha, satrap of the East, with three hundred thousand men and twenty-seven emirs, sixty thousand of them climbing into the citadel. Famine grew among the Christians. After a three-day fast they sent Peter the Hermit to demand that the Turks leave the Christian lands or fight, by two, four, or eight champions if they wished to spare the armies.

Nec diu opima victoria lætati, postero die Turchorum
nor long in-the-rich victory having-rejoiced on-the-next day of-the-Turks
obsidionem extra muros ingemuere. Venerant illi a Sansadole
the-siege outside the-walls they-groaned-at had-come they by Shams-ad-Daula
invitati, duce Corbaguath satrapa orientali, qui ab
invited with-leader Kerbogha satrap eastern who from
imperatore Persidis acceperat trecenta milia cum viginti
the-emperor of-Persia had-received three-hundred thousand with twenty
septem admiratis. Horum sexaginta milia in arcem urbis
seven emirs of-these sixty thousand into the-citadel of-the-city
per scopulos ascendere, advocantibus eos Turchis qui adhuc
by the-rocks climbed with-calling them the-Turks who still
ibidem remanserant. Itaque illi crebris excursibus Christianos
there had-remained and-so they with-frequent sallies the-Christians
potissimum fatigabant, nec erat ulla spes nisi in Dei
most wearied nor was any hope except in of-God
auxilio; cum bello infestatis cresceret inedia, inedia semper
help since by-war for-those-harassed grew starvation starvation always
magnorum comes prima malorum. Quapropter, triduano prius
of-great companion first of-evils wherefore with-three-days first
cum letaniis exacto jejunio, legatus Petrus heremita mittitur ad
with litanies spent fast as-envoy Peter the-hermit is-sent to

Turchos. Is familiari sibi eloquio ista prosecutus est, ut
the-Turks he in-familiar to-himself eloquence these-things pursued has that
Turchi Christianorum terras, quas olim pervaserant indebite,
the-Turks of-the-Christians the-lands which once they-had-overrun unduly
nunc evacuent voluntarie; justum esse, ut sicut Christiani non
now should-empty voluntarily just to-be that as the-Christians not
infestant Persidam, ita Turchi non urgeant Asiam; proinde aut
harass Persia so the-Turks not should-press Asia accordingly either
libenti discessu nativum solum repetant, aut mane
by-willing departure their-native soil they-should-seek-again or on-the-morning
futuro bellum exspectent; sortem per duos vel quatuor vel
coming battle should-await their-lot by two or four or
octo experiantur, ne periculum ad totum vergat exercitum.
eight they-should-try lest the-danger onto the-whole should-turn army

Quomodo Christiani Turchos vicerint

HOW THE CHRISTIANS DEFEATED THE TURKS

Kerbogha dismissed the envoy with contempt. The Christians marched out in order, and the Turks fled at the sight of Adhémar's banner, the martyrs George and Demetrius seen charging from the mountains. Adhémar died and Hugh went home; after six months the rest marched along the coast to Ramla, and drove the Turks behind the walls of Jerusalem.

Non erat Corbaguath ejus facilitatis ut legatum dignaretur
not was Kerbogha of-such affability that the-envoy he-should-deign
responso; sed scacchis ludens, et dentibus infrendens, inanem
with-an-answer but at-chess playing and with-his-teeth gnashing empty
dimisit; hoc tantum dicto, jam conclamatam esse
he-dismissed-him with-this only said already shouted-down to-be
Francorum superbiam. Ille quoque concite rediens exercitum
of-the-Franks the-pride he also hastily returning the-army

de insolentia Turchi certiorem reddidit. Tunc omnes se
about the-insolence of-the-Turk more-certain made then all themselves
alterutrum animantes, etiam per præconem clamare fecere,
each-other encouraging even through a-herald to-cry they-made
ut quisque nocte illa equo suo pro posse præbendam
that each on-night that to-horse his for ability fodder
porrigeret, ne sequenti die multiformibus gyris fatigatus
should-offer lest on-the-following day by-many-shaped wheelings wearied
deficeret. Jamque mane inclaruerat, cum, per acies
it-should-fail and-now the-morning had-grown-bright when through battle-lines
dispositi, vexillis in hostem infestis prodeunt. Primam
arrayed with-standards against the-enemy hostile they-advance the-first
turmam duxere duo Roberti, Normannus et Flandrensis,
squadron led the-two Roberts the-Norman and the-Fleming
et Hugo magnus; secundam dux Godefridus; tertiam
and Hugh the-Great the-second duke Godfrey the-third
Podiensis episcopus. Boamundus in extremo agmine incedebat,
of-Le-Puy bishop Bohemond in the-last column advanced
ceteris subsidio futurus. Raimundus in urbe remanserat,
for-the-others a-support about-to-be Raymond in the-city had-remained
qui nostris receptui provideret, si necesse foret. Hoc Turchi
who for-ours a-retreat should-provide if necessary it-were this the-Turks
eminus conspicati, primo quid esset hæsere. Mox cognito
from-afar having-seen at-first what it-was hesitated soon with-recognized
vexillo episcopi, quod eum maxime metuerent, quia illum
the-banner of-the-bishop because him most they-feared because him
papam Christianorum et incentorem bellorum dictitarent,
the-pope of-the-Christians and instigator of-wars they-called
antequam ferirentur, videntes quod nostri tam animose
before they-were-struck seeing that ours so spiritedly
et incunctanter procederent, terga dedere: alteri quoque,
and without-delay advanced their-backs gave the-others also

insperato exilientes tripudio, cedentes cecidere, quantum vel
with-unexpected leaping-forth with-dancing yielding cut-down as-much-as either
peditum ilia vel equitum calcaria sufficere potuerunt.
of-the-foot the-flanks or of-the-horsemen the-spurs to-suffice could
Persuadebantque sibi videre se antiquos martyres,
and-they-persuaded themselves to-see themselves the-ancient martyrs
qui olim milites fuissent, quique mortis pretio parassent
who once soldiers had-been and-who of-death by-the-price had-prepared
præmia vitæ, Georgium dico et Demetrium, vexillis levatis
the-rewards of-life George I-mean and Demetrius with-banners raised
a partibus montanis accurrere, jacula in hostes, in se
from the-parts mountainous to-run-up javelins against the-enemies in their
auxilium vibrantes. Nec diffitendum est affuisse martyres
help brandishing nor to-be-denied it-is to-have-been-present the-martyrs
Christianis, sicut quondam angelos Macchabæis simili duntaxat
to-the-Christians as once the-angels to-the-Maccabees for-like only
causa pugnantibus. Reversi vero in prædam, tanta in castris
cause fighting returned but to the-plunder so-much in the-camp
illorum reperiunt quæ cujuslibet avidissimi exercitus satietatem
their they-find which of-any most-greedy army the-satiety
possent vel temperare vel exstinguere. Hoc prælium actum
could either to-temper or to-extinguish this battle fought
est anno incarnationis Dominicæ millesimo nonagesimo
was in-the-year of-the-incarnation of-the-Lord's thousandth ninetieth
octavo, quarto kalendas Julii; nam pridie nonas
eighth on-the-fourth of-the-kalends of-July for on-the-day-before the-nones
Junii capta fuerat urbs. Mox, kalendis Augusti sequentibus,
of-June taken had-been the-city soon on-the-kalends of-August following
Podiensis episcopus, Christianorum vexillifer, illius boni
of-Le-Puy bishop of-the-Christians standard-bearer of-that good
auctor præcipuus, communi mortalium conditioni feliciter
the-author chief to-the-common of-mortals condition happily

manus dedit; et Hugo magnus, concessu ut aiunt heroum,
his-hands gave and Hugh the-Great with-the-consent as they-say of-the-heroes
Franciam rediit, causatus continuam viscerum tortionem.
to-France returned pleading continuous of-the-bowels torment
Sed cum, sex mensibus Antiochiæ morati, præteritos
but when for-six months at-Antioch having-stayed the-past
labores tam diuturna quiete abstersissent, iter jamdudum
labors with-so long rest they-had-wiped-away the-journey long-since
inceptum resumere meditabantur. Primusque Raimundus, nullius
begun to-resume they-planned and-first Raymond of-no
unquam ignaviæ conscius, et cui semper cura primum in
ever cowardice conscious and for-whom always the-care first in
procinctu militari esse, et post eum Roberti et Godefridus,
readiness military to-be and after him the-Roberts and Godfrey
iter adorti; solum Boamundum florentissimæ
the-journey having-undertaken alone Bohemond of-the-most-flourishing
civitatis aspectus et pecuniarum fames continuit, ut interim
city the-sight and for-moneys the-hunger held-back that meanwhile
differret. Sed latebat sub cupiditate ratio persuasibilis,
he-should-defer but lay-hidden under the-greed a-reason persuasive
qua diceret Antiochiam non sine principe Turchis
by-which he-could-say Antioch not without a-prince to-the-Turks
exponendam continuo involaturis. Residit ergo in urbe;
to-be-exposed at-once about-to-fly-upon-it he-remained therefore in the-city
et Raimundi homines, qui vicum unum tenebant, improbus
and of-Raymond the-men who quarter one held the-shameless
exactor mœnibus depulit. At vero ceteri per Tripolim,
exactor from-the-walls drove but indeed the-rest through Tripoli
et Beritum, et Tyrum, et Sydonem, et Acaronem et
and Beirut and Tyre and Sidon and Acre and
Caipham, et Cæsaream Palestinæ transeuntes, ibi a dextra
Haifa and Caesarea of-Palestine passing there on the-right

dimittentes maritima, pervenerunt Ramulam; a quibusdam
leaving the-coastlands arrived at-Ramla by certain
civitatibus gratanter excepti, quarundam subjectione virtutem
cities gladly received of-some by-the-subjection valor
suam insignientes. Non enim diutius moram protelari
their marking not for longer the-delay to-be-prolonged
consilium erat, quod Aprilis mensis erat, et campestres
the-counsel was because April month it-was and the-field
fruges in maturas messes coaluerant. Ramula est civitatula,
crops into ripe harvests had-grown Ramla is a-little-city
muro indiga, beati Georgii, si famæ credimus, martyrii
of-a-wall lacking of-blessed George if the-report we-believe of-the-martyrdom
conscia; cujus ibi ab antiquo fundatam ecclesiam Turchi
conscious whose there from of-old founded church the-Turks
nonnihil deformaverant, tunc metu Francorum, subreptis
somewhat had-defaced then from-fear of-the-Franks with-stolen
omnibus suis, in montana dilapsi. Sequenti mane,
all their-goods into the-mountains slipped-away on-the-following morning
dubio adhuc diei et noctis confinio, Tancredus nepos
with-doubtful still of-day and of-night border Tancred the-nephew
Boamundi, præstans animi miles, sumptis armis, et quidam
of-Bohemond excellent of-mind a-soldier with-taken-up arms and some
alii, Bethleem pertendunt, loca vicina explorare cupientes.
others to-Bethlehem went-on the-places neighboring to-explore desiring
Syri qui essent in loco, progressi obviam, lætitiam suam
the-Syrians who were in the-place advancing to-meet joy their
desiderio lacrymante prodebant, saluti eorum pro paucitate
with-longing tearful betrayed for-the-safety of-them for the-fewness
nimirum metuentes; nam non multo plus quam centum milites
no-doubt fearing for not much more than a-hundred soldiers
venerant. At illi, supplicibus votis sacram ædem venerati,
had-come but they with-suppliant vows the-sacred house having-venerated

confestim Jerosolimam intentis animis invadunt. Turchi quoque,
at-once Jerusalem with-intent minds attack the-Turks also
pro fiducia virium mentibus efferati, foras exiliunt, in
for confidence in-their-strength in-minds made-fierce outside leap-out against
nostros aliquantisper arietantes; totus enim jam exercitus
ours for-a-while butting the-whole for now army
adventarat: sed mox, Francis annitentibus, summoti hostes
had-arrived but soon with-the-Franks striving removed the-enemies
claustrorum muralium objectu salutem suam tutabantur.
of-the-barriers walled by-the-interposing safety their protected

De urbe Jerusalem

THE CITY OF JERUSALEM

Josephus, Eucherius, and Bede describe Jerusalem, which Melchizedek called Salem, Jebus by the Jebusites, Jerusalem by Solomon, ruined under Nebuchadnezzar, Titus, and Hadrian, who rebuilt it as Aelia with a wider wall that took in the tomb of the Lord. It has no spring, only cisterns. The Turks worshiped in the Temple and barred Christians from it, but never harmed Constantine's church of the Sepulcher, perhaps from fear of the fire that lights its lamps each Easter Eve. The monk Bernard, there in 870, saw that fire, lodged in Charlemagne's hostel, and records a peace in which a traveler's goods lay safe, though a foreign Christian needed the seal of the emperor of Babylon and the natives paid yearly tribute; his naming of the patriarch Theodosius leads William to list all the patriarchs.

De situ et positione Jerusalem nihil me dicere copia
about the-site and position of-Jerusalem nothing me to-say the-abundance
scriptorum admonet: nec necesse est ut in hoc campo
of-writers admonishes nor necessary is-it that in this field
nostra exultet oratio; adeo fere omnium notitiæ patet
our should-exult speech so-much almost of-all to-the-knowledge lies-open

quod Josephus, quod Eucherius, quod Beda scripsere. Quis
what Josephus what Eucherius what Bede wrote who
enim nesciat eam a Melchisedech Salem, a Jebuseis Jebus, a
for knows-not it by Melchizedek Salem by the-Jebusites Jebus by
Salomone Jerosolimam vocatam? Quis non audierit quotiens,
Solomon Jerusalem called who not has-heard how-often
sub adverso marte cadens, cives ruinis sepelierit suis, vel
under adverse war falling its-citizens in-ruins it-buried its-own either
Nabugodonosor, vel Tito, vel Adriano agentibus? Adrianus
Nebuchadnezzar or Titus or Hadrian acting Hadrian
ille fuit qui Jerosolimam, ex suo cognomine cognominatam
that was who Jerusalem from his surname surnamed
Heliam, orbiculato et majori murorum ambitu ædificavit,
Aelia with-rounded and greater of-walls circuit built
ut locum sepulcri Dominici, quod olim extra fuerat,
that the-place of-the-tomb of-the-Lord which once outside had-been
amplecteretur; nam et mons Sion, intra urbem receptus, pro
he-might-embrace for also mount Zion within the-city received as
arce supereminet. Fons intra nullus, sed cisternis ad hoc
a-citadel towers-above a-spring within none but in-cisterns for this
præparatis colliguntur latices siti civium profuturi;
prepared are-gathered waters for-the-thirst of-the-citizens about-to-be-of-use
quod ipsius urbis situs, supercilio ab aquilone montis
because of-the-very city the-site from-the-brow from the-north of-mount
Sion incipiens, ita sit molli clivo dispositus, ut pluvia
Zion beginning so is with-gentle slope arranged that rain
ibi decidens nequaquam lutum faciat, sed instar fluviorum
there falling by-no-means mud makes but like rivers
vel cisternis excipiatur, vel per portas defluens torrentem
either by-cisterns is-received or through the-gates flowing-down the-torrent
Cedron augeat. Ibi templum Domini et templum quod dicunt
Kidron increases there the-temple of-the-Lord and the-temple which they-call

Salomonis, quibus incertum auctoribus ædificata, Turchorum
of-Solomon by-what uncertain authors built of-the-Turks
celebri frequentia colebantur; templum præsertim Domini,
with-crowded attendance were-worshiped the-temple especially of-the-Lord
quod cotidianis venerabantur excubiis, Christianosque ingressu
which with-daily they-venerated vigils and-the-Christians from-entry
arcebant, simulacro Mahumet ibidem collocato. Ibi decenti
kept-off with-the-image of-Muhammad there placed there with-seemly
opere compacta ecclesia sancti sepulcri capax, a Constantino
work joined the-church of-the-holy sepulcher containing-it by Constantine
magno ædificata, nullam unquam ab inimicis fidei tulit
the-Great built no ever from the-enemies of-the-faith suffered
injuriam; metu, sicut conjicio, pro igne cælesti percussis, qui
injury from-fear as I-conjecture for the-fire heavenly struck which
quotannis in vigilia Paschæ lampadibus serenus infulget. Quod
yearly on the-vigil of-Easter in-the-lamps serenely shines-in which
miraculum quando cœperit, vel si ante tempora Saracenorum
miracle when it-began or if before the-times of-the-Saracens
fuerit, nullius historiæ cognitione discernitur. Legi ego
it-was by-no of-history knowledge is-discerned I-have-read I
in scripto Bernardi monachi, quod abhinc annis ducentis
in the-writing of-Bernard the-monk that from-now years two-hundred
quinquaginta, id est, anno incarnationis octingentesimo
fifty that is in-the-year of-the-incarnation eight-hundredth
septuagesimo, idem, Jerosolimam profectus, ignem illum viderit;
seventieth the-same to-Jerusalem having-set-out fire that he-saw
hospitatusque fuerit in xenodochio quod ibidem gloriosissimus
and-lodged had in the-hostel which there the-most-glorious
Carolus magnus construi jusserat, ubi et bibliotecam ingentis
Charles the-Great to-be-built had-ordered where also a-library of-huge
expensæ compegerat. Tantamque et Ægypti, et per id
expense he-had-put-together and-so-great both of-Egypt and through that

locorum, commemorat pacem Christianos sub Turchorum
of-places he-records peace the-Christians under of-the-Turks
dominio habuisse, ut si alicui vianti in mediis forte
dominion to-have-had that if for-anyone traveling in the-middle perhaps
triviis jumentum quo necessaria veheret defungeretur, ille,
crossroads the-beast by-which necessities he-carried died he
relictis sarcinis, ad proximam urbem expeditus pro auxilio
with-left packs to the-nearest city unencumbered for help
pergeret, omnia quæ dimiserat illibata proculdubio reperturus.
would-go all-things which he-had-left untouched without-doubt about-to-find
Nullus tamen ibi Christianus alienigena secure vivere, pro
none yet there Christian foreigner securely to-live for
exploratorum suspicione, poterat, nisi sigillo imperatoris
of-spies suspicion could unless by-the-seal of-the-emperor
Babilonii fretus: indigenæ pacem Turchorum tribus annuis
of-Babylon relying the-natives the-peace of-the-Turks with-three yearly
talentis vel bizantinis redimebant. Veruntamen quia Bernardus
talents or bezants ransomed nevertheless because Bernard
Theodosii tunc patriarchæ nomen non tacet, ipsa me
of-Theodosius then patriarch the-name does-not suppress the-very me
monet occasio ut omnium patriarcharum nomina proponam.
admonishes occasion that of-all the-patriarchs the-names I-should-set-out

Nomina Patriarcharum Jerusalem

THE NAMES OF THE PATRIARCHS OF JERUSALEM; THE CITY TAKEN

William lists the bishops and patriarchs of Jerusalem from James, the brother of the Lord, to Simeon, in whose time the Franks came. They besieged the city from the seventh of June, wheeled a tower to the wall, and broke in on the fifteenth of July, slaughtering the Turks; Godfrey, the mirror of every virtue, was chosen king, and the choice of patriarch was left to the pope.

Jacobus frater Domini, filius Alphei; Simeon filius Cleophæ,
James the-brother of-the-Lord son of-Alphaeus Simeon son of-Cleophas
consobrinus Christi; Cleophas autem fuit frater Joseph;
cousin of-Christ Cleophas moreover was the-brother of-Joseph
Justus, Zacheus, Tobias, Benjamin, Johannes, Machabeus,
Justus Zacchaeus Tobias Benjamin John Maccabeus
Philippus, Seneca, Justus, Levi, Effrem, Justus, Judas; hi
Philip Seneca Justus Levi Ephraim Justus Judas these
quindecim circumcisi fuerunt; Marcus, Cassianus, Publius,
fifteen circumcised were Mark Cassian Publius
Maximus, Julianus, Gaius; iste primus celebravit Pascha
Maximus Julian Gaius he first celebrated Easter
et Quadragesimam more Romanorum; Simacus, Gaius,
and Lent in-the-manner of-the-Romans Symmachus Gaius
Julianus, Capito, Maximus, Antonius, Valens, Docilianus,
Julian Capito Maximus Antoninus Valens Dolichianus
Narcissus, Dius, Germanio, Gordius, Alexander, Mazabanus,
Narcissus Dius Germanio Gordius Alexander Mazabanes
Irmencus, Zabdas, Ermon, Macharius; hujus temporibus
Hymenaeus Zabdas Hermon Macarius in-his times
inventa est sancta crux ab Elena; Ciriacus, Maximus, Cirillus;
found was the-holy cross by Helena Cyriacus Maximus Cyril

iste construxit ecclesiam sancti Sepulcri et montis Calvariæ,
he built the-church of-the-holy Sepulcher and of-mount Calvary
et Bethleem et vallis Josaphat. Hi omnes vocati sunt
and of-Bethlehem and of-the-valley of-Jehoshaphat these all called were
episcopi. Post hos surrexere patriarchæ: Cirillus, protus
bishops after these arose patriarchs Cyril the-first
patriarcha; Johannes, Prailius, Juvenalis, Johannes, Zacharias,
patriarch John Praylius Juvenal John Zacharias
in cujus tempore venit Chosdroe rex Persarum Jerusalem,
in whose time came Chosroes king of-the-Persians to-Jerusalem
et destruxit ecclesias Judeæ et Jerusalem, et occisa sunt ab
and destroyed the-churches of-Judea and of-Jerusalem and killed were by
exercitu suo triginta sex milia Christianorum; Modestus; iste
army his thirty six thousand of-Christians Modestus he
constitutus est patriarcha ab Heraclio imperatore postquam
appointed was patriarch by Heraclius the-emperor after
reversus est victor de Perside; Sofronius, cujus temporibus
returned he-has victor from Persia Sophronius whose in-the-times
venere Saraceni, et ejecerunt Christianos omnes de Jerusalem,
came the-Saracens and cast-out the-Christians all from Jerusalem
excepto patriarcha, quem ob reverentiam sanctitatis ibi
except the-patriarch whom for reverence of-his-holiness there
dimiserunt. Illud fuit tempus quo Saraceni totam Ægyptum,
they-left that was the-time in-which the-Saracens the-whole Egypt
et Affricam, et Judœam, et Hispaniam, et Baleares insulas
and Africa and Judea and Spain and the-Balearic islands
pervaserunt. Partem Hispaniæ abstulit eis Carolus magnus;
overran part of-Spain took from-them Charles the-Great
reliquas et omnes quas nominavi terras possident usque
the-rest and all which I-have-named lands they-possess all-the-way
hodie, annis abhinc circiter quingentis; Theodorus, Ilia,
to-today years from-now about five-hundred Theodore Elias

Georgius, Thomas, Basilidis, Sergius, Salomontos, Theodosius:
George Thomas Basil Sergius Salomon Theodosius
hunc Theodosium fuisse abbatem Bernardus memorat, et
this Theodosius to-have-been abbot Bernard records and
raptum de monasterio suo, quod distabat ab Jerusalem
snatched from monastery his which was-distant from Jerusalem
quindecim milibus; et factum fuisse patriarcham Jerosolimæ;
fifteen miles and made to-have-been patriarch of-Jerusalem
tunc Michaelem dicit fuisse patriarcham Babilonis super
then Michael he-says to-have-been patriarch of-Babylon over
Ægyptum, translato patriarchatu Alexandriæ in Babilonem:
Egypt with-transferred the-patriarchate of-Alexandria to Babylon
Ilia, Sergius, Leonthos, Athanasius, Christodolus, Thomas,
Elias Sergius Leontius Athanasius Christodoulos Thomas
Joseph, Orestes, in cujus tempore venit Achim Soldanus de
Joseph Orestes in whose time came Hakim the-Sultan from
Babilonia, nepos Orestis patriarchæ; misit exercitum suum
Babylon nephew of-Orestes the-patriarch sent army his
Jerusalem, et destruxit omnes ecclesias, scilicet quatuor milia;
to-Jerusalem and destroyed all the-churches namely four thousand
et avunculum suum patriarcham adduci fecit Babiloniam
and uncle his the-patriarch to-be-led made to-Babylon
et ibidem occidi; Theofilus, Niceforus; hic ædificavit
and there killed Theophilus Nicephorus he built
ecclesiam sancti Sepulcri quæ nunc est, favente Achim
the-church of-the-holy Sepulcher which now is with-favoring Hakim
Soldano; Sofronius, in cujus tempore Turchi, Jerosolimam
the-Sultan Sophronius in whose time the-Turks to-Jerusalem
venientes, pugnaverunt cum Saracenis et omnes interfecerunt,
coming fought with the-Saracens and all killed
et obtinuerunt civitatem; Christiani autem remanserunt
and obtained the-city the-Christians but remained

ibi sub dominio Turchorum; Euthimius, Simeon: hujus
there under the-dominion of-the-Turks Euthymius Simeon in-his
tempore venerunt Franci et expugnaverunt Jerosolimam, et
time came the-Franks and stormed Jerusalem and
liberaverunt eam de manibus Turcorum et regis Babiloniæ.
freed it from the-hands of-the-Turks and of-the-king of-Babylon
Anno igitur Jerosolimitanæ peregrinationis quarto, post
in-the-year therefore of-the-Jerusalem pilgrimage fourth after
captam Niceam tertio, post Antiochiam secundo, obsessa
captured Nicaea third after Antioch second besieged
est a Francis Jerusalem; urbs bellorum maxima merces,
was by the-Franks Jerusalem the-city of-wars the-greatest reward
blandimentum laborum, supremæ spei viaticum. Erat tunc
the-allurement of-labors of-the-supreme hope the-provision there-was then
Junii mensis dies septimus; nec quicquam sibi obsessor
of-June month the-day seventh nor anything for-himself the-besieger
verebatur in cibatu vel in potu, quod messis in agris,
feared in food or in drink because the-harvest in the-fields
uvæ in vineis, maturaverant: sola jumentorum cura
the-grapes in the-vineyards had-ripened the-only of-the-beasts care
erat miserabilis, quæ pro qualitate loci et temporis
was wretched which for the-nature of-the-place and of-the-season
nullo sustentabantur irriguo; nam et fontis Siloe recessus,
by-no were-sustained watering for also of-the-spring Siloam the-recess
qui horis incertis dulcibus scatet aquis, tunc calor solis
which at-hours uncertain with-sweet gushes waters then the-heat of-the-sun
ebiberat. Fons ille, si quando pluvialibus pascitur aquis,
had-drunk-up the-spring that if ever with-rain is-fed waters
torrentem Cedron auget, indeque undivomo impetu in
the-torrent Kidron increases and-thence with-wave-spewing impetus into
vallem Josaphat decurrit; sed hoc admodum raro, quia
the-valley of-Jehoshaphat runs-down but this very rarely because

nullus ejus augmenti vel decrementi serius est terminus:
no of-its increase or decrease later is limit
quocirca nostros, ad aquationem jumentorum crebro dispersos
wherefore ours at the-watering of-the-beasts often dispersed
hostes e cavernis egredientes inopine cædebant. Interea
the-enemies from caves coming-out unexpectedly cut-down meanwhile
duces suo quisque muneri, Raimundus vero turri
the-leaders to-his-own each task Raymond indeed at-the-tower
Daviticæ impiger assidebat. Hæc, ab occasu solis urbem
of-David tirelessly sat this from the-setting of-the-sun the-city
muniens, ad medium fere tabulatum quadratorum lapidum
fortifying to the-middle almost story of-squared stones
plumbo infuso compaginata, omnem metum obsidentium
with-lead poured-in joined all fear of-the-besiegers
paucis intus defendentibus repellit. Itaque videntes urbem
with-few inside defending repels and-so seeing the-city
ad capiendum, propter prærupta montium et firmitatem
for taking on-account-of the-steepness of-the-mountains and the-strength
mœnium et ferocitatem hostium, difficilem, machinas fieri
of-the-walls and the-ferocity of-the-enemies difficult engines to-be-made
præcepere: et prius quidem, obsessionis die septimo,
they-ordered and before indeed of-the-siege on-the-day seventh
fortunam scalis erectis temptarunt, in resistentes volaticas
fortune with-ladders raised they-tried against the-resisting flying
moliti sagittas; sed quia erant scalæ paucæ, ascendentibus
contriving arrows but because were the-ladders few to-those-climbing
dampnosæ, quod vulneribus expositi undique nulla parte
harmful because to-wounds exposed on-all-sides on-no side
protegerentur, consilium mutarunt. Unum fuit machinamentum
they-were-protected their-counsel they-changed one was an-engine
quod nostri suem, veteres vineam vocant; quod machina
which ours sow the-ancients vine call because the-machine

levibus lignis colligata, tecto tabulis cratibusque contexto,
with-light timbers bound with-roof of-boards and-hurdles woven
lateribus crudis coriis munitis, protegit in se subsidentes,
with-sides with-raw hides fortified protects in itself those-crouching
qui, quasi more suis, ad murorum suffodienda penetrant
who as-if in-the-manner of-a-sow to of-the-walls to-be-dug-under penetrate
fundamenta. Alterum fuit, pro lignorum penuria, turris non
the-foundations the-other was for of-timbers want a-tower not
magna, in modum ædificiorum facta; Berfreid appellant,
great in the-manner of-buildings made Berfreid they-call
quod fastigium murorum æquaret. Hoc machinamentum, dum
which the-top of-the-walls should-equal this engine while
fieret, moram obsidioni dedit pro fabrorum inscitia
it-was-made delay to-the-siege gave for of-the-craftsmen the-ignorance
et lignorum inopia. Et jam quartusdecimus dies Julii
and of-timbers the-scarcity and already fourteenth the-day of-July
volvebatur, cum hi admotis vineis murum suffodere, hi
was-rolling when these with-moved-up vines the-wall to-dig-under those
turrem promovere cœpere: quod ut opportunius fieret,
the-tower to-push-forward began which that more-conveniently it-might-be-done
membratim disjunctam ad muros tulere; ibique, prope
piece-by-piece separated to the-walls they-carried and-there near
quantum a jactu sagittæ cavere poterant, compaginatam,
as-far-as from the-cast of-an-arrow to-be-wary they-could joined
rotarum volubilitate muro pene conjunxere. Interea funditores
of-the-wheels by-the-rolling to-the-wall almost they-joined meanwhile the-slingers
lapidibus, sagittarii jaculis, arcubalistæ telis, quisque suum
with-stones the-archers with-darts the-crossbowmen with-bolts each his-own
exercentes officium, instare, et propugnantes de muro
exercising office to-press and the-defenders from the-wall
submovere; milites quoque virtute incomparabiles turrim
to-dislodge the-soldiers also in-valor incomparable the-tower

ascendere, æquo jam pene marte telis et lapidibus in
to-climb with-equal now almost battle with-missiles and stones against
hostes agentes. Nec illi feriis vacabant, sed, omnem virtuti
the-enemies driving nor they to-holidays were-free but all to-valor
salutem committentes, adipem et oleum ignitum in turrim
their-safety committing fat and oil fiery onto the-tower
et in milites fundibalis jaculabantur, multorum mortibus
and onto the-soldiers with-slings hurled of-many by-the-deaths
voti sui se compotes gloriantes. Ita toto illo die
of-wish their themselves possessed boasting so in-the-whole that day
certatum, ut neutra pars se victam putaret. Sequenti
it-was-fought that neither side itself conquered thought on-the-following
die, qui erat quintusdecimus Julii, ad suprema ventum:
day which was the-fifteenth of-July to the-end it-came
namque Franci, pridiani certaminis eventu eruditiores,
for the-Franks of-the-previous-day contest by-the-outcome more-instructed
faces oleagino succo vividas in turrim muro proximam
torches with-oily juice lively onto the-tower to-the-wall nearest
et ejus custodes jecerunt. At flamma, vento agente in
and its guards threw but the-flame with-the-wind driving into
comas erecta, primo ligna, mox lapides corripiens, custodes
tufts raised first the-timbers soon the-stones seizing the-guards
effugavit. Quin et tigna quæ Turchi e muro pendula
put-to-flight nay and the-beams which the-Turks from the-wall hanging
demiserant, ut turrim, si propius admoveretur, reducto
had-let-down that the-tower if nearer it-were-moved with-drawn-back
nisu brachiorum arietando effringerent, Franci funibus
effort of-arms by-butting they-might-break the-Franks with-ropes
desectis ad se traxere; et de machina in murum
cut to themselves drew and from the-engine onto the-wall
jactis, cratibusque constratis, pontem, qui turrim et mœnia
thrown and-with-hurdles strewn a-bridge which the-tower and the-walls

continuaret, fecere. Ita perfidis versum in exitium quod
should-join they-made so for-the-traitors turned into ruin what
paraverant ad remedium. Tum vero, et fumeis flammarum
they-had-prepared into remedy then indeed both by-smoky of-flames
globis, et nostrorum audacia, hostes infracti fugam ineunt.
balls and of-ours by-the-daring the-enemies broken flight enter
Alteri in murum, et inde in urbem progredientes, quantum
the-others onto the-wall and thence into the-city advancing as-much-as
illa exigebat animorum lætitia, manibus egere. Et hæc quidem
that demanded of-minds joy with-hands they-did and this indeed
victoria in parte Godefridi et duorum Robertorum evenit.
victory in the-part of-Godfrey and of-the-two Roberts happened
Ignorabat hoc Raimundus donec fugitivorum clamor, et
was-ignorant-of this Raymond until of-the-fugitives the-shout and
se de muro ultro præcipitantium timor, qui, dum
themselves from the-wall voluntarily of-those-throwing-headlong the-fear who while
mortem fugiunt, mortem invadunt, urbem captam prodidit.
death they-flee death they-attack the-city taken betrayed
Quod intuitus, strictisque gladiis in fugitivos irruens,
which having-seen and-with-drawn swords against the-fugitives rushing
quantum animositati suæ sufficere judicavit injurias Dei
as-much-as for-animosity his to-suffice he-judged the-injuries of-God
ultum ire festinabat. Quingentos quoque Æthiopas, qui, in
to-avenge to-go he-hastened five-hundred also Ethiopians who into
arcem David refugi, claves portarum, pollicita membrorum
the-citadel of-David fled the-keys of-the-gates with-promised of-limbs
impunitate, tradiderant, spectato pacis commodo præsentis,
impunity had-handed-over with-regarded of-peace the-advantage present
incolumes Ascalonem dimisit. Nec ullum erat Turchis
unharmed to-Ascalon he-sent nor any was for-the-Turks
refugium, ita et supplices et rebelles insatiabilis ira victorum
refuge so both suppliants and rebels the-insatiable wrath of-the-victors

consumebat. Decem milia in templo Salomonis interfecta;
consumed ten thousand in the-temple of-Solomon killed
plura ex fastigiis templorum et arcis præcipitata. Post
more from the-tops of-the-temples and of-the-citadel thrown-headlong after
hæc cadavera cumulata, igne immisso, in aerium resoluta
these-things the-corpses heaped with-fire set into the-airy dissolved
sunt elementum, ne, sub divo in tabem fluentia, inerti
were element lest under the-sky into putrefaction flowing sluggish
attraherent contagia mundo. Ita cæde infidelium
they-should-draw contagion to-the-world so with-the-slaughter of-the-infidels
expiata urbe, sepulcrum Domini, quod tamdiu desideraverant,
purified the-city the-tomb of-the-Lord which so-long they-had-desired
pro quo tot labores tulerant, supplicibus cordibus et
for which so-many labors they-had-borne with-suppliant hearts and
corporibus expetierunt. Quot ibi precum thurificatione
bodies they-sought how-many there of-prayers with-incense
cælum incenderint, quot lacrymis Deum in gratiam
heaven they-fired how-many with-tears God into favor
revocaverint, nullus unquam profiteor evolveret: nec si
they-recalled none ever I-profess could-unroll not-even if
veterum pompatica eloquentia procederet; non si Orpheus,
of-the-ancients ostentatious eloquence should-come-forth not if Orpheus
qui vocalibus fidibus auritos, ut dicitur, scopulos flexit,
who with-vocal strings eared as is-said rocks bent
resurgeret. Cogitetur igitur potius quam dicatur.
should-rise-again let-it-be-thought therefore rather than be-said
Illud insigne continentiæ in omnibus optimatibus exemplum
that remarkable of-continence in all magnates an-example
fuit, quod nec eo die, nec consequentibus, quisquam
was that neither on-that day nor on-the-following anyone
respectu prædæ avocavit animum quin cœptum persequerentur
in-regard of-plunder called-away his-mind from the-begun they-should-pursue

triumphum. Solus Tancredus, intempestiva cupidine occupatus,
triumph alone Tancred by-untimely desire seized
quædam pretiosissima de templo Salomonis extulit: sed
certain most-precious-things from the-temple of-Solomon carried-out but
postmodum, sua conscientia et aliorum conventus
afterward by-his-own conscience and of-others assailed
colloquio, vel eadem vel appretiata loco restituit. Tum
by-the-talk either the-same or valued in-place restored then
quicunque egenus vel domum vel aliquas divitias invasit;
whoever needy either a-house or some riches seized
nunquam ulterius ullius locupletis tulit convitium, sed
never afterward of-any rich-man bore reproach but
semel possessa in jus adoptavit hereditarium. Nec mora,
once possessed into right adopted hereditary nor delay
prælucidum illud Christianæ nobilitatis specular, in quo
very-bright that of-Christian nobility mirror in which
velut in splendido lacunari omnium virtutum repercutiebatur
as-if on a-splendid ceiling of-all virtues was-reflected
jubar, Godefridus, in regem eligitur, omnibus non ignava
the-radiance Godfrey as king is-chosen with-all not with-sluggish
spe conferentibus, nullo modo posse decentius prospici
hope contributing in-no way to-be-able more-fittingly to-be-provided-for
ecclesiæ utilitatibus; dilato interim de patriarcha
of-the-church to-the-interests with-postponed meanwhile about the-patriarch
consilio, qui Romani papæ deberet substitui judicio.
counsel who of-the-Roman pope ought to-be-substituted by-the-judgment

The emperor of Babylon in Egypt, long angry with the Franks, sent a commander to drive them out, meaning to besiege the Christians in Jerusalem and pull down the Lord's tomb. The Christians marched out toward Ascalon carrying part of the Lord's cross, took great herds of cattle, and left them in the open fields; in the morning the beasts walked beside the army as if it were a host, the enemy lost heart, Robert of Normandy broke their center, and the Turks were cut down, leaving rich spoils taken without Christian blood. Most of the leaders sailed home, but Godfrey and Tancred stayed, and William praises them and the army's discipline above the heroes of old. He will now set down each leader's deeds and end as his informants told them, asking pardon if one better informed finds him careless, since in Britain the fame of Asia's affairs barely reaches him.

At vero Babilonis imperator, non illius quæ, a Nembroth
but indeed of-Babylon the-emperor not of-that which by Nimrod
facta, a Semiramide aucta esse asseritur; sed illius quam
made by Semiramis enlarged to-have-been is-asserted but of-that which
Cambyses Cyri filius ædificavit in Ægypto, in loco ubi
Cambyses of-Cyrus son built in Egypt in the-place where
quondam fuerat Thaphnis, — imperator ergo Babilonis,
once had-been Taphnis the-emperor therefore of-Babylon
diu conceptas in Francos iras parturiens, misit ducem
long conceived against the-Franks angers bringing-forth sent a-leader
militiæ qui eos de regno, ut dictitabat, suo propelleret.
of-soldiery who them from the-kingdom as he-kept-saying his should-drive
Ille, præcepta maturans munia, cum audisset captam
he the-ordered hastening duties when he-had-heard taken
Jerusalem, majori cura stimulavit negotium, quanquam ante
Jerusalem with-greater care spurred-on the-business although before
nihil segnitiei admisisset. Eratque barbaro animus ut
nothing of-sloth he-had-admitted and-there-was in-the-barbarian the-mind that

Christianos in Jerusalem obsideret; et, post victoriam quam
the-Christians in Jerusalem he-should-besiege and after the-victory which
jam mente sompniabat falso præsagus, sepulcrum Domini a
already in-mind he-dreamed falsely presaging the-tomb of-the-Lord from
fundo erutum dilapidaret. Nostri, qui nihil minus diligerent
the-bottom uprooted he-should-demolish ours who nothing less would-love
quam obsidionales ærumpnas denuo perpeti, sumpta ex Dei
than of-siege hardships again to-endure with-taken from of-God
parte audacia, ex urbe versus Ascalonem prodeunt, obvia
the-part daring from the-city toward Ascalon go-forth against
hostibus inferentes pectora; portabantque secum partem
the-enemies bringing their-breasts and-they-carried with-themselves part
Dominici ligni, quam quidam Syrus civis Jerosolimitanus
of-the-Lord's wood which a-certain Syrian a-citizen of-Jerusalem
avita successione domi custoditam propalaverat. Felix
by-ancestral succession at-home kept had-made-known happy
plane et fidele furtum, ut toto tempore Turchis
plainly and faithful theft that in-the-whole time from-the-Turks
celaretur mysterium! Ingentem ergo prædam pecorum
should-be-hidden the-mystery a-huge therefore plunder of-cattle
et pecudum secus Ascalonem nacti, generale proposuerunt
and of-sheep beside Ascalon having-got a-general they-set-forth
edictum ut omnia in patulis campis relinquerent, ne postero
edict that all-things in open fields they-should-leave lest on-the-next
mane pugnaturis impedimento forent: satis superque
morning to-those-about-to-fight for-a-hindrance they-be enough and-more
se prædam habituros si vincerent, dummodo expediti
themselves plunder about-to-have if they-won provided unencumbered
divinas ulciscerentur injurias. Itaque mane jam exercitu
divine they-avenged injuries and-so in-the-morning already with-the-army
prodeunte, videres, supero credo instinctu, cornibus
going-forth you-would-see by-supernal I-believe instinct with-horns

erectis pecora lateribus militum obambulantia, nec ulla
raised the-cattle at-the-sides of-the-soldiers walking-about nor by-any
posse abigi violentia: quod eminus hostes intuiti,
to-be-able to-be-driven-off force which from-afar the-enemies having-looked-at
et solaribus radiis visus hebetati, animis ante prælium
and by-the-solar rays in-sight dulled in-minds before battle
conciderunt, quod crederent innumeram esse adversariorum
fell because they-believed countless to-be of-the-adversaries
manum; quamvis ipsis non deesset militaris copia multo
the-band although to-them not was-lacking military abundance by-much
exercitio ad prælium præparata. Lentius itaque procedentes,
exercise for battle prepared more-slowly and-so advancing
Francos, bipartito agmine et sinuatis alis, includere conati
the-Franks with-two-part column and with-curved wings to-enclose they-tried
sunt; sed duces, et maxime Robertus Normannus, qui
have but the-leaders and especially Robert the-Norman who
antesignanus erat, arte artem, vel potius virtute calliditatem
in-the-van was by-art art or rather by-valor cunning
eludentes, sagittariis et peditibus deductis, medias gentilium
eluding with-archers and foot-soldiers drawn-off the-middle of-the-gentiles
perruperunt acies. Eques quoque Lotharingus, qui in
they-broke-through the-battle-lines the-horseman also the-Lorrainer who in
extremo agmine cum domino suo erat, a lateribus involitans,
the-last column with lord his was from the-sides flying-in
libertatem fugæ et campos abstulit omnes. Ita Turchi, ab
the-freedom of-flight and the-fields took-away all so the-Turks by
anterioribus penetrati et ab exterioribus inclusi, ad voluntatem
the-front-ones penetrated and by the-outer-ones enclosed at the-will
victorum cæsi sunt; reliqui, noctis quæ imminebat beneficio,
of-the-victors slain were the-rest of-the-night which was-impending by-the-benefit
liberati. Multum aureæ supellectilis in eorum castris inventum;
freed much of-golden furniture in their camp found

multum gemmarum, quarum raritas in nostris regionibus
much of-gems whose rarity in our regions
incognita, ibi nativo decore refulgurat: nec ulla victoria lætior
unknown there with-native beauty shines nor any victory gladder
fuit Christianis, quod incruenti opima retulere spolia.
was for-the-Christians because bloodless rich they-brought-back spoils
Jerusalem itaque reversi, cum stativa multorum dierum
to-Jerusalem and-so returned when with-stationary of-many days
requie vires reformassent, quidam, suspirantes in natalis
rest their-strength they-had-restored some sighing into of-native
soli desiderium, marinum adornarunt reditum. Soli Godefridus
soil longing a-sea prepared return alone Godfrey
et Tancredus remanserunt; prædicabiles profecto principes,
and Tancred remained praiseworthy surely princes
et quorum titulis nullas unquam affiget metas postera, si
and whose to-titles no ever will-fix bounds later if
rectum judicet, ætas: viri, qui ab extremo Europæ frigore
rightly it-judge age men who from the-farthest of-Europe cold
in importabiles se Orientis calores immerserunt, vitæ
into the-unbearable themselves of-the-East heats plunged of-life
suæ prodigi dummodo Christianitati laboranti concurrerent;
their prodigal provided-that to-Christianity laboring they-might-run-to-help
qui, præter metum barbaricorum incursuum, semper pro
who besides the-fear of-barbarian incursions always for
incommoditate ignoti poli suspecti, securitatem quietis
the-unwholesomeness of-an-unknown sky suspect the-security of-rest
et sanitatis in patria contempserint, et, pauculi numero,
and of-health in the-fatherland despised and very-few in-number
tot inimicorum urbes fama et effectu virtutum presserint;
so-many of-enemies cities by-fame and by-the-effect of-virtues pressed
memorabili fiduciæ Dei exemplo, ut illic non dubitarent
by-memorable of-trust in-God example so-that there not they-hesitated

subsistere, ubi vel pestifero afflarentur aere vel
to-stay where either by-pestilential they-might-be-breathed-on air or
Saracenica occiderentur rabie. Cedant ergo poetarum præconia;
by-Saracen might-be-killed rabidness let-yield therefore of-poets the-praises
nec priscos heroas vetus attollat fabula. Nihil unquam horum
nor the-ancient heroes old let-raise fable nothing ever of-these
laudi comparabile ulla genuere secula: nam, et si qua
to-the-praise comparable any have-begotten ages for even if any
illorum fuit virtus, in sepulcrales favillas post mortem evanuit;
their was valor into sepulchral ashes after death it-vanished
quod potius in mundialis pompæ fumum quam in ullius boni
because rather into of-worldly pomp smoke than into of-any good
solidum, effusa fuerit. Istorum autem fortitudinis sentietur
the-solid poured-out it-was of-these but of-the-bravery will-be-felt
utilitas, et ostendetur dignitas, quamdiu orbis volubilitas
the-usefulness and will-be-shown the-dignity as-long-as of-the-world the-rotation
et sancta vigebit Christianitas. Quid vero de disciplina
and holy will-flourish Christianity what indeed about the-discipline
et abstinentia totius exercitus dicam? Nulla ibi ventris
and abstinence of-the-whole army shall-I-say no there of-the-belly
ingluvies, nulla fuit penis illuvies, quæ non continuo vel
gluttony no was of-the-penis filthiness which not at-once either
ducum auctoritate vel episcoporum sermone corrigeretur.
of-the-leaders by-the-authority or of-the-bishops by-the-speech was-corrected
Nulli prædandi per terras Christianorum cupido; nulla
to-none of-plundering through the-lands of-the-Christians desire no
inter se controversia quæ non facile, mediatorum judicum
among themselves controversy which not easily of-mediating judges
cognitione, recideretur. Quapropter, quia tam ordinati exercitus
by-the-cognizance was-cut-off wherefore because of-so ordered an-army
laus ad prælatorum redundat gloriam, singulorum procerum
the-praise to of-the-prelates redounds the-glory of-the-individual nobles

facta et exitus scripto insigniam; nec quicquam veritati
the-deeds and ends in-writing I-shall-mark nor anything from-the-truth
secundum relatorum meorum credulitatem subtraham. Nullus
according-to of-my informants the-credibility shall-I-subtract no-one
vero, cui amplior provenit gestorum notitia, me pro
but to-whom fuller has-come of-the-deeds knowledge me for
incurioso arguat; quia trans oceanum Britannicum abditos
careless let-him-charge because across the-ocean British hidden
vix tenui murmure rerum Asianarum fama illustrat.
scarcely with-faint murmur of-affairs Asian the-fame illuminates

De Godefrido

GODFREY

Godfrey, son of Eustace of Boulogne, was of Charlemagne's line. Serving Henry, he won Lorraine and broke into Rome; vowed to Jerusalem, he cut a Turk in half and killed a lion at Antioch. As king he would not wear a crown where God had worn thorns, and he died after a year's reign.

Initium laudum rex Godefridus occupat, qui Eustachii
the-beginning of-the-praises king Godfrey occupies who of-Eustace
comitis Bononiensis, de quo tempore regis Edwardi dixi,
count of-Boulogne about whom in-the-time of-king Edward I-spoke
filius, materno excellentior genere, ad Caroli magni
the-son on-the-maternal-side more-excellent in-birth to of-Charles the-Great
spectabat lineam. Siquidem mater, Ida nomine, Godefridi
looked the-line indeed his-mother Ida by-name of-Godfrey
antiqui Lotharingorum ducis filia, habuit fratrem, a
the-old of-the-Lorrainers duke daughter had a-brother from
genitoris nomine Godefridum dictum, cognomento Bocardum.
of-his-father the-name Godfrey called by-surname the-Hunchback

Illud fuit tempus quando Robertus Friso, de quo superius
that was the-time when Robert the-Frisian about whom above
locutus sum, mortuo Florentio Frisiæ duce, uxorem ejus
spoken I-have with-dead Florent of-Frisia duke the-wife his
Gertrudem duxit; privignum Theodericum in successionem
Gertrude married his-stepson Theodoric into the-succession
ducatus provehens. Non tulit hoc Bocardus, sed, Frisonem
of-the-duchy advancing not bore this the-Hunchback but the-Frisian
expellens, regionem suis voluntatibus addixit: ultus se
expelling the-region to-his wishes be-assigned avenged himself
ille insidiis, qui non posset præliis, per Flandritas suos
he by-ambushes who not could by-battles through Flemings his-own
sedentem ad requisita naturæ extinxit, ferro per verenda
him-sitting at the-necessities of-nature extinguished with-iron through the-private-parts
immisso. Ita privignus beneficio vitrici successit ducatui.
thrust so the-stepson by-the-benefit of-his-stepfather succeeded to-the-duchy
Uxor hujus Godefridi fuit Matildis Marcisa, quam superior
the-wife of-this Godfrey was Matilda the-Marchioness whom the-above
liber prædicat: quæ, mortuo marito, ducatum impigre
book proclaims who with-dead her-husband the-duchy briskly
contra imperatorem retentavit, maxime intra Italiam; nam
against the-emperor held-on-to especially within Italy for
Lotharingiam et inferiores terras imperator obtinuit. Ida
Lorraine and the-lower lands the-emperor obtained Ida
vero, ut dicere cœperam, magnis spebus ad comitatum
but as to-say I-had-begun with-great hopes to the-county
Lotharingorum petendum filium Godefridum erexit: namque
of-the-Lorrainers to-be-sought her-son Godfrey raised for
seniori filio Eustachio hereditas paterna obtigerat; minor,
to-the-elder son Eustace the-inheritance paternal had-fallen the-younger
Baldewinus, pueriles adhuc annos terebat. Godefridus, habilem
Baldwin boyish still years was-wearing Godfrey fit

ad arma ætatem nactus, imperatori Henrico, de quo
for arms an-age having-got to-the-emperor Henry about whom
proximus liber loquitur, militiam suam consecravit. Ingentibus
the-next book speaks soldiering his dedicated with-huge
ergo sudoribus ejus in se transferens amicitiam, egregia
therefore sweats his to himself transferring friendship by-the-excellent
liberalitate Cæsaris totam pro stipendio accepit Lotharingiam.
liberality of-Caesar the-whole as pay he-received Lorraine
Unde factum est, ut, orta inter papam et Henricum
whence done it-was that with-arisen between the-pope and Henry
simultate, cum eo ad oppugnandam Romam profectus,
a-grudge with him for storming Rome having-set-out
eam partem muri quæ vigiliis suis observabatur primus
that part of-the-wall which by-his watches was-guarded first
perrumperet, magnam fenestram irrupturis aperiens.
broke-through a-great window for-those-about-to-burst-in opening
Ita potissimum sudans, et præfervidis venis suspiriosus,
so most sweating and with-overheated veins panting
cellarium subterraneum, quod forte se discursanti
a-cellar underground which by-chance itself to-him-running-about
obtulerat, ingressus est: ibi, cum nimio vini haustu
had-offered entered he-has there when with-excessive of-wine draft
intemperantiam sitis placasset, febrim quartanam iniit.
the-intemperance of-thirst he-had-appeased a-fever quartan he-entered
Dicunt alii venenato Falerno infectum; quod soleant Romani,
they-say others by-poisoned Falernian infected because are-wont the-Romans
et illius terræ homines, totis infundere toxica tonnis.
and of-that land the-men into-whole to-pour poisons casks
Alii, ei partem illam mœnium sorte obtigisse ubi Tiberis
others to-him part that of-the-walls by-lot to-have-fallen where the-Tiber
influens mane sævas exhalat nebulas, quarum pernicie
flowing-in in-the-morning cruel breathes-out mists whose by-deadliness

omnes milites ejus præter decem interiisse; ipsum, amissis
all the-soldiers his except ten to-have-perished he-himself with-lost
crinibus et unguibus, dubie convaluisse. Verumtamen,
hair and nails doubtfully to-have-recovered nevertheless
quodlibet horum fuerit, constat eum nunquam continuæ
whichever of-these it-was it-is-established him never of-continuous
sed lentæ febris incommodo vacasse; donec, audita
but slow fever from-the-trouble to-have-been-free until with-heard
fama viæ Jerosolimitanæ, illuc se iturum vovit si
the-report of-the-way to-Jerusalem thither himself about-to-go he-vowed if
Deus propitius ei salutem largiretur: quo voto emisso,
God propitious to-him health should-grant with-which vow uttered
ita ducis vires refloruisse, ut nodosos integer artus,
so of-the-duke the-strength to-have-reflowered that in-his-knotty sound limbs
et spatioso erectus pectore, quasi squalentibus annis exutus,
and with-broad upright chest as-if the-squalid years stripped-off
recenti emicaret juventa. Quare, divinis beneficiis in se
with-fresh he-shone youth wherefore to-the-divine benefits into himself
confluentibus responsurus, Jerosolimam ivit vel primus vel
flowing-together about-to-respond to-Jerusalem he-went either first or
cum primis, magnas in bellum trahens catervas; et quamvis
with the-first great into war drawing troops and although
durum et exercitatum militem haberet, nullus tamen eo
hard and practiced soldiery he-had no-one yet than-him
vel prior in congressu, vel promptior in effectu, habebatur.
either earlier in the-encounter or readier in effect was-held
Denique notum est, quod Turchum, in Antiochena obsidione
finally known it-is that a-Turk in the-Antioch siege
pugnam singularem poscentem, medium a lateribus
a-fight single demanding through-the-middle from the-sides
gladio Lotharingo dissecuerit; et jam palpitabat arvis
with-the-sword the-Lorrainer he-cut-apart and already palpitated in-the-fields

medietas hominis, cum alteram cornipes volucri cursu
half of-the-man while the-other the-horn-footed-steed in-swift course
asportavit, adeo firme nebulo insederat; alterum, æque
carried-off so-much firmly the-scoundrel had-sat another equally
congressum, librata in caput spatha a vertice ad inguina
engaged with-balanced on the-head broadsword from the-crown to the-groin
diffiderit; nec adhuc ictus horrendus steterit, sed sellam et
he-split nor still the-stroke horrible stopped but the-saddle and
spinam equi penitus disciderit. Audivi veracem hominem
spine of-the-horse thoroughly it-cut-apart I-have-heard a-truthful man
referentem vidisse se quod subjiciam: in ipsa obsidione
relating to-have-seen himself what I-shall-subjoin in the-very siege
militem ducis pabulari progressum, et a leone invasum,
a-soldier of-the-duke for-foraging gone-forth and by a-lion attacked
objectu clypei mortem aliquamdiu distulisse; indoluisse
by-the-interposing of-his-shield death for-some-time to-have-delayed to-have-grieved
Godefridum viso, et venabulo feram transfodisse;
Godfrey at-the-sight and with-a-hunting-spear the-beast to-have-pierced
illam sauciam, et dolore acrius sævientem, in principem
it wounded and with-pain more-fiercely raging upon the-prince
irruisse, adeo ut ferro quod extabat e vulnere tibiam
to-have-rushed so-much that with-the-iron which stood-out from the-wound shin
ejus læderet; et, nisi properasset gladio beluam eviscerare,
his it-hurt and unless he-had-hastened with-the-sword the-beast to-disembowel
illud virtutis specimen potuisset dente ferino interire. His
that of-valor specimen could-have by-tooth beastly to-perish by-these
successibus clarus, in regem Jerosolimæ levatur; propterea quod
successes famous as king of-Jerusalem is-raised for-this that
esset genere et virtute conspicuus, nec tamen superbus. Parvum
he-was in-birth and in-valor conspicuous nor yet proud small
admodum et finibus angustum fuit regnum, quod, præter
very and in-boundaries narrow was the-kingdom which besides

paucas in circuitu villas, nullas pene urbes haberet: nam et
a-few in the-circuit villages no almost cities had for also
infesta regis valitudo, quam statim post bellum Babilonicum
the-hostile of-the-king illness which at-once after the-war Babylonian
incurrerat, ferias bellis dedit, ut nihil acquireretur; et
he-had-incurred a-holiday to-wars gave so-that nothing was-acquired and
divina sollertia barbaricas aviditates toto illo anno probe
the-divine skill the-barbarian greeds the-whole that year well
compescuit, ut nihil amitteretur. Fama est regem otii
checked so-that nothing was-lost the-report is the-king of-leisure
desuetudine febrim antiquam nactum fuisse; sed ego
from-the-unaccustomedness the-fever old caught to-have-been but I
conjicio Deum placitam sibi animam, et tot laboribus
conjecture God a-pleasing to-himself soul and by-so-many labors
emeritam, in melius regnum transferre voluisse mature, ne
having-earned into a-better kingdom to-transfer to-have-wished early lest
malitia mutaret animam ejus, aut fictio deciperet intellectum
malice should-change soul his or pretense should-deceive the-understanding
illius. Igitur, rota temporis referente annuum regni
his therefore with-the-wheel of-time bringing-back the-yearly of-the-reign
spatium, placida morte resolutus, et sub Golgothana rupe
space by-a-placid death dissolved and under the-Golgotha rock
tumulatus est. Rex invicti sicut in ferrum sic in mortem
buried he-was a-king unconquered as to the-sword so to death
animi, qui lacrymas astantium sæpe benignus coercuerit;
of-mind who the-tears of-the-bystanders often kindly checked
interrogatusque de successore, neminem nominatim, sed
and-asked about a-successor no-one by-name but
eum qui dignus foret, pronuntiaverit: nec unquam regium
him who worthy should-be pronounced nor ever the-royal
insigne ferre sustinuerit, professus unicam esse arrogantiam si
insignia to-wear endured declaring unique to-be the-arrogance if

coronaretur ipse ad gloriam in ea urbe qua Deus coronatus
should-be-crowned he for glory in that city in-which God crowned
fuerat ad contumeliam. Obiit quintodecimo kalendas Augusti.
had-been for insult he-died on-the-fifteenth kalends of-August

De Baldewino

BALDWIN AT EDESSA

On Godfrey's death Tancred and the other nobles proclaimed his brother Baldwin, then in Mesopotamia, the future king. William sets down Baldwin's deeds after Fulcher of Chartres, his chaplain. Leaving the main army three days from Antioch, Baldwin received Tarsus and then Turbessel, and Cilicia, Armenia, and Mesopotamia sought his friendship; the duke of Edessa, childless and hard pressed, offered to adopt him, and Baldwin crossed the Euphrates with eighty knights, was welcomed, and, when the citizens tore the duke to pieces, took the city's lordship. In November, at Bohemond's urging, he set out for Jerusalem with Bohemond and Daimbert of Pisa; the pilgrims suffered hunger, rain, and cold, reached Jerusalem at midwinter, made Daimbert patriarch, and hurried home, beating off a Turkish ambush near Baalbek by a feigned flight. When Bohemond was captured by the Danishmend, Baldwin gathered a force to avenge him; the Turk withdrew in good order, and Baldwin, finding battle refused, turned back, taking over Melitene with the consent of its prefect Gabriel.

Eo defuncto Tancredus et alii proceres Baldewinum,
with-him dead Tancred and other nobles Baldwin
fratrem ejus, futurum regem pronuntiant, qui tum in
the-brother his future king proclaim who then in
Mesopotamia morabatur; nam Eustachius senior, qui cum
Mesopotamia was-staying for Eustace the-elder who with
Godefrido Jerosolimam venerat, jamdudum hereditarium
Godfrey to-Jerusalem had-come long-since his-hereditary
solum repetierat. Baldewini actus integra et brevi veritate
soil had-sought-again of-Baldwin the-acts with-whole and brief truth

apponentur, fidei soliditate accommodata dictis Fulkerii
will-be-set-out of-faith with-the-solidity accommodated to-the-sayings of-Fulcher
Carnotensis; qui, capellanus ipsius, aliquanta de ipso
of-Chartres who chaplain of-him-himself some-things about him
scripsit, stilo non quidem agresti, sed, ut dici solet,
wrote in-a-style not indeed rustic but as to-be-said is-wont
sine nitore ac palæstra, et qui alios admonere potuit ut
without polish and training and who others to-admonish could that
accuratius scriberent. Baldewinus igitur, iter sanctum
more-carefully they-should-write Baldwin therefore the-journey holy
cum ceteris adorsus, multos milites habuit indolis suæ
with the-others having-undertaken many soldiers had of-character his
complices; quibus fretus, novos sibi exercitus ipse
accomplices on-whom relying new for-himself armies he-himself
moliri, splendidas occasiones aucupari, quibus virtus
to-set-in-motion splendid occasions to-hunt-for by-which valor
enitescere posset. Denique, non contentus communi omnium
to-shine-forth could finally not content with-the-common of-all
laude, trium dierum ab Antiochia spatio a reliquis
praise of-three days from Antioch for-the-space from the-rest
discedens, Tarsum, Ciliciæ urbem mobilem, voluntate civium
departing Tarsus of-Cilicia a-city mobile by-the-will of-the-citizens
suscepit; Tarsum, Pauli quondam apostoli alumpnam, in
received Tarsus of-Paul once the-apostle the-nurse in
cujus honore ibi ecclesia episcopatus cernitur. Voluntarie
whose honor there a-church of-a-bishopric is-seen voluntarily
Tarsenses se ejus clientelæ subdidere, quod essent
the-people-of-Tarsus themselves his to-clientship subjected because they-were
Christiani, et ipsius patrocinio se sperarent a Turchis
Christians and his-very by-patronage themselves they-hoped from the-Turks
protegi. Certatim itaque Cilices in ejus jus transiere;
to-be-protected eagerly and-so the-Cilicians into his right passed

maxime post Turbexel deditum; quod est oppidum natura
especially after Turbessel surrendered which is a-town by-nature
munitum, cujus nutum inferiora spectarent castella: quo,
fortified whose nod the-lower watched castles with-which
ut dixi, dedito cetera ejus judicium secuta. Nec solum
as I-said surrendered the-others his judgment followed nor only
Cilicia, sed et Armenia et Mesopotamia familiaritatem ejus
Cilicia but also Armenia and Mesopotamia the-friendship his
appetivere: erant enim hæ terræ pene Turchorum dominio
sought were for these lands almost of-the-Turks dominion
liberæ, sed inequitationibus infestatæ. Quare dux Edessæ
free but by-raids harassed wherefore the-duke of-Edessa
urbis, qui et civium odio et hostium gladio
city who both of-the-citizens by-the-hatred and of-the-enemies by-the-sword
premeretur, litteras necessitatis suæ interpretes Baldewino
was-pressed letters of-necessity his interpreters to-Baldwin
misit: veniret ergo quantocius, adoptionis præmio
sent he-should-come therefore as-quickly-as-possible of-adoption with-the-reward
laborem veniendi consolaturus, namque ipse sexus utriusque
the-labor of-coming about-to-console for he-himself of-sex either
prole carebat. Ea est urbs in Mesopotamia Syriæ ubere
offspring lacked that is a-city in Mesopotamia of-Syria for-the-richness
glebæ redditu et negotiatorum mercimoniis nominatissima,
of-the-soil by-the-yield and of-traders for-the-merchandise most-renowned
distans ab Euphrate viginti miliariis, ab Antiochia centum:
distant from the-Euphrates twenty miles from Antioch a-hundred
Edessam Græci, Syri Rotasiam dicunt. Ita Baldewinus,
Edessa the-Greeks the-Syrians Rotasia call so Baldwin
exacto a legatis fidelitatis sacramento, cum octoginta
with-exacted from the-envoys of-fealty oath with eighty
solum militibus Euphratem transmeavit; spectaculo mirando,
only soldiers the-Euphrates crossed with-a-spectacle wonderful

seu dicere velis fortitudinis, seu temeritatis, ut inter
whether to-call-it you-wish of-bravery or of-rashness that among
circumfusas barbarorum nationes, quas alter haberet vel pro
surrounding of-barbarians nations which another would-have either for
gente vel pro incredulitate suspectas, cum tantillo exercitu
race or for unbelief suspect with so-small an-army
non hæsitaret procedere. Et ab Armeniis quidem et Syris
not he-hesitated to-advance and by the-Armenians indeed and Syrians
grato excipiebatur gaudio, et indulgenti fovebatur hospitio,
with-grateful he-was-received joy and with-indulgent was-cherished hospitality
cum crucibus et candelabris per tramites occurrentibus.
with crosses and candlesticks along the-paths meeting
Turchi autem, posterius agmen temptare aggressi, sollertia
the-Turks moreover the-rear column to-try having-undertaken by-the-skill
Baldewini omnibus frustrati sunt insidiis; Samosathenis
of-Baldwin in-all foiled were ambushes with-the-Samosatans
exemplum fugæ facientibus. Samosatha est civitas ultra
an-example of-flight making Samosata is a-city beyond
Euphraten, de qua fuit Paulus Samosathenus, cujus hæresim
the-Euphrates from which was Paul of-Samosata whose heresy
confutatam in historia Eusebii leget qui volet: hanc etiam,
refuted in the-history of-Eusebius will-read who wishes this also
si bene occurrit memoriæ, dicit Josephus obsedisse Antonium
if well it-occurs to-memory says Josephus to-have-besieged Antony
quando ad eum Herodes venit. Hujus igitur urbis incolæ
when to him Herod came of-this therefore city the-inhabitants
Turchi, qui primi fuissent in Francos audaciæ incentivum
Turks who first had-been against the-Franks of-daring an-incentive
primi defectionis dedere auspicium. Itaque Baldewinus, tuto
the-first of-defection gave the-omen and-so Baldwin safely
Edessam perveniens, nihil inferius quam sperabat invenit; nam
to-Edessa arriving nothing lower than he-hoped found for

et invitatoris profuso favore susceptus, et non post multum
both of-his-inviter by-lavish favor received and not after much
tempus, illo a perfidis civibus dilaniato, legitimum
time with-him by the-treacherous citizens torn-apart the-lawful
urbis ducatum adeptus, toto tempore quo Franci
of-the-city dukedom having-obtained in-the-whole time in-which the-Franks
apud Antiochiam et Jerosolimam laboraverunt non immunis
at Antioch and Jerusalem labored not immune
bellorum fuit, frequentibus assultibus hostes contristans suos.
from-wars was by-frequent assaults the-enemies grieving his-own
At vero Novembri mense admonitus a Boamundo principe
but indeed in-November month admonished by Bohemond the-prince
Antiochiæ ut iter Jerosolimæ jam tandem experirentur,
of-Antioch that the-journey of-Jerusalem now at-last they-should-try
profectionem composuit; propulsatisque solo candidi vexilli
the-setting-out he-arranged and-with-driven-off by-the-only of-the-white banner
visu, quod insigne in prælio habebat, Turchis, qui sperato
sight which as-a-sign in battle he-had the-Turks who at-the-hoped-for
ejus discessu pacem læserant, a dextra relinquens Antiochiam,
his departure the-peace had-violated on the-right leaving Antioch
venit Laodiciam. Ibi liberalitate Raimundi comitis, qui ei
he-came to-Laodicea there by-the-liberality of-Raymond the-count who over-that
civitati principabatur, tenui pretio sufficientiam stipis
city ruled at-slender price sufficiency of-provision
mercatus, Gibello transito recentibus vestigiis Boamundum
having-bought with-Jabala passed in-the-fresh footsteps Bohemond
insecutus est, qui eum fixis tentoriis operiebatur. Junxit
he-followed has who him with-fixed tents was-awaiting joined
se cum eis communione viæ Daibertus Pisanus
himself with them in-the-fellowship of-the-road Daimbert of-Pisa
archiepiscopus, qui navigio multis sibi sociatis civibus
archbishop who by-ship with-many to-himself associated citizens

Laodiciam applicuerat; et præterea duo alii episcopi. Ita
at-Laodicea had-landed and besides two other bishops so
junctis agminibus computabantur, æstimatione librata, esse
with-joined columns they-were-reckoned by-estimate weighed to-be
viginti quinque milia: quorum multi, terras Saracenorum
twenty five thousand of-whom many the-lands of-the-Saracens
ingressi, pro caritate mercimonii fame conclusi; multi ex
having-entered for the-dearness of-merchandise by-hunger were-shut-in many of
equitibus in pedites mutati, equis inedia interceptis.
the-horsemen into foot-soldiers changed with-horses by-starvation cut-off
Accedebat miseriis imbrium affluentia, quod in illis terris
was-added to-the-miseries of-rains the-abundance because in those lands
quasi præcipiti torrente pluvia hybernis duntaxat mensibus
as-if with-a-headlong torrent rain in-winter only months
inundet; itaque pauperes, carentes mutatoriis, algido rigore
floods and-so the-poor lacking changes-of-clothes by-the-cold stiffness
moriebantur, quampluribus diebus nulli tecto succedentes.
died for-very-many days under-no roof coming
Et hujus quidem calamitatis nullum erat remedium, quod et
and of-this indeed calamity no was remedy because both
tentoria et ligna deficerent. At vero famem nonnihil levabant,
tents and timbers were-lacking but indeed hunger somewhat relieved
arundines mellitas continue dentibus terentes, quas canamellas,
reeds honeyed continuously with-their-teeth grinding which cane-honeys
nomine composito ex canna et melle, vocant. Sic bis omnino
by-a-name compounded from cane and honey they-call so twice altogether
a Tripolitanis et Cæsariensibus immenso ære necessaria
from the-people-of-Tripoli and of-Caesarea for-huge money necessities
nacti, Jerosolimam venere solstitii brumalis die. Occurrit
having-got to-Jerusalem they-came of-the-solstice wintry on-the-day met
illis ad portas rex Godefridus cum fratre Eustachio, quem ad
them at the-gates king Godfrey with his-brother Eustace whom to

hoc tempus detinuerat, nihil liberalitatis et gratiæ in eorum
this time he-had-detained nothing of-liberality and of-grace in their
omittens obsequio. Illi, peractis in Bethleem ex more
omitting service they with-performed in Bethlehem from custom
Dominicæ Nativitatis sollempnibus, Daibertum patriarcham
of-the-Lord's Nativity solemnities Daimbert as-patriarch
constituere. In quo facto Urbani papæ consensum obligatum
appointed in which deed of-Urban the-pope the-consent bound
non ambigo; quod esset is et reverendus senio, et potens
not I-doubt because he-was he both reverend in-old-age and powerful
eloquio, et pollens marsupio. Igitur post Circumcisionem
in-eloquence and strong in-purse therefore after the-Circumcision
Domini sumptis in Jerico palmis, quod insigne peregrinantium
of-the-Lord with-taken in Jericho palms which as-the-sign of-pilgrims
antiquitas instituit, sedes quisque suas raptim repetere
antiquity established seats each their-own hastily to-seek-again
properarunt. Causa festinationis erat putor inconditorum
hastened the-cause of-the-haste was the-stench of-unburied
cadaverum, quorum ita exhalabat cænum ut ipsum violaret
corpses of-which so breathed-out the-filth that the-very it-violated
cælum. Quocirca tabida pestis, in auras effluens, multos ex his
sky wherefore a-wasting plague into the-airs flowing-out many of those
qui noviter venerant letho dedit; ceteri per urbes maritimas,
who newly had-come to-death gave the-rest through cities coastal
Tiberiadem dico et Cæsaream Philippi, maturaverunt iter,
Tiberias I-mean and Caesarea of-Philip hastened the-journey
quod eos tenuitas victus et hostilis metus urgebant. Sed
because them the-slenderness of-food and hostile fear pressed but
fami, ut dixi, consuluere pedum celeritate: et trecentorum
for-hunger as I-said they-provided by-the-speed of-their-feet and of-three-hundred
militum, qui eos de Baldac castello infestabant, furori
soldiers who them from Baalbek castle harassed for-the-fury

prospexerunt militaris artis calliditate; namque simulata
they-provided of-military art by-cunning for with-feigned
paulisper fuga, ut ipsi de angustiis locorum evadentes
for-a-little flight so-that they from the-narrows of-the-places escaping
Turchos inducerent, consulto cessere, sed mox retroversi
the-Turks might-lead-in deliberately they-yielded but soon turned-back
dispersos hostes pro libito fudere. Putaverant illi nostros
the-scattered enemies at pleasure they-routed had-thought they ours
inhabiles pugnæ, quod essent clypei eorum et arcus pluviali
unfit for-battle because were shields their and bows by-the-rainy
abundantia lentati; nesciebantque quod non in armorum
abundance softened and-they-did-not-know that not in of-arms
vel in tegminum fiducia, sed in excellenti vi animorum
or in of-coverings confidence but in the-excellent force of-minds
et crudo robore brachiorum victoria virorum consistat.
and the-raw strength of-arms the-victory of-men consists
Et tum quidem Baldewinus Edessam, Boamundus vero
and then indeed Baldwin to-Edessa Bohemond but
Antiochiam, incolumes remearunt. Initio autem Julii
to-Antioch unharmed returned at-the-beginning moreover of-July
mensis licentia famæ Baldewini auribus detulit splendidum
month the-license of-rumor of-Baldwin to-the-ears brought the-splendid
ducum nostrorum margaritum obfuscatum, Boamundum scilicet
of-leaders our pearl darkened Bohemond namely
captum, et in catenas conjectum, a quodam Danisman
captured and into chains thrown by a-certain Danishmend
gentili, et in illis terris potenti. Quapropter, Edessenorum
a-gentile and in those lands powerful wherefore of-the-Edessans
et Antiochenorum manu coacta, insignem Christianorum
and Antiochenes with-a-band gathered the-remarkable of-the-Christians
contumeliam ulcisci sperabat. Porro Turcus, qui magis fraude
insult to-avenge he-hoped further the-Turk who more by-fraud

et eventu quam virtute et bellica militia ducem cepisset,
and chance than by-valor and warlike soldiering the-leader had-captured
quod cum paucis ad Mellentiniam urbem recipiendam
because with a-few to Melitene the-city to-be-received
venerat, sciens Francos pro rei pudore viribus extremis
he-had-come knowing the-Franks for of-the-thing the-shame strength extreme
in se usuros, in sua se recepit, compositis sane
against him about-to-use into his-own-lands himself withdrew with-arranged indeed
ordinibus, non quasi fugam intenderet, sed quasi triumphum
ranks not as-if flight he-intended but as-if a-triumph
duceret. Tunc Baldewinus, ultra Mellentiniam duorum dierum
he-led then Baldwin beyond Melitene of-two days
viam progressus, cum videret hostem belli necessitatem
the-way having-advanced when he-saw the-enemy of-war the-necessity
declinare, redeundum putavit; et ante tamen urbem in
to-decline to-be-returned he-thought and before yet the-city into
suos usus, non invito præfecto Gabriele, transduxit.
his-own uses not with-unwilling the-prefect Gabriel he-brought-over

Hearing of Godfrey's death, Baldwin gave Edessa to his kinsman Baldwin and set out with two hundred knights and seven hundred foot. Many deserted; he went by Antioch, Jabala, and Laodicea to Tripoli, whose emir fed him and warned him of Duqaq's ambush near Beirut, which he beat by a feigned flight, losing four men. Received at Jerusalem, he marched on Ascalon, smoked the Turks out of their mountain caves, and led his men past Hebron and the Dead Sea to the mountain of Aaron's church, then returned to offer God the first fruits of his reign.

Interea perlato ad se nuntio de fratris obitu, provincialium
meanwhile with-brought to him the-news about of-his-brother the-death of-the-provincials
ac ducum in ejus electionem consensu, commendata Edessa
and of-the-leaders into his election with-consent with-entrusted Edessa
Baldewino cognato, arctissimæ necessitudinis propinquitate
to-Baldwin his-kinsman of-the-closest of-kinship by-nearness
conjuncto, et præter hæc neque imprudenti neque ignavo,
joined and besides these-things neither imprudent nor sluggish
ad Jerosolimitanum regnum mentem impulit. Congregatis
to the-Jerusalem kingdom his-mind he-drove with-gathered
ergo equitibus ducentis, et peditibus septingentis, iter
therefore horsemen two-hundred and foot-soldiers seven-hundred a-journey
plenum mortis et periculorum ingressus est; unde audaciæ
full of-death and of-dangers entered he-has whence of-daring
tantæ contuitu multi, quos falso fideles arbitrabatur, fuga
so-great at-the-sight many whom falsely faithful he-thought by-flight
clandestina dilapsi. Ipse cum reliquis Antiochiam petiit,
secret slipped-away he with the-rest Antioch sought
ingens momentum desolatis futurus, consilio sagacis mentis
a-huge weight for-the-desolate about-to-be with-counsel of-shrewd mind
informans ut Tancredum peterent in ducatum. Inde per
instructing that Tancred they-should-seek for the-dukedom thence through

Gibellum et Laodiciam venit Tripolim: cujus urbis admiratus,
Jabala and Laodicea he-came to-Tripoli of-which city the-emir
natione quidem Turcus, sed genio naturali clementiæ
by-nation indeed a-Turk but by-natural genius of-clemency
visceribus profusus, extra muros illi victui necessaria
in-his-bowels lavish outside the-walls to-him for-food necessaries
destinavit; adjecto quinetiam benignitatis mandato ut
assigned with-added nay-even of-kindness a-command that
prudenter se ageret, quia Ducah rex Damascenorum
prudently himself he-should-conduct because Duqaq king of-the-Damascenes
tramitem angustum occupaverat per quem illum audierat
the-path narrow had-occupied by which him he-had-heard
venturum. Ille, quem puderet minis Saracenicis moveri,
about-to-come he whom it-shamed by-threats Saracen to-be-moved
constanti animo, quo proposuerat, contendit; sed, ad locum
with-constant mind whither he-had-proposed hastened but to the-place
veniens, fidem admirati probavit. Est enim citra civitatem
coming the-faith of-the-emir he-proved there-is for this-side-of the-city
Beritum, miliariis circiter quinque, locus omnino angustus
Beirut by-miles about five a-place altogether narrow
juxta mare, quem et prærupta rupium et arcta callium
beside the-sea which both the-steepness of-the-rocks and the-narrowness of-the-paths
adeo coercent, ut centum viri faucibus illis potiti, quantumvis
so-much constrain that a-hundred men of-the-jaws those possessed however-great
numerum itinerantium aditu prohibere queant. Locus
a-number of-travelers from-the-passage to-prevent they-can the-place
est inevitabilis de Tripoli Jerosolimam euntibus. Huc ergo
is unavoidable from Tripoli to-Jerusalem for-those-going hither therefore
Baldewinus perveniens, speculatores misit qui situm loci et
Baldwin arriving scouts sent who the-site of-the-place and
vires hostium renuntiarent. Regressi legati difficultatem
the-strength of-the-enemies should-report returned the-envoys the-difficulty

faucium et adversariorum qui insederant fiduciam, vix pro
of-the-pass and of-the-adversaries who had-occupied-it the-confidence scarcely for
timore intellecti anhelarunt: at Baldewinus, qui parum ab
fear understood panted but Baldwin who little from
optimo qui unquam fuerit milite distaret, nihil perterritus,
the-best who ever has-been soldier differed nothing terrified
aciem dispositam in eos constanter instituit. Tunc
a-battle-line arranged against them steadily set then
Ducah mittit aliquos qui prælia prima lacessant, eliciantque
Duqaq sends some who the-battles first may-provoke and-may-lure-out
incautos; retentans ampliores vires in locis opportunis. Itaque
the-incautious holding-back ampler forces in places suitable and-so
illi primo magno impetu venire, mox subinde subterfugere,
they at-first with-great impetus to-come soon repeatedly to-slip-away
ut nostros in angustias deducerent. Non latuit Baldewinum
so-that ours into the-narrows they-might-lead not escaped Baldwin
hujuscemodi calliditas; sed, antiquæ militiæ usu instructus,
of-this-kind cunning but of-ancient of-soldiering by-practice instructed
suis ut fugam simularent innuit; simul et, ut
to-his-men that flight they-should-feign he-signaled at-the-same-time and that
suspicionem metus urgeret, sarcinas et impedimenta quæ
the-suspicion of-fear might-urge the-packs and baggage which
posuerant resumit, et jumenta stimulis agitari, quin
they-had-put-down he-takes-up-again and the-beasts with-goads to-be-driven nay
et ordines laxari, ut hostes incurrerent, edixit. Tum
and the-ranks to-be-loosened that the-enemies might-run-in he-ordered then
vero hoc viso Turchi exultare, et dirum frendentes,
indeed with-this seen the-Turks to-exult and dreadfully gnashing
ut Eumenides exululare crederes, nostros insequi.
so-that the-Furies to-howl you-would-believe ours to-pursue
Quidam ascensis navibus littora præoccupare; quidam equis
some with-boarded ships the-shores to-seize-first some on-horses

præcurrere, et peregrinos incaute juxta mare ambulantes
to-run-ahead and the-pilgrims incautiously beside the-sea walking
interimere. Nec Franci simulatam fugam omisere donec ad
to-kill nor the-Franks the-feigned flight left-off until to
planitiem quam oculis destinaverant pervenirent: nullique
the-plain which with-their-eyes they-had-marked they-came and-no
tumultus excussere viris mentes, quinimmo necessitas
tumults shook from-the-men the-minds nay-rather the-necessity
qua intercepti erant aluit, et ministravit audaciam; et
by-which caught they-were nourished and supplied daring and
pauci terraque marique innumeras sustinuere manus. Namque,
few both-by-land and-by-sea countless withstood bands for
ut visum est satis metum finxisse, confertis ordinibus et
when seen it-was enough fear to-have-feigned with-closed ranks and
conversis signis inimicos jam jamque incursantes inclusere; ita
with-turned standards the-enemies now and-now charging they-enclosed so
versa rerum facie, qui vicerant victi, et victi
with-turned of-things face those-who had-conquered conquered and the-conquered
fuere victores. Turchi perniciosa clade prostrati; reliqui ad
were victors the-Turks with-ruinous slaughter laid-low the-rest to
naves præcipiti studio fugientes, cum in altum plus
the-ships with-headlong zeal fleeing when into the-deep more-than
jactu sagittæ processissent, ita navigium remis et totis
the-cast of-an-arrow they-had-proceeded so the-ship with-oars and whole
pectoribus innixi propellebant, quasi manibus adversariorum
breasts leaning they-pushed as-if by-the-hands of-the-adversaries
ad terram retrahi possent. Et ut miraculum non
to the-land to-be-drawn-back they-could and that the-miracle not
sicut opinabile dubites, sed sicut visibile quodammodo
as conjectural you-may-doubt but as visible in-a-way
palpes, solummodo quatuor Christiani milites fusi victoriam
you-may-touch only four Christian soldiers slain victory

ceteris sanguine peperere suo. Quapropter confirmo quod
for-the-rest with-blood bore their-own wherefore I-confirm that
nunquam Christicolæ a paganis vincerentur si ante bellum
never the-Christians by the-pagans would-be-conquered if before battle
fortitudinem suam cælestibus fulcirent præsidiis, et in bello
bravery their with-heavenly they-propped defenses and in battle
armis suis amicas superorum applicarent virtutes; sed
to-arms their friendly of-the-heavenly-ones applied powers but
quia in pace omnibus se ingurgitant flagitiis, et in
because in peace in-all themselves they-gorge outrages and in
pugna sola nituntur audacia, ideo, nec immerito, multotiens
fight on-only lean daring therefore not undeservedly many-times
fortitudo eorum deviat a bona fortuna. Comes ergo
the-bravery their strays from good fortune the-count therefore
pulchro triumpho exultans, cum reversus esset ad spolia
in-the-beautiful triumph exulting when returned he-had to the-spoils
cæsorum detrahenda, non paucos Turchos offendit vivos;
of-the-slain to-be-stripped not a-few Turks he-came-upon alive
quos dampni corporum immunes, sed pecuniis inanes, dimisit.
whom of-harm of-bodies free but of-moneys empty he-released
Ipse cum suis, ne aliqua fraus lateret, retro secedens, nocte
he with his-men lest some fraud lay-hidden back withdrawing on-night
illa sub olivarum virgultis requievit: sed mox diluculo cum
that under of-olives the-thickets rested but soon at-dawn with
expeditis ad angustias accessit, fide oculata visurus
unencumbered-men to the-narrows he-went with-eyewitness faith about-to-see
loci naturam; intuitusque omnia tuta esse, nam Turchi
of-the-place the-nature and-having-seen all-things safe to-be for the-Turks
qui pridie circa montem discursibus lascivierant, nocte
who the-day-before around the-mountain in-runnings-about had-frolicked at-night
intempesta, cæde suorum visa, omnes diffugerant,
dead with-the-slaughter of-their-own seen all had-fled

significatione fumi facta, sicut convenerat, sociis
with-a-signal of-smoke made as had-been-agreed to-his-companions
discessum hostium intimavit. Illi, morarum vinculis
the-departure of-the-enemies he-intimated they of-delays with-the-chains
absolutis, ducem continuo secuti. Tunc Beriti admiratus
freed the-leader at-once followed then of-Beirut the-emir
victum prætereuntibus misit, pro virtute tam pauci exercitus
food to-those-passing sent at the-valor so of-few of-an-army
stupefactus. Idem et Tyrii, et Sidonii, et Acharonitæ qui
astounded the-same also the-Tyrians and the-Sidonians and the-Acconites who
et Ptholomaitæ, fecere, tacito metu Francorum fortitudinem
also Ptolemaites did with-silent fear of-the-Franks the-bravery
suspicientes. Nec minus homines Tancredi, qui in Chaipha
looking-up-to nor less the-men of-Tancred who in Haifa
erant, liberales fuere, quamvis ipse absens esset. Castri illius
were generous were although he-himself absent was of-the-castle that
nomen antiquum reperire nequeo, quia omnes mediterraneæ
the-name ancient to-find I-cannot because all the-inland
civitates, quæ in Josepho leguntur quondam fuisse, modo
cities which in Josephus are-read once to-have-been now
vel non sunt, vel, in viculos mutatæ, nomina perdiderunt:
either not are or into villages changed their-names have-lost
maritimæ integræ manent. Ita per Cæsaream Palestinæ
the-coastal-ones whole remain so through Caesarea of-Palestine
et Azotum in Joppen ventum, ubi prima illi gratulatio
and Arsuf into Joppa it-was-come where the-first to-him congratulation
regni fuit, civibus ingenti gaudio portas aperientibus.
of-the-kingdom was with-the-citizens with-huge joy the-gates opening
Igitur ab Joppitis Jerosolimam deductus, et ibi
therefore by the-people-of-Joppa to-Jerusalem escorted and there
favorabiliter exceptus, dierum sex spatio quieti satisfecit.
favorably received for-six days the-space to-rest he-gave-satisfaction

Inde, ne Turchi dubitarent indolem regni ejus magno
thence lest the-Turks should-doubt the-nature of-the-reign his with-great
eorum malo adolescere, versus Ascalonem expeditionem movit.
their harm to-grow toward Ascalon an-expedition he-moved
Cumque non longe ab urbe vires suas ostentaret, impetentes
and-when not far from the-city strength his he-displayed the-attacking
Ascalonitas facili opera depulit; opportunum tempus ad id
Ascalonites with-easy effort he-drove-off the-opportune time for that
quod mente intendebat operiens. Denique repulsionem illorum
which in-mind he-intended awaiting finally the-repulse of-them
gloriæ suæ tunc sufficere arbitratus, in montana receptui
for-glory his then to-suffice thinking into the-mountains the-retreat
cecinit, ut hostes persequeretur; nec non et inimicorum
he-sounded that the-enemies he-might-pursue nor not also of-the-enemies
dampno necessaria suis conquisiturus, qui pro penuria
with-the-loss necessaries for-his-own about-to-acquire who for the-poverty
terræ fame singultiebant, quia illo anno messis ægra
of-the-land with-hunger sobbed because in-that year the-harvest sick
victum negaverat, spem provinciæ sterili proventu decipiens.
food had-denied the-hope of-the-province with-barren yield deceiving
Itaque montana conscendit, quo habitatores terræ Turchi
and-so the-mountains he-climbed whither the-inhabitants of-the-land the-Turks
relictis villis concesserant, Syros secum in penitus abditos
with-left villages had-withdrawn the-Syrians with-them into deeply hidden
specus immergentes: sed invenere Franci quo commenta
caves plunging but found the-Franks by-what the-devices
fugitivorum fallerent, fumo in ora cavernarum
of-the-fugitives they-might-cheat with-smoke into the-mouths of-the-caves
immisso; quo latrones fugati pertinaciam amisere, uni et
sent-in by-which the-robbers routed their-obstinacy lost one and
uni egredientes. Ita Turchi ad unum omnes interfecti, Syri
one coming-out so the-Turks to one all killed the-Syrians

reservati. Inde digressus exercitus, Arabiamque petiturus,
kept thence having-departed the-army and-Arabia about-to-seek
busta præteriit patriarcharum Abrahæ, Isaac, et Jacob, et
the-tombs passed of-the-patriarchs Abraham Isaac and Jacob and
trium matronarum Saræ, Rebeccæ, Liæ; locus est in
of-the-three matrons Sarah Rebecca Leah the-place is in
Hebron, distans ab Jerosolimis tredecim milibus; nam corpus
Hebron distant from Jerusalem thirteen miles for the-body
Joseph jacet in Neapoli, quæ olim Sichem dicta est, marmore
of-Joseph lies in Neapolis which once Shechem called was with-marble
candido tectum, omnibusque transeuntibus perspicuum; ubi
white covered and-to-all passers-by visible where
quoque fratrum visuntur mausolea, sed inferiori gloria. Venit
also of-his-brothers are-seen the-mausoleums but with-lower glory came
ergo exercitus in vallem ubi quondam Deus Sodomam et
therefore the-army into the-valley where once God Sodom and
Gomorram subvertit, cælestem flammam in scelestos jaculatus.
Gomorrah overthrew heavenly flame on the-wicked hurling
Ibi lacus per octodecim milia diffunditur, nullius viventis
there a-lake through eighteen miles is-spread of-no living-thing
capax; præterea tractatu adeo horribilis, ut potantium
capable besides in-handling so-much horrible that of-those-drinking
ora torqueat, et gustu amaro rictus distendat. Valli
the-mouths it-twists and with-taste bitter the-gapes stretches over-the-valley
mons prominet, per loca scrobes salsas eructans, et quasi
a-mountain projects through places pits salty belching-out and as-if
congelato vitro totus perlucidus; ubi colligitur quod quidam
of-frozen glass wholly translucent where is-gathered what some
nitrum, quidam salis gemmam, vocant. Evadentes ergo lacum
natron some of-salt the-gem call escaping therefore the-lake
venerunt ad villam sane locupletissimam et mellitis pomis
they-came to a-village truly most-wealthy and with-honeyed fruits

quæ dactylos dicunt fœcundam; quorum esu se
which dates they-call fertile whose with-the-eating themselves
infarcientes vix lacunas ventrium implere, vix ingluviem
stuffing scarcely the-hollows of-their-bellies to-fill scarcely the-gluttony
faucium præ dulcedine temperare valebant. Cetera timore
of-their-throats for sweetness to-temper could the-rest by-fear
incolarum abrasa, præter aliquantos Æthiopes, ferrugineam
of-the-inhabitants scraped-away except some Ethiopians a-rusty
capillorum lanugine fuliginem prætendentes; quorum cædem
of-hair with-the-wool soot displaying whose slaughter
nostri æstimantes infra virtutem suam, non eos ira, sed
ours reckoning beneath valor their not them with-anger but
risu dignati sunt. Huic villæ subjacet vallis in qua
with-laughter deigned have to-this village lies-under a-valley in which
hodieque silex cernitur quo percusso Moises mussitanti
even-today the-flint is-seen with-which struck Moses to-the-muttering
populo aquas infudit: latex adhuc tam uberi et præcipiti
people waters poured-in the-liquid still so with-abundant and headlong
rivo influit, ut molendinorum vertigines impetu suo rotet.
stream flows-in that of-the-mills the-whirls by-its impetus it-turns
Tum in declivi montis extat ecclesia, in honore legiferi
then on the-slope of-the-mountain stands a-church in honor of-the-law-giver
Aaron ædificata; ubi ipse, mediante et cooperante fratre,
Aaron built where he with-mediating and co-operating his-brother
serebat cum Deo alloquia. Ibi a præviis, viarum gnaris, qui
joined with God conversations there from the-guides of-the-ways knowing who
ex Saracenis Christiani essent, addiscentes inde usque ad
from Saracens Christians were learning thence all-the-way to
Babilonem nihil esse nisi jejunum solum et omnium bonorum
Babylon nothing to-be except barren soil and of-all good-things

indigum, Jerosolimam reversi sunt, primitias regni
lacking to-Jerusalem returned they-have the-first-fruits of-the-kingdom
tot hostilium regionum subjectione Deo consecraturi.
so-many of-hostile of-regions by-subjection to-God about-to-consecrate

KING BALDWIN

Baldwin was crowned at Bethlehem on Christmas Day by the patriarch Daimbert, lord of a small and almost shameful kingdom: scarcely four hundred knights and as many foot guarded Jerusalem, Ramla, Haifa, and Joppa, and pilgrims who came by sea went home, the land route shut. In 1101 the holy fire failed on Easter Eve and lit a lamp of the Sepulcher only at the next dawn. A Genoese and Pisan fleet, promised a third of the spoil, took Arsuf, and Caesarea was stormed by ladders. The Babylonian army was routed near Ramla, Baldwin killing its leader. William will not tell all his wars, only that Baldwin fought great battles with a few men and fled only at Ramla and Acre, flights followed by victories.

Paratis igitur regiis insignibus, magna gloria in Bethleem
with-prepared therefore royal insignia with-great glory in Bethlehem
die Dominicæ Nativitatis a Daiberto patriarcha coronatus
on-the-day of-the-Lord's Nativity by Daimbert the-patriarch crowned
est Baldewinus, fausta omnibus acclamantibus; nam
was Baldwin with-favorable-wishes all acclaiming for
ex tunc et deinceps nihil non venerationis regiæ et
from then and thenceforth nothing not of-veneration royal both
ipse labore suo est meritus, et aliorum favore adeptus,
he by-labor his has earned and of-others by-the-favor obtained
quamvis minimi et pene dico pudendi regni dominus.
although of-a-very-small and almost I-say shameful kingdom the-lord
Quare decet Christi Domini clementiam suspicere, et in
wherefore it-befits of-Christ the-Lord the-clemency to-look-up-to and in
potentiæ illius contuitu spatiari, cujus suffragio timeri
of-the-power his the-contemplation to-wander whose by-the-support to-be-feared

Christiani possent qui officere nequirent; vix enim in
the-Christians could who to-harm could-not scarcely for in
tota militia quadringenti milites erant, et tot pedites,
the-whole soldiery four-hundred soldiers there-were and as-many foot-soldiers
qui Jerosolimam, et Ramulam, et Caipham, et Joppen
who Jerusalem and Ramla and Haifa and Joppa
custodirent. Nam qui veniebant navigio, intuto tamen
should-guard for those-who came by-ship unsafe yet
inter tot hostium portus animo sanctis adoratis,
among so-many of-enemies ports in-mind with-the-holy-places worshiped
statim repatriandum censebant, pedestri via penitus interclusa.
at-once to-return-home they-decided the-foot way altogether shut-off
Cumulabat quinimmo difficultatem quod Martio mense
increased nay-rather the-difficulty that in-March month
Tancredus discesserat Antiochiæ principaturus, et nec ipse
Tancred had-departed over-Antioch about-to-rule and neither he
regi, nec rex ipsi, auxilium pro viæ longitudine ferre
to-the-king nor the-king to-him help for of-the-road the-length to-bring
valebat; adde quod, si necessitas exposceret, sine irreparabilis
could add that if necessity demanded without of-irreparable
discriminis metu gentem suam de uno in aliud castrum
danger fear people his from one into another castle
non transduceret. Evidens ergo miraculum pronuntio, quod
not he-could-lead-across evident therefore a-miracle I-pronounce that
Dei solius tutum suffragio tanta barbarorum horrebat natio.
of-God alone safe by-the-support so-great of-barbarians dreaded a-nation
Illo anno, qui fuit Dominicæ incarnationis millesimus
in-that year which was of-the-Lord's incarnation thousandth
centesimus primus, ignis sacratus, qui solebat vigiliam
hundredth first the-fire sacred which was-wont the-vigil
Paschæ illustrare, tardavit plus solito. Sabbato enim lectis
of-Easter to-illuminate delayed more than-usual on-Saturday for with-read

alternatim lectionibus Græce et Latine, repetitoque ter
alternately lessons in-Greek and in-Latin and-with-repeated thrice
"Kirie eleison," et clara Syrorum melodia perstrepente,
Kyrie eleison and with-clear of-the-Syrians melody resounding
cum necdum appareret ignis, et jam occiduus sol vesperam
when not-yet appeared the-fire and already the-setting sun the-evening
urgeret, noctem inveheret, ab omnibus cum mærore in domos
pressed night brought-in by all with grief to homes
discessum. Placuerat enim perpenso consilio ut illa nocte
it-was-departed it-had-pleased for with-weighed counsel that on-that night
omni homine vacaret sancti Sepulcri ecclesia, ne aliquis,
of-every man should-be-empty of-the-holy Sepulcher the-church lest anyone
cui ulcerosa squalebat conscientia, Deum magis irritaret
whose ulcerous fouled conscience God more should-provoke
ingerendi impudentia. Jamque diluculo sensim in lucem
of-intruding by-the-impudence and-now with-dawn gradually into light
serpente, processio Latinorum ad templum Salomonis edicitur,
creeping a-procession of-the-Latins to the-temple of-Solomon is-proclaimed
ut ibi oraturi Dei misericordiam invitarent: idem circa
that there about-to-pray of-God the-mercy they-might-invite the-same around
sepulcrum Domini faciebant Syri, vi doloris barbas et
the-tomb of-the-Lord did the-Syrians by-the-force of-grief beards and
capillos vellicantes. Nec diu potuere pati divina viscera,
hair plucking nor long could to-bear(-it) the-divine bowels
confestim igne in unam lampadem sepulcri immisso. Quem
at-once with-fire into one lamp of-the-tomb sent-in which
cum animadvertisset Syrus per fenestras scintillantem,
when had-noticed a-Syrian through the-windows sparkling
plausu manuum lætitiam prodens, cursum patriarchæ
with-applause of-hands joy betraying the-course of-the-patriarch
acceleravit. Ille, clavibus quas gestabat aditum ædiculæ
hastened he with-the-keys which he-carried the-entrance of-the-little-house

sepulcralis aperiens, cæleste munus cereo accenso extulit,
of-the-tomb opening the-heavenly gift with-a-candle lit brought-out
omnibus ad hoc concurrentibus communicans. Mox per
to-all to this running-together sharing-it soon through
omnem ecclesiam ceteræ divinitus accensæ sunt lampades;
all the-church the-other divinely lit were lamps
mirum in modum illa, quæ proxime illuminanda esset, fumo
wonderful in manner that which next to-be-illuminated was with-smoke
præmisso vicinam accensionem docente. Sic nimirum Christi
sent-ahead the-neighboring kindling teaching so no-doubt of-Christ
vetus artificium novit quos amat terrere ut mulceat,
the-old art knows those-whom he-loves to-frighten that he-may-soothe
et in materiam transeat laudis comminatio potestatis. Quia
and into material may-pass of-praise the-threat of-power because
enim dona Dei usitata assiduitate ipsa vilescunt hominibus;
for the-gifts of-God customary by-assiduity itself grow-cheap to-men
plerumque assensum indulgentiæ suæ raritate commendat, ut
usually the-assent of-indulgence his by-rarity he-commends that
ametur gratius quod desideratum fuerat ardentius.
may-be-loved more-gratefully what desired had-been more-ardently
Tunc stolus navium Januensium et Pisanorum Laodiciam
then a-fleet of-ships of-the-Genoese and of-the-Pisans at-Laodicea
applicuerat, et inde Joppen prospero cursu navigaverat;
had-landed and thence to-Joppa with-prosperous course had-sailed
nautæque, tractis ad terram ratibus, Jerosolimæ cum rege
and-the-sailors with-drawn to land vessels at-Jerusalem with the-king
Pascha exegerant. Quorum ipse virtutem pretio vadatus,
Easter had-spent whose he valor with-a-price having-bound
tertiam partem pecuniæ pepigit de omnibus urbibus quas
the-third part of-the-money agreed from all cities which
adquirere pariter possent, et vicum unum civitatis quem
to-acquire together they-could and a-quarter one of-the-city which

eligerent: ita præcipites, aurique cupidine cæcos magis
they-should-choose so the-headlong and-of-gold with-greed blind rather
quam pro Dei amore, impulit, ut, sanguinem suum
than for of-God the-love he-drove that blood their
nundinantes, statim Azotum obsiderent, et ad deditionem
trafficking at-once Arsuf they-besieged and to surrender
post tres dies flecterent. Nec vero difficulter oppidani
after three days bent nor indeed with-difficulty the-townsmen
se dedidere, iram regis, si vi caperentur, reveriti;
themselves surrendered the-anger of-the-king if by-force they-were-taken fearing
quia præterito anno Godefridum idem aggressum acriter
because in-the-past year Godfrey the-same attacking fiercely
repulerant, maleficio fortunæ adjuti: siquidem cum ille
they-had-repulsed by-the-witchcraft of-fortune helped since when he
suos ascensu scalarum in murum erigeret, jam victores,
his-men by-climbing of-ladders onto the-wall raised already victors
jam fastigia mœnium tenentes, repentinus ligneæ turris casus
already the-tops of-the-walls holding a-sudden of-wooden tower fall
quæ forinsecus muro adjecta erat, viros victoria privavit,
which on-the-outside to-the-wall attached was the-men of-victory deprived
et plures extinxit; plures capti, et sævitia Saracenorum
and many extinguished many captured and by-the-savagery of-the-Saracens
dilaniati. Inde Cæsaream Palestinæ Baldewinus totis viribus et
torn-apart thence Caesarea of-Palestine Baldwin with-all strength and
obfirmato robore obsidens, cum videret civium pertinaciam
with-fortified force besieging when he-saw of-the-citizens the-obstinacy
et expugnandi difficultatem, machinas compaginari præcepit:
and of-storming the-difficulty engines to-be-put-together he-ordered
factæ ergo petrariæ; facta turris ingens, viginti cubitis
made therefore stone-throwers made a-tower huge by-twenty cubits
muri altitudinem vincens. At vero nostri, moræ impatientes,
of-the-wall the-height surpassing but indeed ours of-delay impatient

et tam diutinæ impotes expectationis, scalis erectis
and so of-long powerless of-waiting with-ladders raised
murum superare aggressi obstinatione virium ad superiora
the-wall to-overcome having-attempted by-the-obstinacy of-strength to the-heights
evasere; conscientia virtutis frementes, quod, jam quindecim
came-out from-consciousness of-valor roaring that already for-fifteen
diebus Saracenicis bellis intenti, tanti temporis spatium
days on-Saracen wars intent of-so-great time the-space
perdidissent. Quamvis igitur extrema vi a Cæsariensibus
they-had-lost although therefore with-extreme force by the-Caesareans
certaretur, multos molares in ascendentes volventibus, illi,
it-was-fought many millstones on those-climbing rolling they
dissimulato periculo, cuneos obstantes perrumpere, brachiis
with-dissembled danger the-wedges resisting to-break-through with-arms
exertis et strictis gladiis rem agentes. Turchi ulterius
put-out and with-drawn swords the-matter doing the-Turks further
non ferentes, fugamque adorsi, vel ipsi se
not bearing-it and-flight having-begun either they-themselves themselves
præcipitaverunt, vel hostili manu occubuerunt; plures servituti,
threw-headlong or by-hostile hand fell many for-servitude
pauci redemptioni servati, inter quos admiratus urbis, et
few for-ransom kept among whom the-emir of-the-city and
episcopus, quem Archadium vocant. Eratque spectaculum
the-bishop whom Archadius they-call and-there-was a-spectacle
quod videnti cachinnum excuteret, cum Turcus, in collo
which in-the-viewer laughter would-shake-out when a-Turk on the-neck
Christiani pugno percussus, bizantinos evomeret; nam miseri,
of-a-Christian with-a-fist struck bezants vomited for the-wretches
extremæ inopiæ metu, mares intra gingivas, fœminæ intra
of-extreme of-want from-fear the-males within their-gums the-females within
non dicenda, nummos absconderant. Vides quod aperte
not things-to-be-said the-coins had-hidden you-see what openly

loqui erubescit oratio; sed intelligit profecto lector quod
to-say blushes the-speech but understands surely the-reader what
volo, immo quod nolo, dicere.
I-wish nay what I-do-not-wish to-say
Nec adhuc quievit imperator Babilonis, quin ducem et
nor yet rested the-emperor of-Babylon from a-leader and
exercitum ad expugnandos Francos missitaret. Illi, navigio
an-army for storming the-Franks sending they by-ship
Ascalonem appulsi, mox juxta Ramulam cursitarunt, curis
at-Ascalon landed soon beside Ramla ran-about the-cares
regis abutentes, qui tunc Cæsariensi bello tenebatur.
of-the-king abusing who then by-the-Caesarean war was-held
Agrorum igitur depopulatione ad congrediendum crebrius
of-the-fields therefore by-the-ravaging to engaging more-often
illum irritarunt. At ille non impari calliditate, ut calor
him they-provoked but he not with-unequal cunning that the-heat
indomitus defervesceret, vetito instantes passus languescere
untamed might-cool-down with-forbidden the-pressing allowed to-languish
bello: hac effecit cunctatione, ut plerique morarum
war by-this effected by-delay that very-many of-delays
pertæsi dilaberentur; reliquos, qui essent undecim milia
weary slipped-away the-rest who were eleven thousand
equitum, viginti unum milia peditum, cum suis, ducentis
of-horsemen twenty one thousand of-foot-soldiers with his two-hundred
quinquaginta equitibus, peditibus paulo minus septingentis,
fifty horsemen foot-soldiers a-little fewer than-seven-hundred
invasit. Paucaque militibus locutus, quibus, si perstarent,
he-attacked and-a-few-things to-the-soldiers having-spoken to-whom if they-persisted
victoriam, si morerentur, gloriam promitteret; si fugerent,
victory if they-died glory he-promised if they-fled
longe Franciam esse commoneret; primus in hostes irruit:
far France to-be he-reminded first against the-enemies rushed

productoque aliquantum certamine, cum acies suas labare
and-with-drawn-out somewhat the-struggle when lines his to-totter
cerneret, desperatis rebus occurrit. Itaque nota sui
he-saw to-the-desperate affairs he-ran-to-help and-so by-the-known his
specie Turchos proturbans, conto ducem prostravit; quo
form the-Turks driving-off with-a-lance the-leader laid-low with-whom
interempto, tota diffugere agmina. Nostri, qui principio
killed all scattered the-columns ours who at-the-beginning
pugnæ ita circumsepti fuerant ut nullus alterum videret,
of-the-fight so surrounded had-been that no-one another saw
tunc, Dominicæ crucis vexillo prævio, adeo virtutem
then of-the-Lord's cross with-the-banner going-ahead so-much valor
exercuerunt ut quinque milia trucidarent; ex Francis octoginta
exercised that five thousand they-slaughtered of the-Franks eighty
equites, pedites paulo plus desiderati. Porro sequens successus
horsemen foot-soldiers a-little more were-lost further the-following success
solatio fuit, quod quingentos equites Arabas interemerunt.
for-comfort was that five-hundred horsemen Arabs they-killed
Illi ante Joppen biduo cucurrerant, sed, parum explicantes,
they before Joppa for-two-days had-run but little achieving
Ascalonem redibant; visoque eminus exercitu nostro, suos
to-Ascalon were-returning and-with-seen from-afar army our their-own
esse sperantes, tanquam triumphantibus congratulaturi obviam
to-be hoping as-if the-triumphant about-to-congratulate to-meet
ibant: sed tandem aliquando in se jaculis emissis
went but at-last finally on themselves with-javelins sent-forth
intelligentes Francos esse, perinde palluerunt, "sicut nudis
understanding Franks to-be just-so they-grew-pale as with-bare
pressit qui calcibus anguem," ut poetæ verbo utar;
has-pressed who heels a-snake that of-the-poet the-word I-may-use
itaque, ipso hebetes stupore, terga cædentibus exhibuere.
and-so by-the-very dulled stupor their-backs to-those-cutting they-showed

Ita rex Joppen perveniens errorem epistolæ, quæ, Tancredo
so the-king to-Joppa arriving the-error of-the-letter which to-Tancred
a Joppitis missa, falso regem cum exercitu extinctum
by the-people-of-Joppa sent falsely the-king with the-army extinguished
nuntiaverat, veraciori scripto correxit: jamque Tancredus
had-announced with-a-truer writing corrected and-already Tancred
iter ad Jerosolimam paraverat, cum nuntius veniens,
a-journey to Jerusalem had-prepared when a-messenger coming
ostenso sigillo regio, mæstitiam depulit, lætitiam reformavit.
with-shown seal royal grief drove-off joy restored
Longum est si velim explicare omnia ejus certamina;
long it-is if I-should-wish to-unfold all his contests
quomodo Tiberiadem, Sidonem, Accaronem, id est
how Tiberias Sidon Acre that is
Ptholomaidem, quomodo postremo cunctas maritimas urbes,
Ptolemais how lastly all the-coastal cities
subegerit; quomodo pene omnem diem Turchorum mortibus
he-subdued how almost every day of-the-Turks with-deaths
insignierit, aut assultu clandestino aut bello publico. Ingentes
he-marked either by-assault secret or by-war public huge
operas ejusmodi desiderat oratio hominis qui ampullato eloquio
labors of-this-kind requires the-speech of-a-man who in-bombastic eloquence
et curioso abundet otio; nobis utrumque deest, et, quod
and in-curious abounds leisure to-us both is-lacking and what
maxime obest, rerum expedita scientia; omnia vero indulgenti
most hinders of-things ready knowledge all-things but to-indulgent
famæ credere, et facilitatem auditorum fallere, veracis historici
rumor to-believe and the-credulity of-the-hearers to-deceive of-a-truthful historian
non debet esse. Quocirca illa solummodo quæ scripto comperi
not ought to-be wherefore those only which in-writing I-have-found
apponam, quibus ad unguem comprobetur gloriosa viri
I-shall-set-down by-which to the-nail may-be-proved the-glorious of-the-man

devotio, et gratia victura in seculo: illudque constanter
devotion and the-grace about-to-live in the-world and-that steadily
asseruerim, parva manu magna illum prælia persæpe
I-would-assert with-a-small band great him battles very-often
lusisse; nec unquam campum fugisse, præter apud Ramulam
to-have-played nor ever the-field to-have-fled except at Ramla
et apud Accaronem. Enimvero ambas fugas prædicabiles
and at Acre for-indeed both flights praiseworthy
exceperunt victoriæ, quod magis inconsiderata virtute quam
followed victories because more from-inconsiderate valor than
timore provenerint, sicut paucis insertis lector agnoscet.
from-fear they-arose as with-few-things inserted the-reader will-recognize

THE EXPEDITION OF 1101; BALDWIN'S BATTLES

In September William of Poitou set out for Jerusalem with a host reckoned at sixty thousand knights and many more foot, and with him Stephen of Burgundy, Hugh of Lusignan, and Hugh the Great and Stephen of Blois, who hoped to mend the reproach of their old desertion. Having offended Alexius, William fell into Suleiman's ambushes in marshy and pathless country, and more than a hundred thousand were killed; the survivors gathered at Antioch, where Tancred sustained them, and reached Jerusalem for Easter. William then tells Baldwin's rash battle at Ramla, where the two Stephens fell, his escape with five knights, and a victory at Joppa when the Lord at last looked back on the Franks.

Eo Septembri cujus septimo idus prælium fuit, Willelmus
in-that September on-whose seventh of-the-ides the-battle was William
comes Pictavensis Jerosolimam perrexit, multa secum ducens
count of-Poitou to-Jerusalem went many with-himself leading
agmina, ut æstimarentur sexaginta milia militum, et multo
columns so-that were-reckoned sixty thousand of-soldiers and many
plura peditum. Ivit cum eo Stephanus comes Burgundiæ, et
more of-foot-soldiers went with him Stephen count of-Burgundy and

Hugo Lizianensis, frater Raimundi comitis, et Hugo magnus,
Hugh of-Lusignan brother of-Raymond the-count and Hugh the-Great
et Stephanus Blesensis, antiquæ discessionis improperium
and Stephen of-Blois of-the-old departure the-reproach
nova et excogitata virtute sarcire cupientes. Ita per
with-new and devised valor to-mend desiring so through
Constantinopolim profectus, cum insolenti responso, ut
Constantinople having-set-out when with-an-insolent answer as
superius dixi, Alexium offendisset, illo non curante, vel potius
above I-said Alexius he-had-offended with-him not caring or rather
procurante, Solimanni incurrit insidias; qui sciens exercitum
procuring of-Suleiman he-ran-into the-ambushes who knowing the-army
fame ac siti laborare, quod aliquantis diebus errabundi
by-hunger and by-thirst to-labor because for-some days wandering
per palustria et invia loca iverant, cum trecentis milibus
through marshy and pathless places they-had-gone with three-hundred thousands
sagittariorum occurrit. Nulla unquam luctuosior Francis
of-archers met-them no ever more-mournful for-the-Franks
pugna visa, quia nec timidum fuga, nec audacem virtus,
fight was-seen because neither the-timid flight nor the-bold valor
poterat eripere discrimini; quod in arcto loco pugnaretur,
could to-snatch from-danger because in a-narrow place it-was-fought
et in consertos sagittarum nubes non frustraretur. Interfecta
and on the-crowded of-arrows the-cloud not was-frustrated killed
igitur plusquam centum milia, præda omnis abducta; ita
therefore more-than a-hundred thousand the-plunder all carried-off so
Solimannus, ex manubiis Francorum claras manibus suorum
Suleiman from the-spoils of-the-Franks splendid to-the-shades of-his-own
nactus inferias, dispendium Nicææ ultus est. Sed quia multis
having-got funeral-offerings the-loss of-Nicaea avenged has but because by-many
tramitibus itum erat, nec omnes cæsi, nec omnia direpta;
paths gone it-had-been neither all were-slain nor all-things plundered

nam præter Pictavensem, qui pene ad pudenda nudatus erat,
for besides the-Poitevin who almost to the-private-parts stripped was
ceteri comites prompte sua defensitaverant. Omnes ergo
the-other counts readily their-own had-defended all therefore
recollectis ex fuga militibus, præter Hugonem magnum,
with-regathered from flight soldiers except Hugh the-Great
quem mortuum Tarsensis civitatis urna excepit, Antiochiam
whom dead of-the-Tarsus city the-urn received to-Antioch
convolarunt; in quibus Tancredus, egregiæ pietatis miles,
flew-together among whom Tancred of-outstanding piety a-soldier
ingentem munificentiæ suæ gratiam ostendit, cunctos quatenus
huge of-munificence his grace showed all as-far-as
poterat pecuniis sustentans; Willelmum præcipue, quem fortunæ
he-could with-moneys sustaining William especially whom of-fortune
vicissitudo eo afflictaverat invidiosius quo ante
the-vicissitude by-so-much had-afflicted more-enviously by-how-much before
provexerat serenius, qui præter gazas, quarum dampno
it-had-advanced-him more-serenely who besides the-treasures of-which by-the-loss
non adeo afficiebatur, quod caducæ sunt et reparabiles,
not so-much he-was-affected because perishable they-are and repairable
ex tot eximiis militibus solus pene remanserat superstes.
of so-many excellent soldiers alone almost had-remained a-survivor
Ita recreatis animis iter moliti, undecunque belli
so with-restored minds a-journey having-undertaken from-everywhere of-war
occasiones quærebant. Sensit sitim furentium prima Tortuosa
occasions they-sought felt the-thirst of-the-raging the-first Tortosa
civitas; qua pervasa et direpta, non modicum præteritas
a-city with-which overrun and plundered not slightly the-past
ærumpnas relevarunt. Inde ad angustias de quibus superius
hardships they-relieved thence to the-narrows about which above
dixi venerunt, ubi eos rex jampridem operiebatur, contra
I-said they-came where them the-king long-since was-awaiting against

Turcos, si prohibere vellent, opem laturus. Ejus virtute
the-Turks if to-prevent they-should-wish help about-to-bring by-his valor
defensi, et benigno apud Joppen hospitio suscepti Jerosolimam
defended and with-kind at Joppa hospitality received to-Jerusalem
proximo Pascha contenderunt; ubi sacrosanctum ignem lætis
at-the-next Easter they-hastened where the-sacrosanct fire with-glad
hauserunt oculis, devotis adorarunt animis. Post hæc
they-drank eyes with-devout they-adored minds after these-things
reversi Joppen, ascensis navibus, patriam quisque suam redire
returned to-Joppa with-boarded ships to-fatherland each his-own to-return
meditabatur: quorum Pictavensis, continua venti prosperitate
planned of-whom the-Poitevin by-continuous of-wind prosperity
provectus, patriam tenuit; ceteri retro violenter acti.
carried the-fatherland reached the-rest back violently driven
Jam vero mense Maio inchoante, Turchi et Arabes
now but in-the-month May beginning the-Turks and Arabs
Ramulam obsederunt, superioris anni dampnum, novi
Ramla besieged of-the-previous year the-loss of-a-new
exercitus supplemento, eodem reficientes numero. Episcopus
of-army supplement in-the-same repairing number the-bishop
urbis, prudenter opportunitate spectata, cavit sibi loco,
of-the-city prudently with-opportunity looked-for took-care for-himself in-place
Joppen latenter profectus. Jamque rex exierat, credens falso
to-Joppa secretly having-set-out and-now the-king had-gone-out believing falsely
asserentibus non esse hostes plusquam quingentos: itaque
those-asserting not to-be enemies more-than five-hundred and-so
nec aciem dirigere, nec pedites convocare curavit, tantum
neither the-line to-draw-up nor the-foot to-summon he-took-care only
milites regem sequi cornicines monuerunt; multum amicis
the-soldiers the-king to-follow the-trumpeters warned much with-friends
suadentibus ut Turcorum fraudes caveret. Stephani duo,
persuading that of-the-Turks the-frauds he-should-beware the-Stephens two

Blesensis et Burgundus, regem equis insecuti, ne desides et
of-Blois and of-Burgundy the-king on-horses followed lest idle and
inglorii, sed triumphalis pompæ conscii, terras repeterent
inglorious but of-triumphal pomp conscious lands they-should-seek-again
suas; sed aliam quam opinabantur gloriam, aliam victoriam,
their-own but another than they-thought glory another victory
parabant fata viris. Namque rex, visa hostium
prepared the-fates for-the-men for the-king with-seen of-the-enemies
multitudine, dum se frustratum opinione cognosceret, ira
multitude when himself cheated in-his-opinion he-knew by-anger
mentem saucius, et magnanimitatis conscientia fremens, quid
in-mind wounded and of-great-spirit with-consciousness roaring what
faceret hæsitabat: si cederet præteritæ gloriæ ignominiam;
he-should-do hesitated if he-should-yield of-past glory the-ignominy
si pugnaret, suorum mortes animo volutabat. Veruntamen
if he-should-fight of-his-own the-deaths in-mind he-turned-over nevertheless
vicit calor ingenitus, et terga jam dabat metus, cum,
conquered the-heat inborn and his-back already was-giving fear when
commilitonum hortatibus animatus, ut fugam in castellum
of-comrades by-the-exhortations encouraged that flight into the-castle
per medios hostes intenderet, adquievit. Ceteri, cum
through the-midst-of the-enemies he-should-intend he-acquiesced the-rest with
clamore secuti, densissimas perruperunt acies, animas suas
a-shout following the-thickest broke-through lines souls their
Deo consecrantes, et mortes impigre ulti; comites quoque,
to-God consecrating and deaths briskly avenged the-counts also
feriendo defatigati adeo ut manus gladiis obrigescerent,
by-striking wearied so-much that their-hands to-the-swords stiffened
neci succubuerunt. Rex, in arcem lapsus, ex ducentis
to-death succumbed the-king into the-citadel having-slipped of two-hundred
quos duxerat aliquantos socios habuit; quibus orantibus ut
whom he-had-led some companions had with-whom praying that

vitam dignaretur fugiendo producere, sua pericula mundo
his-life he-would-deign by-fleeing to-prolong their-own dangers to-the-world
parvi ponderis esse, illius vitam ad multorum profectum
of-little weight to-be his life for of-many the-benefit
valere, utpote qui omni seculo sit virtutis spectaculum,
to-avail inasmuch-as who for-every age is of-valor a-spectacle
quamvis in fractis rebus ingenti animi constantia, dignum
although in broken affairs with-huge of-mind constancy worthy
se credidit vita. Itaque quinque militibus comitatus, in
himself he-believed of-life and-so by-five soldiers accompanied into
montana rependo, insidiantes elusit. Militum fuit unus
the-mountains creeping the-ambushers he-eluded of-the-soldiers was one
Robertus Anglus, ut superius dixi; ceteros notitiæ nostræ
Robert the-Englishman as above I-said the-others from-knowledge our
fama tam longinqua occuluit. Ille cum tribus comprehensus
the-report so distant has-hidden he with three captured
est; unus evasit cum rege. Turchi extremam vim furoris in
was one escaped with the-king the-Turks the-extreme force of-fury on
illos qui evaserant in arcem effuderunt, in quibus fuit
those who had-escaped into the-citadel poured-out among whom was
Hugo Lizianensis et Gaufredus Vindocinensis; tres tantum
Hugh of-Lusignan and Geoffrey of-Vendôme three only
superstites Jerosolimitanis nuntii miseriarum fuere. Rex
surviving to-the-Jerusalemites the-messengers of-the-miseries were the-king
interdiu latens, cornipedem cursu exhaustum stimulans,
by-day hiding the-horn-footed-steed by-running exhausted spurring
Azotum pervenit: pulchro et ad miraculum Dei prono
to-Arsuf arrived with-a-beautiful and to miracle of-God inclined
salutis eventu, quod paulo ante Turchi discesserant, qui
of-salvation outcome because a-little before the-Turks had-departed who
jam biduo circa urbem prædas egerant. Inde Joppen
already for-two-days around the-city plunders had-driven thence to-Joppa

navigio veniens, Jerosolimitanis epistolam de vitæ suæ
by-ship coming to-the-Jerusalemites a-letter about of-life his
certitudine legavit. Portitor cartæ fuit homuncio Syrus,
the-certainty he-sent the-bearer of-the-paper was a-little-man Syrian
qui, etsi inveniretur, habitus vilitate et sermonis noti
who even-if he-were-found of-dress by-the-cheapness and of-speech known
commercio insidiantes falleret. Hic, notis sibi per
by-the-commerce the-ambushers might-deceive he by-known to-himself through
devia compendiis, perfidorum pericula declinans, tertio die
byways short-cuts of-the-treacherous the-dangers avoiding on-the-third day
Jerosolimam pervenit. Tum equites qui urbem tutabantur,
to-Jerusalem arrived then the-horsemen who the-city protected
junctis sibi auxiliarium peditum turmis, ad Joppen
with-joined to-themselves of-auxiliary foot-soldiers troops to Joppa
profecturi, iter mari proximum direxerunt, mediterraneis
about-to-set-out the-road to-the-sea nearest directed with-the-inland-ways
devitatis: extremi tamen agminis Turchis urgentibus
avoided the-last yet of-the-column with-the-Turks pressing
interfecti, quod vel equis vel peditibus destituebantur. Ita
killed because either of-horses or of-foot-soldiers they-were-bereft so
congregatis ex Jerosolimis nonaginta equitibus, ex Tyberiade
with-gathered from Jerusalem ninety horsemen from Tiberias
octoginta, quos Hugo dux strenuissimus adduxerat in
eighty whom Hugh a-leader most-vigorous had-brought for
subsidium, armigeri quoque pro penuria in locum militum
support the-squires also for want into the-place of-soldiers
allecti. Postera ergo die moram pugnæ absolvit, Turchis
chosen on-the-next therefore day the-delay of-battle he-ended with-the-Turks
jam adeo ferocibus ut paratis machinis murum Joppis
already so-much fierce that with-prepared engines the-wall of-Joppa
aggredi meditarentur. Præventum hoc Baldewini diligentia,
to-attack they-planned forestalled this(-was) of-Baldwin by-the-diligence

et, Dominica cruce prævia, qua superius bellum caruerat,
and with-the-Lord's cross going-before which the-former battle had-lacked
totis viribus in hostes alacriter itum, acriter certatum;
with-all strength against the-enemies briskly it-was-gone fiercely it-was-fought
at illi, more solito nostros circumgirantes, actum de
but they in-the-manner usual ours circling done with
Christianis putarunt, hilari ululatu vociferantes: sed affuit,
the-Christians they-thought with-glad howling shouting but was-present
et de cælo tandem respexit Dominus Jesus, Francisque
and from heaven at-last looked-back the-Lord Jesus and-to-the-Franks
animositatem ingerens inimicos campo privatos conjecit in
spirit bringing the-enemies of-the-field deprived he-threw into
fugam. Hoc et in anteriori prælio factum est, ut, non semel
flight this also in the-earlier battle done was that not once
ejecti tentoriis, postea multitudine superarint: tum autem
thrown-out from-the-tents afterward by-multitude they-overcame then but
cum pedites eminus sagittis, et equites lanceis cominus
when the-foot from-afar with-arrows and the-horsemen with-lances at-close-quarters
ferirent, omni spe pedibus commissa, fugere perseveravere.
struck all hope to-their-feet committed to-flee they-persevered

In a later battle the Christians fled and lost the cross, then turned for shame and won it back; among the fallen was Godfrey, the king's bastard great-great-grandson. Baldwin married the countess of Sicily, rich in treasure, and put her away, and died in April on an expedition into Arabia, in the fourth month of the seventeenth year of his reign. His kinsman Baldwin of Edessa succeeded and, after Roger son of Richard was killed, ruled Antioch too; a frugal man, he was captured last year and rescued by knights disguised as merchants, while Antioch looks to Bohemond's son.

Altera illi pugna posterioribus annis fuit, in qua milites nostri,
another for-him battle in-later years was in which soldiers our
Turcorum copia pressi et in fugam acti, etiam salutare
of-the-Turks by-the-abundance pressed and into flight driven even the-saving
vexillum amisere: sed cum longiuscule fugissent, reversi sunt;
banner lost but when rather-far they-had-fled returned they-have
pudor famæ trepidos animavit ut ignominiam propulsarent.
the-shame of-reputation the-trembling encouraged that the-ignominy they-might-repel
Ingens ibi pugna virorum fuit, collato pede et adverso pectore
huge there the-fight of-men was with-joined foot and with-facing breast
rem agentium. Nostri crucem reportarunt, fusis adversariis
the-matter doing ours the-cross brought-back with-routed adversaries
campum vindicantes. Ceciderunt ibi plures quos ego quoque
the-field claiming fell there many whom I also
noram; inter quos Godefridus, abnepos ejus nothus,
knew among whom Godfrey the-great-great-grandson his a-bastard
jam inde a pueritia umbram virtutis vultu colorans, veritatem
already thence from boyhood the-shadow of-valor in-face coloring the-truth
animo spirans. Ambæ ergo fugæ fuere in principio quasi
in-mind breathing both therefore flights were in the-beginning as-if
fomentum ignominiæ, sed in fine verax alimentum gloriæ: illa
a-kindling of-ignominy but in the-end a-true nourishment of-glory that

nominatior, sed ista fructuosior. Denique ad supplementum
more-renowned but this more-fruitful finally for the-supplement
rerum quas amiserat, simul et ad legitimum
of-the-things which he-had-lost at-the-same-time and for lawful
connubium, non multo post comitissa Siciliæ Jerosolimam
marriage not much after the-countess of-Sicily to-Jerusalem
venit; tantas gazas cubiculo regis inferens, ut mirum
came so-great treasures into-the-chamber of-the-king bringing that wonderful
cuivis videatur unde mulier tam infinitos pretiosæ supellectilis
to-anyone it-may-seem whence a-woman so infinite of-precious furniture
cumulos coacervarit; et tunc quidem illam thoro recepit,
heaps had-heaped-up and then indeed her into-his-bed he-received
sed non multo post dimisit; aiunt incommodo tactam,
but not much after he-dismissed-her they-say by-an-ailment touched
quo ejus genitalia cancer, morbus incurabilis, exederit.
by-which her genitals cancer an-illness incurable had-eaten-away
Illud constat, regem prolis inopem fuisse; nec mirum si
that is-established the-king of-offspring destitute to-have-been nor wonderful if
homo, cujus otium erat ægrescere, uxorios amplexus horruerit,
a-man whose leisure was to-fall-ill wifely embraces shuddered-at
omnem ætatem in bellis deterens. Quibus laboribus effecit,
his-whole age in wars wearing-out by-which labors he-brought-about
ut admirabilis et pene divina virtus ejus fuerit præsentibus
that admirable and almost divine the-valor his was for-those-present
stimulo, futura posteris miraculo. Obiit in expeditione
a-goad about-to-be for-posterity a-miracle he-died on the-expedition
Arabica mense Aprili, et publico funere Jerosolimis juxta
Arabian in-the-month April and with-public funeral at-Jerusalem beside
fratrem tumulatus, cum decimo septimo anno regni quartus
his-brother buried when to-the-tenth seventh year of-the-reign the-fourth
accresceret mensis. Vir multis laboribus emeritus, et cujus
was-being-added month a-man with-many labors having-earned and of-whose

gloriæ nullus prætendit nubila livor, nisi quod fuerit pecuniæ
glory no puts-forward clouds envy except that he-was of-money
justo tenacior; sed hujus culpæ facilis et vera erit excusatio,
than-right more-tenacious but of-this fault easy and true will-be the-excuse
si consideretur quod necessaria in remanentes effusio munerum
if it-be-considered that the-necessary on those-remaining pouring-out of-gifts
inhibuerit quo minus mercaretur favorem abeuntium.
prevented by-which less he-might-buy the-favor of-those-departing
Successit ei Baldewinus cognatus, dux Edessæ, quem moriens
succeeded him Baldwin his-kinsman duke of-Edessa whom dying
regem denuntiaverat, antiquis jam stipendiis laudatum.
king he-had-named for-old already services praised
Ille multis annis regnum impigre tutatus, etiam auxit
he for-many years the-kingdom briskly having-protected even increased
Antiocheno principatu; quem occiso Rogerio filio Ricardi
with-the-Antioch principality which with-killed Roger son of-Richard
obtinuit. Utrasque ergo regiones egregio moderamine
he-obtained both therefore regions with-excellent governance
rexit, minori quidem præsumptionis roncho, sed majori
he-ruled with-less indeed of-presumption snorting but with-greater
et consultiori providentia; quamvis sint qui opinionem
and more-considered foresight although there-are who the-reputation
ejus lacerent, tenacitatis eum nimiæ arguentes. Quare, cum
his tear of-tenacity him excessive accusing wherefore when
præterito anno non longe ab Jerosolima equitantem Turchi
in-the-past year not far from Jerusalem riding the-Turks
cepissent, paucis aut nullis gemitibus sui eum desiderarunt;
had-captured with-few or no groans his-own him missed
latuitque pene anno et incolas et rumigerulos,
and-it-lay-hidden almost for-a-year both from-the-inhabitants and from-the-rumor-bearers
quo terrarum abductus, si superis auris vesceretur, necne.
whither of-the-lands carried-off if on-the-upper airs he-fed or-not

Refutarunt porro Jerosolimitæ vel regem facere vel ordinem et
refused further the-Jerusalemites either a-king to-make or the-order and
ducatum militum interrumpere, quoad rei certitudo sciretur,
leadership of-soldiers to-interrupt until of-the-thing the-certainty were-known
propter ejus absentiam in nullo infractiores. Postmodum vero,
on-account-of his absence in nothing more-broken afterward but
cognito loco quo vinculatus fuerat, milites audacissimi
with-learned the-place in-which bound he-had-been soldiers most-daring
speciem negotiatorum mentientes, armis sub vestibus
the-appearance of-merchants feigning with-arms under clothes
occultatis, oppidum ingressi, regem eripuere discrimini;
hidden the-town having-entered the-king snatched from-danger
protestati non conferre se id ejus avaritiæ, sed Gozelini de
protesting not to-give themselves this his to-the-avarice but of-Joscelin of
Turbexel gratiæ, qui nihil unquam pensi fecerat quin omnia
Turbessel to-the-grace who nothing ever of-weight had-made but-that all-things
quæ posset militibus erogaret. Vixit diu frugi homo, et nulli
which he-could on-the-soldiers he-spent lived long a-frugal man and to-no
præter hanc culpam infamiæ obnoxius. Principatus Antiochenus
besides this fault infamy liable the-principality of-Antioch
ad Boamundi spectat filium, de quo nunc dicam.
to of-Bohemond looks the-son about whom now I-shall-speak

De Boamundo

BOHEMOND

Bohemond was Robert Guiscard's son by a Norman woman, Roger, nicknamed Purse, his son by an Apulian. Roger took Apulia; Bohemond fought with his father at Durazzo, whose name he swore to soften, urged Pope Urban to the council of Clermont, and joined Raymond and Godfrey in the East. Released by Danishmend on a promise of peace, he came to the Gauls, married the French king's daughter, and attacked Alexius again, but died in Apulia. Tancred held Antioch, and after him Roger son of Richard, killed by the Turks; Baldwin II kept the city and his daughter for Bohemond's son.

Boamundus Roberti Guiscardi ex Normanna filius fuit:
Bohemond of-Robert Guiscard from a-Norman-woman son was
alter, Rogerus, ex Appula genitus, qui cognomen
the-other Roger from an-Apulian-woman born who the-surname
Marsupii a patre meruit, quod paterno et curioso
of-Purse from his-father earned because with-paternal and curious
intuitu deprehendisset eum jam a tenero libenter nummos
gaze he-had-detected him already from tender-age gladly coins
numerare; nam Boamundus ætatis majusculæ nihii erat
to-count for Bohemond of-age a-little-older nothing was
quod retineret, sed etiam puerilia xenia dispertiret. Itaque
that he-would-keep but even boyish presents he-distributed and-so
Rogerus Apuliam, quæ sibi materno genere competere
Roger Apulia which to-him by-maternal race to-belong
videbatur, accepit: Boamundus cum genitore ad bellum
seemed received Bohemond with his-father to the-war
Durachinum profectus est. Cumque oppidani fiducia
of-Durazzo set-out has and-when the-townsmen in-the-confidence
mœnium jactitarent ideo urbem Durachium nominatam, quod
of-the-walls boasted therefore the-city Durazzo named because

contra omnes obsidiones imperterrita duraret, “Et ego,” inquit
against all sieges undaunted it-lasted and I he-said
“vocor Durandus; et eo usque in obsidione durabo quo
am-called Durand and so far in the-siege I-shall-last until
civitati nomen auferam, ut non Durachium sed Mollicium
from-the-city its-name I-take-away so-that not Durazzo but Mollicium
amodo dicatur.” Cujus responsi constantia effecit et confestim
henceforth it-be-called of-which of-answer the-constancy effected and at-once
pavefacti portas aperirent. Ita tutus a tergo, ceteras urbes
terrified the-gates they-opened so safe from behind the-other cities
usque ad Tessalonicam leviore labore subegit. Jamque illuc
all-the-way to Thessalonica with-lighter labor he-subdued and-already thither
pervenerat, jam Alexium tum per se tum per filium
he-had-come already Alexius both through himself and through his-son
vinci posse docuerat, cum uxoria fraude deceptus
to-be-conquered to-be-able he-had-shown when by-wifely fraud deceived
ingens depositum morte destituit. Tum vero Boamundus,
a-huge deposit by-death he-left-behind then indeed Bohemond
Apuliam reversus, aliquot castella fraterna indulgentia tenuit,
to-Apulia returned some castles by-fraternal indulgence held
multa ipse virtute et prudentia conquisivit, nam ad
many-things he-himself by-valor and prudence conquered for to
fratrem specie tenus ducatus pervenerat; alterum bello
his-brother in-appearance only the-duchy it-had-come the-other in-war
meliores sunt secuti. Nec vero parvi momenti fuit quod,
the-better-men have followed nor indeed of-small moment was that
paterni propositi sequax, Guibertum repellens, Urbano
of-the-paternal purpose a-follower Guibert repelling Urban
validissime astitit, et cunctantem impulit ut Gallias
most-strongly he-stood-by and the-hesitating-one urged that to-the-Gauls
ad concilium Clari Montis accederet, quo eum Raimundi
to the-council of-Cler- -mont he-should-go whither him of-Raymond

Provincialis comitis et episcopi Caturcensis epistolæ invitabant.
of-Provence count and of-the-bishop of-Cahors the-letters invited
Concilioque celebrato, libens occasionem accepit, et in
and-with-the-council held gladly the-occasion he-took and into
Græciam copias trajecit; subindeque promovens exercitum,
Greece the-forces carried-across and-thereupon moving-forward the-army
modeste Raimundum et Godefridum operiebatur: quibus
modestly Raymond and Godfrey awaited to-whom
venientibus sociatus, magnum incitamentum ceteris erat,
coming joined a-great incitement to-the-others he-was
disciplinæ militaris scientia et virtute nulli secundus. Sed
of-discipline military in-knowledge and valor to-none second but
quia quæ cum ceteris fecit communi laudi sors attribuit,
because what-things with the-others he-did to-the-common praise lot has-attributed
et quomodo captus fuerit anterior sermo notitiæ dedit, nunc
and how captured he-was the-earlier speech to-knowledge has-given now
qualiter se servitio exuerit dicendum. Danisman enim,
how himself from-servitude he-stripped must-be-said Danishmend for
cum videret nihil utilitatibus suis applicari quod tantum virum
when he-saw nothing to-interests his to-be-applied because so-great a-man
teneret, inflexus animo de pacis conditionibus actitare cœpit:
he-held bent in-mind about of-peace the-terms to-negotiate he-began
nam nec illum occidere, ne in se odia Christianorum
for neither him to-kill lest against himself the-hatreds of-the-Christians
effusa concitaret, nec, sine spebus in perpetuum valituræ
poured-out he-should-rouse nor without hopes into perpetuity about-to-avail
pacis, dimittere volebat. Pollicitus ergo Boamundus
of-peace to-release he-wished having-promised therefore Bohemond
continuam gentili concordiam, revertit Antiochiam, argenteos
continuous to-the-gentile concord returned to-Antioch the-silver
compedes quibus alligatus fuerat secum deferens: a suis
fetters with-which bound he-had-been with-himself carrying by his-own

ergo exceptus plausibiliter, Laodiciam, et ceteras urbes
therefore received with-applause Laodicea and the-other cities
quas Tancredus adquisierat, suscepit, ne videretur oscitare
which Tancred had-acquired he-took-over lest he-should-seem to-yawn
otio dum avunculus suspiraret in ergastulo. Nec multo
in-leisure while his-uncle sighed in prison nor much
post Gallias venit, offerens catenas sancti Leonardi honori,
after to-the-Gauls he-came offering the-chains of-saint of-Leonard to-the-honor
quæ sibi fuerant oneri. Fertur enim in primis ille sanctus
which to-him had-been a-burden is-said for in the-first that saint
absolvendorum vinculorum potens, ut, videntibus nec mutire
of-loosing chains powerful so-that with-seeing nor to-mutter
audentibus adversariis, pondera sua captivus liber asportet. Ita
daring adversaries weights his the-captive free carries-off so
ducta uxore filia regis Francorum, et altera Tancredo
with-married wife a-daughter of-the-king of-the-Franks and the-other to-Tancred
missa, repetiit Appuliam; sequentibus se Francorum
sent he-sought-again Apulia with-following him of-the-Franks
proceribus, qui spe majoris commodi patriam deserebant,
the-nobles who in-hope of-greater advantage their-fatherland deserted
simul et spectaturi cominus quid viva virtutis
at-the-same-time and about-to-watch at-close-quarters what the-living of-valor
species efficeret, quam tam insignis fama ubique loqueretur.
image might-effect which so remarkable fame everywhere spoke-of
Itaque ille, dispositis apud Apuliam rebus suis, denuo in
and-so he with-arranged in Apulia affairs his again against
Alexium efferatus est, prætendens belli causam peregrinorum
Alexius enraged was pretending of-war as-the-cause of-the-pilgrims
injuriam, qua ille perinfamis erat; sed parum et prope
the-injury for-which he very-infamous was but little and almost
nihil gessit prospere, sollertis imperatoris deceptus astutia,
nothing he-did prosperously of-the-skillful emperor deceived by-the-cunning

qui omnes duces ejus aut pecuniis obæratos ab eo alienavit,
who all leaders his either with-moneys indebted from him estranged
aut veneno, ut dixi, sustulit. Quapropter animo dejectus
or by-poison as I-said removed wherefore in-mind dejected
Apuliam rediit; ibique post paucos dies, dum ad Antiochiam
to-Apulia he-returned and-there after few days while to Antioch
iter meditatur, defungitur, ætate citra senium, prudentia
a-journey he-plans he-dies in-age short-of old-age in-prudence
infra nullum, relicto tenerioris ævi filio. Vir in adversis
below none with-left of-tenderer age a-son a-man in adversities
constans, in prosperis circumspectus; nam et, pro suspicione
constant in prosperities circumspect for also for suspicion
noxiæ potionis, paratum commentus erat remedium,
of-a-harmful potion a-prepared devised he-had remedy
cultellum, qui, ante ora comedentis infixus, sudore,
a-knife which before the-mouth of-the-eater fixed by-the-sweat
mirum dictu, prodebat manubrii si quid tecto illatum
wonderful to-say betrayed of-the-handle if anything into-the-house brought-in
esset veneficii. Post eum Tancredus Antiochiæ principatui
had-been of-poison after him Tancred of-Antioch over-the-principality
præfuit, haud pudendus avunculo nepos; qui cum et ipse
presided not shameful to-his-uncle a-nephew who when also he-himself
communem mortalium viam obitu præpropero trivisset,
the-common of-mortals way by-death premature had-trodden
successit Rogerius filius Ricardi. Is, gloriæ antecessorum
succeeded Roger son of-Richard he to-the-glory of-his-predecessors
in bellis non impar, ignominiam tamen avaritiæ incurrit;
in wars not unequal the-ignominy yet of-avarice incurred
quapropter, cum eum milites caverent, stipendiario milite
wherefore when him the-soldiers avoided with-stipendiary soldier
pene nullo et indigena raro Turchis congressus occubuit,
almost none and native rare with-the-Turks having-engaged he-fell

mortem suam non ignave ultus. Nam cum ab eis
death his not cowardly having-avenged for when by them
captus et diloricatus juberetur ensem reddere, negavit se
captured and unarmored he-was-ordered his-sword to-surrender he-refused himself
ulli nisi duci daturum, quod omnes infra dignitatis
to-anyone except to-the-leader about-to-give(-it) because all below of-dignity
suæ deditionem aspiceret. Credidit infelix admiratus simulatis
his the-surrender he-regarded believed unhappy the-emir the-feigned
vocibus; et jam, galea caput nudatus, porrexit manum
words and already of-his-helmet in-head bared stretched-out his-hand
ut reciperet Rogerii gladium. Tunc vero ille infrendens, et
that he-might-receive of-Roger the-sword then indeed he gnashing and
totis fortitudinis reliquiis in ictum se cogens, Turco
with-all of-strength remains into the-stroke himself forcing from-the-Turk
caput decussit; moxque perfossus, excogitato genere virtutis,
the-head he-struck-off and-soon pierced by-a-devised kind of-valor
dedecus servitutis effugit. Ejus mortem Baldewinus secundus
the-disgrace of-servitude he-escaped his death Baldwin the-second
rex Jerosolimorum ultus insigniter, principatum civitatis et
king of-Jerusalem avenged remarkably the-principality of-the-city and
filiam suam Boamundo filio Boamundi servavit fideliter.
daughter his for-Bohemond son of-Bohemond he-kept faithfully

De Raimundo

RAYMOND

Raymond was the son of William, count of Toulouse, and of Almodis, a woman who passed from husband to husband. William left Toulouse to his namesake son, Raymond's duller brother; Raymond took Cahors, added Arles, Narbonne, Provence, and Limoges, and later bought Toulouse from his brother. Old, and blind in one eye from a duel, he vowed the journey to Jerusalem and was the first layman to take the cross. On the expedition he showed bravery and patience, yielding the citadel of Antioch to Bohemond and the tower of David to Godfrey, until the nobles' demands over Ascalon drove him to hand its keys to the enemy. Shielded by the emperor's favor, he escaped the disasters of William of Poitou, took Tortosa, built the Pilgrims' Castle before Tripoli, and died before the city fell. His son Bertrand took it, and Bertrand's son Pontius now rules it as servant of the Holy Sepulcher.

Raimundus fuit filius Willelmi antiquissimi Tolosæ comitis,
Raymond was the-son of-William the-very-ancient of-Toulouse count
qui, vir acer et efficax, patriam, antecessorum suorum
who a-man sharp and effective the-country of-ancestors his
socordia obscuram, titulis suis reddidit illustrem. Uxor ejus
by-the-sloth obscure by-titles his made illustrious the-wife his
Almodis, multis vicissim desponsata, multam ex omnibus
Almodis to-many in-turn betrothed much from all
sobolem tulit; insano muliercula pruritu et irreverenti, ut
offspring bore with-insane a-little-woman itch and irreverent so-that
cum ei longo usu vir displicuisset, alias migraret
when to-her by-long usage a-husband had-displeased elsewhere she-moved
novos impletura penates; denique primum Arelatensi comiti
new about-to-fill household-gods finally first to-the-Arles count
nupta, mox illius pertæsa, huic Willelmo se conjunxit; cui
married soon of-him weary to-this William herself she-joined to-whom
cum duos peperisset filios, Barcinonensem ad connubium
when two she-had-borne sons the-Barcelona to marriage

illexit comitem. Porro Willelmus, mortis confinis foribus,
she-enticed count further William of-death bordering to-the-doors
Tolosanum comitatum dedit filio æquivoco, sed moribus
the-Toulouse county gave to-his-son namesake but in-manners
absono, quod esset crassioris ingenii, et nihil Tolosani
discordant because he-was of-thicker wit and nothing the-people-of-Toulouse
contra eum novarent, familiæ illius dominatui assueti.
against him should-attempt of-family his to-the-lordship accustomed
Raimundus vero, vivacioris spiritus Caturcensem accepit
Raymond but of-livelier spirit Cahors received
et non mediocriter auxit; Arelatensi, et Narbonensi, et
and not moderately increased with-Arles and Narbonne and
Provinciali, et Lemovicensi adjunctis. Tolosam quoque a
Provence and Limoges added Toulouse also from
germano emit, pluribus annis ante magni motus viam
his-brother he-bought many years before of-the-great movement the-way
profecto Jerosolimam. Sed hæc multi temporis intercessu
having-set-out to-Jerusalem but these-things of-much of-time by-the-passage
et ætate impensa labori. Itaque, pugnis semper assiduus
and by-an-age spent to-labor and-so in-fights always assiduous
legitimam uxorem non desideravit, multinubo concubinatu
a-lawful wife not he-desired in-much-marrying concubinage
voluptatem exercens. Denique ex una pellicum filium
pleasure exercising finally from one of-the-concubines a-son
natum, Bertramnum cognatione et hereditate dignatus est,
born Bertrand with-kinship and inheritance deigned he-has
quod in aliquantis patrissaret; cui uxorem conjunxit
because in some-things he-took-after-his-father to-whom a-wife he-joined
Matildis marcisæ neptem ex Longobardia natam, ut
of-Matilda the-marchioness a-niece from Lombardy born that
illius affinitate illas provinciæ partes tutaretur. Ipse
of-her by-the-affinity those of-the-province parts he-might-protect he-himself

quoque extremis fere annis uxorem ascivit filiam regis
also in-the-last almost years as-wife took the-daughter of-the-king
Tarraconensis, splendidam dotem pactus, æternam scilicet
of-Tarragona a-splendid dowry having-bargained eternal namely
conterminarum provinciarum pacem. Nec multo post, nivem
of-the-neighboring provinces peace nor much after the-snow
capitis respiciens, Jerosolimitanum iter vovit, ut lassi
of-his-head regarding the-Jerusalem journey he-vowed that of-the-tired
et effœti corporis vires jam vel sero Deo deservirent;
and worn-out body the-strength now even late to-God should-serve
auctore præcipue Caturcensi episcopo, cujus præcipua
with-the-author especially the-Cahors bishop whose by-the-chief
opera ipse semper impugnatus fuerat: etiam in quodam
efforts he-himself always attacked had-been even in a-certain
duellio altero lumine privatus, cujus insigne calamitatis
duel of-one eye deprived of-which the-mark of-calamity
præ se ferens non solum non occultabat, sed etiam
before himself bearing not only not did-he-hide-it but even
gloriabatur ultro specimen nobilis militiæ ostentans.
gloried of-his-own-accord a-specimen of-noble soldiering showing
Tunc autem mutua fœderati amicitia, ut senectutem suam
then but with-mutual leagued friendship that old-age their
divinis consumerent cultibus, Urbano jam in prædicationem
in-divine they-might-spend services on-Urban already to preaching
prono stimulos addidere, ut, transitis Alpibus, potissimum
inclined goads added that with-crossed Alps especially
apud Clarum Montem concilium cogeret, quod esset ea
at Cler- -mont a-council he-should-gather because was that
civitas et illorum patriæ propinqua, et ex tota Gallia
city both of-them to-the-country near and from the-whole Gaul
venientibus opportuna. Veruntamen, in ipso ad concilium
for-those-coming convenient nevertheless on the-very to the-council

itinere, pontifex obitu defecit. Successit curæ illius præsul
journey the-pontiff by-death failed succeeded to-the-care his the-bishop
Podii, de quo supra diximus: cujus hortatibus animatus,
of-Le-Puy about whom above we-have-said whose by-the-exhortations encouraged
et umbone protectus, Raimundus primus omnium laicorum
and by-the-shield protected Raymond first of-all the-laymen
crucem accepit; adjiciens voto ut nunquam in patriam
the-cross received adding to-the-vow that never to his-fatherland
rediret, sed potius, duraturo in Turcos labore arvinam
he-would-return but rather by-about-to-last against the-Turks labor the-fat
præteritarum iniquitatum extenuaret. Jam vero in itinere
of-past iniquities he-would-thin now but on the-journey
plura dedit indicia fortitudinis, ad laborem primus, ad
many-things he-gave signs of-bravery to labor first to
quietem ultimus; plura etiam patientiæ, quod arce
rest last many-things also of-patience because the-citadel
Antiochiæ, quam occupaverat, Boamundo, et turri David,
of-Antioch which he-had-occupied to-Bohemond and the-tower of-David
Godefrido, libenter cesserit. Sed tandem, nimiis exactionibus
to-Godfrey willingly he-yielded but at-last by-excessive exactions
quorundam fracta patientia, in deditione urbis Ascalonensis
of-some broken his-patience in the-surrender of-the-city of-Ascalon
decidit. Siquidem in primo Francorum adventu oppidani,
he-fell since at the-first of-the-Franks coming the-townsmen
exploratis omnium ducum nostrorum moribus, ipsum in
with-explored of-all leaders our the-characters him as
patronum elegere, quod multi, eo ante a Monte Pessulano
patron chose because many thither before from Mont- -pellier
navigio venientes negotiatum, fidem ejus et virtutem in
by-ship coming to-trade the-faith his and valor to
cælum tulerant. Itaque, traditis clavibus, sacramento
heaven had-carried and-so with-handed-over keys by-oath

ducem adegere ut nulli Christianorum potestatem urbis
the-leader they-bound that to-none of-the-Christians the-power of-the-city
refunderet, si vel ipse nollet tenere vel nequiret.
he-should-pour-back if either he-himself did-not-wish to-hold-it or could-not
Tunc a proceribus mussitatum est, expostulantibus urbem
then by the-nobles muttered it-was with-them-demanding the-city
regis dominio, quod parum ei valeret regnum si
of-the-king to-the-dominion because little for-him would-avail the-kingdom if
non haberet Ascalonem, quæ hostibus esset receptaculo,
not he-had Ascalon which for-the-enemies was a-refuge
nostris obstaculo. Et rex quidem leviter, ut omnia, et
for-ours an-obstacle and the-king indeed lightly as all-things and
vultu tranquillis conveniente moribus, rem allegabat; ceteri
with-face to-his-tranquil fitting manners the-matter alleged the-rest
pervicacius. Hæc ille verba parvi pendebat, non infirmis
more-obstinately these he words little weighed not with-weak
rationibus dicta eorum cassans: omnes socios suos jam
reasons sayings their voiding all comrades his already
sibi receptui consuluisse, partim patriam devectos,
for-themselves a-retreat to-have-provided partly to-their-fatherland carried
partim adquisitam inhabitantes provinciam; se solum,
partly the-acquired inhabiting province himself alone
abjurata naturali terra, nec illuc posse redire, nec hic
with-abjured native land neither thither to-be-able to-return nor here
receptum habere; cessisse se in aliis: hoc modo
a-refuge to-have to-have-yielded himself in other-things in-this way
paterentur, ut Ascalonem in fidelitatem sancti Sepulcri
they-should-allow that Ascalon in the-fealty of-the-holy Sepulcher
teneret; ceterum, ne redderet sacramento fecisse.
he-should-hold however that-not he-should-return-it by-oath to-have-done
Quo audito cuncti strepere, perfidum et cupidum vocare,
with-which heard all roared treacherous and greedy called

ut vix manibus temperarent. Contumeliæ hujus rubore
so-that scarcely their-hands they-restrained of-insult this by-the-blush
comes suffusus, ab æqui bonique viri descivit officio;
the-count suffused from of-the-just and-good man revolted the-duty
inimicis Dei claves civitatis contradens, et metum pejerandi
to-the-enemies of-God the-keys of-the-city handing-over and the-fear of-perjury
multorum in posterum sanguine compensans. Neque enim
of-many in the-future with-the-blood compensating nor for
ad hunc diem civitas illa capi vel vi vel ingenio
to this day the-city that to-be-taken either by-force or by-cunning
potuit: quin et plures ex hominibus illius, affluenti urbis
could nay and many of the-men his by-the-flowing of-the-city
opulentia delectati, fidei transfugio civium caritatem
wealth delighted of-faith by-desertion of-the-citizens the-love
meruere. Ita vir ille, Jerosolimam egressus, Laodiciam venit;
earned so man that from-Jerusalem having-gone-out to-Laodicea came
qua subjugata, aliquantum ibi morarum nexuit: cumque
with-which subjugated some there delays he-wove and-when
Constantinopolim ivisset, obtinuit Laodiciam Tancredus,
to-Constantinople he-had-gone obtained Laodicea Tancred
vi an amore ambiguum. Ille interea Bizantio commoratus,
by-force or by-love doubtful he meanwhile at-Byzantium staying
prudentia qua vigebat effecit ut Alexii gratiam haberet:
by-the-prudence in-which he-was-strong effected that of-Alexius the-favor he-had
unde contigit, ut, imperatoris benignitate per tuta
whence it-happened that of-the-emperor by-the-kindness through safe-places
deductus, societati ærumpnarum non implicaretur quas
led in-the-fellowship of-the-hardships not he-was-involved which
Willelmum Pictavensem et ceteros superius incurrisse
William of-Poitou and the-others above to-have-incurred
diximus; cum quibus Tortuosam civitatem cepit, sed, illis
we-have-said with whom Tortosa the-city he-took but with-them

ultra euntibus, solus possedit. Et, ut latius vires
further going alone he-possessed and that more-widely strength
suas spargeret, oppidum contra Tripolim, quod Castellum
his he-might-spread a-town opposite Tripoli which the-Castle
Peregrinorum vocant, firmavit, et ibi Herbertum episcopum
of-the-Pilgrims they-call he-fortified and there Herbert as-bishop
ex abbate constituit; et, ut quassæ suorum vires aliquanta
from abbot he-appointed and that the-shaken of-his-own strength in-some
quiete coalescerent, cum Tripolitanis in septennium fœdus
quiet might-grow-together with the-Tripolitans for seven-years a-treaty
jecit. Veruntamen ante præstitutum terminum pax rupta
he-cast nevertheless before the-appointed term the-peace broken
est; deprehenso intra castellum quodam oppidano cum
was with-caught within the-castle a-certain townsman with
pugione toxicato, quem sub femore occuluerat. Tum profecto
a-dagger poisoned which under his-thigh he-had-hidden then surely
Tripolitanæ victoriæ supremam manum imposuisset, nisi prope
of-the-Tripoli victory the-final hand he-would-have-put unless near
diem mors adveniens præsentis vitæ spiritum subduxisset
the-day death coming of-present life the-spirit had-withdrawn
ingentia parturientem. Cujus morte audita, Willelmus de
huge-things bringing-forth whose with-death heard William of
Monte Pessulano, et ceteri duces provinciæ, Willelmum
Mont- -pellier and the-other leaders of-the-province William
peregrinum, quem in ipsa obsidione ex Hispana
the-pilgrim whom in the-very siege from the-Spanish-woman
susceperat, quadrimum, patriam devehendum curarunt,
he-had-begotten four-years-old to-the-fatherland to-be-carried took-care
sollicita omnium spe in successionem educandum. Nec
with-anxious of-all hope for succession to-be-brought-up nor
invitus Bertramnus factum, quamvis se inconsulto,
unwillingly Bertrand the-deed although with-himself unconsulted

audivit, ut paternas adoreas instauraret. Itaque innumero
heard that the-paternal glories he-might-renew and-so by-countless
succinctus milite, præcipueque Januensibus et Pisanis, qui de
girt soldiery and-especially with-the-Genoese and Pisans who from
conjugis cognatione erant, annitentibus, Tripolim terra marique
of-his-wife the-kinship were striving Tripoli by-land and-by-sea
aggressus est, diuturnaque obsidione fractam in potestatem
attacked has and-by-long siege broken into power
redegit. Successit ei filius Pontius ex Longobarda, adolescens
reduced succeeded him his-son Pontius from the-Lombard-woman a-youth
majorum æmulus gloriæ; sortitusque est jugalem Tancredi
of-his-ancestors emulous of-glory and-obtained has as-spouse of-Tancred
quondam Antiocheni principis uxorem. Id enim ille moriens
once of-Antioch prince the-wife this for he dying
præceperat, protestatus adolescere in ephebo et Christianorum
had-ordered protesting to-grow in the-youth both of-the-Christians
commodum et Turchorum omnifariam dispendium. Pontius
the-advantage and of-the-Turks in-every-way the-loss Pontius
ergo Tripoli principatur, sancti Sepulcri se profitens
therefore at-Tripoli rules of-the-holy Sepulcher himself professing
servum, avitum scilicet et paternum secutus exemplum.
the-servant the-ancestral namely and paternal having-followed example

De Roberto Curta Ocrea

ROBERT CURTHOSE

Robert, son of William the Conqueror, slight of body and fat-bellied, won a name for courage under his father, but in youth demanded Normandy, was refused, and harried the country, and his angry father cut him off from the English inheritance. On the expedition he was never unhorsed, and at Antioch he and his companions turned on Kerbogha, who fell. He refused the kingdom of Jerusalem, married in Apulia on his way home, lost his wife after the birth of a son, squandered her dowry, and invaded England against Henry, settling for an annual gift he then remitted to the queen. His easy rule left Normandy lawless; the Normans called in Henry, and Robert, beaten in open battle, was held in comfortable custody until his death. Having already told what he knew of Hugh the Great and the counts of Blois and Flanders, William closes the fourth book here.

Robertus filius Willelmi Anglorum regis primi, natus in
Robert son of-William of-the-English king the-first born in
Normannia, spectatæ jam virtutis habebatur adolescens
Normandy of-tested already valor was-held a-youth
quando pater Angliam venit; fortitudinis probatæ, quanquam
when his-father to-England came of-bravery proven although
exilis corporis et pinguis aqualiculi. Inter bellicas patris
of-slender body and of-fat belly amid the-warlike of-his-father
alas excrevit primævo tirocinio, parenti morem in omnibus
wings he-grew-up in-first apprenticeship to-his-parent compliance in all-things
gerens. Veruntamen, juvenilem indutus calorem, Normanniam
bearing nevertheless youthful having-put-on heat Normandy
a patre adhuc vivente, fatuorum sodalium instinctu,
from his-father still living of-foolish companions by-the-instigation
impetrare se posse speravit: quod cum ille negasset,
to-obtain himself to-be-able he-hoped which when he had-refused
terrisonæ vocis roncho juvenem abigens, iratus abscessit
of-terrifying of-voice with-a-snort the-youth driving-off angry departed

Robertus, multisque assultibus patriam infestavit; primo
Robert and-with-many assaults the-country harassed at-first
quidem genitore cachinnos excutiente, et subinde dicente,
indeed with-the-father laughter shaking-out and repeatedly saying
"Per resurrectionem Dei! probus erit Robelinus Curta Ocrea."
by the-resurrection of-God upright will-be Robelin Short Boot
Hoc enim erat ejus cognomen, quod esset exiguus; ceterum
this for was his surname because he-was small for-the-rest
nihil habens quod succenseres, quia nec illepidæ formæ,
nothing having which you-could-be-angry-at because neither of-unpleasing form
nec infaceti eloquii, nec virtutis imbecillæ, nec enervis erat
nor of-unwitty eloquence nor of-valor weak nor nerveless was-he
consilii. Posterius vero rex adeo effera succensus est ira
in-counsel later but the-king so-much with-fierce kindled was anger
ut eum et benedictione ultima et hereditate fraudaret
that him both of-the-blessing last and of-the-inheritance he-cheated
Anglica. Comitatu tamen Normanniæ ægre licet et
English with-the-county yet of-Normandy with-difficulty though and
improbe retento, post novem annos Jerosolimitanæ viæ
shamelessly retained after nine years of-the-Jerusalem journey
laboribus suæ fortitudinis periculum fecit; et in multis
by-the-labors of-his bravery trial he-made and in many-things
quidem mirabilis apparuit, ut nunquam a Christiano
indeed wonderful he-appeared so-that never by a-Christian
vel pagano potuerit ex equite pedes effici. Tum
or a-pagan could-he from horseman foot-soldier to-be-made then
vero maxime in bello Antiocheno, cujus ipse victoriam
indeed most in the-battle of-Antioch whose he victory
pulchra experientia nobilitavit. Nam cum Turchi, ut diximus,
by-beautiful experience ennobled for when the-Turks as we-have-said
subito terrefacti fugæ se dedissent, nostrique palantes
suddenly terrified to-flight themselves had-given and-ours straggling

vehementius impeterent, Corbaguath dux, genuinæ virtutis
more-vehemently attacked Kerbogha the-leader of-native valor
memor, retento equo suos inclamat; famulos ignavos
mindful with-held-back horse his-men calls-on servants cowardly
et annosarum victoriarum oblitos vocans, ut victores
and of-old victories forgetful calling-them that victors
quondam orientis paterentur se ab advena et pene
once of-the-east they-allowed themselves by a-newcomer and almost
inermi populo finibus excludi: quo clamore multi,
unarmed people from-their-borders to-be-shut-out at-which shout many
resumentes animum, Francos conversi urgere et propiores
resuming courage the-Franks turned to-press and the-nearer
cedere cœpere; Corbaguath suos animante et hostes
to-yield began with-Kerbogha his-men encouraging and the-enemies
feriente, ut imperatoris et militis probe officium exequeretur.
striking that of-commander and of-soldier properly the-duty he-performed
Tum vero Normannus comes, et Philippus clericus, filius
then indeed the-Norman count and Philip the-cleric son
Rogerii comitis de Monte Gomerico, et Warinus de Tanea
of-Roger the-earl of Mont- -gomery and Warin of Taney
castello Cenomannico, mutua se vivacitate invicem
a-castle in-Maine with-mutual themselves liveliness in-turn
hortati, qui ante simulata fuga cedebant, convertunt
having-exhorted who before with-feigned flight were-yielding turn
cornipedes, et quisque suum comparem incessens dejiciunt.
the-horn-footed-steeds and each his-own match attacking throw-down
Ibi Corbaguath, quamvis comitem cognosceret, solo
there Kerbogha although the-count he-recognized by-the-only
tamen corpore mensus, simul et fugere inglorium
yet body measuring at-the-same-time and to-flee inglorious
arbitratus, audaciam congressus morte propinqua luit,
thinking the-daring of-engaging with-death near he-paid-for

vitali statim spiritu privatus: cujus nece visa, Turchi, qui
of-vital at-once breath deprived whose with-death seen the-Turks who
jam gloriabundi ululabant, spe recenti exinaniti, fugam
already boastfully were-howling of-fresh hope emptied flight
iterarunt. In eo tumultu Warinus cecidit, Robertus cum
repeated in that tumult Warin fell Robert with
Philippo palmam retulit: Philippus hac militia præcluus,
Philip the-palm brought-back Philip in-this soldiering most-famous
sed Jerosolimis, ut fertur, bono fine functus; præter
but at-Jerusalem as is-said with-a-good end having-died besides
exercitium equestre litteris clarus. Ita Robertus, Jerosolimam
exercise equestrian in-letters famous so Robert to-Jerusalem
veniens, indelebili macula nobilitatem suam respersit, quod
coming with-an-indelible stain nobility his besprinkled because
regnum, consensu omnium sibi utpote regis filio delatum,
the-kingdom by-the-consent of-all to-him as-being of-a-king son offered
recusaret, non reverentiæ, ut fertur, contuitu, sed laborum
he-refused not of-reverence as is-said from-regard but of-labors
inextricabilium metu. Veruntamen patriam regresso, in
inextricable from-fear nevertheless to-the-fatherland to-him-returned in
qua licenter se delicatis voluptatibus inserviturum putaverat,
which licentiously himself to-delicate pleasures about-to-serve he-had-thought
affuit pro hac culpa, credo, Deus misericorditer ubique
was-present for this fault I-believe God mercifully everywhere
sæviens, et omnes ejus dulcedines amarissimis offensionibus
raging and all his sweetnesses with-most-bitter offenses
offuscans, sicut consequenti scripto palam fiet. Uxorem
darkening as in-the-following writing plain will-become as-wife
filiam Willelmi de Conversana, quam rediens in Apuliam
the-daughter of-William of Conversano whom returning in Apulia
duxerat, cujus elegantissimæ speciei prodigium vix
he-had-married whose most-elegant of-beauty prodigy scarcely

ullius disertitudinis explicabit conatus, post paucos annos
of-any eloquence will-explain the-effort after a-few years
morbo amisit; deceptam, ut dicunt, obstetricis consilio, quæ
by-illness he-lost deceived as they-say of-a-midwife by-the-advice who
pro affluentis lactis copia, puerperæ mammas stricta
for the-flowing of-milk abundance of-the-new-mother the-breasts with-a-tight
præceperat illigari fascia. Sed accessit, tantorum malorum
had-ordered to-be-bound band but there-was-added of-so-great evils
grande solatium, filius ex conjuge susceptus; qui, Willelmus
a-great comfort a-son from his-wife begotten who William
dictus vaticinio nominis aviti, spem egregiæ pietatis
called by-the-prophecy of-the-name of-his-grandfather the-hope of-outstanding piety
aleret in posterum. Pecuniam infinitam, quam ei
should-nourish into the-future money infinite which to-him
socer dotis nomine annumeraverat, ut ejus commercio
his-father-in-law of-dowry by-the-name had-counted-out that by-its commerce
Normanniam exueret vadimonio, ita dilapidavit ut pauculis
Normandy he-might-free from-pledge so he-squandered that in-very-few
diebus nec nummus superesset. Præcipitavit quoque infamiam
days not-a coin remained hastened also the-infamy
ejus inconsultus adventus in Angliam, ut fratri Henrico
his the-ill-advised coming into England that from-his-brother Henry
regnum eriperet; sed, desertorum qui eum invitaverant
the-kingdom he-might-snatch but of-the-deserters who him had-invited
destitutus auxilio, germani paci facile adquievit utriusque
bereft of-help of-his-brother to-the-peace easily he-acquiesced of-each
partis ducum auxilio, trium milium marcarum annuum
side of-the-leaders with-the-help of-three thousand marks an-annual
donum ab Anglia verbo tenus habiturus. Nam promiserat
gift from England in-word only about-to-have for had-promised
ista rex, non daturus; sed, fratris facilitatem non
these-things the-king not about-to-give but of-his-brother the-easiness not

nesciens, blandam credulitatem luserat dum interim calor
not-knowing the-bland credulity he-had-mocked while meanwhile the-heat
bellicus defervesceret. Porro ille, quasi cum fortuna certaret
of-war might-cool-down further he as-if with fortune he-contended
utrum plus illa daret an ipse dispergeret, sola
whether more she might-give or he-himself might-scatter with-the-sole
voluntate reginæ tacite postulantis comperta, tantam massam
wish of-the-queen silently asking learned so-great a-mass
argenti benignus in perpetuum ignovit; acclines fœminei
of-silver kindly into perpetuity he-forgave the-inclined of-womanly
fastus preces pro magno exosculatus; erat enim ejus in
pride prayers for great having-kissed she-was for his at
baptismo filiola. Offensarum igitur erat immemor; culparum,
baptism goddaughter of-offenses therefore he-was unmindful of-faults
quatenus non debet, remissor; omnibus pro voto
insofar-as not ought a-pardoner to-all according-to their-wish
respondens adeuntibus, ne tristes dimitteret; et quod
answering those-approaching lest sad he-should-send-them-away and what
dare non posset, repromittens. Qua morum dulcedine, qui
to-give not he-could promising by-which of-manners sweetness he-who
laudari et subjectorum amorem mercari debuerat, adeo
to-be-praised and of-his-subjects the-love to-buy ought-to-have so-much
in contemptum sui Normannos exacuit ut nullius eum
into contempt of-himself the-Normans sharpened that of-no him
momenti æstimarent. Tunc enim potentum quisque sibi
of-moment they-reckoned then for of-the-powerful each one-another
adversari, tunc manubiæ prædarum per totam regionem
to-oppose then the-spoils of-plunders through the-whole region
agi, tunc vulgus exspoliari. Quas incommoditates
to-be-driven then the-common-people to-be-stripped which troubles
comiti provinciales deferentes, nullum referebant auxilium;
to-the-count the-provincials reporting no brought-back help

dum ille primo commotus, mox vel munusculis, vel temporis
while he at-first moved soon either by-little-gifts or of-time
intercessu ira languescente, leniebatur. Iccirco, extremis
by-the-passage with-anger languishing was-soothed therefore by-extreme
malis admoniti, opem regis Henrici censuere implorandam,
evils admonished the-help of-king Henry they-thought to-be-implored
ut laboranti patriæ succurreret. Ille Cæsarianæ sententiæ
that to-the-laboring fatherland he-should-run-to-help he to-the-Caesarian opinion
assistens, "Si violandum est jus, gratia civium violandum
assenting if to-be-violated is right for-the-sake of-the-citizens to-be-violated
est; aliis rebus pietatem colas," non semel in
it-is in-other things piety you-may-cultivate not once into
Normanniam vires trajecit, ut laboranti justitiæ manum
Normandy his-forces carried-across that to-laboring justice a-hand
daret: tantumque postremo valuit, ut totam terram,
he-might-give and-so-much lastly prevailed that the-whole land
præter Rotomagum, et Falesium, et Cadomum, subjugaret.
except Rouen and Falaise and Caen he-subjugated
Jamque ad hoc Robertus venerat, ut in vicis illis pene
and-now to this Robert had-come that in villages those almost
se altero vagaretur, precarium victum a burgensibus
himself with-one-other he-wandered a-begged food from the-burgesses
nundinans. Quare offensi Cadomenses, non diu in fide
trafficking wherefore offended the-people-of-Caen not long in faith
mansere; sed, rege per nuntios admonito, portis
remained but with-the-king through messengers admonished with-the-gates
seratis et repagulis objectis urbem clausere. Quo Robertus
locked and bars set-against the-city they-shut with-which Robert
cognito effugere gestiens, vix permissus est, armigero tamen
learned to-escape eager scarcely allowed was with-his-squire yet
cum cubiculi pannis retento. Inde raptim Rotomagum
with of-the-chamber the-cloths held-back thence hastily to-Rouen

veniens, dominum suum regem Francorum, et cognatum
coming lord his the-king of-the-Franks and his-kinsman
comitem Flandrensem, de suffragio convenit; sed, nullo
the-count of-Flanders about support approached but with-nothing
impetrato, ad bellum publicum venit, ultimam fortunam
obtained to battle public he-came the-last fortune
experturus. Qua illum infelici pede prosequente, captus,
about-to-try which him with-unlucky foot following captured
ad diem mortis in libera tentus est custodia, laudabili
to the-day of-death in free held was custody by-the-praiseworthy
fratris pietate; quod nihil præter solitudinem passus sit
of-his-brother piety that nothing except solitude suffered he-has
mali, si solitudo dici potest ubi et custodum diligentia
of-evil if solitude to-be-called can where both of-the-guards the-diligence
et jocorum præterea et obsoniorum non deerat frequentia.
and of-jests besides and of-dishes not was-lacking the-abundance
Tenebatur ergo sociorum omnium viæ superstes, nec
he-was-held therefore of-the-comrades all of-the-journey the-survivor nor
unquam usque obitum relaxatus. Patria lingua facundus,
ever until death released in-his-native tongue eloquent
ut sit jocundior nullus; in aliis consiliosus, ut
so-that is more-pleasant none in other-things full-of-counsel so-that
nihil excellentius; militiæ peritus, ut si quis unquam; pro
nothing more-excellent in-soldiering skilled as if anyone ever for
mollitie tamen animi nunquam regendæ reipublicæ idoneus
softness yet of-mind never for-ruling the-commonwealth fit
judicatus. Veruntamen quia superius dixi quæcunque noram
judged nevertheless because above I-said whatever I-knew
de Hugone magno, et Blesensi et Flandrensi comitibus, non
about Hugh the-Great and of-Blois and of-Flanders counts not
incongrue, ut opinor, quartum librum hac meta concludam.
unfittingly as I-think the-fourth book with-this goal I-shall-conclude

Explicit liber quartus magistri Willelmi Malmesbiriensis de
here-ends the-book fourth of-master William of-Malmesbury about
gestis regum Anglorum.
the-deeds of-the-kings of-the-English

Prologus in librum quintum. Incipit prologus ejusdem in librum quintum

PROLOGUE TO BOOK FIVE

The order of events brings William to Henry's reign, a task beyond him: what he has heard alone would weary the most eloquent pen, and it would take a Cicero or the poet of Mantua. A man far from the court's secrets, he will set down a few things, with leave for his digressions, and will add what happened elsewhere in Henry's time and is perhaps unwritten or little known.

Ordine rerum vocante, tempus Henrici regis ingressi sumus:
with-the-order of-things calling the-time of-Henry the-king entered we-have
cujus gesta stili officio posteris tradere, majoris quam a
whose deeds of-the-pen by-the-office to-posterity to-hand-down greater than from
nobis debeat exquiri est operæ; nam et si sola quæ
us ought to-be-sought is of-work for even if only the-things-which
nostras aures attigerunt scripto mandarentur, cujuslibet
our ears have-touched to-writing were-committed of-anyone
eloquentissimi nervos fatigare, et grandia possent armaria
most-eloquent the-sinews to-weary and great could bookcases
gravare. Quis ergo conetur omnia illa consiliorum pondera, illa
to-burden who therefore would-try all those of-counsels weights those
gestorum regalium molimina, enucleatim retexere? altioris sunt
of-deeds royal labors in-detail to-unweave of-higher are
ista negotii et otiosioris animi. Vix hæc auderet
these-things business and of-a-more-leisured mind scarcely these-things would-dare

vel Cicero in prosa, cujus adorat sales tota Latinitas,
either Cicero in prose whose adores the-witticisms the-whole Latinity
vel si quis versuum favore Mantuanum lacessit poetam.
or if anyone of-verses by-the-favor the-Mantuan challenges poet
Adde quod, dum ambiguis relatoribus fidem detraho, homo
add that while from-ambiguous informants faith I-withdraw a-man
procul ab aulicis mysteriis secretus, majora gesta ignorans,
far from courtly mysteries secluded the-greater deeds not-knowing
paucis manum appono. Quare verendum est, ne, dum litteræ
to-few-things my-hand I-apply wherefore to-be-feared it-is lest while my-letters
distant ab animi voto, minor videatur cujus gesta multa
stand-apart from of-the-mind the-wish lesser he-may-seem whose deeds many
prætereo. Veruntamen hujus culpæ, si culpa dicenda est, bona
I-pass-over nevertheless of-this fault if fault to-be-called is good
erit apud illum deprecatio qui meminerit me nec omnia ejus
will-be with him the-plea who shall-remember me neither all his
gesta potuisse nosse, nec omnia quæ noveram scriptum iri
deeds to-have-been-able to-know nor all which I-had-known written to-be
debuisse: alterum exegerit personæ meæ exilitas, alterum
ought the-one will-have-demanded of-person my the-slenderness the-other
coactura sit lecturorum satietas. Pauca igitur rerum ejus
about-to-compel is of-the-readers-to-be the-satiety a-few therefore of-the-things his
liber hic quintus suo vendicabit gremio; cetera proculdubio
book this fifth to-its-own will-claim bosom the-rest without-doubt
et seret fama, et victura in posteros feret memoria.
both will-sow fame and about-to-live into posterity will-bear memory
Nec vero a proposito priorum quatuor degenerabit; sed
nor indeed from the-purpose of-the-former four will-it-degenerate but
quædam quæ hic et alias ejus acciderunt tempore procudet,
certain-things which here and elsewhere in-his happened time it-will-forge
quæ forsitan vel non scripta, vel multis sunt incognita.
which perhaps either not written or to-many are unknown

Occupabunt itaque ista magnam partem voluminis; præfata
will-occupy and-so these-things a-great part of-the-volume with-said
venia tam longarum digressionum et in hoc et in aliis.
pardon of-so long digressions both in this and in others
Explicit prologus.
here-ends the-prologue

Liber quintus. Incipit liber quintus de gestis Henrici regis

BOOK FIVE: HENRY, HIS YOUTH AND ACCESSION

Henry, the Conqueror's younger son, was born in England in the third year after his father came there, the only one of his sons born to a king. He was schooled in letters and kept them through every war, and his learning, as Plato wished of kings, taught him to rule with restraint. His father left him money and his mother's inheritance; Robert spent the money on his soldiers and held Henry under guard at Rouen, and Rufus put him off with empty promises. Back in Normandy he held Rouen for Robert and threw the traitor Conan from its tower, and was driven out for it; after holding the Mount of Saint Michael against both brothers he was left in want. On Rufus's death he was chosen king, forbade his brother's injustices, imprisoned Ranulf, sent for Anselm, was crowned at London, and married Matilda, daughter of King Malcolm of the Scots and of King Edward's line.

Henricus, junior filius Willelmi magni, natus est in Anglia
Henry the-younger son of-William the-Great born was in England
anno tertio postquam pater eam adierat; infans jam
in-the-year third after his-father it had-gone-to an-infant already
tum omnium votis conspirantibus educatus egregie,
then of-all with-the-wishes conspiring brought-up excellently
quod solus omnium filiorum Willelmi natus esset regie,
because alone of-all the-sons of-William born had-been royally
et ei regnum videretur competere. Itaque tirocinium
and to-him the-kingdom seemed to-belong and-so the-apprenticeship

rudimentorum in scholis egit litteralibus, et librorum mella
of-rudiments in the-schools he-spent of-letters and of-books the-honey
adeo avidis medullis indidit, ut nulli postea bellorum
so-much in-greedy marrow he-put that no afterward of-wars
tumultus, nulli curarum motus, eas excutere illustri animo
tumults no of-cares motions them to-shake-out from-illustrious mind
possent. Quamvis ipse nec multum palam legeret, nec nisi
could although he-himself neither much openly read nor except
summisse cantitaret; fuerunt tamen, ut vere confirmo, litteræ,
softly chanted were yet as truly I-confirm letters
quamvis tumultuarie libatæ, magna supellex ad regnandum
although in-makeshift-way sipped a-great equipment for reigning
scientiæ, juxta illam Platonis sententiam, qua dicit
of-knowledge according-to that of-Plato saying in-which he-says
"Beatam esse rempublicam si vel philosophi regnarent, vel
blessed to-be a-commonwealth if either philosophers reigned or
reges philosopharentur." Philosophia ergo non adeo exiliter
kings philosophized with-philosophy therefore not so-much meagerly
informatus, sensim discebat ut successu temporis provinciales
informed gradually he-learned that in-the-course of-time the-provincials
mitius contineret, milites nonnisi diligentissime explorata
more-mildly he-might-restrain the-soldiers not-unless most-diligently with-explored
necessitate committere sineret. Itaque pueritiam ad spem
the-necessity to-engage he-allowed and-so his-boyhood toward the-hope
regni litteris muniebat; subinde, patre quoque
of-the-kingdom with-letters he-fortified repeatedly with-his-father also
audiente, jactitare proverbium solitus, "Rex illiteratus, asinus
hearing to-throw-out a-proverb wont king illiterate an-ass
coronatus." Ferunt quinetiam genitorem, non prætereunter
crowned they-say moreover his-father not in-passing
notata morum ejus compositione quibus vivacem prudentiam
with-noticed of-manners his the-composition with-which lively prudence

aleret, ab uno fratrum læsum, et lacrymantem his
he-nourished by one of-his-brothers hurt and weeping with-these-words
animasse, "Ne fleas, fili, quoniam et tu rex eris."
to-have-encouraged do-not weep son since also you king will-be
Vicesimo ergo primo regni paterni anno, ætatis suæ nono
in-the-twentieth therefore first of-the-reign paternal in-the-year of-age his ninth
decimo, in Pentecoste, apud Westmonasterium sumpsit arma
tenth at Pentecost at Westminster he-took arms
a patre, cum quo tunc Normanniam navigans, non multo
from his-father with whom then to-Normandy sailing not much
post præsens funeri ejus astitit, ceteris fratribus quo
after present at-the-funeral his he-stood with-the-other brothers whither
quemque spes tulerat dilapsis, ut superior sermo non occuluit.
each hope had-carried slipped-away as the-above speech not has-hidden
Quapropter paterna benedictione et materna hereditate,
wherefore on-paternal blessing and maternal inheritance
simul et multiplicibus thesauris nixus, supercilium
at-the-same-time and on-manifold treasures relying the-brow
germanorum parum faciebat, utrique vel assistens vel adversans
of-his-brothers little he-made-of to-each either assisting or opposing
pro merito: inclinatior porro Roberto pro mansuetudine,
according-to merit more-inclined further to-Robert for gentleness
ejus lenitatem suo rigore satagebat acuere. Contra, ille,
his the-mildness with-his-own rigor he-busied to-sharpen against-this he
noxia facilitate delatoribus credulus, fratrem immeritum
with-harmful easiness to-informers credulous his-brother undeserving
injuriis vexabat, quas vel breviter taxare non erit incongruum.
with-injuries harassed which even briefly to-assess not will-be unfitting
Eo tempore, quo, frementibus adversus Willelmum
at-that time in-which with-raging against William
secundum Angliæ proceribus, Robertus in Normannia
the-second of-England the-nobles Robert in Normandy

ventum prosperum expectabat ad navigandum, Henricus in
a-wind favorable was-awaiting for sailing Henry into
Britanniam ejus jussu abscesserat. Tum ille, occasione
Brittany at-his order had-gone-away then he with-the-occasion
aucupata, omnem illam pecuniarum vim testamento patris
seized all that of-moneys force by-the-will of-his-father
adolescentulo legatam, quæ erat trium milium marcarum,
to-the-youth bequeathed which was of-three thousand marks
in stipendiarios suos absumpsit. Id Henricus reversus, licet
on stipendiaries his spent this Henry returned although
forsitan ægre tulisset, taciturna præteriit industria; enimvero,
perhaps ill he-had-borne in-silent passed-over with-industry for
nuntiata pacis compositione in Anglia, deposita militia
with-announced of-peace the-settlement in England with-laid-down soldiery
ferias armis dedere. Comes in sua, junior in ea
a-holiday to-arms gave the-count to his-own the-younger into those-things
quæ frater suus dederat vel promiserat, discessit; namque
which brother his had-given or had-promised departed for
et in acceptum promissa referebat, custodiens turrim
also into received the-promised-things he-entered guarding the-tower
Rotomagi in ejus fidelitatem: sed delatione pessimorum
of-Rouen in his fealty but by-the-accusation of-the-worst
cessit in adversum fidelitas, et nulla sua culpa in ipso
turned into the-opposite the-fealty and with-no his fault in the-very
eodem loco Henricus libere custoditus est, ne servatorum
same place Henry freely guarded was lest of-the-keepers
diligentiam effugio luderet. Post medium annum laxatus,
the-diligence by-escape he-should-mock after half a-year released
fratri Willelmo invitanti serviturum se obtulit; at
to-his-brother William inviting-him about-to-serve himself he-offered but
ille, nihilo modestius ephebum remunerans, plus anno
he by-nothing more-modestly the-young-man rewarding more than-a-year

inanibus sponsionibus egentem distulit. Quapropter, Roberto
with-empty promises needy put-off wherefore with-Robert
emendationem facti per nuntios promittente, Normanniam
amendment of-the-deed through envoys promising to-Normandy
venit, amborum fratrum expertus insidias. Nam et rex,
he-came of-both brothers having-experienced the-ambushes for both the-king
pro repulsa iratus, ut retineretur frustra mandarat; et comes
for the-repulse angry that he-be-held-back in-vain had-commanded and the-count
accusatorum lenociniis mutatus, voluntatem verterat, ut
of-the-accusers by-the-blandishments changed his-will had-turned that
blanditiis attrectatum non ita facile dimitteret. Verum ille,
by-flatteries handled not so easily he-should-let-go but he
Dei providentia et sagaci sua diligentia, cuncta evadens
of-God by-the-providence and by-shrewd his-own diligence all escaping
pericula, occupatione Abrincarum et quorundam castellorum
dangers by-the-seizure of-Avranches and of-certain castles
coegit fratrem libenter paci manum dedere. Nec multo
compelled his-brother willingly to-peace a-hand to-give nor much
post, Willelmo veniente in Normanniam ut se de fratre
after with-William coming into Normandy that himself on brother
Roberto ulcisceretur, comiti obsequelam suam exhibuit,
Robert he-might-avenge to-the-count service his he-showed
Rotomagi positus. Denique regios eo interdiu venientes,
at-Rouen placed finally the-royal-men thither by-day coming
qui dolo civium totam jampridem occupaverant urbem,
who by-the-guile of-the-citizens the-whole long-since had-occupied city
probe expulit, admonito per nuntios comite ut ille a
properly he-expelled with-admonished through messengers the-count that he from
fronte propelleret quos ipse a tergo urgeret. Unde
the-front should-drive-off those-whom he-himself from behind should-press whence
factum est, ut Conanum quendam, proditionis apud comitem
done it-was that Conan a-certain of-treason before the-count

insimulatum, quem ille vinculis irretire volebat, arbitratus
accused whom he with-chains to-bind wished thinking
nihil calamitosius posse inferri misero quam ut exosum
nothing more-calamitous could to-be-inflicted on-the-wretch than that his-hated
spiritum in ergastulo traheret, — hunc ergo Conanum
spirit in prison he-should-drag this-one therefore Conan
Henricus suæ curæ servatum iri postulavit. Quo concesso,
Henry to-his care kept to-be asked with-which granted
in superiora Rotomagensis turris duxit; jussoque ut
to the-upper-parts of-the-Rouen tower he-led-him and-with-ordered that
late circumposita diligenter ex arcis edito specularetur,
widely the-placed-around diligently from the-height of-the-citadel he-should-view
sua per ironiam omnia futura pronuntians, inopinum ex
his-own through irony all about-to-be declaring unexpected from
propugnaculo deturbans in subjectum Sequanam præcipitavit,
the-battlement thrusting-down into the-underlying Seine he-threw-headlong
comitibus qui secum aderant pariter impellentibus:
with-the-companions who with-him were-present equally pushing
protestatus, nullam vitæ moram deberi traditori; quoquo
protesting no of-life delay to-be-owed to-a-traitor in-whatever
modo alieni hominis posse tolerari injurias, illius
way of-a-stranger man can to-be-tolerated the-injuries of-him
vero, qui tibi juratus fecerit hominium, nullo modo posse
but who to-you sworn has-done homage in-no way can
differri supplicium si fuerit probatus perfidiæ. Parum
to-be-deferred the-punishment if he-has-been proved of-treachery little
hic labor apud Robertum valuit, virum animi mobilis; qui,
here the-labor with Robert availed a-man of-mind fickle who
statim ad ingratitudinem flexus, bene meritum urbe
at-once to ingratitude bent well the-deserving(-one) from-the-city
cedere coegit. Illud fuit tempus quo, ut supra lectum
to-depart compelled that was the-time in-which as above read

est, apud montem sancti Michaelis ambobus fratribus
has-been at the-mount of-saint Michael to-both brothers
Henricus pro sui salute, simul et gloria, restitit.
Henry for his-own safety at-the-same-time and glory resisted
Ita, cum utrique germano fuerit fidelis et efficax, illi,
so though to-each brother he-was faithful and effective they
nullis adolescentem possessionibus dignati, ad majorem
of-no the-youth possessions having-deemed-worthy to greater
prudentiam ævi processu penuria victualium informabant.
prudence of-age with-the-advance by-the-want of-food instructed
Occiso vero rege Willelmo, ut supra dictum est, post justa
with-killed but king William as above said it-was after the-dues
funeri regio persoluta, in regem electus est, aliquantis tamen
to-the-funeral royal paid as king elected he-was with-some yet
ante controversiis inter proceres agitatis atque sopitis; annitente
before controversies among the-nobles stirred and put-to-rest with-striving
maxime comite Warwicensi Henrico, viro integro et sancto,
most earl of-Warwick Henry a-man upright and holy
cujus familiari jamdudum usus fuerat contubernio. Itaque,
whose intimate long-since used he-had companionship and-so
edicto statim per Angliam misso, injustitias a fratre
with-an-edict at-once through England sent the-injustices by his-brother
et Rannulfo institutas prohibuit, pensionum et vinculorum
and Ranulf instituted he-forbade of-rents and of-chains
gratiam fecit: effœminatos curia propellens, lucernarum
grace he-made the-effeminate from-the-court driving of-lamps
usum noctibus in curia restituit, qui fuerat tempore fratris
the-use at-night in court he-restored which had-been in-the-time of-his-brother
intermissus; antiquarum moderationem legum revocavit in
interrupted of-the-ancient the-moderation laws he-recalled in
solidum, sacramento suo et omnium procerum, ne luderentur,
full by-oath his-own and of-all the-nobles lest they-be-mocked

corroborans. Lætus ergo dies visus est revirescere populis,
confirming glad therefore day seen was to-grow-green-again for-the-peoples
cum, post tot anxietatum nubila, serenarum promissionum
when after so-many of-anxieties clouds of-serene promises
infulgebant lumina. Et ne quid profecto gaudio accumulato
shone-in lights and lest anything surely from-the-joy heaped-up
abesset, Rannulfo nequitiarum fæce tenebris ergastularibus
be-absent with-Ranulf of-wickedness the-dregs in-darkness of-the-prison
incluso, propter Anselmum pernicibus nuntiis directum.
shut-in for Anselm with-swift messengers sent
Quapropter, certatim plausu plebeio concrepante, in regem
wherefore eagerly with-applause popular resounding as king
coronatus est Londoniæ nonis Augustis, quarto post
crowned he-was at-London on-the-nones of-August the-fourth after
obitum fratris die. Hæc eo studiosius celebrabantur,
the-death of-his-brother day these-things for-this more-zealously were-celebrated
ne mentes procerum electionis quassarentur pœnitudine,
lest the-minds of-the-nobles of-the-election should-be-shaken with-regret
quod ferebatur rumor Robertum Normanniæ comitem ex
because was-carried the-rumor Robert of-Normandy count from
Apulia adventantem jam jamque affore. Nec multo post,
Apulia arriving now and-now to-be-present nor much after
suadentibus amicis, ac maxime pontificibus, ut, remota
with-persuading friends and especially bishops that with-removed
voluptate pellicum, legitimum amplecteretur connubium,
pleasure of-concubines a-lawful he-should-embrace marriage
die sancti Martini accepit Mathildem filiam Malcolmi
on-the-day of-saint Martin he-took Matilda daughter of-Malcolm
regis Scottorum; cujus amori jampridem animum impulerat,
king of-the-Scots whose to-the-love long-since his-mind he-had-driven
parvi pendens dotales divitias, dummodo diu cupitis potiretur
little weighing of-dowry riches provided-that long the-desired he-might-gain

amplexibus. Erat enim illa, licet genere sublimis, utpote
embraces she-was for she although by-race lofty as-being
regis Edwardi ex fratre Edmundo abneptis, modicæ
of-king Edward from his-brother Edmund great-great-granddaughter of-moderate
tamen domina supellectilis, utroque tunc parente pupilla:
yet the-mistress of-furniture with-both then parents an-orphan
de qua posterius uberior erit narrandi materia.
about whom later fuller will-be of-narrating material

ROBERT'S INVASION AND THE REBEL BARONS

Robert came back to Normandy and recovered his county, and almost all the magnates deserted Henry, mocking him and Matilda as Godric and Godgifu; only Robert son of Hamo, Richard of Redvers, Roger Bigod, and the count of Meulan with his brother Henry held firm. Ranulf escaped from the Tower by a rope smuggled in a jar of water and spurred Robert on. Robert landed at Portsmouth, but Henry, backed by Anselm and the English, drilled his men, and wiser counsel made peace between the brothers; Robert took a promise of three thousand marks, which he forgave the next year at the queen's asking. Then Robert of Bellême rebelled; Henry took Bridgnorth; Arundel and Shrewsbury gave in; and Robert abjured England. William of Mortain demanded the earldom of Kent, was refused and stripped by judgment, and went raging to Normandy, where he harried the young earl of Chester.

Robertus interea, Normanniam veniens, comitatum suum
Robert meanwhile to-Normandy coming county his
obsistente nullo recepit: quo audito, omnes pene hujus
with-resisting no-one recovered with-which heard all almost of-this
terræ optimates fidei regi juratæ transfugæ fuere;
land the-magnates from-the-faith to-the-king sworn deserters were
quidam nullis extantibus causis, quidam levibus occasiunculis
some with-no existing causes some with-light little-pretexts

emendicatis, quod nollet eis terras quas vellent
begged because he-would-not to-them the-lands which they-wished
ultro pro libito eorum impertiri. Soli Robertus filius
of-his-own-accord at pleasure their to-share alone Robert son
Haimonis, Ricardus de Retvers, et Rogerius Bigot, et
of-Hamo Richard of Redvers and Roger Bigod and
Robertus comes de Mellento, cum fratre Henrico, justas
Robert count of Meulan with his-brother Henry the-just
partes fovebant. Ceterum, omnes vel clam pro Roberto,
sides cherished for-the-rest all either secretly for Robert
ut rex fieret, mittere, vel palam contumeliis dominum
that king he-should-be to-send or openly with-insults their-lord
inurere; Godricum eum, et comparem Godgivam, appellantes.
to-brand Godric him and his-consort Godgifu calling
Audiebat hæc ille, et formidabiles cachinnos iram
heard these-things he and formidable laughs his-anger
differens ejiciebat; stultitias fatuorum insania objectas
deferring threw-out the-follies of-fools by-madness thrown-at-him
artificioso silentio dissolvens, blandus odii dissimulator,
with-artful silence dissolving a-bland of-hatred dissembler
sed pro tempore immodicus retributor. Accessit temporum
but at the-time an-immoderate repayer was-added of-the-times
turbini versutia Rannulfi; namque ille, sollicitato per
to-the-whirlwind the-craftiness of-Ranulf for he with-solicited through
nuntios dapifero suo, funem afferri sibi impetravit:
messengers steward his a-rope to-be-brought to-himself obtained
funem minister aquæ bajulus, proh dolus, amphora immersum
the-rope the-servant of-water carrier ah guile in-a-jar submerged
detulit; quo ille muro turris demissus, si læsit
brought by-which he from-the-wall of-the-tower let-down if he-hurt
brachia, si excoriavit manus, parum curat populus. Inde
his-arms if he-skinned his-hands little cares the-people thence

Normanniam evadens, comiti jam anhelanti, et in fervorem
to-Normandy escaping to-the-count already panting and into the-heat
prælii prono, addidit calcaria ut incunctanter veniret.
of-battle inclined he-added spurs that without-delay he-should-come
Secundo ergo Henrici anno, mense Augusto, allitans
in-the-second therefore of-Henry year in-the-month August landing
apud Portesmuthe, copias suas in omnem regionem exposuit,
at Portsmouth forces his into every region he-set-out
effudit, objecit. Nec vero rex segnitiei deditus fuit, sed
poured threw nor indeed the-king to-sloth given was but
innumeram e regione manum traxit, dignitatem suam, si
a-countless over against band he-drew dignity his if
necesse foret, asserturus: nam, licet principibus deficientibus,
necessary it-were about-to-assert for although with-the-princes failing
partes ejus solidæ manebant; quas Anselmi archiepiscopi, cum
the-party his solid remained which of-Anselm the-archbishop with
episcopis suis, simul et omnium Anglorum tutabatur
bishops his at-the-same-time and of-all the-English protected
favor. Quapropter ipse provincialium fidei gratus, et
the-favor wherefore he of-the-provincials to-the-faith grateful and
saluti providus, plerumque cuneos circuiens, docebat
for-their-safety provident often the-wedges going-round taught
quomodo, militum ferociam eludentes, clypeos objectarent
how of-the-soldiers the-ferocity eluding their-shields they-should-hold-out
et ictus remitterent; quo effecit ut ultroneis votis
and the-blows send-back by-which he-effected that with-voluntary wishes
pugnam deposcerent, in nullo Normannos metuentes. Sed
battle they-demanded in nothing the-Normans fearing but
satagentibus sanioris consilii hominibus, qui dicerent pietatis
with-busying-themselves of-sounder counsel men who said of-piety
jus violandum si fraterna necessitudo prælio concurreret, paci
the-right to-be-violated if fraternal kinship in-battle should-clash to-peace

animos accommodavere; reputantes quod, si alter occumberet,
their-minds they-adapted reckoning that if one should-fall
alter infirmior remaneret, cum nullus fratrum præter ipsos
the-other weaker would-remain since no of-the-brothers besides themselves
superesset. Sed et trium milium marcarum promissio lenem
survived but also of-three thousand marks the-promise the-gentle
comitis fallebat credulitatem, ut, procinctu soluto, de tanta
of-the-count deceived credulity that with-readiness loosed with so-much
pecunia menti blandiretur suæ, quam ille posteriori statim
money his-mind he-should-flatter his-own which he in-the-later at-once
anno voluntati reginæ libens, quod illa peteret, condonavit.
year to-the-wish of-the-queen gladly because she asked forgave
Posteriori anno rebellavit Robertus de Belesmo, major filiorum
in-the-later year rebelled Robert of Bellême the-elder of-the-sons
Rogerii de Monte Gomerico, obfirmans contra regem castella
of-Roger of Mont- -gomery fortifying against the-king the-castles
Brigas et Arundellum; comportatum eo frumentum ex
Bridgnorth and Arundel carried thither the-grain from
omni regione Scrobesberiæ, et quicquid necessarium bellum
every region of-Shropshire and whatever necessary war
efflagitat diuturnum: nec minus castellum Scrobesberiense
demands long nor less the-castle of-Shrewsbury
rebellioni consensit, Wallensibus pro motu fortunæ ad
to-rebellion agreed with-the-Welsh for the-movement of-fortune to
malum pronis. Rex itaque animo ingens, omniaque adversa
evil inclined the-king and-so in-mind huge and-all adversities
virtute premens, militia coacta Brigas obsedit, unde jam in
by-valor pressing with-soldiery gathered Bridgnorth besieged whence already to
Arundellum transierat Robertus, alimentorum copia et
Arundel had-crossed Robert of-food by-the-abundance and
militum ferocia satis abundeque munitum locum præsumens;
of-soldiers by-the-ferocity enough and-plenty fortified the-place presuming

sed paucos post dies oppidani, et formidine conscientiæ
but few after days the-townsmen both by-fear of-conscience
et fortitudine militiæ regiæ flexi, se dedidere.
and by-the-bravery of-the-soldiery royal bent themselves surrendered
Quo audito, ab incepto tumore Arundellum destitit,
with-which heard from the-begun swelling Arundel desisted
regali se addicens clientelæ; egregia sane conditione,
to-royal himself assigning clientship with-excellent truly condition
ut dominus suus integra membrorum salute Normanniam
that lord their with-whole of-limbs safety to-Normandy
permitteretur abire. Porro Scrobesberienses per Radulfum
be-allowed to-go-away further the-people-of-Shrewsbury through Ralph
tum abbatem Sagii, postea Cantuariæ archiepiscopum, regi
then abbot of-Sées afterward of-Canterbury archbishop to-the-king
misere castelli claves, deditionis præsentis indices, futuræ
sent of-the-castle the-keys of-surrender present the-signs of-future
devotionis obsides. Ita dissensionis incendium, quod putabatur
devotion the-hostages so of-dissension the-fire which was-thought
fore magnum, paucissimis diebus in cineres consenuit;
to-be great in-very-few days into ashes grew-old
et desertorum, semper novis rebus inhiantium, aviditatem
and of-the-deserters always for-new things gaping the-greed
coercuit. Robertus, cum fratribus Ernulfo, qui paternum
checked Robert with brothers Arnulf who the-paternal
cognomen sortitus fuerat, et Rogerio Pictavensi, quod ex
surname obtained had and Roger the-Poitevin because from
ea regione uxorem acceperat sic dicto, Angliam perpetuo
that region a-wife he-had-taken so called England forever
abjuravit; sed vigorem sacramenti temperavit adjectio, nisi
abjured but the-force of-the-oath tempered the-addition unless
regi placito quandoque satisfecisset obsequio.
to-the-king with-pleasing sometime he-should-have-satisfied service

Tunc fax bellorum immissa Normanniæ, perfidorum
then the-torch of-wars thrown-in to-Normandy of-the-traitors
admixtione, quasi rogalibus alimentis animata, convaluit,
by-the-mixture as-if by-pyre foods animated grew-strong
circumquaque posita corripiens. Est enim Normannia
all-around placed-things seizing it-is for Normandy
opportuna et patiens malorum nutricula, quamvis non multo
a-convenient and patient of-evils little-nurse although not with-much
tractu regionum diffusa; itaque diu seditiones intestinas
tract of-regions spread and-so long seditions civil
probe tolerat, et pace reddita in fœcundiorem statum
well it-endures and with-peace restored into a-more-fertile state
mature resurgit, turbatores suos illius provinciæ diffisos cum
early it-rises-again disturbers its of-that province distrusting when
libuerit in Franciam liberis anfractibus emittens. Contra
it-pleases into France by-free windings sending-out against-this
Anglia nec diu infestos patitur, sed semel intra sinum
England neither long the-hostile endures but once within bosom
suum receptos vel dedit, vel exstinguit; nec, populatibus
its received either it-surrenders or extinguishes nor by-ravagings
attrita, redivivum cito caput attollit. Quocirca Normanniam
worn-down revived quickly its-head raises wherefore to-Normandy
Belesmitanus veniens, et tunc et deinceps habuit malignitatis
the-man-of-Bellême coming both then and thenceforth had of-malice
suæ complices, et, ne parum videretur, illices. In his erat
his accomplices and lest little he-might-seem enticers among these was
Willelmus comes Moretolii, filius Roberti, regis patrui.
William count of-Mortain son of-Robert of-the-king uncle
Is semper a puero Henrici gloriæ invidus, tum maxime
he always from a-boy of-Henry the-glory envious then most
in adventu Normanni pravum animum extulit: non enim
at the-coming of-the-Norman his-crooked mind raised not for

contentus duobus comitatibus, Moretolii in Normannia,
content with-two counties of-Mortain in Normandy
Cornugalliæ in Anglia, comitatum Cantiæ, quem Odo patruus
of-Cornwall in England the-county of-Kent which Odo his-uncle
habuerat, a rege exigebat; infestus et improbus adeo,
had-had from the-king he-demanded hostile and shameless so-much
ut infami arrogantia se devotaret non induturum
that with-infamous arrogance himself he-vowed not about-to-put-on
chlamydem nisi a patruo, ut dictitabat, sibi refusam
the-cloak unless from his-uncle as he-kept-saying to-himself poured-back
consequeretur hereditatem. Sed tunc quidem, suspensi
he-should-obtain the-inheritance but then indeed of-the-suspended
calliditate responsi, frustratus est rex prudentissimus
by-the-cunning of-answer cheated has the-king most-prudent
hominem: discussis vero turbinibus, serenoque pacis reddito,
the-man with-dispersed but whirlwinds and-with-serenity of-peace restored
non solum quæ petebat non annuit, verumetiam indebite
not only what-things he-asked not he-granted but-also unduly
retenta repetere cœpit; modeste tamen et judiciali
the-things-retained to-reclaim he-began moderately yet and by-judicial
placito, ut nihil quod faceret videretur resultare juri et
plea so-that nothing which he-did might-seem to-spring-back from-right and
calcitrare ab æquo. Tunc vero Willelmus, sententia judicii
to-kick from fairness then indeed William by-the-sentence of-judgment
expunctus, indignabundus et fremens Normanniam abiit:
struck-out indignant and roaring to-Normandy went-away
ibi, præter assultus quos regiis castellis irritus fecerat,
there besides the-assaults which on-the-royal castles in-vain he-had-made
in Ricardum quoque comitem Cestrensem, Hugonis filium,
against Richard also the-earl of-Chester of-Hugh son
debacchatus, nonulla partibus ejus appenditia invasit, carpsit,
raging some to-the-parts his appendages invaded plucked

abrasit. Erat ille tunc pro ætate parvulus, et regis
scraped-away he-was he then for age very-small and of-the-king
fidei tutelæque accommodatus.
to-the-faith and-guardianship committed

TINCHEBRAY; THE SCOTS KINGS

Robert of Bellême and William of Mortain ravaged Normandy while Robert did nothing; Henry, grieved, warned him to be a count, not a monk, stripped William of his English lands, and, urged on by Pope Paschal, crossed with an army. At Tinchebray, on the day of the Conqueror's landing about forty years before, he took Robert and William of Mortain; Bellême fled, to be imprisoned for life later. Henry gave Normandy peace and punished thieves and false moneyers by maiming. He handled the Scots kings gently, Malcolm's sons Edgar, Alexander, and David, all of good life; only their brother Edmund shared in Donald's crime and died in chains.

Hi ergo duo, factionum capita, rebellionum incentiva,
these therefore two of-the-factions heads of-rebellions the-incentives
cum aliis quos nominare pudet, patriam populationibus late
with others whom to-name it-shames the-country with-ravagings widely
contristabant. Consumebanturque frequentes sed cassæ apud
saddened and-were-consumed frequent but empty before
comitem querelæ provincialium de violentia clamantium:
the-count the-complaints of-the-provincials about the-violence crying
movebatur his ille; sed rebus suis timens, ne exacerbati
was-moved by-these he but for-the-affairs his-own fearing lest exasperated
ejus interpolarent otium, dissimulabat. At vero rex Henricus,
his they-should-interrupt leisure he-dissembled but indeed king Henry
pro fratris infamia, quam cumulabat patriæ miseria,
for of-his-brother the-infamy which heaped-up of-the-country the-misery
dolorem transeunter ferre nequibat: crudele et a boni
the-grief in-passing to-bear could-not cruel and from of-a-good

principis officio longe esse permensus, quod impii homines
prince the-duty far to-be having-measured that impious men
pauperum fortunis ingluviem suam urgebant. Itaque fratrem
of-the-poor on-the-fortunes gluttony their pressed and-so his-brother
ad se accitum in Angliam semel blande verbis, post
to himself summoned into England once blandly with-words afterward
vero in Normanniam veniens non semel dure bellis,
but into Normandy coming not once harshly with-wars
admonuit ut comitem, non monachum, ageret; nam
he-admonished that count not monk he-should-play for
et incentori Willelmo omnia quæ habebat in Anglia
also from-the-instigator William all-things which he-had in England
abstulit, castella ad solum complanavit. Sed cum ad pacem
he-took-away the-castles to the-ground leveled but when to peace
nihil promoveret, diu deliberatione consilii regia sublimitas
nothing he-advanced long by-deliberation of-counsel the-royal loftiness
curis pectus exercuit, utrum fraternæ necessitudinis
with-cares the-breast exercised whether of-fraternal kinship
oblitus patriam discrimini eriperet, an indiscreta pietate
forgetful the-country from-danger he-should-snatch or by-indiscriminate piety
fluctuare permitteret: et profecto commune commodum et
to-waver should-allow-it and surely the-common advantage and
pietas, privatæ necessitudinis intuitu, terga dedissent,
the-piety of-private kinship by-the-regard their-backs would-have-given
nisi, ut aiunt, Paschalis apostolicus dubitantem ad hoc
unless as they-say Paschal the-apostolic the-hesitating to this
opus epistolis impelleret; asseverans, facundia qua
work with-letters had-urged asserting with-the-eloquence in-which
vigebat, non fore civile bellum, sed præclare patriæ
he-was-strong not to-be a-civil war but splendidly of-the-country
prædicandum emolumentum. Itaque Normanniam veniens
to-be-proclaimed a-benefit and-so to-Normandy coming

brevi totam cepit, vel potius recepit, omnibus ad ejus
in-short-time the-whole he-took or rather took-back with-all to his
dominium confluentibus, ut fessæ provinciæ, vigore
dominion flowing-together that to-the-weary province by-the-vigor
quo pollebat, consuleret. Non tamen sine sanguine
in-which he-was-strong he-might-provide not yet without blood
tantam victoriam consummans, multos ex carissimis amisit:
so-great a-victory completing many of the-dearest he-lost
inter quos Rogerium de Glocestra, probatum militem, in
among whom Roger of Gloucester a-proven soldier in
obsessione Falesii arcubalistæ jactu in capite percussum;
the-siege of-Falaise of-a-crossbow by-the-shot on the-head struck
præterea Robertum filium Hamonis, qui conto ictus timpora,
besides Robert son of-Hamo who by-a-pike struck in-the-temples
hebetatusque ingenio, non pauco tempore quasi captus mente
and-dulled in-wit for-no small time as-if seized in-mind
supervixit. Merito mulctatum ferunt, quod, ejus liberandi
survived deservedly punished they-say because of-him of-freeing
causa, rex Henricus Bajocas civitatem cum principali ecclesia
for-the-sake king Henry Bayeux the-city with the-principal church
ignibus absumpserit: sed utrique, ut speramus, purgabile fuit;
by-fires consumed but for-each as we-hope purgeable it-was
nam et detrimenta ecclesiæ rex mirifice resarcivit, et
for both the-losses of-the-church the-king wonderfully repaired and
Robertus monasterium Theochesberiæ suo favore non facile
Robert the-monastery of-Tewkesbury by-his favor not easy
memoratu quantum exaltavit, ubi et ædificiorum decor,
to-relate how-much raised where both of-the-buildings the-beauty
et monachorum caritas, adventantium rapit oculos et allicit
and of-the-monks the-charity of-those-arriving seizes the-eyes and entices
animos. Horum dispendium ut fortuna sarciret, summam
the-minds of-these the-loss that fortune might-repair the-final

manum ingruente bello imposuit; venientemque contra se
hand with-the-pressing war it-put and-the-coming against him
cum non contempnenda manu fratrem, et Willelmum comitem
with not to-be-despised a-band brother and William count
Moretolii, et Robertum Belesmi, ditioni ejus facili
of-Mortain and Robert of-Bellême to-the-dominion his with-easy
opera contradidit. Hoc bellum actum est apud Tenerchebrei,
effort handed-over this battle fought was at Tinchebray
castellum comitis Moritoliensis, Sabbato in sancti Michaelis
a-castle of-the-count of-Mortain on-Saturday on of-saint Michael
vigilia. Idem dies ante quadraginta circiter annos fuerat, cum
the-vigil the-same day before forty about years had-been when
Willelmus Hastingas primus appulit; provido forsitan Dei
William at-Hastings first landed by-provident perhaps of-God
judicio, ut eo die subderetur Angliæ Normannia, quo
judgment that on-that day should-be-subjected to-England Normandy on-which
ad eam subjugandam olim venerat Normannorum copia.
to it to-be-subjugated once had-come of-the-Normans the-host
Captus est ibi comes Moretolii, qui eo venerat studiosam
captured was there the-count of-Mortain who thither had-come zealous
sui operam oppidanis pollicitus, simul et injurias
his service to-the-townsmen having-promised at-the-same-time and the-injuries
suas ultum iri sperans; sed, ut dixi, prensus, squaloris
his to-avenge going hoping but as I-said seized of-the-squalor
carcerei tota vita accolatum accepit: vivacitate mentis et
of-the-prison for-the-whole life the-dwelling he-received for-liveliness of-mind and
alacritate juventutis nonnihil laudandus, sed pro perfidia finem
for-eagerness of-youth somewhat to-be-praised but for treachery an-end
asperum emeritus. Et tunc quidem Belesmensis in ipso
harsh having-earned and then indeed the-man-of-Bellême in the-very
belli exordio mortem cavit effugio; sed dum postmodum
of-the-battle beginning death avoided by-flight but when afterward

clandestinis factionibus regem irritasset, et ipse captus
with-secret factions the-king he-had-provoked also he captured
ceterorum involutus est periculo, ad mortem perpetuo inclusus
of-the-others involved was in-the-danger to death forever shut-in
ergastulo. Vir pro incompositis moribus intolerabilis, et in
in-prison a-man for disordered manners intolerable and toward
aliorum delicta inexorabilis; præterea sævitia notabilis, cum in
of-others the-crimes inexorable besides for-cruelty notable both in
aliis tum in hoc, quod puerulum ex baptismo filiolum,
other-things and in this that a-little-boy from baptism his-godson
quem in obsidatum acceperat, pro modico delicto patris
whom as hostage he-had-received for a-small fault of-his-father
excæcarit, lumina miselli unguibus nefandis abrumpens:
he-blinded the-eyes of-the-little-wretch with-nails wicked tearing-out
simulationis et argutiarum plenus, frontis sereno et
of-pretense and of-subtleties full of-brow with-the-serenity and
sermonum affabilitate credulos decipiens, gnaros autem
of-speech with-affability the-credulous deceiving the-knowing but
malitiæ exterritans, ut nullum esset majus futuræ calamitatis
of-malice terrifying so-that no was greater of-future calamity
indicium quam prætensæ affabilitatis eloquium.
a-sign than of-the-pretended affability the-eloquence
Ita rex clarus, successibus ovans, regnum regressus est;
so the-king famous for-his-successes exulting to-the-kingdom returned has
composita pace in Normannia, qualem nulla ætas meminit,
with-settled peace in Normandy such-as no age remembers
qualem nec ipse pater, magno illo rerum et verborum
such-as not-even he-himself his-father with-great that of-things and of-words
fastu, unquam efficere potuit. In ceteris quoque genitoris
pomp ever to-bring-about could in other-things also of-his-father
æmulus, rapinas curialium, furta, stupra, edicto compescuit;
a-rival the-plunders of-the-courtiers thefts rapes by-edict he-checked

deprehensis oculos cum testibus evelli præcipiens. Contra
from-the-caught the-eyes with the-testicles to-be-torn-out ordering against
trapezetas, quos vulgo monetarios vocant, præcipuam
the-money-changers whom commonly moneyers they-call special
sui diligentiam exhibuit; nullum falsarium, quin pugnum
his diligence he-showed no counterfeiter without his-fist
perderet, impune abire permittens, qui fuisset intellectus
losing unpunished to-go-away allowing who had-been understood
falsitatis suæ commercio fatuos irrisisse.
of-falsity his by-the-commerce the-foolish to-have-mocked
Scottorum reges lenitate sua palpavit, morem fratris
of-the-Scots the-kings with-mildness his he-stroked the-custom of-his-brother
æmulatus: siquidem ille Dunecanum, filium Malcolmi nothum,
emulating since he Duncan son of-Malcolm a-bastard
et militem fecit, et regem Scottorum mortuo patre
both knight made and king of-the-Scots with-dead his-father
constituit; sed eo patrui Duvenaldi fraude interempto,
established but with-him of-his-uncle Donald by-the-fraud killed
Edgarum in regnum promovit, præfato Duvenaldo
Edgar into the-kingdom he-promoted with-the-aforesaid Donald
astutia David junioris et viribus Willelmi extincto.
by-the-cunning of-David the-younger and by-the-strength of-William extinguished
Edgaro fatali sorte occumbente, Alexandrum successorem
with-Edgar by-fated lot falling Alexander the-successor
Henricus affinitate detinuit, data ei in conjugium
Henry by-affinity held with-given to-him in marriage
filia notha; de qua ille viva nec sobolem, quod
a-daughter illegitimate from whom he with-her-living neither offspring that
sciam, tulit, nec ante se mortuam multum suspiravit:
I-may-know bore nor before him dead much sighed
defuerat enim fœminæ, ut fertur, quod desideraretur, vel
had-been-lacking for to-the-woman as is-said what might-be-desired either

in morum modestia, vel in corporis elegantia. Alexandro
in of-manners modesty or in of-body elegance with-Alexander
majoribus suis apposito, David minor filiorum Malcolmi,
to-the-forefathers his placed David the-younger of-the-sons of-Malcolm
quem rex comitem fecerat et connubio insignis
whom the-king earl had-made and with-the-marriage of-a-remarkable
fœminæ donaverat, solium Scottorum ascendit: juvenis
woman had-presented the-throne of-the-Scots ascended a-youth
ceteris curialior, et qui, nostrorum convictu et
than-the-others more-courtly and who of-our-people by-the-living-together and
familiaritate limatus a puero, omnem rubiginem Scotticæ
familiarity polished from a-boy all the-rust of-Scottish
barbariei deterserat; denique regno potitus mox omnes
barbarism had-wiped-off finally the-kingdom having-gained soon all
compatriotas triennalium tributorum pensione levavit, qui
his-compatriots of-three-year taxes from-the-payment relieved who
vellent habitare cultius, amiciri elegantius, pasci accuratius.
wished to-live more-refinedly to-be-dressed more-elegantly to-be-fed more-carefully
Neque vero unquam in acta historiarum relatum est
nor indeed ever in the-acts of-histories related has-it-been
tantæ sanctitatis tres fuisse pariter reges et fratres,
of-so-great holiness three to-have-been at-once kings and brothers
maternæ pietatis nectar redolentes; namque præter victus
of-maternal piety the-nectar smelling-of for besides of-food
parcitatem, eleemosynarum copiam, orationum assiduitatem,
the-thrift of-alms the-abundance of-prayers the-assiduity
ita domesticum regibus vitium evicerunt, ut nunquam
so the-domestic to-kings vice they-overcame that never
feratur in eorum thalamos nisi legitimas uxores isse,
it-is-reported into their bedchambers except lawful wives to-have-gone
nec eorum quenquam pellicatu aliquo pudicitiam contristasse.
nor of-them any by-concubinage any chastity to-have-saddened

Solus fuit Edmundus Margaretæ filius a bono degener; qui,
alone was Edmund of-Margaret son from good degenerate who
Duvenaldi patrui nequitiæ particeps, fraternæ non inscius
of-Donald his-uncle of-the-wickedness a-sharer of-the-fraternal not unaware
necis fuerit, pactus scilicet regni dimidium: sed
death was having-bargained namely of-the-kingdom half but
captus, et perpetuis compedibus detentus, ingenue pœnituit;
captured and with-perpetual fetters held ingenuously he-repented
et, ad mortem veniens, cum ipsis vinculis se tumulari
and to death coming with the-very chains himself to-be-buried
mandavit, professus se plexum merito pro fratricidii delicto.
he-ordered professing himself punished deservedly for of-fratricide the-crime

THE WELSH, THE BRETONS, FLANDERS, AND PHILIP

Henry tamed the Welsh with expeditions and planted the Flemings of England at Ros in Wales, escaping an arrow on one campaign. He hired Bretons, a people who sell their service anywhere. Robert of Flanders demanded the old subsidy and was refused, but his son Baldwin, seeking to set Robert of Normandy's son William in his inheritance, attacked Henry's Norman castles and died of a wound taken at Arques; his successor Charles made peace. Philip of France, a glutton and adulterer with the countess of Anjou, died a monk of Fleury, and she a nun of Fontevraud.

Walenses rex Henricus, semper in rebellionem surgentes,
the-Welsh king Henry always into rebellion rising
crebris expeditionibus in deditionem premebat; consilioque
with-frequent expeditions into surrender pressed and-on-counsel
salubri nixus, ut eorum tumorem extenuaret, Flandrenses omnes
healthful relying that their swelling he-might-reduce the-Flemings all
Angliæ accolas eo traduxit. Plures enim, qui tempore
of-England the-inhabitants thither transferred many for who in-the-time

patris pro materna cognatione confluxerant, occultabat Anglia,
of-his-father for maternal kinship had-flowed-together was-hiding England
adeo ut ipsi regno pro multitudine onerosi viderentur;
so-much that to-the-very kingdom for their-multitude burdensome they-seemed
quapropter cum substantiis et necessitudinibus apud Ros,
wherefore with their-goods and kinsfolk at Ros
provinciam Walliarum, velut in sentinam congessit, ut et
a-province of-Wales as-if into a-bilge he-heaped-them that both
regnum defæcaret, et hostium brutam temeritatem retunderet.
the-kingdom he-might-purge and of-the-enemies the-brutish rashness he-might-blunt
Nec eo secius illuc expeditionem pro temporum
nor by-that the-less thither an-expedition according-to of-the-times
opportunitate dirigebat; in quarum una, incertum cujus audacia
the-opportunity he-directed in of-which one uncertain whose by-the-daring
eminus insidianti arundine impetitus probe et pulchre evasit,
from-afar by-an-ambushing arrow attacked well and finely he-escaped
fideliter hamatæ thoracis adjutus beneficio, et simul
faithfully of-the-hooked breastplate helped by-the-benefit and at-the-same-time
perfidiam frustrante Dei consilio. Sed nec tunc auctor
the-treachery with-frustrating of-God counsel but neither then the-author
teli eminuit, nec unquam postea investigari valuit, quamvis
of-the-dart stood-out nor ever afterward to-be-tracked could although
ille statim non hæsitasset dicere, sagittam non a quolibet
he at-once not had-hesitated to-say the-arrow not by any
Walensi, sed a provinciali emissam, "per mortem Domini nostri,"
Welshman but by a-provincial sent-forth by the-death of-the-Lord our
talia pronuntians: quem morem jurandi, vel iræ nimietas,
such-things pronouncing which custom of-swearing either of-anger the-excess
vel rei serietas, ab ore principis extorquebat; nam et
or of-the-thing the-seriousness from the-mouth of-the-prince wrung for also
ea hora in proprio solo, non in hostica regione, progrediebatur
at-that hour in his-own soil not in hostile region advanced

sensim et caute exercitus, ut nihil minus quam insidias
gradually and cautiously the-army so-that nothing less than ambushes
quis opinari possit. Nec tamen, intestini discriminis metu,
anyone to-think could nor yet of-internal danger from-fear
pedem ab incepto retulit, donec Walenses, datis
his-foot from the-undertaking he-drew-back until the-Welsh with-given
obsidibus nobilium suorum filiis, cum aliquanta pecunia et
as-hostages of-nobles their sons with some money and
multo peculio, regiæ magnanimitatis motum sedarent.
much stock of-the-royal great-spirit the-motion settled
Britones transmarinos, quos adolescens vicinos castellis
the-Bretons overseas whom as-a-youth neighbors to-the-castles
Danfronto et Sancti Michaelis habuerat, pecuniis ad
Domfront and of-Saint Michael he-had-had with-moneys to
obsequium transducebat. Est enim illud genus hominum
service he-brought-over is for that kind of-men
egens in patria, aliasque externo ære laboriosæ vitæ
needy in its-fatherland and-elsewhere with-foreign money of-a-laborious life
mercatur stipendia: si dederis, nec civilia, sine respectu juris
buys pay if you-give nor civil without regard of-right
et cognationis, detrectans prælia; sed pro quantitate
and kinship refusing battles but according-to the-quantity
munerum ad quascunque voles partes obnoxium. Hujus
of-gifts to whatever you-wish sides liable of-this
consuetudinis ille non inscius, si quando opus habuisset
custom he not unaware if ever need he-had
stipendiariis militibus, multa perdebat in Britones, fidem
of-stipendiary soldiers much he-squandered on the-Bretons the-faith
perfidæ nationis nummis suis mutuatus.
of-a-faithless nation with-coins his borrowing

Robertum comitem Flandriæ primis regni sui temporibus
Robert count of-Flanders in-the-first of-reign his times
offendit hac causa: Baldewinus senior, hujus Roberti avus,
he-offended for-this cause Baldwin the-elder of-this Robert grandfather
Willelmum in Angliam venientem, arguto quo pollebat
William into England coming with-the-shrewd in-which he-excelled
consilio, et militum additamento, vivaciter juverat. His
counsel and of-soldiers with-the-addition vigorously had-helped for-these
ille illustres crebro retributiones refuderat, omnibus, ut
he illustrious frequently repayments had-poured-back in-all as
ferunt, annis trecentas argenti marcas pro fide et affinitate
they-say years three-hundred of-silver marks for faith and affinity
socero annumerans. Ea munificentia, in filio Baldewino
to-his-father-in-law counting-out that munificence on the-son Baldwin
non imminuta, hæsit in Roberti Frisonis malitia, quam
not diminished stuck on of-Robert the-Frisian the-malice which
superior non præteriit sermo. Porro iste Robertus, Frisonis
the-above did-not pass-over speech further this Robert of-the-Frisian
filius, omissum munus a Willelmo secundo non difficulter
son the-omitted gift from William the-second not with-difficulty
impetraverat; quod et is cognationem prætenderet, et ille
had-obtained because both he kinship pleaded and that-one
invictum animum in spargenda pecunia haberet. Verum
an-unconquered mind in scattering money had but
Henricus majori pondere rem ventilans, ut nec indebite
Henry with-greater weight the-matter airing that neither unduly
adunaret pecunias, nec nisi debite dilapidaret habitas,
he-should-gather moneys nor unless duly should-squander those-held
Roberto ab Jerosolima reverso, et quasi pro imperio trecentas
to-Robert from Jerusalem returned and as-if by command three-hundred
argenti marcas exigenti, in hanc respondit sententiam:
of-silver marks demanding into this answered sense

Non solitos reges Angliæ Flandritis vectigal pendere, nec
not accustomed the-kings of-England to-the-Flemings tribute to-pay nor
se velle libertatem majorum macula suæ timiditatis
himself to-wish the-liberty of-his-ancestors with-the-stain of-his-own timidity
fuscare: quapropter, si suo committat arbitrio, libenter
to-darken wherefore if to-his-own he-commit judgment gladly
se quod opportunitas siverit ut cognato et amico dare;
himself what opportunity shall-allow as to-a-kinsman and friend to-give
si vero in exactione permanendum putaverit, omnino negare.
if but in exaction to-be-persisted he-should-think altogether to-deny
Hac ille ratione dejectus, animum multo tempore in
by-this he reason cast-down in-mind for-a-long time against
regem tumuit: sed, parum aut nihil simultatibus adjutus,
the-king swelled but little or nothing by-grudges helped
mansuetudini mentem accommodavit, expertus regem posse
to-gentleness his-mind he-adapted having-learned the-king to-be-able
flecti precario, non fastu tyrannico. Jam vero Baldewino
to-be-bent by-entreaty not by-pride tyrannical now but to-Baldwin
filio ejus varietas temporum causas irarum in regem
the-son his the-changeableness of-times causes of-angers against the-king
dedit: siquidem Willelmum filium Roberti Normanni volens
gave since William son of-Robert the-Norman wishing
hereditati intrudere, alienis se sponte negotiis
into-the-inheritance to-thrust in-others himself of-his-own-accord affairs
immiscuit, crebroque castella regis in Normannia inopinatis
he-mingled and-frequently the-castles of-the-king in Normandy with-unexpected
fatigabat assultibus; magnum incommodum, si fata sivissent,
wearied assaults great harm if the-fates had-allowed
terræ minatus: sed apud Archas majori manu militum quam
to-the-land threatening but at Arques by-a-greater band of-soldiers than
timebat exceptus mortem maturavit, crebris ictibus galea
he-feared received death he-hastened with-frequent blows with-his-helmet

quassata cerebrum violatus. Causam ferunt morbi augmentati,
shaken his-brain injured the-cause they-say of-the-illness increased
quod ea die allium cum auca præsumpserit, nec nocte Venere
that on-that day garlic with goose he-had-taken nor at-night from-Venus
abstinuerit. Hic intuebuntur posteri eximium regalis pietatis
abstained here will-behold posterity a-remarkable of-royal piety
exemplum, quod medicum peritissimum decumbenti miserit;
example that a-physician most-skilled to-the-bedridden he-sent
illacrymatus, si credimus, morbo perire, quem pro admiratione
weeping if we-believe by-illness to-perish him-whom for admiration
fortitudinis salvari maluisset. Successor ejus Carolus
of-bravery to-be-saved he-would-have-preferred the-successor his Charles
nulla molestia vires regis inquietavit: primo fœdere
with-no trouble the-strength of-the-king disturbed at-first with-the-treaty
suspenso, mox etiam consummato, amicitiam ejus amplexus.
suspended soon also completed the-friendship his embracing
Philippus rex Francorum regi nostro nec utilis nec infestus
Philip king of-the-Franks to-king our neither useful nor hostile
fuit, propterea quod esset ventri magis quam negotiis
was for-this that he-was to-the-belly more than to-business
deditus, nec præterea in castellis ejus collimitaneus; pauca
given nor besides in castles his bordering few
enim, quæ tunc habebat in Normannia, magis Britanniæ quam
for which then he-had in Normandy more to-Brittany than
Franciæ vicina erant: adde quod, ut superius dixi, Philippus
to-France neighboring were add that as above I-said Philip
accedente senio, libidine gravis, comitissæque Andegavensis
with-approaching old-age with-lust heavy of-the-countess of-Anjou
specie lusus, illicitis ardoribus defæneratus famulabatur.
by-the-beauty mocked by-unlawful ardors exhausted served
Quocirca ab apostolico excommunicatus, cum in villa qua
wherefore by the-apostolic excommunicated when in the-village in-which

mansitabat nihil divini servitii fieret, sed, discedente eo,
he-was-staying nothing of-divine service was-done but with-departing him
tinnitus signorum undique concreparent, insulsam fatuitatem
the-ringing of-bells on-all-sides resounded the-foolish fatuity
cachinnis exprimebat; "Audis," inquiens, "bella quomodo
with-laughs he-expressed you-hear saying fair-one how
nos effugant!" Adeo erat omnibus episcopis provinciæ
us they-drive-away so-much he-was to-all the-bishops of-province
suæ derisui, ut nullus eos desponsaret præter Willelmum
his for-mockery that none them would-betroth except William
archiepiscopum Rotomagensem; cujus facti temeritatem luit
archbishop of-Rouen of-which deed the-rashness he-paid-for
multis annis interdictus, et vix tandem aliquando per
for-many years interdicted and scarcely at-last finally through
Anselmum archiepiscopum apostolicæ communioni redditus.
Anselm the-archbishop to-apostolic communion restored
Philippo interea nulla mora insanæ temulentiæ satietatem fecit,
to-Philip meanwhile no delay of-insane drunkenness satiety made
nisi quod, in extremo vitæ tactus morbo, monachicum apud
except that at the-end of-life touched by-illness the-monastic at
Floriacum accepit habitum: pulchrius et fortunatius illa,
Fleury he-took habit more-beautifully and more-fortunately she
quod ætate et sanitate integra, nec specie rugata, apud
because in-age and health whole nor in-appearance wrinkled at
Fontem Evraldi sanctimonialium appetiit velum; nec multo
the-Fonte- -vraud of-the-nuns sought the-veil nor much
post præsenti vitæ valefecit, Deo forsitan providente non
after to-the-present life bade-farewell with-God perhaps providing not
posse delicatæ mulieris corpus religionis laboribus inservire.
to-be-able of-a-delicate woman the-body of-religion to-the-labors to-serve

Louis, Philip's son, first urged Henry on against his brother Robert, then quarreled with him over Theobald of Blois and invaded Normandy. Henry, long patient, at last beat him in battle, and peace was made: his son William did homage for Normandy and was betrothed to and took the daughter of Fulk of Anjou. Pope Calixtus came near Normandy angry at Robert's captivity and went away praising Henry, after the count of Meulan's young sons beat the cardinals in dialectic. Their father Robert, the most trusted counselor of his day, brought the magnates' courts to dine once a day.

At vero Lodowicus filius Philippi varium se præstitit,
but indeed Louis son of-Philip varied himself showed
in neutra parte bene constans. Primo enim tempore
in neither side well constant in-the-first for time
plurimus in fratrem irarum auctor Henrico ad capiendam
very-much against his-brother of-angers the-author to-Henry for taking
Normanniam fuit, corruptus videlicet Anglorum spoliis et
Normandy he-was corrupted namely of-the-English by-the-spoils and
multo regis obryzo. Non quod ille obtulerit, sed quod
by-much of-the-king fine-gold not because he offered-it but because
alter invitaverit, ultro adhortans ne clarissimæ
the-other invited-him of-his-own-accord exhorting lest of-the-most-famous
olim patriæ nervos dissimulatione sua succidi sineret.
once country the-sinews by-dissembling his to-be-cut he-should-allow
Postea vero simultas inter eos exorta est pro Thetbaldo
afterward but a-grudge between them arisen has for Theobald
comite Blesensi, filio Stephani qui apud Ramulam occubuit,
count of-Blois son of-Stephen who at Ramla fell
quod Thetbaldus susceptus esset Stephano ex Adala filia
because Theobald begotten was by-Stephen from Adela daughter
Willelmi magni. Diu igitur ex parte regis nostri labores
of-William the-Great long therefore from the-part of-king our the-labors

viarum consumpserunt nuntii, ut dignaretur Lodowicus
of-the-roads consumed the-envoys that should-deign Louis
satisfactionem Thetbaldi. Ille vero, parvi faciens preces
the-satisfaction of-Theobald he but little making-of the-prayers
Thetbaldum ab apostolico denotari fecit quasi arrogantem et
Theobald by the-apostolic to-be-branded caused as-if arrogant and
Deo rebellem; qui præter austeritatem morum, quæ omnibus
to-God rebellious who besides the-austerity of-manners which to-all
videbatur intolerabilis, ferebatur dominum suum privare
seemed intolerable was-said lord his to-deprive
avitis possessionibus. Itaque diu productis inimicitiis, cum
of-ancestral possessions and-so long with-prolonged enmities when
uterque grossum tumeret, nec alter alteri pro persona
each grossly swelled nor one to-the-other for person
cederet, Lodowicus Normanniam venit, inflatiori anhelitu
would-yield Louis to-Normandy came with-more-inflated breath
late omnia exhauriens. Nuntiabantur hæc regi, qui
widely all-things exhausting were-announced these-things to-the-king who
apud Rotomagum se continebat, adeo ut vulgus militum
at Rouen himself kept so-much that the-crowd of-soldiers
aures ejus infestaret; pateretur repelli Lodowicum,
the-ears his assailed that-he-should-allow to-be-repelled Louis
hominem aqualiculi pondere olim lectum foventem, sed nunc
a-man of-the-belly by-the-weight once the-bed warming but now
pro dissimulatione minis auras onerantem. Ille, paterni
for dissembling with-threats the-airs burdening he of-the-paternal
memor exempli, fatuitatem Franci patientia extundere,
mindful example the-folly of-the-Frank by-patience to-beat-out
quam viribus repellere, malebat. Quinetiam milites benigne
than by-strength to-repel preferred nay-even the-soldiers kindly
appellando hac ratione mulcebat: Non debere illos mirari si
by-addressing by-this reason he-soothed not ought them to-wonder if

sanguinis eorum prodigus esse caveret, quos sibi fideles
of-blood their prodigal to-be he-was-wary whom to-himself faithful
non modicis experimentis approbasset; impium essse, ut, ad
by-no small tests he-had-approved impious to-be that for
regnum sibi parandum, eorum glorietur mortibus, qui
the-kingdom for-himself to-be-prepared their should-glory in-the-deaths who
vitam suam pro ejus salute ultroneis devoveant certaminibus:
life their for his safety in-voluntary devote contests
illos regni sui nutritos, pietatis alumpnos; quapropter boni
them of-kingdom his the-reared of-piety foster-children wherefore of-a-good
principis se velle sequi exemplum, ut modestia sua eorum
prince himself to-wish to-follow the-example that by-moderation his their
remoretur impetum, quos ita paratos pro se videat ad
he-might-delay the-onset whom so ready for himself he-sees to
moriendum. Postremo, cum videret prudentiam suam sinistra
dying lastly when he-saw prudence his by-sinister
interpretatione turbari et ignaviam vocari, in tantum ut
interpretation disturbed and cowardice called so far that
Lodowicus prope Rotomagum quatuor miliariis ignes faceret,
Louis near Rouen four miles fires made
prædas ageret, majori fortitudine vim animi concussit, et
plunders drove with-greater bravery the-force of-his-mind he-shook and
procinctu parato vicit egregie, præteritas dissimulationes
with-readiness prepared he-conquered excellently the-past dissemblings
feroci puniens victoria. Veruntamen aliquanto post pax parta
with-fierce punishing victory nevertheless somewhat after peace won
est; quia et rerum omnium est vicissitudo, et nummi
was because both of-things all there-is change and coins
quaslibet injurias levant, ad persuadendum quod intendunt
any injuries lighten for persuading what intend
potentes. Quare Willelmus, filius regis nostri, homagium
the-powerful wherefore William son of-king our homage

regi Francorum de Normannia fecit, jure legitimo de
to-the-king of-the-Franks for Normandy did by-right lawful from
eo provinciam cogniturus. Illud fuit tempus quo idem
him the-province about-to-hold that was the-time in-which the-same
puer filiam Fulconis comitis Andegavensis despondit, et
boy the-daughter of-Fulk count of-Anjou betrothed and
accepit; patris prudentia satagente, ut hinc pecunia,
received of-his-father with-the-prudence busying that on-this-side with-money
hinc affinitate mediante, nihil contra filium turbaretur.
on-that by-affinity mediating nothing against his-son should-be-stirred
His diebus Calixtus papa, de quo posterius dicam plura,
in-these days Calixtus the-pope about whom later I-shall-say more-things
præsentiam suam prope Normanniam exhibuit: cujus colloquio
presence his near Normandy showed whose conversation
potitus, rex Angliæ Romanos prudentiam Normannorum
having-obtained the-king of-England the-Romans the-prudence of-the-Normans
mirari et prædicare coegit. Namque ille, ut fertur, infesto
to-wonder-at and to-proclaim compelled for he as is-said with-hostile
venerat animo, ut eum asperius conveniret quare fratrem
had-come mind that him more-harshly he-might-approach why his-brother
et sancti Sepulcri peregrinum in captione teneret; sed
and of-the-holy Sepulcher a-pilgrim in captivity he-held but
responso principis, quod erat simile veri, et probabilibus
by-the-answer of-the-prince which was like the-truth and by-plausible
argumentis perstrictus, parum contra retulit. Possunt enim
arguments bound little against-it he-replied can for
communes loci ad quamlibet partem inflecti pro facundia
common places to any side to-be-bent according-to the-eloquence
oratoris, præsertim cum non contempnatur eloquentia quam
of-the-orator especially when not is-despised the-eloquence which
pretiosa condiunt xenia. Et ut nihil cumulatæ pompæ deesset,
precious season gifts and that nothing of-heaped pomp be-lacking

adolescentulos clarissimi generis, filios comitis de Mellento,
youths of-most-famous birth the-sons of-the-count of Meulan
ut contra cardinales de dialectica disputarent, subornavit:
that against the-cardinals about dialectic they-might-dispute he-suborned
quorum tortilibus sophismatibus cum vivacitate rationum
whose to-the-twisted sophisms when with-the-liveliness of-reasons
obsisti nequiret, non puduit cardinales confiteri, majori
to-be-resisted could-not not it-shamed the-cardinals to-confess more
occiduas plagas florere litterarum peritia quam ipsi audissent
the-western regions to-flourish of-letters in-skill than they had-heard
vel putassent in patria. Itaque hæc collocutio hunc finem
or had-thought in their-country and-so this conference this end
emeruit, ut pronuntiaret apostolicus nihil Anglorum regis
earned that pronounced the-apostolic nothing of-the-English king
causa justius, prudentia eminentius, facundia uberius.
than-the-cause more-justly in-prudence more-eminently in-eloquence more-richly
Horum puerorum pater erat comes de Mellento Robertus,
of-these boys the-father was the-count of Meulan Robert
ut dixi, filius Rogerii de Bello Monte qui Pratellum
as I-said son of-Roger of Beau- -mont who Préaux
cœnobium Normanniæ construxit: homo antiquæ simplicitatis
the-monastery of-Normandy built a-man of-ancient simplicity
et fidei, qui, crebro a Willelmo primo invitatus ut Angliam
and faith who often by William the-first invited that to-England
veniret, largis ad voluntatem possessionibus munerandus,
he-should-come with-ample at will possessions to-be-rewarded
supersedit; pronuntians, patrum suorum hereditatem se
refrained declaring of-fathers his the-inheritance himself
velle fovere, non transmarinas et indebitas possessiones
to-wish to-cherish not overseas and undue possessions
vel appetere vel invadere. Hic duos filios habuit: Robertum
either to-seek or to-invade he two sons had Robert

istum, et Henricum. Henricus comes Warwicensis, dulcis et
this and Henry Henry earl of-Warwick of-sweet and
quieti animi vir, congruo suis moribus studio vitam egit et
quiet mind a-man with-suitable to-his manners zeal his-life led and
clausit. Alter, astutior et pronioris ad versutiam cordis,
closed the-other more-astute and of-a-more-inclined to cunning heart
præter paternam hereditatem in Normannia et ingentia prædia
besides the-paternal inheritance in Normandy and huge estates
in Anglia, castellum, quod matris suæ frater Hugo filius
in England the-castle which of-mother his the-brother Hugh son
Gualeranni tenuerat, Mellentum nomine, a rege Franciæn
of-Waleran had-held Meulan by-name from the-king of-France
nundinatus est pecunia. Qui cum superiorum regum tempore,
bought has with-money who when of-the-former kings in-the-time
spe sensim pullulante, in gloriam procederet, hujus
with-hope gradually sprouting into glory advanced of-this-one
ætate summo provectu effloruit; habebaturque ejus consilium
in-the-age the-highest advancement flowered and-was-held his counsel
quasi quis divinum consuluisset sacrarium. Jamque non
as-if one the-divine had-consulted sanctuary and-already not
immerito assecutus æstimabatur quod esset ævi maturus
undeservedly to-have-obtained was-reckoned what he-was in-age mature
ad consulendum, suasor concordiæ, dissuasor discordiæ,
for counseling a-persuader of-concord a-dissuader of-discord
et prorsus ad quod intenderet, pro viribus eloquentiæ,
and altogether to what he-intended according-to strength of-eloquence
citissimus persuasor. Ingentis in Anglia momenti, ut
a-most-swift persuader of-huge in England weight so-that
inveteratum vestiendi vel comedendi exemplo suo inverteret
the-inveterate of-dressing or of-eating by-example his he-reversed
morem. Denique consuetudo semel prandendi in omnium
custom finally the-custom once of-dining in of-all

optimatum curiis per eum frequentatur, quam ipse causa
the-magnates courts through him is-frequented which he for-the-sake
bonæ valitudinis acceptam nuntiis a Constantinopolitano
of-good health received from-envoys from the-Constantinopolitan
imperatore Alexio, suo, ut dixi, ceteris refudit exemplo. Quod
emperor Alexius by-his as I-said to-the-others poured-back example which
tamen magis parcitate dapsilitatis fecisse et docuisse,
yet more from-the-sparingness of-lavishness to-have-done and to-have-taught
quam timore cruditatis et indigeriei, immerito culpatur; quia
than from-fear of-indigestion and of-surfeit undeservedly he-is-blamed because
nemo eo, ut fertur, in dapibus aliis sumptuosior, vel sibi
no-one than-him as is-said in dishes to-others more-sumptuous or to-himself
moderatior fuit. In placitis propugnator justitiæ, in guerris
more-moderate was in pleas the-defender of-justice in wars
provisor victoriæ: dominum regem ad severitatem legum
the-provider of-victory his-lord the-king to severity of-the-laws
custodiendam exacuens, ipse non eas sequens, sed proponens:
to-be-kept sharpening he not them following but proposing
expers in regem perfidiæ, in ceteros ejus persecutor.
free toward the-king of-treachery against the-others of-it a-persecutor

Henry ruled England through Roger, bishop of Salisbury, whom he made justiciar against Roger's will, a builder whose buildings at Salisbury and Malmesbury seem cut from one stone, and whose new church at Salisbury yields to none in England. The Irish king Muirchertach did as Henry wished, since Ireland would starve without English trade, and Paul, earl of Orkney, sent him gifts for his menagerie at Woodstock, where William of Montpellier's porcupine was also kept. Sigurd of Norway wintered in England, sailed to Jerusalem, took Tyre and Sidon, and at Constantinople left the emperor chests of lead as pledges of his return.

Habebat præterea rex Henricus episcopum Salesberiensem
had besides king Henry the-bishop of-Salisbury
Rogerium a secretis, cujus maxime nitebatur consilio, nam
Roger as secretary whose most he-relied on-counsel for
et ante regnum omnibus suis præfecerat rex; primum
even before the-kingdom over-all his-goods he-had-set-him the-king first
cancellarium, mox episcopum constituerat, prudentiam viri
chancellor soon bishop had-made the-prudence of-the-man
expertus. Sollerter administrati episcopatus officium spem
having-tested skillfully of-the-administered bishopric the-office hope
infudit quod majori dignus haberetur munere; itaque totius
poured-in that of-greater worthy he-was-held office and-so of-whole
regni moderamen illius delegavit justitiæ, sive ipse adesset
kingdom the-governance his he-delegated to-justice whether he-himself were-present
Angliæ, sive moraretur Normanniæ. Refugit episcopus tantis
in-England or stayed in-Normandy fled the-bishop in-so-great
se curis involvere, nisi tres archiepiscopi Cantuarienses,
himself cares to-involve unless three archbishops of-Canterbury
Anselmus, Radulfus, Willelmus, et postremo papa, injunxissent
Anselm Ralph William and lastly the-pope had-enjoined
ei munus obedientiæ. Sategit ita fieri Henricus, non
on-him the-duty of-obedience busied-himself so it-be-done Henry not

nescius quod fideliter sua tractaret commoda Rogerius: nec
unaware that faithfully his affairs he-would-handle Roger nor
defuit ille spei regiæ; sed tanta integritate, tanta se
was-lacking he to-the-hope royal but with-such integrity with-such himself
agebat industria, ut nulla contra eum conflaretur invidia.
he-conducted industry that no against him was-kindled envy
Denique rex plerumque triennio, nonnunquam quadriennio,
finally the-king often for-three-years sometimes for-four-years
et eo amplius, in Normannia moratus, cum in regnum
and than-that more in Normandy having-stayed when into the-kingdom
reverteretur, deputabat justitiarii modestiæ quod nihil aut
he-returned ascribed of-the-justiciar to-the-moderation that nothing or
parum inveniebat molestiæ. Inter hæc, ecclesiastica officia
little he-found of-trouble amid these-things the-ecclesiastical offices
non negligere, sed cotidie mane omnia honeste persolvere,
not to-neglect but daily in-the-morning all honestly to-perform
ut expeditius et tutius ceteris posset accedere. Pontifex
that more-readily and more-safely to-the-other-things he-could to-approach a-bishop
magnanimus, et nullis unquam parcens sumptibus, dum
great-spirited and to-no ever sparing expenses while
quæ facienda proponeret, ædificia præsertim, consummaret:
what to-be-done he-proposed the-buildings especially he-completed
quod cum alias, tum maxime in Salesberia et Malmesberia
which both elsewhere and most in Salisbury and Malmesbury
est videre. Fecit enim ibi ædificia spatio diffusa, numero
it-is to-see he-made for there buildings in-space spread in-amount
pecuniarum sumptuosa, specie formosissima; ita juste
of-moneys costly in-appearance most-beautiful so justly
composito ordine lapidum, ut junctura perstringat intuitum,
with-arranged order of-stones that the-joining dulls the-gaze
et totam maceriam unum mentiatur esse saxum. Ecclesiam
and the-whole masonry one pretends to-be stone the-church

Salesberiensem et novam fecit et ornamentis excoluit, ut
of-Salisbury both new he-made and with-ornaments embellished so-that
nulli in Anglia cedat, sed multas præcedat; ipseque non falso
to-none in England it-yields but many surpasses and-himself not falsely
possit dicere Deo, "Domine dilexi decorem domus tuæ."
could to-say to-God Lord I-have-loved the-beauty of-house your
Hibernensium regem Murcardum, et successores ejus, quorum
of-the-Irish the-king Muirchertach and the-successors his whose
nomina fama non extulit, ita devotos habuit noster Henricus,
names fame not has-raised so devoted had our Henry
ut nihil nisi quod eum palparet scriberent, nihil nisi quod
that nothing except what him might-stroke they-wrote nothing except what
juberet agerent: quamvis feratur Murcardus, nescio qua
he-ordered they-did although it-be-said Muirchertach I-know-not what
de causa, paucis diebus inflatius in Anglos egisse;
from cause for-a-few days more-puffed-up against the-English to-have-acted
sed mox, pro interdicto navigio et mercimonio navigantium,
but soon for forbidden shipping and the-trade of-the-sailors
tumorem pectoris sedasse. Quanti enim valeret Hibernia
the-swelling of-his-breast to-have-calmed how-much for would-be-worth Ireland
si non adnavigarent merces ex Anglia? Ita pro penuria,
if not sailed-to-it the-wares from England so for want
immo pro inscientia cultorum, jejunum omnium bonorum
nay for ignorance of-the-tillers hungry of-all good-things
solum, agrestem et squalidam multitudinem Hibernensium
soil a-rustic and squalid multitude of-Irish
extra urbes producit: Angli vero et Franci, cultiori
outside the-cities it-produces the-English but and Franks with-more-refined
genere vitæ, urbes nundinarum commercio inhabitant. Paulus
kind of-life the-cities of-markets by-commerce inhabit Paul
Orcadum comes, quamvis Noricorum regi hereditario
of-the-Orkneys count although of-the-Norwegians to-the-king by-hereditary

jure subjectus, ita regis amicitias suspiciebat ut crebra
right subject so of-the-king the-friendship looked-up-to that frequent
ei munuscula missitaret: nam et ille prona voluptate
to-him little-gifts he-sent for also he with-inclined pleasure
exterarum terrarum miracula inhiabat, leones, leopardos,
of-foreign lands the-wonders gaped-at lions leopards
lynces, camelos, quorum fœtus Anglia est inops, grandi, ut
lynxes camels whose offspring England is lacking with-great as
dixi, jocunditate a regibus alienis expostulans: habebatque
I-said delight from kings foreign demanding and-he-had
conseptum quod Wudestoche dicitur, in quo delicias talium
an-enclosure which Woodstock is-called in which the-delights of-such
rerum confovebat. Posueratque ibi animal quod hystrix
things he-cherished and-had-placed there an-animal which porcupine
vocatur, missum sibi a Willelmo de Monte Pislerio; de quo
is-called sent to-him by William of Mont- -pellier about which
animali Plinius secundus in octavo Naturalis Historiæ libro,
animal Pliny Secundus in the-eighth of-the-Natural History book
et Isidorus de Etymologiis, memorant, esse animal in Affrica,
and Isidore on Etymologies record to-be an-animal in Africa
quod Affri ericii genus dicunt, coopertum hispidis setis,
which the-Africans of-hedgehog a-kind call covered with-bristly quills
quas in canes insectantes naturaliter emittat. Sunt enim
which at the-dogs pursuing naturally it-shoots are for
setæ, ut vidi, palmo et plus longæ, in utraque summitate
the-quills as I-saw a-palm and more long at each tip
acutæ; similes pennis aucarum ubi desinunt plumæ, sed
sharp like the-quills of-geese where end the-feathers but
paulo plus grossæ; nigro et albo quasi intertinctæ.
a-little more thick with-black and white as-if intertinged

Illud præter cetera Henricum insigniebat, quod quamvis
that beyond the-other-things Henry distinguished that although
pro tumultibus Normannicis sæpe et diu regno suo
for the-tumults Norman often and long from-kingdom his
deesset, ita timore suo rebelles frænabat, ut nihil pacis in
he-was-absent so by-fear of-him the-rebels he-bridled that nothing of-peace in
Anglia desiderares; quocirca etiam exteræ gentes illuc, velut
England you-would-miss wherefore even foreign peoples thither as
ad unicum tutæ quietis portum, libenter appellebant. Denique
to the-unique of-safe quiet harbor gladly put-in finally
Siwardus rex Noricorum, primo ævi processu fortissimis
Sigurd king of-the-Norwegians in-the-first of-age advance to-the-bravest
conferendus, incepto itinere Jerosolimitano, rogataque regis
to-be-compared with-begun journey to-Jerusalem and-with-asked of-the-king
pace, in Anglia tota resedit hyeme; plurimoque per
peace in England for-the-whole stayed winter and-with-much through
ecclesias auro expenso, mox, ut Favonius ad serenitatem pelagi
churches gold spent soon as Favonius to the-calm of-the-sea
vernales portas aperuit, naves repetiit; provectusque in
the-springlike gates opened his-ships he-sought-again and-carried into
altum, Baleares insulas, quæ Majorica et Minorica dicuntur,
the-deep the-Balearic islands which Majorca and Minorca are-called
armis territas, faciliores ad subigendum præfato Willelmo
by-arms terrified easier for subduing to-the-aforesaid William
de Monte Pislerio reliquit. Inde pertendit Jerosolimam, navibus
of Mont- -pellier he-left thence he-went-on to-Jerusalem with-ships
omnibus incolumibus præter unam; quæ, dum retinacula
all unharmed except one which while its-cables
à portu solvere tardat, absorpta est immani voragine
from the-port to-loose it-delays swallowed was by-the-monstrous whirlpool
quam inter Sequanica et Aquitanica littora esse Paulus
which between the-Sequanian and Aquitanian shores to-be Paul

historicus Longobardorum asseverat, tanto undarum impetu
the-historian of-the-Lombards asserts with-such of-waves impetus
ut ad triginta milliaria garrulitas discernatur aquarum.
that at thirty miles the-chatter is-discerned of-the-waters
Jerosolimam veniens, Tyrum et Sidonem, urbes quas mare
to-Jerusalem coming Tyre and Sidon cities which the-sea
allambit, ad Christianitatis gratiam obsedit, effregit, subegit.
licks for of-Christianity the-favor he-besieged broke subdued
Mutato itinere Constantinopolim ingressus, navem aureis
with-changed route Constantinople having-entered a-ship with-golden
rostratam draconibus fastigio sanctæ Sophiæ pro trophæo
beaked dragons on-the-top of-holy Sophia as a-trophy
affixit. Hominibus suis in eadem urbe catervatim morientibus
he-fixed for-men his in the-same city in-troops dying
remedium excogitavit, ut reliqui parcius et aqua
a-remedy he-devised that the-rest more-sparingly and with-water
mixtum vinum biberent: ingenii acrimonia, ut, porcino jecore
mixed wine should-drink of-wit by-the-sharpness that with-a-pig liver
mero injecto, moxque pro asperitate liquoris resoluto,
in-neat-wine thrown and-soon for the-harshness of-the-liquor dissolved
idem in hominibus fieri primo præsagiret; post etiam,
the-same in men to-be-done first he-foresaw afterward also
quodam defuncto exenterato, visu addisceret. Quare contuitu
with-a-certain dead-man disemboweled by-sight he-learned wherefore from-regard
prudentiæ et fortitudinis quæ grande quid pollicebantur,
of-prudence and bravery which great something promised
imperatore illum retinere temptante, spem ejus, qua jam
with-the-emperor him to-retain trying the-hope his by-which already
aurum Noricum devorabat, pulchre cassavit; impetrata ad
the-gold Norwegian he-devoured finely he-voided with-obtained to
proximam urbem licentia, cistas thesaurorum, plumbo impletas
the-next city leave chests of-treasures with-lead filled

et obsignatas, apud eum deponens, quasi citissimi reditus
and sealed with him depositing as-if of-a-most-quick return
vades. Ita ille illusus est; alter pedes domum contendit.
pledges so he mocked was the-other on-foot home hastened

THE CHARACTER OF HENRY; INVESTITURES

Henry was effective in providing, tenacious in defending, firm in love and hate, inflexible in justice, a scourge of thieves and coiners, who fixed the ell by his own arm. Middle-sized, dark-haired, broad-chested, merry in season, he warred more by counsel than by the sword, ate to fill hunger, and slept heavily and snored. He built Reading for the Cluniacs, and after long dispute with Anselm gave up the investiture of churches. William adds Paschal's letter to the king refusing to allow it.

Sed enim ut ad Henricum regrediatur oratio. Erat ille
but for that to Henry may-return the-speech he-was he
in rebus suis providendo efficax, defendendo pertinax:
in affairs his in-providing effective in-defending tenacious
bellorum quatenus posset cum honestate repressor; cum
of-wars as-far-as he-could with honor a-repressor when
vero decrevisset non pati, impatiendus injuriarum exactor,
but he-had-decided not to-endure unbearable of-injuries an-exactor
obvia pericula virtutis umbone decutiens. Odii et
the-oncoming dangers of-valor with-the-shield shaking-off of-hatred and
amicitiæ in quemlibet tenax; in altero nimio irarum æstui,
of-friendship toward anyone tenacious in the-one to-excessive of-angers heat
in altero regiæ magnanimitati, satisfaciens; hostes videlicet
in the-other to-royal great-spirit satisfying the-enemies namely
ad miseriam deprimens, amicos et clientes ad invidiam
to misery pressing-down friends and clients to envy
efferens: nam et hanc curam vel primam vel maximam
raising for also this care either the-first or the-greatest

boni principis philosophia proponit, ut parcat subjectis,
of-a-good prince philosophy proposes that he-spare the-subjected
et debellet superbos. Justitiæ rigore inflexibilis, provinciales
and war-down the-proud of-justice by-the-rigor inflexible the-provincials
quiete, proceres dignanter continebat; fures et falsarios
in-quiet the-nobles graciously he-held thieves and counterfeiters
latentes maxima diligentia perscrutans, inventos puniens:
hiding with-the-greatest diligence searching-out the-found punishing
parvarum quoque rerum non negligens. Cum nummos fractos,
of-small also things not neglectful when coins broken
licet boni argenti, a venditoribus non recipi audisset,
although of-good silver by sellers not to-be-received he-had-heard
omnes vel frangi vel incidi præcepit. Mercatorum falsam
all either to-be-broken or to-be-cut he-ordered of-the-merchants the-false
ulnam castigavit; brachii sui mensura adhibita, omnibusque
ell he-corrected of-arm his with-the-measure applied and-to-all
per Angliam proposita. Curialibus suis, ubicunque villarum
through England set-forth to-courtiers his wherever of-the-estates
esset, quantum a rusticis gratis accipere, quantum et quoto
he-was how-much from the-rustics free to-receive how-much and at-what
pretio emere debuissent, edixit; transgressores vel gravi
price to-buy they-ought he-proclaimed the-transgressors either with-heavy
pecuniarum mulcta, vel vitæ dispendio, afficiens. Principio
of-moneys fine or of-life with-the-loss affecting at-the-beginning
regni, ut terrore exempli reos inureret, ad membrorum
of-the-reign that by-the-terror of-example the-guilty he-might-brand to of-limbs
detruncationem, post ad pecuniæ solutionem proclivior; pro
mutilation afterward to of-money payment more-inclined for
morum prudentia, ut fere fert natura mortalium, optimatibus
of-manners prudence as almost bears the-nature of-mortals to-the-magnates
venerabilis, provincialibus amabilis habebatur. Quod si qui
venerable to-the-provincials lovable he-was-held but if any

majorum, jurati sacramenti immemores, a fidei tramite
of-the-greater of-the-sworn oath unmindful from of-faith the-path
exorbitarent, continuo et consiliorum efficacia et laborum
strayed at-once both of-counsels by-the-efficacy and of-labors
perseverantia, erroneos revocabat ad lineam; per asperitatem
by-the-perseverance the-erring he-recalled to the-line through the-harshness
vulnerum detrectantes reducens ad sanitatem animorum.
of-wounds the-refusers bringing-back to the-health of-minds
Nec facile quam diuturnos sudores in talibus effuderit
nor easily how long sweats in such-things he-poured-out
enumerem, dum nihil patitur inultum quod a delinquentibus
could-I-enumerate while nothing he-allows unavenged which by the-offenders
commissum dignitati suæ non esset consentaneum. Pugnarum
committed to-the-dignity his not was befitting of-fights
erat maxima causa Normannia, ut ante dixi, in qua ipse
was the-greatest cause Normandy as before I-said in which he
pariter multis annis degens, Angliæ quoque prospiciebat;
equally many years living England also looked-after
nullo audente caput erigere dum ille audaciam, ille
with-no-one daring the-head to-raise while that-one the-daring that-one
suspiceret prudentiam. Nec vero propter rebellionem aliquorum
looked-up-to the-prudence nor indeed because-of rebellion of-certain
procerum unquam suorum appetitus est insidiis, nisi
nobles ever his attacked was-he by-ambushes except
semel: auctor earum fuit quidam cubicularius, plebeii generis
once the-author of-them was a-certain chamberlain of-plebeian race
patre, sed pro regiorum thesaurorum custodia famosi nominis
by-father but for of-the-royal treasures custody of-famous name
homine natus: is deprehensus, et facile confessus, pœnas
a-man born he caught and easily confessing the-penalties

perfidiæ acriter luit. Præter hoc tota vita securus, animos
of-treachery sharply paid besides this his-whole life secure the-minds
omnium timori, sermones amori obstrictos habebat.
of-all to-fear the-speeches to-love bound he-had
Statura minimos supergrediens, a maximis vincebatur: crine
in-stature the-smallest surpassing by the-greatest he-was-surpassed with-hair
nigro et juxta frontem profugo, oculis dulce serenis, thoroso
black and beside the-forehead receding with-eyes sweetly serene with-brawny
pectore, carnoso corpore. Facetiarum pro tempore plenus;
chest with-fleshy body of-jests according-to the-time full
nec pro mole negotiorum, cum se communioni dedisset,
nor for the-mass of-business when himself to-company he-had-given
minus jocundus. Minus pugnacis famæ, Scipionis Africani
less pleasant less of-pugnacious fame of-Scipio Africanus
dictum repræsentabat, "Imperatorem me mea mater, non
the-saying he-represented a-commander me my mother not
bellatorem, peperit." Quapropter sapientia nulli unquam
a-fighter bore wherefore in-wisdom to-none ever
modernorum regum secundus, et pene dicam omnium
of-the-modern kings second and almost I-might-say of-all
antecessorum in Anglia facile primus, libentius bellabat consilio
predecessors in England easily first more-willingly he-warred by-counsel
quam gladio: vincebat, si poterat, sanguine nullo; si aliter
than by-the-sword he-conquered if he-could with-blood none if otherwise
non poterat, pauco. Omnium tota vita omnino obscœnitatum
not he-could with-little of-all his-whole life altogether of-obscenities
cupidinearum expers, quoniam, ut a consciis accepimus,
erotic free since as from those-in-the-know we-have-learned
non effræni voluptate, sed gignendæ prolis amore, mulierum
not from-unbridled pleasure but of-begetting offspring from-love of-women
gremio infunderetur: nec dignaretur advenæ delectationi
into-the-bosom he-was-poured nor did-he-deign to-foreign delight

præbere assensum, nisi ubi regium semen procedere posset
to-offer assent except where royal seed to-proceed could
in effectum; effundens naturam ut dominus, non obtemperans
into effect pouring-out nature as master not obeying
libidini ut famulus. Cibis indifferenter utens, magisque
lust as servant foods indiscriminately using and-more
explens esuriem, quam multis obsoniis urgens ingluviem;
filling hunger than with-many dishes pressing gluttony
potui nunquam præter sitim indulgens. Continentiæ minimum
to-drink never except thirst indulging of-continence the-least
excessum tum in suis tum in omnibus execrans. Sompni gravis,
excess both in his-own and in all execrating of-sleep heavy
et quem frequens runcatio interrumperet. Facultatis in dicendo
and which frequent snoring interrupted of-facility in speaking
magis fortuitæ quam elaboratæ; nec præcipitis, sed maturæ.
more casual than labored nor headlong but mature
Pietatis in Deum prædicandæ, monasteria in Anglia et
of-piety toward God to-be-proclaimed monasteries in England and
Normannia construxit; quibus quia nondum supremam manum
Normandy he-built to-which because not-yet the-final hand
imposuit, ego quoque interim judicium meum differrem, nisi
he-has-put I also meanwhile judgment my would-defer unless
me Radingensium fratrum caritas tacere non sineret. Hoc ille
me of-the-Reading brothers the-charity to-be-silent not allowed this he
cœnobium inter duo flumina Kenetam et Tamensem constituit,
monastery between two rivers the-Kennet and the-Thames established
loco ubi pene omnium itinerantium ad populosiores urbes
in-a-place where almost of-all travelers to the-more-populous cities
Angliæ posset esse diversorium; posuitque ibi monachos
of-England it-could to-be a-lodging and-placed there monks
Cluniacenses, qui sunt hodie præclarum sanctitatis exemplum,
of-Cluny who are today a-famous of-holiness example

hospitalitatis indefessæ et dulcis indicium: videas ibi
of-hospitality untiring and sweet a-sign you-may-see there
quod non alibi, ut plus hospites, totis horis venientes,
what not elsewhere that more the-guests at-all hours coming
quam inhabitantes insumant. Præproperum me et adulatorem
than the-inhabitants consume over-hasty me and a-flatterer
fortasse quis dixerit, quod nunc primum nascentem
perhaps someone may-call that now first a-nascent
religionem tanto efferam præconio, nesciens quid ventura
religion with-such I-raise praise not-knowing what the-coming
pariat dies; sed ipsi, ut spero, cum Dei gratia enitentur
may-bring-forth day but they as I-hope with of-God grace will-strive
ut in bono durent. Ego non erubesco si sanctis viris
that in good they-may-last I not blush if holy men
blandiar; et bonum quod in me non habeo, in aliis admirer.
I-flatter and the-good which in me not I-have in others I-admire
Investituras ecclesiarum Deo et sancto Petro remisit, post
the-investitures of-churches to-God and to-saint Peter he-remitted after
multas controversias inter eum et Anselmum archiepiscopum
many controversies between him and Anselm the-archbishop
habitas; vix tandem ad consentiendum, pro ingenti Dei
held scarcely at-last to consenting for the-huge of-God
gratia, ingloriosa de fratre victoria inflexus. Sed harum
grace by-the-inglorious over his-brother victory bent but of-these
causarum tenorem multo verborum circuitu egit dominus
cases the-tenor with-much of-words circuit treated the-lord
Edmerus: nos, pro pleniore notitia, Paschalis sæpe dicti
Eadmer we for fuller knowledge of-Paschal often mentioned
apostolici scripta ad hanc rem pertinentia subnectemus.
the-apostolic the-writings to this matter pertaining shall-subjoin

"Paschalis episcopus Henrico regi salutem. In litteris quas
Paschal bishop to-Henry the-king greeting in the-letters which
nuper ad nos per familiarem tuum, nostræ dilectionis
lately to us through intimate your of-our love
filium, clericum Willelmum transmisisti, et personæ tuæ
son the-cleric William you-sent both of-your person
sospitatem cognovimus, et successus prosperos quos tibi,
the-safety we-learned and the-successes prosperous which to-you
superatis regni adversariis, benignitas divina concessit:
with-overcome of-the-kingdom adversaries the-divine kindness has-granted
audivimus præterea optatam virilem sobolem ex ingenua
we-heard besides the-wished-for male offspring from noble
te et religiosa conjuge suscepisse. Quod profecto cum nos
you and religious wife to-have-received which surely since us
lætificaverit, oportunum rati sumus nunc tibi præcepta
it-has-gladdened fitting thought we-have now to-you the-precepts
et voluntatem Dei validius inculcare, cum amplioribus
and will of-God more-strongly to-inculcate since with-ampler
beneficiis benignitati ejus te prospicis debitorem. Nos
benefits to-kindness his yourself you-see a-debtor we
quoque divinis beneficiis benignitatem nostram penes te
also with-the-divine benefits kindness our toward you
sociare optamus; sed grave nobis est, quia id a nobis
to-associate wish but grievous to-us it-is because that from us
videris expetere quod omnino præstare non possumus. Si
you-seem to-seek which altogether to-grant not we-can if
enim consentiamus aut patiamur investituras a tua excellentia
for we-consent or allow investitures by your excellence
fieri, et nostrum proculdubio et tuum erit immane
to-be-made both our without-doubt and yours will-be a-monstrous
periculum. Qua in re contemplari te volumus quid aut
danger which in thing to-contemplate you we-wish what either

non faciendo perdas, aut faciendo conquiras: nos enim in
not by-doing you-lose or by-doing you-gain we for in
prohibitione hac nihil amplius obedientiæ, nihil liberalitatis,
prohibition this nothing more of-obedience nothing of-liberality
per ecclesias nanciscimur; nec tibi debitæ potestatis aut
through the-churches obtain nor from-you of-due power or
juris subtrahere quicquam nitimur, nisi ut erga te Dei
of-right to-take-away anything do-we-strive except that toward you of-God
ira minuatur, et sic tibi prospera cuncta contingant. Ait
the-wrath be-diminished and so to-you prosperous all-things may-befall says
enim Dominus, 'Honorificantes me honorificabo; qui autem
for the-Lord those-honoring me I-will-honor who but
contempnunt me erunt ignobiles.' Dices itaque 'Mei hoc
despise me will-be ignoble you-will-say and-so mine this
juris est.' Non utique: non est imperatorium, non regium,
of-right is not at-all not is-it imperial not royal
sed divinum; solius illius est qui dixit 'Ego sum ostium.'
but divine of-him-alone of-him it-is who said I am the-door
Unde pro ipso te rogo, cujus hoc munus est, ut reddas
whence for him-himself you I-ask whose this gift is that you-return
hoc ipsi; ipsi dimittas, cujus amori etiam quæ
this to-him-himself to-him you-yield whose to-love even the-things-which
tua sunt debes. Nos autem cur tuæ obniteremur
yours are you-owe we but why to-your would-we-strive-against
voluntati, cur obsisteremus gratiæ, nisi Dei, in hujus negotii
will why would-we-resist favor unless of-God in of-this business
consensu, sciremus nos voluntati obviare, gratiam amittere?
the-consent we-knew ourselves the-will to-oppose the-grace to-lose
Cur tibi quicquam negaremus, quod cuiquam esset mortalium
why to-you anything would-we-deny which to-anyone were of-mortals
concedendum, cum beneficia de te ampliora sumpserimus?
to-be-granted when benefits from you ampler we-have-received

Prospice, fili carissime, utrum decus an dedecus tibi sit, quod
look-ahead son dearest whether glory or disgrace to-you it-be that
sapientissimus ac religiosissimus Gallicanorum episcoporum
the-wisest and most-religious of-the-Gallican bishops
Anselmus propter hoc tuo lateri adhærere, tuo veretur
Anselm on-account-of this at-your side to-cling your fears
in regno consistere. Qui tanta de te bona hactenus
in kingdom to-stay who so-many about you good-things until-now
audierant, quid de te sentient? quid loquentur, cum hoc
had-heard what about you will-they-feel what will-they-say when this
fuerit in regionibus divulgatum? Ipsi qui coram te tuos
has-been in regions spread-abroad they-themselves who before you your
excessus extollunt, cum præsentia tua caruerint, hoc profecto
excesses extol when of-presence your they-are-deprived this surely
validius infamabunt. Redi ergo carissime fili, ad cor tuum,
more-strongly will-defame return therefore dearest son to heart your
propter misericordiam Dei et propter amorem Unigeniti
for the-mercy of-God and for the-love of-the-Only-Begotten
deprecamur: revoca pastorem tuum, revoca patrem tuum; et
we-beseech recall shepherd your recall father your and
si quid, quod non opinamur, gravius adversus te gesserit,
if anything which not we-think more-heavily against you he-has-done
si investituras aversatus fueris, nos juxta voluntatem
if investitures renounced you-will-have we according-to will
tuam, quantum cum Deo possumus, moderabimur: tu tamen
your as-far-as with God we-can will-moderate you yet
talis repulsæ infamiam a persona tua et regno removeas.
of-such repulse the-infamy from person your and kingdom remove
Hæc si feceris, et si gravia quælibet a nobis petieris,
these-things if you-do and if heavy any-things from us you-ask
quæ cum Deo præberi facultas sit, profecto consequeris,
which with God to-be-granted the-power there-be surely you-will-obtain

et pro te Dominum ipso adjuvante exorare curabimus;
and for you the-Lord with-himself helping to-entreat we-shall-take-care
et de peccatis tam tibi quam conjugi tuæ, sanctorum
and from sins both for-you and for-wife your of-the-holy
apostolorum meritis indulgentiam et absolutionem faciemus.
apostles by-the-merits pardon and absolution we-shall-make
Filium autem tuum, quem ex spectabili et gloriosa conjuge
the-son but your whom from notable and glorious wife
suscepisti, quem, ut audivimus, egregii patris Willelmi
you-received whom as we-have-heard of-the-excellent father William
nomine nominasti, tanta tecum imminentia confovebimus,
by-the-name you-named with-so-great with-you closeness we-shall-cherish
ut qui te vel illum læserit Romanam ecclesiam videatur
that whoever you or him shall-have-hurt the-Roman church may-seem
læsisse. Datum Lateranis, nono kalendas Decembris."
to-have-hurt given at-the-Lateran on-the-ninth of-the-kalends of-December

PASCHAL'S LETTERS TO ANSELM; THE SETTLEMENT

Paschal assures Anselm he never told the English envoys he would wink at investitures, and lets him absolve those invested and consecrate bishops who do homage. Anselm was then in exile at Lyons; Henry, held back by his nobles, at last gave up investiture with ring and staff, and Anselm consecrated five bishops in Kent on one day.

"Paschalis Anselmo. Suavissimas dilectionis tuæ accepimus
Paschal to-Anselm the-sweetest of-love your we-have-received
litteras, caritatis calamo scriptas. In his reverentiam devotionis
letters of-charity with-the-pen written in these the-reverence of-devotion
tuæ complectimur; et perpendentes fidei tuæ robur, et
your we-embrace and weighing of-faith your the-strength and

piæ sollicitudinis instantiam, exultamus, quia, gratia Dei
of-pious solicitude the-insistence we-exult because with-the-grace of-God
tibi præstante auxilium, te nec promissa sustollunt, nec
to-you affording help you neither promises lift-up nor
minæ concutiunt. Dolemus autem quia, cum fratres nostros
threats shake we-grieve but because when brothers our
episcopos, legatos regis Anglorum, benigne susceperimus,
the-bishops the-envoys of-the-king of-the-English kindly we-received
quæ nec diximus iis, nec cogitavimus, redeuntes ad propria
what neither we-said to-them nor we-thought returning to their-own
retulerunt. Audivimus enim eos dixisse, quia, si rex
they-reported we-have-heard for them to-have-said that if the-king
in aliis bene ageret, nos investituras ecclesiarum nec
in other-things well acted we investitures of-churches neither
prohibere, nec factas excommunicare; et quod ideo
to-forbid nor when-made to-excommunicate and that for-this-reason
nolebamus cartæ committere, ne sub occasione ea ceteri
we-were-unwilling to-paper to-commit-it lest under occasion that the-other
principes in nos inclamarent. Unde Jesum, qui corda et
princes against us should-cry-out whence Jesus who hearts and
renes scrutatur, in animam nostram testem invocamus, si,
reins searches upon soul our as-witness we-invoke if
ex quo hujus sanctæ sedis curam suscepimus gerere, hoc
from when this holy of-the-see the-care we-undertook to-do this
immane scelus vel descendit in mentem." Et infra. "Si
monstrous crime even descended into (our)-mind and below if
ergo virgam pastoralitatis signum, si anulum signaculum
therefore the-rod of-pastorship the-sign if the-ring the-seal
fidei, tradit laica manus, quid in ecclesia pontifices agunt?
of-faith hands-over a-lay hand what in the-church bishops do
Episcopos autem qui veritatem in mendacium commutarunt,
the-bishops but who the-truth into a-lie changed

ipsa veritate, quæ Deus est, in medium introducta,
with-the-very truth which God is into the-middle brought-in
a beati Petri gratia et a nostra societate secernimus
from of-blessed Peter the-grace and from our fellowship we-separate
donec Romanæ ecclesiæ satisfaciant. Quicunque vero intra
until to-the-Roman church they-make-satisfaction whoever but within
prædictas inducias investituras consecrationum acceperunt a
the-aforesaid truce investitures of-consecrations received from
consortio nostro et ecclesiæ alienos habemus."
fellowship our and of-the-church estranged we-hold
"Paschalis Anselmo. Quod Anglici regis cor ad apostolicæ
Paschal to-Anselm that of-the-English king the-heart to of-the-apostolic
sedis obedientiam omnipotentis Dei dignatio inclinavit,
see obedience of-almighty God the-condescension has-inclined
eidem miserationum Domino gratias agimus, in cujus
to-the-same of-mercies Lord thanks we-give in whose
manu corda regum versantur. Hoc nimirum tuæ caritatis
hand the-hearts of-kings are-turned this no-doubt of-your charity
gratia, tuarumque orationum instantia, factum credimus,
by-the-grace and-of-your prayers by-the-insistence done we-believe
ut in hac parte populum illum, cui tua sollicitudo
that in this part the-people that over-which your solicitude
præsidet, miseratio superna respiceret. Quod autem et
presides the-mercy heavenly should-regard that but both
regi, et his qui obnoxii videntur, adeo condescendimus,
to-the-king and to-those who liable seem so-far we-condescend
eo affectu et compassione factum noveris, ut eos qui
with-that affection and compassion done you-may-know that them who
jacebant erigere valeamus: te autem, in Christo venerabilis
lay to-raise we-may-be-able you but in Christ venerable
et carissime frater, ab illa prohibitione sive, ut tu credis,
and dearest brother from that prohibition or as you believe

excommunicatione absolvimus, quam ab antecessore nostro
excommunication we-absolve which by predecessor our
sanctæ memoriæ Urbano papa adversus investituras ac
of-holy memory Urban pope against investitures and
hominia factam intelligis. Tu vero eos qui aut investituras
homages made you-understand you but those who either investitures
accepere, aut investitos benedixere, aut hominia fecere,
received or the-invested blessed or homages made
cum ea satisfactione quam tibi per communes legatos
with that satisfaction which to-you through common envoys
Willelmum ac Baldewinum, viros fideles et veridicos,
William and Baldwin men faithful and truthful
significamus, Domino cooperante suscipito, et eos vice
we-signify with-the-Lord co-operating receive and them in-the-stead
nostræ auctoritatis absolvito; quos vel ipse benedicas, vel
of-our authority absolve whom either yourself you-bless or
a quibus volueris benedici præcipias, nisi in iis aliud
by whom you-wish to-be-blessed you-order unless in them something-else
forte reperias propter quod a sacratis honoribus sint
perhaps you-find on-account-of which from sacred honors they-are
repellendi. Si qui vero deinceps præter investituras ecclesiarum
to-be-repelled if any but thenceforth without investitures of-churches
prælationes assumpserint, etiamsi regi hominia fecerint,
prelacies shall-have-taken-up even-if to-the-king homages they-make
nequaquam ob hoc a benedictionis munere arceantur,
by-no-means for this from of-blessing the-gift let-them-be-kept-off
donec omnipotentis Dei gratia ad hoc omittendum cor
until of-almighty God by-the-grace for this to-be-omitted the-heart
regium tuæ prædicationis imbribus molliatur. Præterea super
royal of-your preaching by-the-showers be-softened besides about
episcopis qui falsum, ut nosti, a nobis rumorem retulerunt,
the-bishops who a-false as you-know from us rumor reported

cor nostrum commotum est vehementius, quia non solum
the-heart our moved is more-vehemently because not only
nos læserunt, sed multorum simplicium animas deceperunt,
us they-hurt but of-many simple-ones the-souls deceived
et regem adversus caritatem sedis apostolicæ impulerunt;
and the-king against the-charity of-the-see apostolic drove
unde et inultum eorum flagitium, Domino cooperante, non
whence also unavenged their outrage with-the-Lord co-operating not
patimur: sed quia filii nostri regis instantia pro iis nos
we-allow but because of-son our the-king the-insistence for them us
pulsat attentius, etiam ipsis communionis tuæ participium
knocks more-attentively even to-them of-communion your the-sharing
non negabis. Sane regem et conjugem, et proceres illos qui
not you-will-deny indeed the-king and wife and the-nobles those who
pro hoc negotio cum rege ex præcepto nostro laboraverunt,
for this business with the-king from precept our labored
quorum nomina ex supradicti Willelmi suggestione cognosces,
whose names from of-the-aforesaid William the-suggestion you-will-learn
juxta sponsionem nostram a peccatis et pœnitentiis
according-to promise our from sins and penances
absolves. Rotomagensis episcopi causam tuæ deliberationi
you-shall-absolve of-the-Rouen bishop the-case to-your deliberation
committimus, et quod ei indulseris indulgemus."
we-commit and what to-him you-shall-have-pardoned we-pardon
Hæc Paschalis summus papa, pro ecclesiarum Dei libertate,
these-things Paschal the-highest pope for of-the-churches of-God the-liberty
sollicitus agebat. Fuerunt autem episcopi quos mendacii
solicitous did were moreover the-bishops whom of-lying
arguit, Girardus archiepiscopus Eboracensis, et Herbertus
he-convicted Gerard archbishop of-York and Herbert
Norwicensis; quorum errata reprehenderunt veraciores legati,
of-Norwich whose errors refuted the-more-truthful envoys

Willelmus postea Exoniensis episcopus, et Baldewinus
William afterward of-Exeter bishop and Baldwin
Beccensis monachus. Eratque tunc Anselmus archiepiscopus
of-Bec monk and-was then Anselm the-archbishop
iterum tempore istius regis Lugduni exul, apud Hugonem
again in-the-time of-this king at-Lyons an-exile with Hugh
ejusdem civitatis archiepiscopum, quando epistola prima,
of-the-same city archbishop when the-letter first
quam apposui, emissa est; quia nec ipse ullo
which I-have-set-down sent was because neither he-himself by-any
desiderio veniendi tenebatur, nec rex animositatem suam
desire of-coming was-held nor the-king animosity his
pro copia susurronum sedari patiebatur. Diu ergo
for the-abundance of-whisperers to-be-calmed allowed long therefore
et revocare illum, et monitionibus apostolicis obsecundare,
both to-recall him and to-the-admonitions apostolic to-comply
distulit; non elationis ambitu, sed procerum, et maxime
he-delayed not of-pride from-the-ambition but of-the-nobles and especially
comitis de Mellento instinctu, qui, in hoc negotio
of-the-count of Meulan at-the-instigation who in this business
magis antiqua consuetudine quam recti tenore rationem
rather by-ancient custom than of-right by-the-tenor reason
reverberans, allegabat multum regiæ majestati diminui,
beating-back alleged much from-the-royal majesty to-be-diminished
si, omittens morem antecessorum, non investiret electum per
if omitting the-custom of-his-predecessors not he-should-invest the-elected by
baculum et anulum. Veruntamen rex, diligentius inspecto
the-staff and ring nevertheless the-king more-diligently with-examined
quid vivida epistolarum ratio, quid divinorum munerum in
what the-lively of-the-letters reason what of-divine gifts into
se ubertim confluens admoneret largitio, investituram anuli
him abundantly flowing admonished the-largess the-investiture of-ring

et baculi indulsit in perpetuum; retento tantum electionis
and staff remitted into perpetuity with-retained only of-election
et regalium privilegio. Coacto ergo apud Londoniam
and of-regalia the-privilege with-gathered therefore at London
magno episcoporum et procerum abbatumque concilio, multa
a-great of-bishops and of-nobles and-of-abbots council many
ecclesiasticarum et secularium rerum ordinata negotia, decisa
of-ecclesiastical and secular things ordered affairs decided
litigia. Nec multo post, uno die quinque sunt ordinati episcopi
suits nor much after on-one day five were ordained bishops
in Cantia ab Anselmo archiepiscopo: Willelmus ad Wintoniam,
in Kent by Anselm the-archbishop William to Winchester
Rogerius ad Salesberiam, Willelmus ad Exoniam, Rainaldus
Roger to Salisbury William to Exeter Reinhelm
ad Herefordum, Urbanus ad Glamorgan. Itaque controversia
to Hereford Urban to Glamorgan and-so the-controversy
frequentibus dissensionibus agitata, plurimo Anselmi ad
by-frequent dissensions stirred by-very-much of-Anselm to
Romam itu et reditu ventilata, laudabilem finem accepit.
Rome going and returning aired a-praiseworthy end received

Matilda, reared among the nuns of Wilton, married Henry once witnesses swore she had taken no vows; she lived at Westminster in holiness and washed the sick, and died after seventeen years as queen. Her son William was drowned with the flower of the court when the drunken crew of the White Ship struck a rock off Barfleur, and Henry sought a new wife.

Uxor regis ex antiqua et illustri regum stirpe descendit
the-wife of-the-king from an-ancient and illustrious of-kings stock descended
Matildis, filia regis Scottorum, ut prædixi. A
Matilda daughter of-the-king of-the-Scots as I-have-said-before from
teneris annis inter sanctimoniales apud Wiltoniam et
tender years among the-nuns at Wilton and
Rumesium educata, litteris quoque fœmineum pectus exercuit.
Romsey brought-up in-letters also her-womanly breast she-exercised
Unde ut ignobiles nuptias respueret, plusquam semel a
whence that ignoble marriages she-might-reject more-than once by
patre oblatas, peplum sacratæ professionis index gestavit:
her-father offered the-veil of-sacred profession as-sign she-wore
quapropter, cum rex suscipere vellet eam thalamo, res
wherefore when the-king to-take wished her to-bed the-matter
in disceptationem venit; nec nisi legitimis productis testibus,
into dispute came nor unless with-lawful produced witnesses
qui eam jurarent sine professione causa procorum velum
who her might-swear without profession for-the-sake of-suitors the-veil
gessisse, archiepiscopus adduci potuit ad consentiendum.
to-have-worn the-archbishop to-be-brought could to consenting
Hæc igitur duobus partubus, altero alterius sexus, contenta,
she therefore with-two births one of-the-other sex content
in posterum et parere et parturire destitit: æquanimiterque
in the-future both to-bear and to-be-in-labor ceased and-calmly

ferebat, rege alias intento, ipsa curiæ valedicere,
bore-it with-the-king elsewhere intent she-herself to-the-court to-bid-farewell
Westmonasterio multis annis morata. Nec tamen quicquam
at-Westminster many years having-stayed nor yet anything
ei regalis magnificentiæ deerat; sed indefessa frequentia,
to-her of-royal magnificence was-lacking but with-untiring frequency
undæ salutantium, et totis apportantium temporibus,
waves of-greeters and at-all of-bringers times
accipiebantur et vomebantur superbis ædibus: hoc regis
were-received and were-poured-out from-the-proud halls this of-the-king
jubebat liberalitas, hoc ipsius gratia et dulcis attrahebat
ordered the-liberality this her-own grace and sweet attracted
benignitas. Sanctitudinis egregiæ, non usquequaque despicabilis
kindness of-boliness outstanding not altogether despicable
formæ, maternæ pietatis æmula, nihil sinistrum quantum ad
of-beauty of-maternal piety the-rival nothing wrong as-far-as to
se moribus admittens; præter regium cubile pudoris integra,
herself in-manners admitting besides the-royal bed of-chastity whole
nulla etiam suspicione læsa. Cilicio sub regio cultu
by-no even suspicion harmed in-a-hair-shirt beneath the-royal dress
convoluta, nudipes diebus Quadragesimæ terebat ecclesiarum
wrapped barefoot on-the-days of-Lent she-wore of-the-churches
limina: nec horrebat pedes lavare morbidorum, ulcera
the-thresholds nor did-she-shudder the-feet to-wash of-the-sick the-ulcers
sanie distillantia contrectare; postremo longa manibus
with-pus dripping to-handle lastly long with-the-hands
oscula protelare, mensam apponere. Erat ei in audiendo
kisses to-prolong the-table to-set-out there-was to-her in hearing
servitio Dei voluptas unica ideoque in clericos bene
the-service of-God pleasure the-one and-therefore on clerics well
melodos inconsiderate provida; blande quoscunque alloqui,
melodious inconsiderately provident caressingly whomever to-address

multa largiri, plura polliceri. Inde, liberalitate ipsius per
much to-bestow more to-promise thence by-the-liberality her through
orbem sata, turmatim huc adventabant scholastici tum
the-world sown in-troops hither came scholars both
cantibus tum versibus famosi; felicemque se putabat qui
for-songs and for-verses famous and-happy himself he-thought who
carminis novitate aures mulceret dominæ. Nec in his
of-(his)-song with-the-novelty the-ears might-soothe of-the-lady nor on these
solum expensas conferebat, sed etiam omni generi hominum,
alone expenses she-bestowed but also on-every kind of-men
præsertim advenarum: qui, muneribus acceptis, famam ejus
especially of-strangers who with-gifts received the-fame her
longe per terras venditarent. Est enim cupiditas gloriæ ita
far through the-lands might-vaunt is for the-desire of-glory so
innata mentibus hominum, ut vix aliquis, bonæ conscientiæ
inborn in-the-minds of-men that scarcely anyone of-good conscience
pretiosis contentus fructibus, si quid bene fecerit, non
with-precious content fruits if anything well he-has-done not
dulce habeat efferri in vulgus: unde aiunt, et constat,
sweet holds to-be-carried-out into the-crowd whence they-say and it-is-agreed
dominæ esse surreptum, ut extraneos quos posset præmiis
upon-the-lady to-have crept that strangers whom she-could with-rewards
deliniret; ceteros promissis, aliquando efficacibus, aliquando
she-might-soothe the-others with-promises sometimes effective sometimes
et sæpius inanibus, suspenderet. Eo effectum est ut
and more-often empty she-might-hold-in-suspense by-that brought-about was that
prodige donantium non effugeret vitium, multimodas colonis
prodigally of-givers not she-escaped the-vice manifold to-tenants
suis deferens calumpnias, inferens injurias, auferens substantias;
her bringing false-charges inflicting injuries taking-away goods
quo bonæ largitricis nacta famam, suorum parvi
whereby of-a-good bountiful-giver having-got the-fame of-her-own-people little

pensaret contumeliam. Sed hæc qui recte judicare volet,
she-weighed the-insult but these-things whoever rightly to-judge will-wish
consiliis ministrorum imputabit; qui, more harpyiarum,
to-the-counsels of-her-ministers will-impute who in-the-manner of-harpies
quicquid poterant corripere unguibus, vel infodiebant marsupiis
whatever they-could to-seize with-claws either buried in-purses
vel insumebant conviviis: quorum fæculentis susurris aures
or consumed in-banquets whose with-dreggy whispers in-ears
oppleta, nævum honestissimæ menti contraxit: de reliquo factis
filled a-blemish on-a-most-honorable mind she-contracted for the-rest in-deeds
omnibus approbanda et sancta. Inter hæc erepta est
all to-be-approved and holy amid these-things snatched was-she
patriæ, magno provincialium dampno, suo nullo;
from-her-country with-great of-the-provincials loss with-her-own none
nam et funus nobiliter curatum apud Westmonasterium,
for both her-funeral nobly attended at Westminster
quietem accepit, et spiritus se cælum incolere non frivolis
rest received and her-spirit itself heaven to-inhabit not with-trivial
signis ostendit. Obiit, regno post septemdecim annos et
signs showed she-died with-the-kingdom after seventeen years and
sex menses libenter relicto; fatum parentum experta, qui
six months gladly left the-fate of-her-parents having-experienced who
pene omnes virente potissimum ævo excessere mundo.
almost all in-flourishing especially age departed from-the-world
Successit thoro ejus, sed non ita cito, Adala filia ducis
succeeded to-bed her but not so soon Adeliza daughter of-the-duke
de Lovanio, quod est castellum caput Lotharingiæ.
of Louvain which is a-castle the-head of-Lotharingia
Filium habuit rex Henricus ex Matilde, nomine Willelmum,
a-son had king Henry from Matilda by-name William
dulci spe et ingenti cura in successionem educatum et
with-sweet hope and huge care for the-succession brought-up and

provectum; nam et ei, vix dum duodecim annorum esset,
advanced for both to-him scarcely while twelve of-years he-was
omnes liberi homines Angliæ et Normanniæ, cujuscunque
all free men of-England and of-Normandy of-whatever
ordinis et dignitatis, cujuscunque domini fideles, manibus
order and rank of-whatever lord the-vassals with-hands
et sacramento se dedere coacti sunt. Filiam quoque
and with-oath themselves to-give compelled were the-daughter also
Fulconis comitis Andegavensis vix nubilem ipse etiam
of-Fulk count of-Anjou scarcely marriageable he-himself also
impubis despondit et accepit, dato sibi a socero
under-age betrothed and received with-given to-himself by his-father-in-law
comitatu Cenomannico pro munere sponsalitio: quin et
the-county of-Maine for a-gift of-betrothal nay even
Jerosolimam Fulco ire contendens, comitatum commendavit
to-Jerusalem Fulk to-go striving the-county entrusted
regi suum, si viveret; futurum profecto generi, si
to-the-king his if he-lived to-be surely to-his-son-in-law if
non rediret. Plures ergo provinciæ spectabant nutum pueri,
not he-returned more therefore provinces looked-to the-nod of-the-boy
putabaturque regis Edwardi vaticinium in eo complendum;
and-it-was-thought of-king Edward the-prophecy in him to-be-fulfilled
ferebaturque spes Angliæ, modo arboris succisa, in illo
and-it-was-said the-hope of-England in-the-manner of-a-tree cut-down in that
juvenculo iterum floribus pubescere, fructus protrudere, et
youth again with-flowers to-sprout fruits to-push-forth and
ideo finem malorum sperari posse. Deo aliter visum;
therefore an-end of-evils to-be-hoped to-be-able to-God otherwise it-seemed
hujuscemodi enim opinionem tulerunt auræ, quod cum
of-this-kind for opinion bore the-breezes which when
proxima dies urgebat fato satisfacere. Enimvero socero
the-next day pressed to-fate to-satisfy for-indeed with-his-father-in-law

tunc annitente, simulque Thetbaldo filio Stephani et
then striving and-at-the-same-time Theobald son of-Stephen and
Adalæ amitæ, Lodowicus rex Franciæ Normanniam concessit
of-Adela his-aunt Louis king of-France Normandy granted
puero, ut facto sibi hominio possideret eam jure
to-the-boy that with-done to-himself homage he-might-possess it by-right
legitimo: ordinabat hæc et efficiebat prudentissimi patris
lawful arranged these-things and brought-about of-the-most-prudent father
prudentia, ut hominium, quod ipse pro culmine imperii
the-prudence that the-homage which he-himself for the-summit of-his-rule
fastidiret facere, filius delicatus, et qui putabatur viam
would-disdain to-do the-son delicate and who was-thought the-way
seculi ingressurus, non recusaret. His agitandis et
of-the-world about-to-enter not should-refuse these-things to-be-handled and
placita concordia componendis quatuor annorum tempus
with-pleasing concord to-be-settled four of-years the-time
rex impendit, in Normannia toto hoc tempore moratus.
the-king spent in Normandy the-whole this time having-stayed
Veruntamen tam splendidæ et excogitatæ pacis serenum,
nevertheless of-so splendid and contrived peace the-calm
tam omnium spes in speculam erectas, confudit humanæ
so of-all the-hopes into the-watchtower raised confounded of-human
sortis varietas. Namque indicto in Angliam reditu,
lot the-changeableness for with-announced into England return
rex sub ipso crepusculo septimo kalendas Decembris
the-king under the-very twilight on-the-seventh kalends of-December
apud Barbeflet naves solvit; eumque, qui impleverat carbasa,
at Barfleur the-ships loosed and-him which had-filled the-sails
ventus feliciter regno et amplæ fortunæ invexit. At
the-wind happily to-the-kingdom and ample fortune carried but
vero adolescentulus, jam septendecim annorum et paulo
indeed the-youth already seventeen of-years and a-little

plus, cui nihil deliciarum præter nomen regis pro
more to-whom nothing of-delights except the-name of-king for
paterna indulgentia deesset, aliam sibi navem parari
paternal indulgence was-lacking another for-himself ship to-be-prepared
præcepit, omnibus pene adolescentulis procerum filiis, quasi
ordered with-all almost the-youths of-the-nobles sons as-if
pro colludio ætatis puerilis, eo accurrentibus; quin et
for the-play of-age boyish thither running-up nay even
remiges immodice mero ingurgitati, voluptate nautica
the-rowers immoderately with-neat-wine gorged with-pleasure nautical
quam potus ministrabat, mature illos qui præcesserant
which the-drink supplied early those who had-gone-ahead
post tergum relinquendos clamitabant. Erat enim navis
behind their-back to-be-left shouted was for the-ship
optima, tabulatis novis et clavis recenter compacta. Itaque
excellent with-planks new and with-nails recently fastened and-so
cæca jam nocte, juventus sapientiæ indiga, simulque
in-blind already night the-youth of-wisdom lacking and-at-the-same-time
potu obruta, navem a littore impellunt. Volat illa
with-drink overwhelmed the-ship from the-shore they-push flies that-one
pennata pernicior arundine; et, crispantia maris terga
feathered swifter than-an-arrow and the-curling of-the-sea backs
radens, imprudentia ebriorum impegit in scopulum non
grazing by-the-imprudence of-the-drunk it-struck on a-rock not
longe a littore supra pelagus exstantem. Consurgunt ergo
far from the-shore above the-sea standing-out rise therefore
miseri, et magno clamore ferratos contos expediunt, diu
the-wretches and with-great clamor the-iron-shod poles they-get-ready long
certantes ut navem a rupe propellerent; sed obsistebat
striving that the-ship from the-rock they-might-push but resisted
fortuna, omnes eorum conatus in irritum deducens. Itaque
fortune all their efforts into the-vain leading and-so

et remi in saxum obnixi crepuere, concussaque prora
both the-oars on the-rock pressing cracked and-the-shaken prow
pependit. Jamque alios undis exponebat, alios ingressa per
hung and-now some to-the-waves it-exposed others entering through
rimas aqua enecabat, cum ejecta scafa filius regis
the-cracks the-water killed when with-launched boat the-son of-the-king
excipitur; salvarique potuisset ad littus regressus, nisi soror
is-taken-up and-to-be-saved could-have to the-shore returned unless sister
ejus notha, comitissa Perticæ, in majori nave cum morte
his bastard the-countess of-Perche in the-larger ship with death
luctans, fœmineo ululatu fratris opem implorasset, ne tam
struggling with-womanly howl of-her-brother the-help had-implored lest so
impie se relinqueret. Ille, misericordia infractus, lembum
impiously her he-should-abandon he by-pity broken the-boat
carinæ applicari jussit, ut sororem exciperet; mortem
to-the-hull to-be-brought ordered that his-sister he-might-take-up death
misellus pro clementiæ teneritudine indeptus: continuo enim
the-poor-wretch for of-mercy the-tenderness obtained at-once for
multitudine insilientium scafa victa subsedit, omnesque
by-the-multitude of-those-leaping-in the-boat overcome sank and-all
pariter fundo involvit. Evasit unus et ille agrestis, qui,
together to-the-bottom rolled escaped one and he a-rustic who
tota nocte malo supernatans, mane totius tragœdiæ
the-whole night on-the-mast floating in-the-morning of-whole tragedy
actum expressit. Nulla unquam fuit navis Angliæ tantæ
the-action expressed no ever was ship of-England of-such
miseriæ, nulla toti orbi tam patulæ famæ. Periit ibi cum
misery none to-the-whole world of-so wide fame perished there with
Willelmo alter filius regis Ricardus, quem ante regnum
William another son of-the-king Richard whom before his-reign
ex provinciali fœmina susceperat, juvenis magnanimus et
from a-provincial woman he-had-begotten a-young-man great-spirited and

patri pro obsequio acceptus; Ricardus comes Cestræ, et
to-his-father for obedience acceptable Richard earl of-Chester and
frater ejus Otuelus, nutricius et magister filii regis;
brother his Othuel the-tutor and master of-the-son of-the-king
filia regis, comitissa Perticæ; et neptis ejus soror
the-daughter of-the-king the-countess of-Perche and niece his the-sister
Thetbaldi, comitissa Cestræ: præterea quisquis erat in curia
of-Theobald the-countess of-Chester besides whoever was in the-court
lectissimus miles vel capellanus, et optimatum filii ad
most-choice knight or chaplain and of-the-magnates the-sons to
militiam provehendi; accurrerant enim undique, ut dixi, non
knighthood to-be-advanced had-run-up for from-everywhere as I-said not
leve gloriæ suæ numeraturi commodum si filio regis vel
slight of-glory their about-to-reckon an-advantage if to-the-son of-the-king either
deferrent ludicrum vel conferrent obsequium. Accumulavitque
they-offered sport or bestowed service and-heaped-up
calamitatem difficultas inveniendorum cadaverum, quia
the-calamity the-difficulty of-finding of-the-bodies because
dispersis per littora quæsitoribus nullum facile repertum
with-scattered through the-shores searchers none easily found
est; sed ierunt tam delicata corpora æquoreis crudelia pabula
was but they-went so delicate bodies for-sea cruel food
monstris Juvenculi ergo morte cognita res mirum in
for-monsters of-the-youth therefore with-the-death known affairs wonderful in
modum mutatæ. Parens enim cælibatui renuntiavit, cui
manner changed the-parent for to-celibacy renounced to-which
post mortem Matildis studuerat, futuros heredes ex
after the-death of-Matilda he-had-devoted-himself future heirs from
nova conjuge jamjamque operiens. Socer, ex Jerosolimis
a-new wife now-and-now awaiting the-father-in-law from Jerusalem
domum reversus, partibus Willelmi filii Roberti Normanni
home returned to-the-side of-William son of-Robert the-Norman

comitis improbus astitit, tradens ei alteram filiam nuptum
count wickedly stood giving to-him his-other daughter in-marriage
et Cenomannicum comitatum: irarum stimulos in regem
and of-Maine the-county of-angers the-goads against the-king
acuebat dos filiæ, post mortem filii in Anglia
he-sharpened the-dowry of-the-daughter after the-death of-the-son in England
retenta.
retained

THE EMPEROR HENRY AND PASCHAL'S PRIVILEGE

Henry's daughter Matilda married the emperor Henry V, who renewed his father's quarrel over investitures. The bishops of the empire supported him, since Charlemagne had given them their lands. He marched on Rome, seized the pope, and wrung a privilege from him. David the Scot, bishop of Bangor, praised even this violence, writing panegyric rather than history, so William copies the privilege and the oaths, with the coronation that followed.

Filiam Matildem ex Mathilde susceptam, dedit rex
his-daughter Matilda from Matilda begotten gave king
Henricus Henrico imperatori Alemanniæ, filio Henrici de quo
Henry to-Henry emperor of-Germany son of-Henry of whom
tertius liber memoriam fecit. Fuit hic Henricus quintus ejus
the-third book mention made was this Henry the-fifth of-that
nominis apud Teutonicos imperator: qui licet pro contumeliis
name among the-Germans emperor who although for the-insults
apostolicæ sedis patri graviter succensuisset, ipse tamen
of-the-apostolic see with-his-father heavily he-had-been-angry he-himself yet
ejusdem sententiæ sequax et propugnator suo tempore fuit
of-the-same judgment a-follower and champion in-his time was
infestus; namque cum Urbano papæ Paschalis successisset, vir
hostile for when to-Urban the-pope Paschal had-succeeded a-man

nullo virtutis genere carens, rursus quæstio de investituris
by-no of-virtue kind lacking again the-question about the-investitures
ecclesiarum, rursus bella, rursus lites agitari, neutris partibus
of-churches again wars again suits to-be-stirred with-neither side
loco cedentibus. Imperator omnes episcopos et abbates regni
ground yielding the-emperor all the-bishops and abbots of-kingdom
sui quod citra montes est fautores habebat; quia Carolus
his which this-side the-mountains is as-supporters had because Charles
magnus, pro contundenda gentium illarum ferocia, omnes pene
the-Great for crushing of-peoples those the-ferocity all almost
terras ecclesiis contulerat: consiliosissime perpendens, nolle
lands to-churches had-conferred most-wisely weighing to-be-unwilling
sacri ordinis homines tam facile quam laicos fidelitatem
of-sacred order men so easily as laymen the-fealty
domini rejicere; præterea, si laici rebellarent, illos posse
of-their-lord to-reject besides if the-laymen rebelled them to-be-able
et excommunicationis auctoritate et potentiæ severitate
both of-excommunication by-the-authority and of-power by-the-severity
compescere. Papa ultramontanas ecclesias suæ rationi subjecerat;
to-restrain the-pope the-ultramontane churches to-his reason had-subjected
parumque suspiciebant urbes Italiæ Henrici dominium,
and-little looked-up-to the-cities of-Italy of-Henry the-lordship
servitio se putantes exutas post Conradi fratris ejus
from-servitude themselves thinking freed after of-Conrad the-brother his
interitum, qui, a patre relictus Longobardiæ in regem apud
the-death who by his-father left of-Lombardy as king at
Aretium obierat diem: at vero Henricus, antiquis Cæsaribus
Arezzo had-met his-day but indeed Henry than-the-ancient Caesars
in nullo virtute dejectior, post pacatum regnum Teutonicum
in nothing in-valor more-cast-down after the-pacified kingdom German
præsumebat animo Italicum, rebellionem urbium subjugaturus,
presumed in-mind the-Italian rebellion of-the-cities about-to-subjugate

quæstionemque de investitura suo libito recisurus. Sed
and-the-question about investiture at-his pleasure about-to-cut-short but
iter illud ad Romam magnis exercitationibus pectorum,
the-journey that to Rome with-great exertions of-breasts
magnis angoribus corporum, consummatum, David Scottus
with-great anguishes of-bodies completed David the-Scot
Bancornensis episcopus exposuit; magis in regis gratiam
of-Bangor bishop set-out more toward of-the-king the-favor
quam historicum deceret acclinis: denique et inauditam
than a-historian would-befit inclined finally even the-unheard-of
violentiam, quod apostolicum cepit quamvis libere custodierit,
violence that the-apostolic he-seized although freely he-guarded
laudi ducit, ab exemplo quod Jacob, angelum violenter
to-praise he-reckons from the-example that Jacob the-angel violently
tenens, benedictionem ab eo extorserit. Præter hæc,
holding a-blessing from him wrested besides these-things
laborat asserere dictum apostoli, "Nemo, militans Deo,
he-labors to-assert the-saying of-the-apostle no-one serving to-God
implicat se negotiis secularibus," non adversari cupiditatibus
entangles himself in-affairs worldly not to-oppose the-desires
pontificum per laicos investitorum, quia non sit seculare
of-bishops by laymen invested because not it-be a-worldly
negotium si clericus laico fecerit hominium: quæ quantum
affair if a-cleric to-a-layman has-done homage which how-much
sint frivola, cujuslibet dijudicabit prudentia. Ego interim,
they-are frivolous of-anyone will-judge the-prudence I meanwhile
ne bonum virum verbo videar premere, statuo indulgendum,
lest a-good man by-word I-seem to-press resolve he-is-to-be-indulged
quia non historiam sed panegyricum scripsit. Nunc vero
because not a-history but a-panegyric he-wrote now but
privilegium et conventionem, violenta trium septimanarum
the-privilege and convention by-the-violent of-three weeks

captione a papa extorta, veraciter inseram; et qualiter non
captivity from the-pope extorted truthfully I-shall-insert and how not
multo post religiosiori consilio enervata sunt, subjiciam.
much after by-more-religious counsel unnerved they-were I-shall-subjoin
"Dominus papa Paschalis non inquietabit dominum regem,
the-lord pope Paschal not will-disturb the-lord king
nec ejus imperium vel regnum, de investitura episcopatuum
nor his empire or kingdom about the-investiture of-bishoprics
et abbatiarum, neque de injuria sibi illata et suis,
and of-abbeys nor about the-injury to-him brought and to-his-people
in persona et bonis; neque aliquod malum reddet sibi
in person and goods nor any evil will-be-return to-him
vel alicui personæ pro hac causa: et penitus in personam
or to-any person for this cause and utterly upon the-person
regis Henrici numquam anathema ponet; nec remanebit in
of-king Henry never anathema will-be-place nor will-it-remain in
domino papa quin coronet eum, sicut in ordine continetur;
the-lord pope but-that he-crown him as in the-order is-contained
et regnum et imperium, officii sui auxilio, eum tenere
and the-kingdom and empire of-office his with-the-help him to-hold
adjuvabit pro posse suo. Et hæc adimplebit dominus
he-will-help according-to the-power his and these-things will-fulfill the-lord
papa sine fraude et malo ingenio. Hæc sunt nomina illorum
pope without fraud and evil design these are the-names of-those
episcoporum et cardinalium qui, præcepto domini papæ
bishops and cardinals who by-the-command of-the-lord pope
Paschalis, privilegium et amicitiam domino Henrico imperatori
Paschal the-privilege and friendship to-the-lord Henry the-emperor
sacramento confirmaverunt: Petrus Portuensis episcopus, Centius
by-oath confirmed Peter of-Porto bishop Cencius
Sabinensis episcopus, Robertus cardinalis sancti Eusebii,
of-Sabina bishop Robert cardinal of-saint Eusebius

Bonefacius cardinalis sancti Marci, Anastasius cardinalis sancti
Boniface cardinal of-saint Mark Anastasius cardinal of-saint
Clementis, Gregorius cardinalis apostolorum Petri et Pauli,
Clement Gregory cardinal of-the-apostles Peter and Paul
item Gregorius cardinalis sancti Crisogoni, Johannes cardinalis
likewise Gregory cardinal of-saint Chrysogonus John cardinal
sanctæ Potentianæ, Risus cardinalis sancti Laurentii, Reinerus
of-saint Potentiana Risus cardinal of-saint Lawrence Rainer
cardinalis sanctorum Marcellini et Petri, Vitalis cardinalis
cardinal of-saints Marcellinus and Peter Vitalis cardinal
sanctæ Balbinæ, Teuzo cardinalis sancti Marci, Thetbaldus
of-saint Balbina Teuzo cardinal of-saint Mark Theobald
cardinalis Johannis et Pauli, Johannes decanus in Schola Græca,
cardinal of-John and Paul John dean in the-School Greek
Leo decanus sancti Vitalis, Albo decanus Sergii et Bachi."
Leo dean of-saint Vitalis Albo dean of-Sergius and Bacchus
Ipse etiam rex hoc sacramentum fecit: "'Ego Henricus
himself also the-king this oath made I Henry
rex liberos dimittam, quarta vel quinta feria proxima,
king free will-release on-the-fourth or the-fifth weekday next
et dominum papam et episcopos et cardinales, et omnes
both the-lord pope and the-bishops and cardinals and all
captivos et obsides qui pro eo vel cum eo capti sunt, et
the-captives and hostages who for him or with him taken were and
secure perduci faciam intra portas Transtiberinæ civitatis;
safely to-be-led-through I-will-cause within the-gates of-the-Transtiberine city
nec ulterius capiam, aut capi permittam, eos qui in fidelitate
nor further will-I-take or be-taken allow those who in fealty
domini papæ Paschalis permanent: et populo Romano et
of-the-lord pope Paschal remain and for-the-people Roman and
Transtiberinæ civitati pacem et securitatem servabo, tam
the-Transtiberine city peace and security I-will-keep both

per me quam per meos, in personis, qui pacem mihi
through myself and through my-people in persons who peace to-me
servaverint. Dominum papam fideliter adjuvabo ut papatum
shall-have-kept the-lord pope faithfully I-will-help that papacy
suum quiete et secure teneat. Patrimonia et possessiones
his quietly and securely he-may-hold the-patrimonies and possessions
Romanæ ecclesiæ quæ abstuli restituam, et cuncta quæ
of-the-Roman church which I-took I-will-restore and all-things which
habere debet more antecessorum suorum recuperare et
to-have it-ought by-the-custom of-predecessors his to-recover and
tenere adjuvabo, bona fide, sine fraude et malo ingenio:
to-hold I-will-help in-good faith without fraud and evil design
et domino papæ Paschali obediam, salvo honore regni
and to-the-lord to-pope Paschal I-will-obey saving the-honor of-the-kingdom
et imperii, sicut catholici imperatores catholicis pontificibus
and of-the-empire as catholic emperors to-catholic pontiffs
Romanis.' Et isti sunt juratores ex parte ipsius regis:
Roman and these are the-jurors from the-part of-himself of-the-king
Fridericus Coloniensis archiepiscopus, Godebardus Tridentinus
Frederick of-Cologne archbishop Gebhard of-Trent
episcopus, Bruno Spirensis episcopus, Berengarius comes,
bishop Bruno of-Speyer bishop Berengar count
Albertus cancellarius, Herimannus comes, Fridericus comes
Albert chancellor Hermann count Frederick count
palatinus, Bonefacius marchio, Albertus comes de Blandriaco,
palatine Boniface marquis Albert count of Biandrate
Fridericus comes, Godefricus comes, Warnerius marchio."
Frederick count Godfrey count Werner marquis
Hac conventione expleta, et prædictorum episcoporum et
with-this convention fulfilled and of-the-aforesaid bishops and
cardinalium sacramento confirmata, osculo utrinque dato,
cardinals by-oath confirmed with-a-kiss on-both-sides given

dominus papa quarto idus Aprilis, Dominica Quasi modo
the-lord pope on-the-fourth ides of-April on-Sunday Quasi modo
geniti, missam celebravit; in qua, post communionem suam et
geniti mass celebrated in which after communion his and
ministrorum altaris, imperatori corpus et sanguinem Domini
of-the-ministers of-the-altar to-the-emperor the-body and blood of-the-Lord
dedit in hæc verba: "Hoc Dominicum corpus, quod sacrosancta
he-gave in these words this of-the-Lord body which the-sacrosanct
tenet ecclesia, natum ex Maria virgine, elevatum in cruce
holds church born from Mary the-virgin raised on the-cross
pro redemptione humani generis, damus tibi, fili carissime,
for the-redemption of-the-human race we-give to-you son dearest
in remissionem peccatorum tuorum, et in conservationem
for the-remission of-sins your and for the-preservation
confirmandæ pacis et veræ amicitiæ inter me et te,
of-the-to-be-confirmed peace and of-true friendship between me and you
et regnum et sacerdotium." Altero vero die apostolicus
and the-kingdom and the-priesthood on-the-other but day the-apostolic
et rex ad columpnas quæ sunt in foro convenerunt;
and the-king at the-columns which are in the-forum met
dispositis præsidiis loricatorum ubicunque videbatur opus
with-disposed garrisons of-mailed-men wherever it-seemed need
esse, ne impediretur regis consecratio. Et in Argentea
to-be lest be-hindered of-the-king the-consecration and at-the Silver
Porta receptus est rex ab episcopis, et cardinalibus, et
Gate received was the-king by the-bishops and cardinals and
toto clero Romano; et cœpta oratione quæ in ordine
the-whole clergy Roman and with-begun the-prayer which in the-order
continetur ab Ostiensi episcopo, quoniam Albanus deerat, a
is-contained by the-Ostian bishop since the-Alban was-absent by
quo debuisset dici si adesset, ad mediam rotam ductus
whom it-ought to-be-said if he-were-present to the-middle wheel led

est; et ibi recepit secundam orationem a Portuensi
he-was and there received the-second prayer from the-Porto
episcopo, sicut præcipit Romanus ordo. Deinde duxerunt
bishop as prescribes the-Roman order then they-led
eum cum letaniis usque ad confessionem Apostolorum; et
him with litanies right to the-confession of-the-Apostles and
ibi unxit eum Hostiensis episcopus inter scapulas et in
there anointed him the-Ostian bishop between the-shoulders and on
brachio dextro. Post hæc a domino apostolico ad altare
the-arm right after these-things by the-lord apostolic to the-altar
eorundem apostolorum deductus; et ibidem, imposita sibi
of-the-same apostles led-down and there with-placed on-him
corona ab ipso apostolico, in imperatorem est consecratus.
the-crown by the-very apostolic as emperor he-was consecrated
Post impositam coronam missa de Resurrectione Domini
after the-placed crown the-mass about the-Resurrection of-the-Lord
est celebrata; in qua ante communionem dominus apostolicus
was celebrated in which before communion the-lord apostolic
privilegium imperatori propria manu dedit, in quo sibi et
the-privilege to-the-emperor with-his-own hand gave in which to-him and
regno suo quod hic scriptum est concessit et in eodem
to-kingdom his what here written is he-granted and in the-same
loco sub anathemate confirmavit.
place under anathema confirmed

Paschal's privilege grants the emperor investiture by staff and ring, and the Romans give him the patriciate. The next year a Lateran council condemned it as a pravilege wrung by violence; the emperor marched on Rome, found Paschal dead, and hurried on to drive out Gelasius and thrust in Maurice Burdinus.

"Paschalis episcopus, servus servorum Dei, carissimo
Paschal bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-the-dearest
in Christo filio, et per Dei omnipotentis gratiam
in Christ son and through of-God almighty the-grace
Romanorum imperatori augusto, Henrico, salutes et
of-the-Romans emperor august Henry greetings and
apostolicam benedictionem. Regnum vestrum sanctæ Romanæ
apostolic blessing kingdom your to-the-holy Roman
ecclesiæ cohærere divina dispositio constituit; prædecessores
church to-cleave the-divine disposition has-established the-predecessors
siquidem vestri, probitatis et prudentiæ amplioris gratia,
indeed your of-probity and prudence of-greater by-grace
Romanæ urbis coronam et imperium consecuti sunt: ad
of-the-Roman city the-crown and empire obtained have to
cujus videlicet coronæ et imperii dignitatem, tuam quoque
whose namely of-crown and of-empire dignity your also
personam, filii carissime Henrice, per nostri sacerdotii
person son dearest Henry through of-our priesthood
ministerium, majestas divina provexit. Illam igitur dignitatis
the-ministry the-majesty divine has-advanced that therefore of-dignity
prærogativam, quam prædecessores nostri vestris prædecessoribus
prerogative which the-predecessors our to-your predecessors
catholicis imperatoribus concesserunt, et privilegiorum paginis
catholic emperors granted and of-privileges by-the-pages

confirmaverunt, nos quoque tuæ dilectioni concedimus,
confirmed we also to-your love grant
et præsentis privilegii pagina confirmamus, ut regni
and of-the-present privilege by-the-page confirm that of-kingdom
tui episcopis vel abbatibus, libere, præter violentiam vel
your to-the-bishops or abbots freely without violence or
simoniam electis, investituram virgæ et anuli conferas;
simony elected the-investiture of-staff and ring you-may-confer
post investitionem vero canonice consecrationem accipiant
after the-investiture but canonically consecration let-them-receive
ab episcopo ad quem pertinuerit. Si quis autem a
from the-bishop to whom it-shall-have-pertained if anyone but by
clero vel populo, præter assensum tuum, electus fuerit,
the-clergy or people without assent your elected shall-have-been
nisi a te investiatur, a nemine consecretur; exceptis
unless by you be-be-invested by no-one let-him-be-consecrated with-excepted
nimirum illis qui vel in archiepiscoporum vel in Romani
of-course those who either in of-archbishops or in of-the-Roman
pontificis solent dispositione consistere. Sane archiepiscopi
pontiff are-accustomed the-disposition to-stand indeed the-archbishops
vel episcopi libertatem habeant a te investitos episcopos
or bishops the-liberty may-have by you invested bishops
vel abbates canonice consecrandi: prædecessores enim vestri
or abbots canonically of-consecrating the-predecessors for your
ecclesias regni sui tantis regalium suorum beneficiis
the-churches of-kingdom their with-so-great of-regalia their benefits
ampliarunt, ut regnum ipsum maxime episcoporum vel
enlarged that the-kingdom itself most of-bishops or
abbatum præsidiis oporteat communiri, et populares
of-abbots by-the-garrisons it-behooves to-be-fortified and the-popular
dissensiones, quæ in electis omnibus sæpe contingunt, regali
dissensions which in elections all often happen by-royal

oporteat majestate compesci. Quamobrem prudentiæ tuæ et
it-behooves majesty to-be-checked wherefore to-prudence your and
potestati cura debet sollicitius imminere, ut Romanæ ecclesiæ
power care ought more-anxiously to-impend that of-the-Roman church
magnitudo, et ceterarum salus, tuis, Domino præstante,
the-greatness and of-the-others the-safety by-your with-the-Lord granting
beneficiis et servitiis conservetur. Si qua igitur ecclesiastica
benefits and services be-preserved if any therefore ecclesiastical
vel secularis persona hanc nostræ concessionis paginam sciens,
or secular person this of-our concession page knowing
contra eam temerario ausu venire temptaverit, anathematis
against it with-rash daring to-come shall-have-tried of-anathema
vinculo, nisi resipuerit, innodetur, honorisque ac
with-the-bond unless he-come-to-his-senses let-him-be-bound and-of-honor and
dignitatis suæ periculum patiatur; observantes autem hæc
of-dignity his the-danger let-him-suffer those-observing but these-things
misericordia divina custodiat, et personam potestatemque tuam
mercy divine may-guard and person and-power your
ad honorem suum et gloriam feliciter imperare concedat."
to honor his and glory happily to-rule may-grant
Peracto itaque toto ipsius consecrationis officio,
with-completed and-so the-whole of-the-very of-the-consecration office
apostolicus et imperator, complexis invicem dextris, iverunt
the-apostolic and the-emperor with-clasped mutually right-hands went
cum celebri pompa ad cameram quæ est ante confessionem
with famous pomp to the-chamber which is before the-confession
sancti Gregorii, ut ibi deponerent apostolicus sua sacerdotalia,
of-saint Gregory that there might-lay-down the-apostolic his priestly-vestments
imperator autem sua regalia. Imperatori autem exeunti de
the-emperor but his regalia to-the-emperor but going-out from
camera, et suis regalibus exuto, occurrerunt Romani patricii
the-chamber and of-his regalia stripped ran-to-meet the-Roman patricians

cum aureo circulo, quem imposuerunt imperatori in capite,
with a-golden circlet which they-placed on-the-emperor on the-head
et per eum dederunt sibi summum patriciatum Romanæ
and through it they-gave to-him the-highest patriciate of-the-Roman
urbis, communi consensu omnium et volenti animo.
city by-common consent of-all and with-willing mind
Omnem hanc ambitionem privilegiorum et consecrationis, verbo
all this display of-privileges and of-consecration word
de scriptis præfati David transtuli, quæ ille, ut dixi,
from the-writings of-the-aforesaid David I-have-transferred which he as I-said
pronius quam deberet ad gratiam regis inflectit. Sequenti
more-inclined than he-ought to the-favor of-the-king bends in-the-following
vero anno congregatum est concilium Romæ, non tam
but year gathered was a-council at-Rome not so-much
præcipiente quam connivente papa, et privilegium illud irritum
with-commanding as conniving the-pope and privilege that void
factum est. Auctores fuere hujusce mutationis archiepiscopus
made was the-authors were of-this change the-archbishop
Viennensis, qui postea sedem apostolicam rexit, et episcopus
of-Vienne who afterward the-see apostolic ruled and the-bishop
Engolismensis, Girardus nomine, qui coepiscopos ad hæc
of-Angoulême Gerard by-name who the-fellow-bishops for these-things
exinanienda irritabant. Ejus ergo concilii actio hæc est:
to-be-emptied roused of-that therefore council the-act this is
"Anno ab incarnatione Domini millesimo centesimo
in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord thousandth hundredth
duodecimo, indictione quinta, anno pontificatus domini papæ
twelfth in-the-indiction fifth in-the-year of-the-pontificate of-the-lord pope
Paschalis secundi tertiodecimo, mense Martio, quintodecimo
Paschal the-second thirteenth in-the-month of-March on-the-fifteenth
kalendas Aprilis, celebratum est concilium Romæ Lateranis in
kalends of-April celebrated was a-council at-Rome at-the-Lateran in

basilica Constantiniana. In qua cum dominus papa Paschalis
the-basilica Constantinian in which when the-lord pope Paschal
resedisset, cum archiepiscopis, et episcopis, et cardinalibus,
had-sat-down with the-archbishops and bishops and cardinals
et varia multitudine clericorum et laicorum, ultima die
and the-varied multitude of-clerics and laymen on-the-last day
concilii, facta coram omnibus professione catholicæ fidei,
of-the-council with-made before all the-profession of-catholic faith
ne quis de fide ipsius dubitaret, dixit: 'Amplector omnem
lest anyone about the-faith his should-doubt he-said I-embrace all
divinam scripturam Veteris ac Novi Testamenti, legem a Moyse
divine scripture of-the-Old and New Testament the-law by Moses
scriptam et a sanctis prophetis: amplector quatuor evangelia,
written and by the-holy prophets I-embrace the-four gospels
septem canonicas epistolas, et epistolas gloriosi doctoris beati
the-seven canonical epistles and the-epistles of-the-glorious teacher blessed
Pauli apostoli, sanctos canones apostolorum, quatuor concilia
Paul the-apostle the-holy canons of-the-apostles the-four councils
universalia sicut quatuor evangelia, Nicenum, Ephesinum,
universal as the-four gospels the-Nicene the-Ephesian
Constantinopolitanum, Chalcedonense; præterea Antiochenum
the-Constantinopolitan the-Chalcedonian besides the-Antiochene
concilium, et decreta sanctorum patrum Romanorum
council and the-decrees of-the-holy fathers of-the-Roman
pontificum, et præcipue decreta domini mei papæ Gregorii
pontiffs and especially the-decrees of-the-lord my of-pope Gregory
septimi, et beatæ memoriæ papæ Urbani. Quæ ipsi
the-seventh and of-blessed memory of-pope Urban what they-themselves
laudaverunt, laudo; quæ tenuerunt, teneo; quæ confirmaverunt,
praised I-praise what they-held I-hold what they-confirmed
confirmo; quæ dampnaverunt, dampno; quæ repulerunt, repello;
I-confirm what they-condemned I-condemn what they-repelled I-repel

quæ interdixerunt, interdico; quæ prohibuerunt, prohibeo; in
what they-interdicted I-interdict what they-prohibited I-prohibit in
omnibus et per omnia in his semper perseverabo.' Quibus
all-things and through all-things in these always I-will-persevere with-which-things
expletis, surrexit pro omnibus Girardus Engolismensis episcopus,
completed rose for all Gerard of-Angoulême bishop
legatus in Aquitania; et communi assensu domini papæ
legate in Aquitaine and with-the-common assent of-the-lord pope
Paschalis, totiusque concilii, legit hanc scripturam: —
Paschal and-of-the-whole council read this writing
"'Privilegium illud, quod non est privilegium, sed vere dici
privilege that which not is a-privilege but truly to-be-called
debet pravilegium, pro liberatione captivorum et ecclesiæ, a
ought a-pravilege for the-liberation of-the-captives and of-the-church from
domino papa Paschali per violentiam regis Henrici extortum,
the-lord pope Paschal through violence of-king Henry extorted
nos omnes, in hoc sancto concilio cum domino papa congregati,
we all in this holy council with the-lord pope gathered
canonica censura et ecclesiastica auctoritate judicio Sancti
by-canonical censure and by-ecclesiastical authority by-the-judgment of-the-Holy
Spiritus dampnamus, et irritum esse judicamus, atque omnino
Spirit we-condemn and void to-be we-judge and altogether
quassamus, et, ne quid auctoritatis et efficaciæ habeat
we-shatter and lest anything of-authority and of-efficacy it-may-have
penitus excommunicamus. Et hoc ideo dampnatum est,
utterly we-excommunicate and this therefore condemned is
quia in eo pravilegio continetur quod electus canonice a
because in that pravilege is-contained that the-elected canonically by
clero et populo a nemine consecretur nisi prius a rege
the-clergy and people by no-one be-consecrated unless first by the-king
investiatur; quod est contra Spiritum Sanctum et canonicam
he-be-invested which is against the-Spirit Holy and the-canonical

institutionem.' Perlecta vero hac carta, acclamatum ab
institution with-read-through but this charter was-acclaimed by
omnibus et universo concilio, 'Amen, Amen! fiat, fiat!'
all and by-the-whole council Amen Amen let-it-be let-it-be
"Archiepiscopi, qui cum suis suffraganeis interfuerunt, hi sunt:
the-archbishops who with their suffragans were-present these are
Johannes patriarcha Veneticus, Semics Capuanus, Landulfus
John patriarch of-Venice Semics of-Capua Landulf
Beneventanus, Amalfitanus, Regitanus, Hidrontinus, Brundisinus,
of-Benevento of-Amalfi of-Reggio of-Otranto of-Brindisi
Capsanus, Girontinus; et Græci, Rosanus, et archiepiscopus
of-Conza of-Acerenza and the-Greeks of-Rossano and the-archbishop
sanctæ Severinæ. Episcopi vero: Centius Sabinensis, Petrus
of-Santa Severina the-bishops but Cencius of-Sabina Peter
Portuensis, Leo Hostiensis, Cono Prænestinus, Girardus
of-Porto Leo of-Ostia Cono of-Palestrina Gerard
Engolismensis, Galo Leonensis, legatus pro Biturícensi, et
of-Angoulême Galo of-Léon legate for the-one-of-Bourges and
Viennensis archiepiscopus, Rogerius Vulturnensis, Gaufridus
of-Vienne archbishop Roger of-Volturara Geoffrey
Senensis, Rollandus Populonensis, Gregorius Terracinensis,
of-Siena Roland of-Populonia Gregory of-Terracina
Willelmus Trojanus, Willelmus Siracusanus, legatus pro
William of-Troia William of-Syracuse legate for
omnibus Siculis; et alii fere centum episcopi. Siwinus, et
all the-Sicilians and others almost a-hundred bishops Siwinus and
Johannes Tusculanus episcopus, cum essent Romæ, illa die
John of-Tusculum bishop although they-were at-Rome that day
concilio non interfuerunt; qui postea, lecta dampnatione
the-council not attended who afterward with-read the-condemnation
privilegii, consenserunt et laudaverunt."
of-the-privilege consented and praised

Ferebantur ista per orbem, nec dissimulabat omnis
were-carried these-things through the-world nor did-dissemble all
Gallia imperatorem execrari, ecclesiastici zeli vigore in
Gaul the-emperor to-curse of-ecclesiastical zeal with-the-vigor against
eum intentato. His commotus Romam septimodecimo anno
him aimed by-these moved to-Rome in-the-seventeenth year
Paschalis papæ contendit, acrius in illum ulturus; sed is
of-Paschal pope he-hastened more-fiercely on him about-to-avenge but he
felici transitu mundanas effugerat ærumpnas, ridebatque in
by-a-happy passing the-worldly had-escaped hardships and-laughed in
requie positus ex alto contumacis Cæsaris minas. Cujus
rest placed from on-high of-the-contumacious Caesar at-the-threats whose
morte accepta, alacrius imperator celerabat viam, ut
with-the-death learned more-eagerly the-emperor hastened his-way that
Johanne Gaitano, superioris papæ cancellario, qui jam electus
with-John of-Gaeta of-the-former pope chancellor who already elected
et Gelasius dictus fuerat, ejecto, Mauricium Bracarensem
and Gelasius called had-been thrown-out Maurice of-Braga
episcopum, cognomento Burdinum, intruderet. Sed hæc
bishop by-surname Burdinus he-might-thrust-in but these-things
epistola Gelasii certius proponet.
the-letter of-Gelasius more-certainly will-set-forth

Gelasius writes that the emperor drove him from Rome and set up Burdinus. He died at Cluny, and Guy of Vienne, as Calixtus, excommunicated the emperor, took Burdinus at Sutri, counted two pilgrimages to Saint David's as one to Rome, and ended the half-century quarrel with his grant to the emperor.

"Gelasius, servus servorum Dei, archiepiscopis, episcopis,
Gelasius servant of-the-servants of-God to-the-archbishops bishops
abbatibus, clericis, principibus, et ceteris per Galliam fidelibus,
abbots clerics princes and other through Gaul faithful
salutem. Quia vos Romanæ ecclesiæ membra estis, quæ in
greeting because you of-the-Roman church members are what in
ea nuper acta sunt dilectioni vestræ significare curamus.
it lately done have-been to-love your to-signify we-take-care
Siquidem post electionem nostram dominus imperator, furtive
indeed after election our the-lord emperor stealthily
et inopinata velocitate Romam veniens, nos egredi compulit.
and with-unexpected speed to-Rome coming us to-go-out compelled
Pacem postea et minis et terroribus postulavit, dicens,
peace afterward both with-threats and with-terrors he-demanded saying
quæ posset se facturum, nisi nos ei juramento pacis
what-things he-could himself about-to-do unless we to-him by-oath of-peace
certitudinem faceremus: ad quæ nos ista respondimus:
the-certainty should-make to which we these-things answered
'de controversia quæ inter ecclesiam et regnum est, vel
about the-controversy which between the-church and the-kingdom is either
conventioni vel justitiæ libenter adquiescimus loco et tempore
to-convention or to-justice gladly we-acquiesce in-place and time
competenti, videlicet Mediolani vel Cremonæ in proxima beati
suitable namely at-Milan or at-Cremona on the-next of-blessed

Lucæ festivitate, fratrum nostrorum judicio, qui a Deo
Luke feast of-brothers our by-the-judgment who by God
sunt judices constituti in ecclesia, et sine quibus hæc causa
are judges appointed in the-church and without whom this case
tractari non potest. Et quoniam dominus imperator a nobis
to-be-treated not can and since the-lord emperor from us
securitatem quærit, nos verbo et scripto eam promittimus,
security seeks we by-word and by-writing it promise
nisi ipse interim impediat. Alias enim securitatem facere,
unless he-himself meanwhile hinder otherwise for security to-make
nec honestas ecclesiæ nec consuetudo est.' Ille statim die
neither the-honor of-the-church nor the-custom is he at-once on-the-day
post electionem nostram quadragesimo quarto Bracarensem
after election our fortieth fourth of-Braga
episcopum, anno præterito a domino prædecessore nostro
bishop in-the-year past by the-lord predecessor our
Paschali papa in concilio Beneventi excommunicatum, in
Paschal pope in the-council of-Benevento excommunicated into
matris ecclesiæ invasionem ingessit; qui etiam, cum per
of-the-mother church the-invasion thrust who also when through
nostras olim manus pallium accepisset, eidem domino
our once hands the-pallium he-had-received to-the-same lord
nostro, et catholicis successoribus, quorum primus ego sum,
our and catholic successors of-whom the-first I am
fidelitatem juravit. In hoc autem tanto facinore nullum de
fealty swore in this but so-great crime none of
Romanis dominus imperator, Deo gratias! socium habuit;
the-Romans the-lord emperor to-God thanks as-ally had
sed Wibertini soli, Romanus de sancto Marcello, Centius qui
but the-Wibertines alone Romanus of saint Marcellus Cencius who
dicebatur sancti Crisogoni, Teuzo qui multo per Daciam
was-called of-saint Chrysogonus Teuzo who for-much through Dacia

debacchatus est tempore, tam infamem gloriam celebrarunt.
raged has time so infamous glory celebrated
Vestræ igitur experientiæ, litterarum præsentium perceptione,
to-your therefore experience of-the-letters present by-the-perception
mandamus ut, super his per Dei gratiam communi
we-command that about these-things through of-God the-grace with-common
deliberatione tractantes, ad matris ecclesiæ ultionem,
deliberation treating for of-the-mother church the-vengeance
communibus præstante Deo auxiliis, sicut oportere cognoscitis,
with-common with-granting God aids as to-be-fitting you-know
accingamini. Data Gaitæ, septimodecimo kalendas Februarii."
you-gird-yourselves given at-Gaeta on-the-seventeenth kalends of-February
Expulsus autem Gelasius, Salerni navibus conscensis, inde
expelled but Gelasius at-Salerno with-ships boarded thence
venit Genuam; indeque itinere pedestri Cluniacum contendens,
came to-Genoa and-thence by-journey on-foot to-Cluny hastening
ibidem obiit. Tunc, id est, anno Dominicæ incarnationis
there died then that is in-the-year of-the-Lord's incarnation
millesimo centesimo nonodecimo, cardinales qui cum Gelasio
thousandth hundredth nineteenth the-cardinals who with Gelasius
venerant, simulque omnis ecclesia Cisalpina, Guidonem
had-come and-at-the-same-time all the-church Cisalpine Guy
archiepiscopum Viennensem in papam grandi paratu levantes,
archbishop of-Vienne as pope with-great preparation raising
Calixtum vocarunt, religionis et efficaciæ ipsius contuitu,
Calixtus called of-religion and efficacy his from-regard
sperantes se per illius potentiam, quod esset in auxiliando
hoping themselves through his power because he-was in helping
facultatis maximæ, imperatoris viribus obniti posse. Nec ille
of-ability greatest of-the-emperor to-the-forces to-resist to-be-able nor he
credulos spei effectu exinaniens, mox concilio Remis
the-credulous of-their-hope by-the-effect emptying soon with-a-council at-Rheims

celebrato investitos vel investiendos a laicis ab ecclesiis
celebrated those-invested or to-be-invested by laymen from the-churches
removit; pariter et imperatorem, nisi resipisceret, involvens.
removed equally also the-emperor unless he-repented involving
Ita tempore aliquanto in inferioribus plagis moratus, ut partes
so for-a-time somewhat in the-lower regions having-stayed that side
suas augeret, Romam, compositis in Gallia rebus, venit,
his he-might-increase to-Rome with-settled in Gaul affairs he-came
libenterque a civibus, nam jam imperator discesserat, receptus
and-gladly by the-citizens for already the-emperor had-departed received
est. Tum Burdinus, in medio relictus, Sutrium effugit, multis
he-was then Burdinus in the-middle left to-Sutri fled with-many
peregrinorum calamitatibus papatum suum fovere meditatus; sed,
of-pilgrims calamities papacy his to-foster planning but
quo modo inde sit ejectus, sequenti epistola cognosces:
in-what way thence he-was thrown-out by-the-following letter you-will-learn
"Calixtus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, dilectis fratribus
Calixtus bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-the-beloved brothers
et filiis, archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus, prioribus, et
and sons archbishops bishops abbots priors and
ceteris tam clericis quam laicis, beati Petri fidelibus, per
others both clerics and laymen of-blessed Peter faithful throughout
Gallias constitutis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
the-Gauls established greeting and apostolic blessing
Quia dereliquit populus legem Domini, et in judiciis ejus
because has-forsaken the-people the-law of-the-Lord and in judgments his
non ambulat, visitat Dominus virga iniquitates eorum
not walks visits the-Lord with-the-rod iniquities their
et in verberibus peccata eorum: paternæ tamen conservans
and with blows sins their of-fatherly yet preserving
viscera pietatis, de sua confidentes misericordia non relinquit.
the-bowels of-piety in his those-trusting mercy not he-abandons

Diu siquidem, peccatis exigentibus, per illud Teutonicorum
long indeed with-sins demanding through that of-the-Germans
regis idolum, Burdinum videlicet, fideles ecclesiæ conturbati
of-the-king idol Burdinus namely the-faithful of-the-church disturbed
sunt; et alii quidem capti, alii usque ad mortem carceris
were and some indeed captured others right to death of-prison
maceratione afflicti sunt. Nuper autem, festis Paschalibus
by-the-wasting afflicted were lately but with-the-feasts Easter
celebratis, cum peregrinorum et pauperum clamores ferre
celebrated when of-pilgrims and of-the-poor the-cries to-bear
penitus non possemus, cum ecclesiæ fidelibus ab urbe
utterly not we-could with of-the-church the-faithful from the-city
digressi sumus, et tamdiu Sutrium obsedimus, donec divina
departed we-have and so-long Sutri we-besieged until the-divine
potentia et supradictum ecclesiæ inimicum Burdinum, qui
power both the-aforesaid of-the-church enemy Burdinus who
diabolo nidum ibidem fecerat, et locum ipsum, omnino in
for-the-devil a-nest there had-made and the-place itself altogether into
nostram tradidit potestatem. Rogamus itaque caritatem vestram
our delivered power we-ask and-so charity your
ut pro tantis beneficiis una nobiscum Regi regum gratias
that for so-great benefits together with-us to-the-King of-kings thanks
referatis, et in catholicæ ecclesiæ obedientia et servitio
you-return and in of-the-catholic church obedience and service
constantissime maneatis, retributionem debitam in præsenti et
most-constantly you-remain the-retribution due in the-present and
futuro ab omnipotente Domino per ejus gratiam recepturi.
the-future from the-almighty Lord through his grace about-to-receive
Rogamus etiam ut has litteras alter alteri præsentari, omni
we-ask also that these letters one to-another to-be-presented with-all
remota negligentia, faciatis. Data Sutrii, quinto kalendas Maii."
removed negligence you-cause given at-Sutri on-the-fifth kalends of-May

Urbana omnino et excogitata facetia, ut eum, quem oderat,
urbane altogether and contrived wit that him whom he-hated
regis Teutonici vocaret idolum; quod ille Mauritii peritiam,
of-the-king German he-should-call the-idol because he of-Maurice the-skill
tum in litteris tum in civilibus negotiis, magni pensaret. Erat
both in letters and in civil affairs greatly weighed was
is, ut dixi, Bracarensis archiepiscopus, quæ est civitas Hispaniæ;
he as I-said of-Braga archbishop which is a-city of-Spain
quem multum quislibet revereri, et pene adorare, pro viva
whom much anyone to-revere and almost to-adore for the-living
magnæ industriæ specie debuisset, nisi tam famoso facinore
of-great industry appearance ought unless by-so famous a-crime
enitescere maluisset. Nec enim sanctissimam sedem nummis
to-shine-out he-had-preferred nor for the-most-holy see with-coins
nundinari dubitasset, si tam desperatus inveniretur venditor
to-buy would-he-have-hesitated if as desperate were-found a-seller
quam paratus erat emptor. Tum autem captus, et monachus
as ready was the-buyer then but captured and monk
factus, in Caveam, monasterium enim ita vocant, directus est.
made into Cava the-monastery for so they-call sent he-was
Processit ulterius in augendo bono laudabilis papæ
went-on further in increasing the-good of-the-praiseworthy pope
magnificentia, ut illam effrænem et ingenitam Romanorum
the-magnificence that that unbridled and inborn of-the-Romans
cupiditatem cohiberet. Nullæ ipsius tempore viantibus circa
greed he-might-restrain no in-his time for-travelers around
Romam insidiæ, nullæ urbem ingressis injuriæ. Oblationes
Rome ambushes no the-city for-those-who-entered injuries the-offerings
apud sanctum Petrum quas pro petulantia proque libidine
at saint Peter which for wantonness and-for lust
potentes diripiebant, anteriores apostolicos, qui vel mutire
the-powerful plundered the-former apostolics who even to-mutter

auderent, indignis afficientes contumeliis, Calixtus revocavit ad
dared with-unworthy affecting insults Calixtus recalled to
medium, scilicet ad apostolicæ sedis rectoris publicum usum.
the-middle namely to of-the-apostolic see of-the-ruler public use
Nec quicquam in ejus pectore pecuniarum vel habendarum
nor anything in his breast of-moneys either to-be-had
ambitus, vel habitarum amor, operari bono abhorrens potuit:
the-ambition or had the-love to-work at-good shrinking could
adeo ut Anglos peregrinos magis ad sanctum David quam
so-much that the-English pilgrims rather to saint David than
Romam pergere admoneret, pro viæ longitudine; ad
to-Rome to-go he-advised for of-the-road the-length to
illum locum bis euntibus idem benedictionis refundendum
that place twice going the-same of-blessing to-be-poured-back
commodum, quod haberent qui semel Romam irent. Quid
advantage which those-would-have who once to-Rome went what
quod illam inveteratam investituræ controversiam inter regnum
that that inveterate of-investiture controversy between the-kingdom
et sacerdotium, quæ jam plus quam quinquaginta annis
and the-priesthood which already more than fifty years
turbas fecerat, adeo ut, aliquo hæresis fautore morbo vel
disturbances had-made so-much that with-any of-heresy supporter by-disease or
morte succiso, illico quasi hydræ capita plura pullularent, ipse
by-death cut-off at-once as-if of-the-hydra heads more sprouted he
sua industria abrasit, decidit, delevit; Teutonicæ animositatis
by-his industry scraped-away cut-off destroyed of-German animosity
colla vigore securis apostolicæ decutiens. Quod et ejus
the-necks with-the-vigor of-the-axe apostolic striking-off which both his
et apostolici professiones mundo his dictis ostendent.
and of-the-apostolic the-professions to-the-world by-these words will-show

"Ego Calixtus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, tibi dilecto
I Calixtus bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-you beloved
filio Henrico, Dei gratia Romanorum imperatori, concedo
son Henry of-God by-the-grace of-the-Romans emperor grant
electiones episcoporum et abbatum Teutonici regni qui ad
the-elections of-bishops and abbots of-the-German kingdom who to
regnum pertinent in præsentia tua fieri, absque simonia
the-kingdom pertain in presence your to-be-made without simony
et absque ulla violentia; ut si qua inter partes discordia
and without any violence that if any between the-parties discord
emerserit, metropolitani vel provincialium consilio vel
shall-have-arisen of-the-metropolitan or of-the-provincials by-the-counsel or
judicio, saniori parti assensum et auxilium præbeas.
judgment to-the-sounder party assent and help you-may-offer
Electus autem regalia a te recipiat, et quæ ex his
the-elected but the-regalia from you let-him-receive and what from these
jure tibi debet faciat: ex aliis vero partibus imperii
by-right to-you he-owes let-him-do from the-other but parts of-the-empire
consecratus infra sex menses regalia a te per sceptrum
consecrated within six months the-regalia from you through the-scepter
recipiat, et quæ ex his jure tibi debet faciat; exceptis
let-him-receive and what from these by-right to-you he-owes let-him-do with-excepted
omnibus quæ ad Romanam ecclesiam pertinere noscuntur.
all-things which to the-Roman church to-pertain are-known
De quibus vero mihi querimoniam feceris et auxilium
about which but to-me complaint you-shall-have-made and help
postulaveris, secundum officii mei debitum auxilium tibi
you-shall-have-asked according-to of-office my the-duty help to-you
præstabo. Do tibi veram pacem, et omnibus qui in tua
I-will-offer I-give to-you true peace and to-all who in your
parte sunt, vel fuerunt tempore hujus discordiæ. Vale!"
side are or have-been in-the-time of-this discord farewell

The emperor gives up investiture by ring and staff, grants free election, and restores the church's possessions; Christians rejoiced at the peace, and William praises Henry, who three times entered Italy and subdued its cities, and his English wife. In France, Count William of Poitou, a buffoon who talked of setting up an abbey of harlots at Niort and took a viscount's wife, was excommunicated by Peter, bishop of Poitiers. He threatened Peter with a sword, later drove him into exile, where Peter died a saint, and then jested that he should have killed him sooner. Verses on Peter living and dead follow.

"In nomine sanctæ et individuæ Trinitatis. Ego Henricus,
in the-name of-the-holy and undivided Trinity I Henry
Dei gratia Romanorum imperator augustus, pro amore
of-God by-the-grace of-the-Romans emperor august for the-love
Dei, et sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, et domini Calixti papæ,
of-God and of-the-holy Roman church and of-the-lord Calixtus of-the-pope
et pro remedio animæ meæ, dimitto Deo, et sanctis Dei
and for the-remedy of-soul my I-yield to-God and to-the-holy of-God
apostolis Petro et Paulo, sanctæque catholicæ ecclesiæ, omnem
apostles Peter and Paul and-to-the-holy catholic church all
investituram per anulum et baculum; et concedo in omnibus
investiture by ring and staff and I-grant in all
ecclesiis, quæ in regno vel imperio meo sunt, canonicam
churches which in kingdom or empire my are canonical
fieri electionem et liberam consecrationem. Possessiones et
to-be-made election and free consecration the-possessions and
regalia beati Petri, quæ a principio hujus discordiæ usque
regalia of-blessed Peter which from the-beginning of-this discord right
ad hodiernum diem, sive tempore patris mei, sive etiam meo,
to the-present day either in-the-time of-father my or even in-mine
ablata sunt, quæ habeo, eidem sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ
taken-away were which I-have to-the-same holy Roman church

restituo; quæ non habeo, ut restituantur fideliter juvabo.
I-restore which not I-have that they-be-restored faithfully I-will-help
Possessiones etiam omnium aliarum ecclesiarum, et principum,
the-possessions also of-all other churches and of-princes
et omnium aliorum tam laicorum quam clericorum, quæ in
and of-all others both laymen and clerics which in
guerra ista amissæ sunt, consilio principum vel justitia, quas
war this lost were by-the-counsel of-the-princes or by-justice which
habeo reddam; quas non habeo, fideliter ut reddantur juvabo.
I-have I-will-return which not I-have faithfully that they-be-returned I-will-help
Et do veram pacem domino papæ Calixto, et sanctæ Romanæ
and I-give true peace to-the-lord pope Calixtus and to-the-holy Roman
ecclesiæ, et omnibus qui in parte ipsius sunt vel fuerunt, et
church and to-all who on the-side his are or have-been and
in quibus sancta Romana ecclesia auxilium postulaverit, fideliter
in which the-holy Roman church help shall-have-asked faithfully
juvabo; et de quibus mihi querimoniam fecerit, debitam
I-will-help and about which to-me complaint she-shall-have-made due
sibi faciam justitiam." Hæc omnia acta sunt consensu et
to-her I-will-do justice these-things all done were by-the-consent and
consilio principum quorum nomina subscripta sunt: Albertus
counsel of-the-princes whose names written-below are Albert
archiepiscopus Magontiæ, Fredericus Coloniensis archiepiscopus,
archbishop of-Mainz Frederick of-Cologne archbishop
Ratisbonensis episcopus, Babenbergensis episcopus, Bruno
of-Regensburg bishop of-Bamberg bishop Bruno
Spirensis, Augustensis, Trajectensis, Constantiensis, abbas
of-Speyer of-Augsburg of-Utrecht of-Constance abbot
Foldensis, Heremannus dux, Fredericus dux, Bonefacius
of-Fulda Hermann duke Frederick duke Boniface

marchio, Thetbaldus marchio, Ernulfus comes palatinus,
marquis Theobald marquis Ernulf count palatine
Otbertus comes palatinus, Berengarius comes.
Otbert count palatine Berengar count
Sedato itaque tam veterno morbo, qui ecclesiæ statum
with-settled and-so so chronic a-disease which of-the-church the-state
conturbaverat, magnum gaudium quisquis Christiane sapuit,
had-disturbed great joy whoever in-Christian-fashion was-wise
accepit, quod is imperator, qui proxima fortitudinis
received because that-one emperor who in-the-nearest of-bravery
gloria acriter Caroli magni invaderet vestigia, etiam a
glory keenly of-Charles the-Great entered-upon the-footsteps also from
devotione ipsius in Deum non degeneraret; qui, præter
the-devotion his toward God not degenerated who besides
Teutonici regni nobiliter sopitas rebelliones, etiam Italicum
of-the-German kingdom the-nobly quieted rebellions also the-Italian
ita subegit ut nullus adeo. Ter enim in decennio
so subdued that none so-much three-times for in ten-years
Italiam ingressus urbium tumorem compescuit; primo
Italy having-entered of-the-cities the-swelling he-checked at-the-first
adventu Novariam, Placentiam, Aretium, secundo et tertio
coming Novara Piacenza Arezzo at-the-second and third
Cremonam et Mantuam, incendio exterminans: sed et
Cremona and Mantua by-fire destroying but also
Ravennæ motum paucorum obsidione dierum lenivit;
of-Ravenna the-commotion of-few with-a-siege days he-soothed
namque Pisani et Papienses, cum Mediolanensibus, amicitiam
for the-Pisans and the-Pavians with the-Milanese the-friendship
ejus quam vim experiri malebant. Huic, ut ante fatus sum,
his than the-force to-test preferred to-him as before spoken I-have
filia regis Angliæ nupta exhibebat patrem fortitudine,
the-daughter of-the-king of-England married displayed the-father in-bravery

matrem religione; contendebat in ea pietas industriæ, nec
the-mother in-religion she-vied in her piety with-industry nor
quod magis probares discerneres facile.
which more you-would-approve could-you-discern easily
Erat tunc Willelmus comes Pictavorum fatuus et lubricus;
there-was then William count of-the-Poitevins foolish and slippery
qui, postquam de Jerosolima, ut superiori libro lectum
who after from Jerusalem as in-the-former book read
est, rediit, ita omne vitiorum volutabrum premebat quasi
has-been he-returned so every of-vices wallow he-pressed as-if
crederet omnia fortuitu agi, non providentia regi.
he-believed all-things by-chance to-be-done not by-providence to-be-ruled
Nugas porro suas, falsa quadam venustate condiens, ad
trifles further his with-a-false certain charm seasoning to
facetias revocabat, audientium rictus cachinno distendens.
jests he-recalled of-the-listeners the-gapes with-a-guffaw stretching
Denique apud castellum quoddam, Niort, habitacula quædam,
finally at the-castle a-certain Niort dwellings certain
quasi monasteriola, construens, abbatiam pellicum ibi se
like little-monasteries building an-abbey of-concubines there himself
positurum delirabat; nuncupatim illam et illam, quæcunque
about-to-set raved by-name that-one and that-one whoever
famosioris prostibuli esset, abbatissam vel priorem, ceterasve
of-the-more-famous brothel was abbess or prioress or-other
officiales instituturum cantitans. Legitima quoque uxore
officials about-to-appoint chanting with-his-lawful also wife
depulsa, vicecomitis cujusdam conjugem surripuit, quam
driven-away of-a-viscount certain the-wife he-stole whom
adeo ardebat ut clypeo suo simulacrum mulierculæ
so-much he-burned that on-shield his the-image of-the-little-woman
insereret; perinde dictitans se illam velle ferre in prælio,
he-put just-so saying himself her to-wish to-bear in battle

sicut illa portabat eum in triclinio. Unde increpitus et
as she bore him in the-dining-room whence rebuked and
excommunicatus a Girardo Engolismorum episcopo, jussusque
excommunicated by Gerard of-Angoulême bishop and-ordered
illicitam venerem abjicere, "Antea," inquit, "crispabis pectine
the-unlawful love to-cast-off sooner he-said you-will-curl with-a-comb
refugum a fronte capillum quam ego vicecomitissæ indicam
the-fugitive from the-forehead hair than I to-the-viscountess proclaim
repudium;" cavillatus in virum, cujus pertenuis cæsaries
divorce mocking at the-man whose very-thin hair
pectinem non desideraret. Nec minus, cum Petrus præclaræ
a-comb not would-need nor less when Peter of-famous
sanctitatis Pictavorum episcopus eum liberius argueret, et
holiness of-the-Poitevins bishop him more-freely reproved and
detrectantem palam excommunicare inciperet, ille, præcipiti
him-refusing openly to-excommunicate began he with-headlong
furore percitus, crinem antistitis involat, strictumque mucronem
fury roused the-hair of-the-prelate flies-at and-a-drawn sword
vibrans, "Jam," inquit, "morieris, nisi me absolveris."
brandishing now he-said you-will-die unless me you-shall-have-absolved
Tum vero præsul, timore simulato, inducias petens loquendi,
then indeed the-bishop with-fear feigned a-truce asking of-speaking
quod reliquum fuerat excommunicationis fidenter peroravit; ita
what remaining had-been of-the-excommunication confidently he-finished so
comitem a Christianitate suspendens, ut nec cum aliquo
the-count from Christianity suspending that neither with anyone
convivari nec etiam loqui auderet, nisi mature resipisceret.
to-feast nor even to-speak he-dared unless early he-repented
Ita officio suo, ut sibi videbatur, peracto, martyriique
so with-office his as to-himself it-seemed completed and-of-martyrdom
trophæum sitiens, collum protendit; "Feri!" inquiens, "feri!"
the-trophy thirsting his-neck he-stretched-out strike saying strike

At Willelmus, refractior, consuetum leporem intulit ut
but William more-stubborn his-usual wit brought-in that
diceret, "Tantum certe te odio, ut nec meo te digner
he-said so-much surely you I-hate that neither with-my you I-deem-worthy
odio, nec cælum unquam intrabis meæ manus ministerio."
hatred nor heaven ever will-you-enter of-my hand by-the-service
Veruntamen post modicum, viperio meretriculæ infectus
nevertheless after a-little by-the-viperish of-the-little-harlot infected
sibilo, incesti dissuasorem detrusit exilio; ubi beato fine
hiss of-the-incest the-dissuader he-thrust into-exile where by-a-blessed end
conclusus, frequentibus et magnis miraculis innuit mundo
closed by-frequent and great miracles he-signaled to-the-world
quam gloriose vivat in cælo. Quibus auditis, comes
how gloriously he-lives in heaven with-which-things heard the-count
dicacitate insolenti non abstinuit; professus palam, pœnitere
from-wit insolent did-not abstain professing openly to-repent
se quod non ei jamdudum mortem accelerasset, ut
himself that not to-him long-ago death he-had-hastened so-that
ipsi anima sancta grates haberet potissimum, cujus furore
to-him the-soul holy thanks might-have most whose by-the-fury
cæleste mercatus esset commodum. Vitam Petri et mortem
the-heavenly bought it-had advantage the-life of-Peter and death
versus isti commendant. De vivo dictum est:
verses these commend about the-living said it-was

Versus de Petro episcopo Pictavorum.
verses about Peter bishop of-the-Poitevins

"Corpus — opes — studium — mores,
Body wealth study manners
cibus asper — egenus —
food harsh needy
Lectio — probra, domat — carpit — alit — fugiunt.
Reading reproaches he-tames plucks nourishes flee
Virtutes — culpas — fructum, colit — amputat — auget —
Virtues faults fruit he-tends cuts-off increases
Jus — litem — pacem, protegit — odit — amat.
Right strife peace he-protects hates loves
Fert misero — tribuit peccanti — servat amico,
He-brings to-the-wretched grants to-the-sinner keeps for-the-friend
Auxilium — veniam — continuamque fidem.
Help pardon and-continual faith
Mente Maria vacat, sed in actum Martha laborat;
In-mind Mary is-free but in action Martha labors
Est intenta gregi Martha, Maria Deo:
Is intent on-the-flock Martha Mary on-God
Sic apud hunc regnat Deus intra, proximus extra;
So with him reigns God within his-neighbor without
Hic desiderio, proximus obsequio.
This-one by-desire his-neighbor by-service
Diligit ille Rachel, nec Liam ferre recusat,
Loves he Rachel nor Leah to-bear refuses
Uxoremque novus duxit utramque Jacob:
And-wife a-new took each Jacob

Hujus amat vultum, juvat hujus carpere fructum,
Of-this-one he-loves the-face it-pleases of-this-one to-pluck the-fruit
Cum sit pulchra Rachel, fertiliorque Lia."
Since is fair Rachel and-more-fertile Leah

De mortuo dictum est:
about the-dead said it-was
Versus de eodem Petro mortuo.
verses about the-same Peter dead

"Exutus rebus, intentus, pulsus ab urbe,
Stripped of-goods intent driven from the-city
Præsul pauperiem, vincla, fugamque tulit.
The-bishop poverty chains and-flight bore
Nunc dives — liber — stabilis, sua præmia — Christum —
Now rich free stable his rewards Christ
Astra, capit — sequitur — possidet iste Petrus.
The-stars he-takes follows possesses this Peter
Vitam religio, mentem discretio, famam
Life religion mind discretion fame
Lux operum, studium lectio, verba modum,
The-light of-works study reading words measure
Judicium jus, justitiam rigor, ora venustas,
Judgment right justice rigor the-mouth grace
Ornabant, pietas viscera, virga manum.
Adorned piety the-heart the-rod the-hand
Promovit — privavit eum — profugumque recepit,
Promoted deprived him and-the-fugitive received
Papa — comes — Christus, ordine — sede — polo."
The-pope the-count Christ in-rank of-the-see in-heaven

De auctoribus monasteriorum fontis Ebraldi et Tirunensis

THE FOUNDERS OF FONTEVRAUD AND TIRON

Robert of Arbrissel, the most famous preacher of his day, founded the great nunnery of Fontevraud, where the women keep perpetual silence outside the chapter, since women once loosed to talk turn to gossip. Bernard of Tiron left a rich abbey for the woods with a few followers, and the many who flocked to him made his house famous for its monks, not its money.

Hujus Petri fuerunt contemporanei, et in religione socii,
of-this Peter were contemporaries and in religion companions
Robertus de Arbreisel et Bernardus abbas Tirunensis; quorum
Robert of Arbrissel and Bernard abbot of-Tiron of-whom
primus omnium hujus temporis sermocinatorum famosissimus
the-first of-all of-this time preachers most-famous
et profusissimus. Tantum non spumea sed mellea viguit
and most-copious so not foamy but honeyed flourished
eloquentia, ut hominibus certatim opes congerentibus,
with-eloquence that with-men vying their-wealth heaping-up
illud egregium sanctimonialium monasterium apud Fontem
that excellent of-nuns monastery at the-Fonte-
Ebraldi construeret; in quo, tota seculi voluptate castrata,
-vraud be-built in which with-all of-the-world pleasure castrated
fœminarum Deo devotarum quanta nusquam multitudo in
of-women to-God devoted as-great nowhere a-multitude in
Dei fervet obsequio: nam præter ceterarum illecebrarum
of-God glows service for besides of-the-other allurements
abdicationem, quantulum illud est, quod in nullo loco loquuntur
the-renunciation how-little that is that in no place they-speak
nisi in capitulo; proposita a magistro perennis taciturnitatis
except in chapter with-set-forth by the-master of-perpetual silence

regula, quia semel laxato silentio fœminæ pronæ sunt
the-rule because once with-relaxed silence women inclined are
ad mussitandum frivola. Alter, famosus paupertatis amator,
to murmuring trifles the-other famous of-poverty lover
in saltuosum et desertum locum, relicto amplissimarum
into a-wooded and deserted place with-left of-the-most-ample
divitiarum cœnobio, cum paucis concessit; ibique, quia lucerna
riches monastery with a-few withdrew and-there because the-lamp
sub modio latere non potuit, undatim multis confluentibus
under the-bushel to-be-hidden not could in-waves with-many flowing-together
monasterium fecit, magis insigne religione monachorum et
a-monastery he-made more notable for-the-religion of-the-monks and
numero, quam fulgore pecuniarum et cumulo.
for-number than for-the-glitter of-moneys and for-the-heap

De Serlone Abbate Gloecestræ

SERLO, ABBOT OF GLOUCESTER

England too had its holy men. Serlo raised Gloucester from almost nothing to glory, and its discreet religion, which the weak can look up to and the strong cannot scorn, follows his rule that nothing be overdone. He was humble with the good and terrible to the proud. The prior Godfrey's verses on his death follow.

Et, ne Anglia expers boni putetur, quis possit præterire
and lest England devoid of-good be-thought who could to-pass-over
Serlonem abbatem Gloecestrensem, qui locum illum ex
Serlo abbot of-Gloucester who place that from
humili et pene nullo ad gloriosum provectum extulit? Nota
humble and almost nothing to glorious advancement raised known
est omnibus Anglis Gloecestrensis discreta religio, quam
is to-all the-English the-Gloucester discreet religion which

infirmus possit suspicere, nec possit fortis contempnere.
the-weak could to-look-up-to nor could the-strong to-despise
Hoc illis signifer Serlo intulit, ut ne quid nimis.
this to-them the-standard-bearer Serlo brought-in that not anything too-much
Quamvis ut erat bonis humilis, ita superbis minax ac
although as he-was to-the-good humble so to-the-proud threatening and
terribilis. Ad quod firmandum versus de eo Godefridi
terrible to which to-be-confirmed the-verses about him of-Godfrey
prioris adducam in medium.
the-prior I-will-bring into the-midst
Versus de eodem mortuo.
verses about the-same dead

"Ecclesiæ murus cecidit, Serlone cadente:
Of-the-church the-wall has-fallen with-Serlo falling
Virtutis gladius, buccina justitiæ,
Of-virtue the-sword the-trumpet of-justice
Vera loquens, et non vanis sermonibus utens,
True-things speaking and not vain words using
Et, quos corripuit, principibus placuit.
And whom he-rebuked to-princes he-pleased
Judicium præceps, contrarius ordinis error,
Judgment headlong contrary of-order error
Et levitas morum, non placuere sibi.
And levity of-manners not pleased to-him
Tertius a Jano mensis, lux tertia mensis,
The-third from Janus month the-light third of-the-month
Cum nece suppressum vita levavit eum."
When by-death suppressed life raised him

De Lanzone priore Sancti Pancratii

LANZO, PRIOR OF SAINT PANCRAS

Lanzo, a monk of Cluny and prior of Saint Pancras at Lewes, made his house a home of goodness. William will tell only his death, in the words in which he found it written.

Quis Lanzonem taceat, qui ea ætate nullo inferius
who Lanzo would-pass-in-silence who in-that age to-none inferior
sanctitate floruit, monachus Cluniacensis, et prior sancti
in-holiness flourished a-monk of-Cluny and prior of-saint
Pancratii in Anglia? qui probitate sua ita locum illum
Pancras in England who by-probity his so place that
reverentiæ monachilis gratia nobilitavit, ut unicum bonitatis
of-reverence monastic with-grace ennobled that the-unique of-goodness
pro vero asseratur esse domicilium. De cujus vita quia
for true it-is-asserted to-be home about whose life because
quicquid dixero infra illius merita esse denuntio, solum illius
whatever I-shall-say below his merits to-be I-declare only his
obitum, verbis quibus scriptum inveni, apponam, ut
death with-the-words in-which written I-found I-will-set-down that
liquido pateat quam gloriose vixerit qui tam gratiose obiit.
clearly it-may-be-plain how gloriously he-lived who so graciously died

De morte ejusdem Lanzonis

THE DEATH OF LANZO

God, says the account, purged Lanzo while he lived. He was struck down on the Thursday before Passion Sunday as he vested for mass, suffered two days without any rest, and kept his monastic silence through the nights. Anointed, he kissed the brothers standing, blessed them in chapter, took communion, and, unable to speak, adored the cross and died before Saint Pancras's altar on the fifth day, at the hour he fell sick. Like Odo and Odilo, he died on the octave of a feast he loved, the Annunciation, having fallen sick on the octave of Saint Benedict's passing.

"Pius Dominus, qui flagellat omnem filium quem recipit, qui
the-holy Lord who scourges every son whom he-receives who
justos suæ socios passionis simul et consolationis fore
the-just of-his companions of-passion at-the-same-time and of-consolation to-be
promittit, tam acerbo languore dominum Lanzonem triduo
promises with-so bitter a-sickness the-lord Lanzo for-three-days
passionem suam prævenire permisit, ut si aliquis ex terrena
passion his to-anticipate allowed so-that if any from earthly
conversatione mundissimæ menti ejus pulvis adhæsit, illa
conversation to-the-purest mind his dust had-clung that
eum tribulatione excussum esse non sit ambiguum. Cum
him by-tribulation shaken-off to-have-been not be doubtful since
enim dicat tantus apostolus, qui super Dominicum recubuit
for says so-great an-apostle who on the-Lord's leaned
pectus, 'Si dixerimus quia peccatum non habemus, ipsi nos
breast if we-say that sin not we-have ourselves us
seducimus, et veritas in nobis non est:' cumque peccatum
we-deceive and the-truth in us not is and-since sin
omne aut levius hic, aut in futuro gravius, judicet Christus,
all either more-lightly here or in the-future more-heavily judges Christ
noluit ei aliquid offensionis post mortem occurrere,
was-unwilling to-him anything of-offense after death to-meet

quem se toto corde sciebat amare; ideoque, si quid
whom himself with-whole heart he-knew to-love and-therefore if anything
in eo examinandum judicabat, voluit in vivente decoquere.
in him to-be-examined he-judged he-wished in (him)-living to-boil-out
Huic nempe assertioni fiducia morientis attestata est.
to-this indeed assertion the-confidence of-the-dying-man attested has
Nam cum quinta feria ante Passionem Domini incolumis,
for when on-the-fifth weekday before the-Passion of-the-Lord in-health
dicto ex quotidiana Quadragesimæ consuetudine psalterio,
with-said from the-daily of-Lent custom the-psalter
se hora tertia missam celebraturus usque ad casulam
he at-the-hour third mass about-to-celebrate right to the-chasuble
induisset, et usque ad incipiendam missam quæquæ dicenda
had-put-on and right to beginning the-mass whatever to-be-said
erant prædixisset, subito languore tam molesto corripitur,
were had-said-beforehand by-a-sudden sickness so troublesome he-is-seized
ut ipse, quæ induerat vestimenta exuens, etiam non plicata
that he-himself what he-had-put-on garments taking-off even not folded
reliquerit: egressusque oratorio, sine intermissione per
left and-having-gone-out from-the-oratory without intermission for
biduum, hoc est, usque ad Sabbatum, conteritur; non sedendo,
two-days that is right to Saturday he-is-worn not by-sitting
non ambulando, non jacendo, non stando, neque dormiendo,
not by-walking not by-lying not by-standing nor by-sleeping
ullam omnino requiem habens. Nunquam tamen noctibus
any at-all rest having never yet at-night
locutus, rogantibus ut silentium solveret non acquievit;
having-spoken to-those-asking that the-silence he-should-break not he-acquiesced
rogans ne monachatus sui pudicitiam libarent, quod
asking that-not of-monkhood his the-chastity they-should-impair because
nunquam, postquam monachicum habitum accepisset, a
never after the-monastic habit he-had-received from

completorio exiens usque ad sequentis diei primam locutus
compline going-out right to of-the-following day prime spoken
fuisset. Sabbato autem sequente dum ita quassatus se
he-had on-Saturday but following while so shaken himself
putaret jam jamque defungi, surgentes ad matutinam synaxim
he-thought now now to-die the-rising for the-morning synaxis
fratres ad se inungendum venire præcepit; quos cum
brothers to himself to-anoint to-come he-ordered whom when
inunctus ex more osculari voluisset; nimio eorum
anointed according-to custom to-kiss he-had-wished by-the-excessive their
compulsus amore, non jacendo, nec sedendo, sed, quamvis ad
compelled love not by-lying nor by-sitting but although to
mortem anxiatus, inter brachia sustentatus stando osculatus
death distressed between arms supported standing kissed
est. Die illucescente in capitulum ductus, cum sedisset,
he-has with-the-day dawning into the-chapter led when he-had-sat
fratres ante se omnes venire rogavit; quibus paternam
the-brothers before himself all to-come he-asked to-whom the-paternal
benedictionem et absolutionem impertiens, idem sibi ab
blessing and absolution imparting the-same to-himself by
iis voluit impertiri. Postea docuit quid, si obiret, eis
them he-wished to-be-imparted afterward he-taught what if he-died to-them
esset agendum. Sicque regressus est unde venerat, reliquum
was to-be-done and-so returned he-has whence he-had-come the-rest
diei cum sequenti Dominica aliquanto quietius transigens:
of-the-day with the-following Sunday somewhat more-quietly spending
cum ecce post hæc, id est, post Dominicam, imminentis
when behold after these-things that is after Sunday of-the-imminent
mortis indicia deprehenduntur; et ipse manibus ablutis,
death signs are-detected and he with-hands washed
pexo capite, missam auditurus oratorium ingreditur,
with-combed head mass about-to-hear the-oratory enters

sumptoque corpore et sanguine Domini ad lectum regressus
and-with-taken the-body and blood of-the-Lord to the-bed returned
est. Post modicum obmutuit: fratres ante illum venientes
he-has after a-little he-fell-dumb the-brothers before him coming
singillatim benedicebat, simili modo totum conventum; at
one-by-one he-blessed in-like manner the-whole convent but
vero, oculis in cælum erectis, utraque manu dominum
indeed with-eyes to heaven raised with-each hand the-lord
abbatem cum omnibus sibi commissis benedicere nitebatur.
abbot with all to-him entrusted to-bless he-strove
Rogatus autem a fratribus ut apud Deum, ad quem
asked but by the-brothers that with God to whom
ibat, eorum memor esset, caput inclinando benignissime
he-was-going of-them mindful he-would-be the-head by-bowing most-kindly
adquievit. Hæc et his similia cum fecisset, innuit
he-acquiesced these-things and like these when he-had-done he-signaled
sibi porrigi crucem; quam capite, immo toto
to-himself to-be-held-out the-cross which with-head nay with-the-whole
corpore, inclinato adorans, manibus amplexans, læto ore
body bowed adoring with-hands embracing with-glad mouth
salutare videbatur et jocundo affectu deosculabatur; cum ilico
to-greet he-seemed and with-joyful affection kissed when at-once
astantes migrando percellit, raptusque in manibus eorum
the-bystanders by-departing he-strikes and-snatched in the-hands their
vivus adhuc in presbyterium ante altare sancti Pancratii
alive still into the-presbytery before the-altar of-saint Pancras
defertur. Ubi aliquamdiu supervivens, roseo faciei rubore
is-carried where for-some-time surviving with-rosy of-face blush
suavis, eadem diei hora qua purgandus infirmatus est,
sweet at-the-same of-the-day hour at-which to-be-purged sickened has
cariturus perenniter omni malo, purus migravit ad Christum.
about-to-lack forever every evil pure he-departed to Christ

Et vide quam mirabiliter in eo cuncta concurrerunt: passio
and see how wonderfully in him all-things concurred the-passion
servi cum passione Domini; hora incipientis infirmitatis,
of-the-servant with the-passion of-the-Lord the-hour of-the-beginning sickness
cum hora incipientis æternæ salutis; quinque dies quos
with the-hour of-the-beginning eternal salvation the-five days which
sustinuit ægritudinis, quinis corporis sensibus, quibus nemo
he-endured of-illness with-the-five of-the-body senses by-which no-one
vitat peccatum, emundandis. Porro quod quinto die necdum
avoids sin to-be-cleansed further that on-the-fifth day not-yet
transacto decessit, ut remur innuit eum in ultimo sensu,
completed he-died as we-think signals him in the-last sense
qui tactus dicitur, non perfecisse peccatum. Tertia vero
which touch is-called not to-have-completed sin the-third but
diei hora, qua et infirmatus est et moriendo in
of-the-day hour at-which both sickened he-has and by-dying into
vitam ingressus est æternam, quid aliud insinuat quam
life entered he-has eternal what else does-it-suggest than
eandem Spiritus Sancti gratiam, qua omnem ejus vitam
the-same of-the-Spirit Holy grace by-which all his life
gubernatam cognoscimus, et infirmato et obeunti evidenter
governed we-know both to-him-sickened and to-him-dying evidently
affuisse? Ut etiam esse supparem illis patribus
to-have-been-present so-that also to-be nearly-equal to-those fathers
nostris, Odoni scilicet atque Odiloni, et merito et præmio,
our to-Odo namely and to-Odilo both in-merit and in-reward
non ambigamus, insigne quiddam illis concessum huic
not we-may-doubt notable something to-them granted to-this-one
quoque collatum est. Cum enim illis contulerit Dominus
also conferred was since for to-them granted the-Lord
ut octavo die sollempnitatum quas præ ceteris diligebant
that on-the-eighth day of-the-solemnities which beyond the-others they-loved

transirent; nam et beatus Odo festivitatem beati Martini,
they-should-pass-away for both blessed Odo the-feast of-blessed Martin
et sanctus Odilo Nativitatem Domini præcipue amabant, in
and saint Odilo the-Nativity of-the-Lord especially loved on
quorum octava die uterque decessit; domino Lanzoni, qui
of-which the-octave day each died to-the-lord Lanzo who
præ ceteris hujus ævi hominibus regulam sancti Benedicti
beyond the-other of-this age men the-rule of-saint Benedict
observabat, et beatam Dei genitricem ejusque sollempnia
observed and the-blessed of-God mother and-her solemnities
singulari venerabatur affectu, contulit, ut solita sibi
with-singular venerated affection he-granted that with-accustomed to-him
consuetudine, et in transitu sancti Benedicti, et in festivitate
custom both on the-passing of-saint Benedict and on the-feast
sanctæ Mariæ quæ Annuntiatio Dominica dicitur, majorem
of-saint Mary which the-Annunciation of-the-Lord is-called the-high
missam in conventu celebraret, et octavo a prædicto
mass in convent he-should-celebrate and on-the-eighth from the-aforesaid
sancti Benedicti transitu die præventus infirmitate, octavo
of-saint Benedict passing day overtaken by-sickness on-the-eighth
nihilominus die ab Annuntiatione Dominica migraret
nonetheless day from the-Annunciation of-the-Lord he-should-depart
ad Christum. Igitur, qui vitam domini Lanzonis ignorat,
to Christ therefore who the-life of-the-lord Lanzo does-not-know
quam placens Deo fuerit ex fine colligat; nec usitato
how pleasing to-God he-was from his-end let-him-gather nor by-the-usual
morientium more prædicta illi contigisse nobiscum
of-the-dying custom the-aforesaid-things to-him to-have-happened with-us
credat, quem Spiritus Sancti charismatibus nemine hujus
let-him-believe whom of-the-Spirit Holy with-the-gifts than-no-one of-this
temporis inferius ditatum sciat."
time less enriched let-him-know

De Godefrido priore Wintoniæ

GODFREY, PRIOR OF WINCHESTER

Godfrey of Winchester was famous for learning and religion: letters, epigrams in the satirical manner, verses on the primates of England, and a renewed liturgy. He shaped his monks' religion and hospitality, and was humble among the proud learned, and before he died a long wasting purged his sins.

Nec memoria Godefridi prioris Wintoniensis ire debet in
nor the-memory of-Godfrey the-prior of-Winchester to-go ought into
perditum, qui temporibus his litteratura et religione insignis
loss who in-times these for-literature and religion notable
fuit. Litteraturam protestantur libri plures, et epistolæ familiari
was (his)-literature attest books several and letters in-familiar
illo et dulci stilo editæ; maximeque epigrammata, quæ
that and sweet style published and-especially epigrams which
satirico modo absolvit, præterea versus de primatum Angliæ
in-satirical manner he-finished besides verses about of-the-primates of-England
laudibus. Quid? omne divinum officium, quod agresti quadam
the-praises what all the-divine office which with-rustic a-certain
vetustate obsoletum, per industriam suam nativa excultum
antiquity worn-out through industry his with-native adorned
venustate fecit enitescere. Religionis et hospitalitatis normam
charm he-made to-shine of-religion and of-hospitality the-norm
pulchre inchoatam deliniavit in monachos, qui hodieque ita
beautifully begun he-outlined in the-monks who today so
in utrisque prioris terunt vestigium, ut aut nihil aut
in both of-the-prior tread the-footstep that either nothing or
parum eis desit ad laudis cumulum. Denique est in ea
little to-them is-lacking for of-praise the-heap finally there-is in that
domo hospitum terra marique venientium quantum libuerit
house of-guests by-land and-by-sea coming as-much-as it-pleases

diversorium, sumptu indeficienti, caritate indefatigata. Inter
a-lodging with-expense unfailing with-charity untiring amid
hæc inerat sancto viro morum humilitas, ut nihil ex
these-things was-in the-holy man of-manners humility so-that nothing from
illo unico philosophiæ promptuario redoleret nisi humile,
that unique of-philosophy storehouse breathed unless humble
procederet nisi dulce. Quantula vero potest videri hæc ejus
it-proceeded unless sweet how-little but can to-seem this his
laudatio? Quotus enim quisque est qui vel minimum litteris
praise how-few for anyone is who even minimally in-letters
imbutus non alios infra dignitatem suam opinetur, tumido
steeped not others below dignity his think with-swollen
gestu et pompatico incessu præ se ferens conscientiam
gesture and pompous gait before himself bearing the-consciousness
litterarum? Veruntamen, ne quid perfectionis sanctæ deesset
of-letters nevertheless lest anything of-perfection to-the-holy be-lacking
animæ, multis ille annis grabatum fovit, camino diuturnæ
soul for-many he years (his)-pallet cherished in-the-furnace of-long
tabis medullas et peccata excoctus.
wasting in-his-marrow and sins thoroughly-cooked

De translatione Sancti Cutberti, et de Sancta Etheldritha, quorum corpora integra inventa sunt

SAINT CUTHBERT'S TRANSLATION; SAINT ETHELDREDA; THE EPILOGUE

Many in England were then famous for learning and religion, and prelates weaker in holiness tried to hide their faults by adorning their churches and their saints' shrines. Among them Ranulf of Durham won glory with new monastic buildings and the cult of Cuthbert, whose body Ralph, then abbot of Sées and later archbishop of Canterbury, brought out whole; at Ely, about the same time, Etheldreda's body was found whole. Ely became a bishopric under Hervey. William will treat the primacy dispute and the bishops of England later, says he has set down only what faithful reporters and writers told him, and claims to be the first since Bede to write a continuous history of the English. He closes by offering the work, which runs to the twenty-eighth year of King Henry's reign, to the earl, the king's son, as noble, a soldier, learned, just, and generous, and keeps what follows for another book.

Sed quid de talibus plura? Erant prorsus tunc in Anglia
but why about such-men more there-were altogether then in England
multi scientia illustres, religione celebres; quorum virtus
many for-knowledge illustrious for-religion celebrated whose virtue
eo probabilior, quo, seculo senescente, constantior
so-much more-commendable by-how-much with-the-world growing-old more-constant
et viridior. Laudabiliter igitur vivendo fidem præteritis
and greener praiseworthily therefore by-living faith to-past
faciebant historiis, ne vetera possint falsitatis argui, cum
they-gave histories lest the-old-things could of-falsity to-be-accused when
novorum exemplo probentur potuisse fieri. Quin etiam
of-the-new by-the-example they-are-proved to-have-been-able to-be-done nay even
si qui essent ecclesiarum prælati qui viderentur ab antiquorum
if any were of-the-churches prelates who seemed from of-the-ancients
sanctitate degeneres, in mundialibus scilicet efficaces, in
holiness degenerate in worldly-things namely effective in

spiritualibus desides; tales inquam, si qui essent, sumptuosis
spiritual-things sluggish such I-say if any were with-sumptuous
locorum cultibus conabantur errata obumbrare. Erigebat
of-places adornments they-tried (their)-errors to-overshadow raised
quisque templa recentia, sanctorumque suorum argento et
each churches new and-of-saints his with-silver and
auro amiciebat corpora, nihil prætermittendo caritate
with-gold clothed the-bodies nothing omitting with-dearness
sumptuum quod ad gratiam possit allicere oculos intuentium.
of-expenses which to favor could to-allure the-eyes of-the-beholders
Quorum est Rannulfus superius nominatus, qui, apud
of-whom is Ranulf above named who at
Dunelmum factus episcopus, in ædificiis monachorum novis,
Durham made bishop in buildings of-the-monks new
et beati Cuthberti veneratione, nonnullam gloriam nomini
and of-blessed Cuthbert the-veneration some glory for-name
suo commentus est: cujus extulit famam sacrati corporis
his devised has whose raised the-fame of-the-sacred body
translatio, quod, e mausoleo levatum, cunctis volentibus
the-translation which from the-mausoleum raised to-all wishing
fecit conspicuum. Tractavit illud ausu felici Radulfus tunc
he-made visible handled it with-daring happy Ralph then
abbas Sagii, postea Cantuariæ archiepiscopus; et propalam
abbot of-Sées afterward of-Canterbury archbishop and openly
illibatum protulit, quod quibusdam venisset in dubium utrum
unimpaired brought-forth because to-some it-had-come into doubt whether
olim vulgatum adhuc de integritate compaginis duraret
the-once spread still about the-wholeness of-the-frame lasted
miraculum. Eodemque fere tempore in Heliensi cœnobio, sub
miracle and-at-the-same almost time at the-Ely monastery under
abbate Ricardo, virginales exuviæ beatæ Etheldrithæ integræ
abbot Richard the-virginal remains of-blessed Etheldreda whole

visæ videntibus stupori et plausui fuere. Monasterium
seen to-the-seers for-astonishment and applause were the-monastery
illud, nuper a rege Henrico in episcopatum mutatum, primum
that lately by king Henry into a-bishopric changed first
Herveum accepit episcopum; qui, pro penuria victualium,
Hervey received as-bishop who for want of-provisions
Bancornensem, ubi intronizatus fuerat, deseruerat locum: et
the-Bangor where enthroned he-had-been had-deserted place and
ne Lincoliensis pontifex mutilatam suam quereretur diocesim,
lest the-Lincoln bishop mutilated his should-complain-of diocese
ex rebus Heliensis cœnobii dampnum rex sarcivit, querelam
from the-goods of-the-Ely monastery the-loss the-king patched-up the-complaint
composuit. Sane quid ejus tempore de primatu duorum
settled indeed what in-his time about the-primacy of-the-two
metropolitanorum, Cantuariensis et Eboracensis, sit vel
metropolitans of-Canterbury and of-York has-been either
justitiæ surreptum, vel violentia præsumptum, dicam cum
from-justice stolen or by-violence presumed I-shall-say when
ad ordinem venero. Jam enim terminata serie regum,
to the-order I-shall-have-come already for with-finished the-series of-the-kings
de successione totius Angliæ pontificum mihi video esse
about the-succession of-whole of-England of-the-bishops to-me I-see to-be
dicendum; in quo utinam affluerет uber dicendi copia,
to-be-spoken in which would-that there-might-flow rich of-speaking abundance
ne ulterius sub oblivione jaceant tam præclara patriæ
lest further under oblivion should-lie so splendid of-the-country
lumina. Et quidem erunt multi fortassis, in diversis
lights and indeed there-will-be many perhaps in various
regionibus Angliæ, qui quædam aliter ac ego dixi se
regions of-England who certain-things otherwise than I have-said themselves
dicant audisse vel legisse: veruntamen, si recto aguntur
may-say to-have-heard or to-have-read nevertheless if by-right they-are-led

judicio, non ideo me censorio expungent stilo; ego
judgment not therefore me with-the-censorial they-will-erase pen I
enim, veram legem secutus historiæ, nihil unquam posui
for the-true law following of-history nothing ever have-set-down
nisi quod a fidelibus relatoribus vel scriptoribus addidici.
except what from faithful reporters or writers I-learned
Porro, quoquo modo hæc se habeant, privatim ipse
further in-whatever way these-things themselves have privately I
mihi sub ope Christi gratulor, quod continuam Anglorum
to-myself under the-help of-Christ congratulate that a-continuous of-the-English
historiam ordinaverim post Bedam vel solus vel primus: si
history I-have-arranged after Bede either alone or first if
quis ergo, sicut jam susurrari audio, post me scribendi
anyone therefore as already to-be-whispered I-hear after me of-writing
de talibus munus attemptaverit, mihi debeat collectionis
about such-things the-task shall-have-attempted to-me let-him-owe of-the-collection
gratiam, sibi habeat electionis materiam.
the-thanks to-himself let-him-have of-the-selection the-matter
Hæc habui, domine venerabilis Comes, de gestis
these-things I-had lord venerable Earl about the-deeds
Anglorum quæ dicerem, ab adventu eorum in Angliam
of-the-English which I-might-say from the-coming their into England
usque in annum vicesimum octavum felicissimi regni patris
right into the-year twentieth eighth of-the-most-happy reign of-father
vestri: cetera proprium occupabunt libellum, si benignum
your the-rest their-own will-occupy little-book if a-kind
istis non negaveritis vultum. Hoc autem opus postquam
to-these not you-shall-have-denied face this but work after
absolvi, circumspectis plurimis, vobis potissimum delegandum
I-finished with-surveyed very-many-men to-you above-all to-be-delegated
credidi. Cum enim alios considero, in uno nobilitatem, in
I-believed-it when for others I-consider in one nobility in

altero militiam, in isto litteraturam, in illo justitiam, in
another soldiership in this-one literature in that-one justice in
paucis munificentiam invenio; itaque in aliis aliqua, in singulis
few munificence I-find and-so in others some-things in single-ones
singula, in vobis admiror universa. Si quis enim unquam
single-things in you I-admire all-things if anyone for ever
fuit nobilis, vos in ea re præcellitis; cujus genus a
was noble you in that matter excel whose race from
præcellentissimis regibus et comitibus lineam trahit, animus a
the-most-excellent kings and counts a-line draws the-mind from
moribus imitationem conducit. Habetis ergo a Normannis
the-manners imitation takes you-have therefore from the-Normans
bellandi peritiam, a Flandrensibus liniamentorum gratiam, a
of-warring the-skill from the-Flemings of-features the-grace from
Francis generositatis eminentiam. De militiæ porro vestræ
the-Franks of-generosity the-eminence about of-soldiership further your
industria quis hæsitet, cum eam excellentissimus pater in vobis
the-industry who would-hesitate when it the-most-excellent father in you
suspiciat? Cum enim aliqui motus in Normannia nuntiantur, vos
looks-up-to when for any motions in Normandy are-announced you
præmittit, ut virtute vestra profligentur, suspecta sagacitate
he-sends-ahead that by-valor your they-be-routed the-suspect-things by-sagacity
redintegretur concordia: cum redit in regnum, vos reducit,
be-restored concord when he-returns into the-kingdom you he-brings-back
ut sitis ei foris tutelæ, domi lætitiæ, ornamento ubique.
that you-be to-him abroad for-protection at-home for-joy for-ornament everywhere
Litteras ita fovetis, ut cum sitis tantarum occupationum
letters so you-cherish that although you-be of-such-great occupations
mole districti, horas tamen aliquas vobis surripiatis,
by-the-mass distracted hours yet some for-yourself you-steal
quibus aut ipsi legere, aut legentes possitis audire.
in-which either yourself to-read or those-reading you-may-be-able to-hear

Digno itaque moderamine fortunæ vestræ celsitudinem
with-worthy and-so moderation of-fortune your the-loftiness
componitis, dum nec militiam propter litteras postponitis,
you-compose while neither soldiership for letters you-put-after
nec litteras propter militiam, ut quidam, conspuitis: in quo
nor letters for soldiership as some you-spit-on in which
etiam scientiæ vestræ patescit miraculum, quia, dum libros
also of-knowledge your is-revealed the-wonder because while books
diligitis, datis indicium quam avidis medullis fontem
you-love you-give an-indication how with-eager marrow the-fountain
eorum combiberitis; multæ siquidem res, etiam cum non
of-them you-have-drunk-in many indeed things even when not
habentur, desiderantur, philosophiam nullus amabit qui eam
they-are-had are-desired philosophy no-one will-love who it
extrema satietate non hauserit.
to-the-utmost satiety not he-has-drained
Justitiæ vestræ fama regiones etiam nostras attigit; a vobis
of-justice your the-fame regions even our has-reached from you
siquidem pravum judicium nunquam extorsit vel personæ
indeed a-crooked judgment never has-wrung either of-person
sublimitas vel fortunæ tenuitas. Nihil reperit in vestro
the-loftiness or of-fortune the-slenderness nothing has-found in your
pectore quod suis conducat artibus qui justitiam labefactare
breast which to-his may-serve arts who justice to-undermine
conatur, seu oblatione muneris, seu delinimento favoris.
tries whether by-the-offering of-a-gift or by-the-soothing of-favor
Munificentiæ vestræ pecuniæque contemptum prætendit
of-munificence your and-of-money the-contempt shows
Teochesbiriæ cœnobium; de quo, ut audio, non solum xenia
the-Tewkesbury monastery from which as I-hear not only gifts
non corraditis, sed etiam ultro missa remittitis.
not you-scrape-together but even of-their-own-accord sent you-send-back

Quantum hoc sit isto præsertim tempore, quantæ in seculo
how-much this is at-this especially time how-much in the-world
gloriæ, quantæ apud Deum gratiæ, ipsi certe intelligitis.
of-glory how-much with God of-favor yourselves surely understand
Beata est igitur, secundum sententiam Platonis, respublica
blessed is therefore according-to the-opinion of-Plato the-commonwealth
cujus rector est philosophus, cujus princeps non delectatur
whose ruler is a-philosopher whose prince not is-delighted
muneribus. Plura de talibus dicerem, nisi et suspicio meæ
by-gifts more about such-things I-would-say unless both the-suspicion of-my
adulationis, et laudanda modestia vestri pudoris dicturientem
flattery and the-praiseworthy modesty of-your shame me-eager-to-speak
cohiberet. Sane quæ dixi non prætermittere fuit consilium, ut
restrained indeed what I-said not to-pass-over was the-counsel that
per officium linguæ meæ probitas vestra posteros non lateat,
through the-office of-tongue my probity your posterity not escape
et ipsa de virtute in virtutem proficere contendat. Et quidem
and itself from virtue into virtue to-advance strive and indeed
jamdudum, quibusdam persuadentibus, ferebat animus ut, quæ
long-ago with-some persuading inclined the-mind that what
prætereunda non putarem, per succiduos semper annos huic
to-be-passed-over not I-thought through the-falling always years to-this
operi apponerem; sed consultius videtur alium de talibus
work I-should-add but more-advisable it-seems another about such-things
librum procudere, quam jam absoluto frequenter nova
book to-hammer-out than to-the-already finished often new-things
insuere. Nec vero quisquam superfluam me operam dicat
to-sew-in nor indeed anyone superfluous me labor may-say
insumere, si clarissimi omnium sua ætate regum gesta
to-spend if of-the-most-famous of-all in-his age of-kings the-deeds
propono: multa enim sublimitati ejus mea humilitas debet,
I-set-forth much for to-the-loftiness his my humility owes

et adhuc plura debebit, ut, si nihil aliud esset, quod
and still more will-owe so-that if nothing else there-were that
se talem filium habere gaudet; nam et olim felici sorte
himself such a-son to-have he-rejoices for also once by-a-happy lot
susceptum, non perfunctorie, ut hodie claret, litteris erudiri
begotten not perfunctorily as today is-clear in-letters to-be-educated
præcepit, post etiam amplissimarum possessionum fecit
he-ordered after also of-most-ample possessions he-made
dominum, nunc postremo patrium in vos reclinat affectum.
lord now lastly the-paternal upon you he-leans affection
Sit ergo hic liber, ut est, vestræ gloriæ absolute consecratus;
let-be therefore this book as it-is to-your glory absolutely consecrated
in altero erit idem vitæ, qui scripturæ, terminus. Quod
in the-other will-be the-same of-life which of-the-writing the-end what
superest, munus meum dignanter suscipite, ut gaudeam
remains task my graciously receive that I-may-rejoice
grato cognitoris arbitrio, qui non erravi eligendi judicio.
in-the-pleasing of-the-judge verdict who not I-erred of-choosing in-judgment

---